

15820/D



Sir
Robert Dalrymple Horn Elphinstone
Horn & Logie Elphinstone
Bar.



*Orbis Idumci clarus tepidique Canopi
 Tropici. Appellat non sors artis honores,
 Praesens hic ille est: quem quo sua saecula norint,
 Ingenio melius pictus ab ipse suo est.*

Janus Broukhuisius.

Godfr. Kneller Eques Pinxit.

G. Walck Schulp.

TRA

232

M^R. COR

T R

MOSC

E A

An ACCURA
 as are most
 Countries, a
 curious Re

Of their Antiquiti
 Palace of Persep

By

Adorn

Florisfer
 Omnia

Printed for J.

75377

A NEW and more CORRECT

TRANSLATION

232

Than has hitherto appeared in Public,

OF

M^R. CORNELIUS LE BRUN'S

CORNELIS DE BRUN

TRAVELS

INTO

MOSCOVY, PERSIA,

And divers PARTS of the

EAST-INDIES;

CONTAINING

AN ACCURATE DESCRIPTION of all such Articles
as are most remarkable in each of those different
Countries, and most worthy the Attention of the
curious Reader.

AS ALSO

Of their Antiquities; but more particularly those relating to the famous
Palace of *Persepolis*, commonly called *Chelminar* by the PERSIANS:

By a Gentleman of OXFORD.

Adorn'd with a large Number of Copper-Plates.

*Floriferis ut Apes in Saltibus omnia libant,
Omnia Nos itidem.*

LUCRET.

L O N D O N:

Printed for J. WARCUS, at the BIBLE, the Corner of *Rackett-*
Court, in *Fleet-Street*. M.DCC.LIX.



THE
 TRAVELS
 OF
 Cornelius Le Brun,
 THROUGH
 MUSCOVY and PERSIA,
 TO THE
 EAST-INDIES, &c. &c.

CHAP. I.

The Author's Resolution. His Departure from the Hague. And his Arrival at Archangel.

Introduc-
 tion.



Am highly sensible, that 'tis a duty incumbent on me, before I enter upon the recital of this my last expedition, to return my unfeigned thanks to the Almighty, who, through his great goodness and divine protection, has enabled me to conquer all the difficulties and dangers, that from time to time have attended me, during

my former travels, as well as those I have so lately finished, in the prosecution whereof I have spent near twenty years with the utmost satisfaction.

Upon my return to the Hague, I found myself under an irresistible temptation to revisit several remote countries, in order that I might reflect on the respective inhabitants, and their particular customs and manners, with more mature deliberation than I had

B

done

1701

done before; and to take a second tour to the East Indies, through Muscovy and Persia.

Not only my friends and acquaintance, but my nearest relations were highly displeased, when they found I was resolutely bent on repeating my voyage. They were very warm in their remonstrances, and endeavoured to set before me all the numerous inconveniencies, that might in all probability attend such a rash, and, as they called it, ill-concerted project.

Flush'd, however, with the good success of my former adventures, no arguments could prevail on me to withstand the violence of my own inclinations.

Moreover, I considered with myself, that then I had more years over my head, and had acquired a greater degree of experience, and by consequence, was much better qualified to form a more adequate idea of things than I was in my youth; besides, since my return, I made it my business, in some measure, to converse with men of learning and taste, and such as were very curious in their enquiries, whereby I was fully convinced in my own mind, that by virtue of such valuable assistances, I should be rendered capable of making much more advantageous and important discoveries than hitherto I had done. Big with these hopes, I consulted, with the utmost care and attention, all the closets of the curious; by which means, I soon informed myself of the most approved methods for preserving in spirits all kinds of birds, beasts, and fishes; and to prepare them, in such an artful manner, that I might bring them from foreign parts without their suffering the least diminution or decay. I had determined likewise to get some proper instructions from some able and experienced masters in the art of painting, for drawing, after the life, all such natural productions, both by sea and land, as I judged most worthy of my notice and attention. This qualification, however, I proposed to acquire only as an amusement; for my principal aim and design was, to pry into the antiquities of such countries as I should chance to visit, and to add such

reflections thereto, as from time to time might occur by way of improvement; to examine, with all the accuracy and exactness imaginable, the several religions each nation professed, their manners, customs, politics, government, and modes of dress; as also, their more solemn rites and ceremonies in regard to births, marriages, and interments. In short, to pry into the nature of each soil, whether barren or fruitful; to take a survey of their cities, buildings, and other curiosities, with all the accuracy I was able, in order that I might give a full and true account of every particular of any moment or importance, that occurred to me in my travels, upon my return to my friends and relations.

I set out from the Hague, the place of my nativity, on the 28th of July 1701, for Amsterdam, where I tarried till the 30th, and the next day, about four in the afternoon, I arrived at the Texel in the common passage-boat. No sooner was I got ashore, but I heard, that the Oudenard, a man of war, Capt. Roemer Vlack commander, who was appointed to convoy the Russia fleet, had weigh'd anchor about nine o'clock that very morning, and set sail from that harbour, together with five or six merchant-men, who were bound for the port of Archangel. As the vessel, in which I proposed to make my voyage, was not at that time arrived, I went out to meet her, and on the 1st of August, I embarked about ten in the morning. She was a pretty smart sailer, had eight guns, and eighteen hands to work her. Her name was the St. John Baptist, and one Gerard Buis, of Sardam, was her commander. The wind being at west-south-west, we tript it, in order to get into the Texel; and there we moored between eleven and twelve.

On August the second, about nine in the morning, we weighed anchor, and got safe out at sea by one o'clock that afternoon; at which time, our pilot took his leave of us, and I delivered into his care a packet of letters, directed to some

1701

July 28.
His departure from the Hague.

August 1

August 2

1701 of my most intimate
made the best of
west and by north
on us, at which time
to the northward,
for north-north-west
we met nine or
ing eastward, and
land. At midnight
ed, and so continued
ing. At noon we
at west-south-west
August 4, about 1
a brisk gale, and
and by west. The
precarious, and we
of several vessels, w
quite different ports.
the north and north
August 5, upon which day
ships, some where
Greenland, who
nicated to us their
August 6, next day, we met
of the same occupa
August 7, the wind tacked
and as the weather
displayed all the
some time. The
after shifting about
south-east, we be
east, and before
which lie at a
Norway, without
we were, as the
August 9, hazy. On the 9th
gress of north lati
continuing rainy.
ing about this sea,
with a sharp-point
sailors commonly c
ter, several others
led Potkoppin; t
very large. A wh
by the ship's side
times bigger than
withstanding they
boat, yet they we
tion than they wer
when to be met w
seas. After a gr
and weather, the
August 11, serene.
On the 16th

1701

1701

of my most intimate acquaintance. We made the best of our way, north-west and by north, till night came upon us, at which time we steered more to the northward, and varied our course for north-north-west. In our passage, we met nine or ten sail; some steering eastward, and others bound for Holland. At midnight we were becalmed, and so continued till the next morning. At noon we had a small breeze at west-south-west. On the fourth of August, about break of day, we had a brisk gale, and steered our course north and by west. The weather was very precarious, and we were within sight of several vessels, which were bound for quite different ports. The wind veered to the north and north-west on the fifth, upon which day we met with several ships, some whereof were fishermen from Greenland, who very frankly communicated to us their various success. The next day, we met with some others of the same occupation. On the eighth, the wind tacked about to the west; and as the weather was very fine, we displayed all the canvas we had for some time. The wind, however, soon after shifting about to the south and south-east, we bore away to the north-east, and before night, reached the islands which lie at a very small distance from Norway, without being conscious where we were, as the weather was dark and hazy. On the 9th, we got into 61 degrees of north latitude, the weather still continuing rainy. Whilst we were roving about this sea, we espied a large fish, with a sharp-pointed head, which the sailors commonly call a Hillen. Soon after, several others appeared in view, called Potkoppen; the heads of these were very large. A whole shoal of them passed by the ship's side; some of them ten times bigger than a Porpoise; and notwithstanding they were as long as our boat, yet they were broader, in proportion than they were long. These are no where to be met with but in the northern seas. After a great variation of wind and weather, the sky proved clear and serene.

August 4.

August 5.

August 6.

August 8.

August 9.

A very remarkable fish called the Hillen.

August 16.

On the 16th day, about seven in the

morning, we made land, that is to say, we discovered the rocks or mountains that lie nearest the northern coast, distinguished, in our charts, by the name of the Loeffoert rocks, which are of a considerable height, and lie at some distance from one another, as the reader will plainly perceive by consulting plate I.

As soon as we had got within due compass, I drew a sketch of the other part of the island, with the points which project, where I observed several other rocks that were much smaller, which, at the distance of about two or three leagues, seemed to be joined to the island above-mentioned.

We proceeded after this, with all the tranquillity imaginable, in company with divers other vessels which we met with by mere accident; and every now and then we could plainly perceive fishes half as long as our ship, and proportionably broad, with heads of a monstrous size. There are some of them (as we were informed by persons that had seen them dead) that appear spiral, like a stair-case. Here likewise we saw a large flight of birds, not much unlike our ducks, or divers, but somewhat smaller. Their bills were very sharp; and, tho' black above, were white below. All this night and the next day, the weather was foggy, accompanied with small rain. About eight in the morning, we fell in with a vessel, that set sail from Hamburgh on the 30th of July, and was bound for Archangel. As the fog still continued, tho' we were near land, we could not discern it; but we perceived it plain enough as soon as the sky cleared up.

As we pursued our Voyage, we came soon into the latitude of 72 degrees, 36 minutes north, not far from the land of Loppe, and a high, rocky mountain, which lay on the south-east of us. There we met with a French ship, the captain whereof came on board us; and as he could talk no other language than his own, and nobody, except my self, could understand what he said, I acted the part of his interpreter. He acquainted us, that he came from Bayonne, and had been out about five months; that he had taken a Greenland voyage, and was on his return home;

Plate I.
Mountains
on the coast
of Norway.

See plate II.

August 17.

THE TRAVELS OF

1701 home; that he had been very successful, had nine whales on board, and had taken the last, not above four or five leagues distance from the place where we then were; and that he was not without hopes of adding one or two more to his stock in hand, before he quitted that coast; and thereupon desired, to know whether we had seen any of them pass by us.

A remarkable whale.

Our master having received him in the most courteous manner, he assured us, that the teeth of one of his whales in particular were no less than five inches long; that the blubber extracted from him filled thirty-two casks; and that the salt, which he had drained from behind his neck, had filled seven and an half more. And on our seeming surpris'd at his account, he added, that this was not the only time of his meeting with such good success; that the said salt would be refined on his arrival at Bayonne, in order to be exported to foreign parts; that amongst its several other good qualities, it was an exceeding fine lotion, or wash for the ladies; that it cleared their complexions, and gave them a youthful bloom; that it was a specific remedy besides in divers disorders, and, in short, was a very valuable commodity. — He attempted, in the prosecution of his discourse, to convince us, if he could, that the Basques were the first who ventured to take a voyage to Greenland. — Here we met with several other large vessels, and pursued our voyage in the evening, notwithstanding there was no dependance on the weather.

August 20.

Isle of Loppe.

August 24.

August 25.

A falcon taken.

On the twentieth, about eight in the morning, we got within six or seven leagues of the island of Loppe, which lay south east of us; but as the weather still continu'd dark and hazy, we could not discern it. On the twenty-fourth the fog was so thick, that we could scarce distinguish one object from another the length of the ship. On the twenty-fifth, we were got in the latitude of seventy-two degrees, twenty-four minutes. In the evening we were becalmed, and it was a prodigious fog all night, during which, one of our ship's crew took a large falcon, that had settled on one of our top sails;

but it proved so very sullen, that it would not be tempted to touch any thing, tho' offer'd divers kinds of provisions. As the fog and the rain still continued, we did not make land till the twenty eighth, when we had reached the northward of Lambasku, the sky cleared up, and we had then a very favourable wind at south south-west, which proved highly agreeable to us at this juncture; and the more so, because, had the fog continued, we could have made no use of it for fear of running aground.

The land, which at that time we had on our star-board side, was the Russian Lapland, commonly called the Terra Firma, or continent of Lapland (a). It consists of a chain of mountains that are but low, nay, very little higher than the sea-shore, but at a small distance from it, where the soil is of a dark-brown colour, and very barren. In divers parts of these hills, one might perceive several heaps of snow, which gather in caverns, where they never melt all the year round.

On the 29th, we happened to be becalmed, and in order to prevent our driving, we threw out an anchor. Soon after, however, a breeze springing up, we weighed again, and steered our course south-east, and coming in with the land we had several sail of ships in view.

On the 30th we made our entrance into the (b) white sea, the waters whereof are much clearer than those of the ocean, which upon an approach to the Russian coast are of a greenish hue, and a russet colour, on account of the rivers that disembogue themselves therein.

Having passed by the mountainous coast, we came to another about a league off, which was more upon the level, and covered, for the most part, with a profusion of copse-wood. On August the 30th, about eight o'clock, we arrived near the island of Croffes, which is very rocky, and lies but a small distance from the main land. This island abounds with croffes, which are more and more conspicuous, the nearer one approaches it. As soon as we had sailed clear of this coast, we could plainly discern the land of (c) Russia; whereupon we steered south

August 28

Coast of Lapland.

(a) See the end of this chapter.

August 29.

August 30.

August 30.

The island of Croffes.

Russia.

1701 south-west and by
Gris on the eastward
a great way into the
we saw seventeen
upon the coast, to
added eleven; tog
England, and came
fathom water, bef
angel, and about
town. On the 31st
found our number
one. There were
eight English, a
including those
fore us into that m
As the weather w
waited only for prop
into the river; but a
latory, one of the Ha
resolute and presum
to rely on his own
great detriment; f
on the shore, upon t
river. We were notan
disaster, having been
the Muscovites had t
marks, being apprehen
vation; as they had a
before this accident,
river, and had struck
parts adjacent, with
mon paidva. Six
wife, growing imp
ciful delay of the pl
towards the morning
unhappily ran aground
sifted from the too
The pilots, however
assistance that aftern
the river, accompani
of our country, who
fortune and fine we
without the least da
spot of meadow-grow
small trees, which e
both sides towards th
kind of crescent, or
pears by plate III.
On the second of
us had pilots, one E
cepted, and about elev
ing, we were all under
toward the east. W
1

1701 south-west and by south, leaving Cape Gris on the eastward of us, which projects a great way into the sea. Before sun-set, we saw seventeen vessels riding at anchor upon the coast, to which number we added eleven; together with two from England, and came to an anchor, in three fathom water, before the river of Archangel, and about ten leagues from the town. On the 31st, in the morning, we found our number encreased to twenty one. There were likewise eleven Dutch, eight English, and two Hamburgers, including those that left the Texel before us into that number.

August 31.

As the weather was perfectly fine, we waited only for proper pilots, to bring us into the river; but as they proved very dilatory, one of the Hamburgers being too resolute and presumptuous, was determined to rely on his own conduct; but to his great detriment; for he ran with violence on the shore, upon the larboard side of the river. We were not any ways surprized at his disaster, having been informed before, that the Muscovites had taken up all the sea-marks, being apprehensive of a Swedish invasion; as they had appeared, some weeks before this accident, at the mouth of the river, and had struck all who lived in the parts adjacent, with a more than common panick. Six of the English likewise, growing impatient at the unmerciful delay of the pilots, weighed anchor towards the morning; but as two of them unhappily ran aground, the other four desisted from the too dangerous attempt. The pilots, however, coming to their assistance that afternoon, they sailed up the river, accompanied by a small vessel of our country, who, by the favour of fortune and fine weather, cast anchor without the least damage, before a large spot of meadow-grounds, abounding with small trees, which extend themselves on both sides towards the river, forming a kind of crescent, or half moon, as appears by plate III.

Meadow grounds.

Plate III.

Septem. 2.

On the second of September, all of us had pilots, one English ship only excepted, and about eleven o'clock that morning, we were all under sail, steering our course toward the east. We went over several

I

flats, where we had not above fifteen or sixteen foot water, and cast anchor about three o'clock near those meadow-grounds, being about six leagues distant from Archangel, the hay being at that time just cocked upon the ground. The English and the rest continued there some time, as well as we; for no vessel was permitted to lie nearer the town, at which place every captain was obliged to make his personal appearance.

1701

I embarked, therefore, with the rest about five o'clock, proposing to take the shortest way between the islands; but we found, to our no small mortification, that we had lost our way. We began, in short, to despair of getting again within our knowledge; but meeting, very providentially, with a small vessel under the care of a Muscovite, we begged the favour of him to take us likewise under his guidance and direction, as the night was coming upon us apace, and as the weather was very dark and gloomy; for notwithstanding there were four captains in company, I am fully persuaded we had steered the compass three times round at least.

At last, however, we discovered the beacon of one of the islands, near which we perceived soon after, a Russian bark riding at anchor. It was now, not only midnight, but it rained extremely hard, and was very dark, for which reason, we determined to tarry here till we had light sufficient to direct us to the shore; besides, the water was too shallow for us to make the attempt, had we been so inclined; for we would have landed, had not that been the real case, and made a fire in the woods. Soon after day-break, we proceeded on our passage, and reached the New Dwinko (which lies at about three leagues distance from the city) by six or seven o'clock. Here we continued for some time; for we were not allowed to advance any farther, till we had a free permission from the commanding officer there. As there were but a very few houses in the place, the inhabitants were all very busy in erecting forts, in order to defend themselves, in case of any sudden insult from their enemies.

New Dwinko.

They

C

1701

Plate IV.

Arrival at
Archangel.

Septem. 2.

June 15.

They were, moreover, preparing three Branders there, and a chain, near an hundred fathom in length, and as thick as one's arm, to prevent the Swedes from making their unwelcome approaches; for they had been every day under the apprehensions of a visit, ever since their last expedition. During my stay there, I had a favourable opportunity of making a draught of the place, the houses whereof, as will plainly appear by the plate hereto annexed, lie at some small distance from the river. The commanding officer made his appearance, however, at last; and, after entertaining us with a dram or two of brandy, gave us free leave to proceed on our voyage. We embraced the opportunity, and, after the usual compliments, took our leave, and arriv'd safe at about nine that morning at Archangel (*d*).

As soon as I landed, I paid a visit to an old friend and countryman of mine, one Adolphus Bowhuifen, in order to take up my lodging there, who, amongst other conversation, informed me, that not long before, the Swedes had made their appearance amongst them with three men of war, one fly boat, two galliots, and a snow, with a resolution to demolish a village about ten leagues off, called Moetjega; and that they had most assuredly carried their design into actual execution, had not one Koereption, who was a Muscovite, and was employed by them as their pilot, diverted them from their purpose, by representing to them, that in case they took those measures, all their designs on Archangel would be rendered fruitless and ineffectual. Upon this precaution of his, they came before the mouth of the river, with English colours, with their galliots and their snow; but before they entered, they had secured another Muscovite to act as their interpreter.

Upon the fifteenth of June, 1701, in the evening, they got the length of the New Dwinko; but were received, contrary to their expectations, with several warm discharges from the cannon of the place. Surprized at this reception, they were obliged to quit, not only the snow, but one of their galliots likewise, and to

make the best of their way in their long-boats to their other galliot, which had run aground, but was then, however, a-float; upon this, they returned to their men of war that lay at the mouth of the river, leaving New Dwinko, in the dead of the night, and at a time of the year when the sun very seldom, if ever, totally disappears from above the horizon. This disappointment having exasperated them to the last degree, they vented their rage and resentment on the light-house, by setting it on fire, and by demolishing two little villages, one called Koeja, and the other Pelletse. The former, indeed, is not above seven hours distance from the city, on the same side; but the latter lies farther a great way, and on the other side of the White Sea; where, after a short cruize for some days, they steered their course homewards. The Muscovites, being over-joyed at the departure of such troublesome visitors, fell to drinking what wine the Swedes had left them against their inclinations; which, as there was plenty, they made too free with; and growing remis, in the height of their merriment and their salvos for their good success, they set fire to a barrel of gunpowder, which blew up the best part of the vessel. By this unforeseen misfortune, four men were killed on the spot, and twenty, or more, were wounded. The Swedes, however, lost but one man, as 'twas thought, by this unhappy accident, whose body falling into the water, the Muscovites took it up, and disposed of it in a decent manner.

On the fourth, several of our vessels cast anchor before the town, but not till they had first been duly search'd for contraband goods.

The English vessel, that still lay at the mouth of the river for want of a pilot, would fain now have come up, but, upon making the too bold attempt, very unfortunately ran a-ground. The next day, to add to her misfortune, the wind blew so violently hard, and the waves ran so high, that there was no possibility of getting on board to save any of her cargo; and as the wind still encreased, instead of abating, she opened all on a sudden to that degree,

1701

A misfortune by
gunpowder.

Septem. 4.

A violent
storm.

1701 degree, that in the
had no less than five
hold. By the night
a small vessel, the
shift, indeed, to save
cloaths; but that
for the cargo, which
of a large quantity
absolutely lost. It
she was one of the
ever been seen in
ried no less than the
tho' they mounted
guns, and had no
on board, she was
In a short time, the
the sea washed quite

(a) Lapland, the
Europe, is surrounded
the north east and west
and thirty-five degrees
between sixty-five and
north latitude. The
subject to Russia, and
the north-west part of
mark, and called No
that part of Lapland w
is called Swedish Lapla
mits of these divisions
ple generally leading
having very few tow
der the snow, two
are very few animals
Rein-Deer is the most
which draws their sledg
surprising swiftness; hi
for cloathing, and his
hunt foxes, martens,
mals, proper to their cl
fell to their southern ne
Lapland, about Torne a
they have mines of cop
Swedes work, and b
Christians of many of
but 'tis certain they ha
morals; for, when you
with any heady, strong
dom sober as long as th

(b) White-Sea is a
Ocean, in the north of
tween Russian Lapland
bottom of which bay

1701 degree, that in twenty minutes time she had no less than seven foot water in her hold. By the help of a few ropes, and a small vessel, the hands on board made shift, indeed, to save themselves and their cloaths; but that was all they could do; for the cargo, which principally consisted of a large quantity of tobacco, was all absolutely lost. It was great pity; for she was one of the finest vessels that had ever been seen in those parts. She carried no less than three hundred lasts, and tho' they mounted, indeed, but eighteen guns, and had no more than thirty hands on board, she was bored for forty guns. In a short time, she sank so deep, that the sea washed quite over her. She was

Septem. 6.

called the Resolution, and one captain Brains was her commander. The Ham-
burgher, of which we took notice some time before, and hinted her running a-ground on the last day of August, had inevitably met with the like misfortune, had not her crew happily embraced the opportunity of the fair weather, to unlade her, and set her a-float again; for the place where this last ran a-ground was, in fact, a much more dangerous one, than that where the English ship was lost. To conclude, by the favour of the tide, notwithstanding all the dangers to which we had been exposed, we arrived at last, in safety, at our wished for Port.

1701

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

(a) Lapland, the most northerly part of Europe, is surrounded by the frozen Ocean on the north east and west, and lies between ten and thirty-five degrees of east longitude, and between sixty-five and seventy two degrees of north latitude. The north east part thereof is subject to Russia, and called Russian Lapland; the north-west part of it is subject to Denmark, and called Norwegian Lapland; and that part of Lapland which lies south of these is called Swedish Lapland. But the exact limits of these divisions is not known, the people generally leading a wandering life, and having very few towns, but live in huts, under the snow, two thirds of the year. Here are very few animals or vegetables. The Rein-Deer is the most useful animal they have, which draws their sledges over the snow with surprising swiftness; his skin also serves them for cloathing, and his flesh for food. They hunt foxes, martens, ermins, and other animals, proper to their climate, whose furs they sell to their southern neighbours. In Swedish Lapland, about Torne and the Bothnic Gulph, they have mines of copper and iron which the Swedes work, and boast they have made Christians of many of their Lapland subjects; but 'tis certain they have not improved their morals; for, when you have furnished them with any heady, strong liquors, they are seldom sober as long as they last.

(b) White-Sea is a bay of the Frozen Ocean, in the north of Muscovy, situate between Russian Lapland and Samoieda, at the bottom of which bay stands the city of Arch-

angel. This was the only sea the Russians had any communication with, till their conquest of Livonia.

(c) Russia, or Muscovy, comprehends great part of the continent of Europe and Asia, extending from twenty-four to one hundred and thirty degrees of eastern longitude, and between forty five and seventy-two degrees of northern latitude, bounded by the Frozen Ocean on the north; by the Pacific Ocean and China on the east; by Chinesian Tartary, the Mogul's, Usbeck, and Circassian Tartars on the south; and by Poland, the Baltic Sea, Swedish Finland and Lapland, and Norwegian Lapland on the west; extending three thousand miles and upwards in length from east to west; and one thousand five hundred miles in breadth from north to south; but two thirds of it are not cultivated, and scarce inhabited; and the extreme north is not habitable, and produces scarce any vegetables; but the middle and southern provinces are, many of them, as fruitful as any in Europe or Asia, producing all manner of corn and fruits which do not require a very warm sun; silk and wine, and the tropical fruits they are pretty much strangers to. The Russians do not as yet trade much on their own bottoms; their naval stores, linnen, leather, furs, iron, and other produce of their country are exported in foreign shipping, and the same shipping carries them the produce of the southern countries of Europe. The government, however, have, of late years, built a great many ships of war, and they are equal, if not superior at sea, either to the

1701 who have a little better taste for dress than their neighbours, add slips of scarlet, or purple cloth, by way of improvement. The mens hair, which is as black as jet, hangs about their ears, in a loose, disorderly manner, like that of real savages; which, when it begins to grow too long and troublesome, they cut off by handfuls at once, without the least regard to art or contrivance. One part of the womens hair, indeed, is tied up, and embellished here and there with round pieces of copper, fastened on by fillets of scarlet cloth, in order to give them a better air and grace. On their heads, they generally wear fur-caps; the outside whereof are for the most part black; tho' all of them are white within. Such of the women as are incurious, and wear their hair loose and disheveled, are scarcely to be distinguished from the men, who are for the most part beardless, or at most have only some few hairs upon their upper lips, which proceeds, as it is highly probable, from their strange kind of diet. Some of them wear, moreover, waistcoats and breeches made of the same skins, with white boots; and the only difference in the last particular between the men and the women is this, that the latter add slips, or lifts of black upon theirs. The thread which they generally use is made of the sinews of the beasts they kill. When they are inclined to be a little more cleanly than ordinary, that is to say, when they happen to sweat, or are at their meals, they make use of very fine raspings, or birch saw-dust, with which they are all plentifully provided, instead of handkerchiefs or towels. Their tents are made of the bark of trees, which are sewn together in long slips, and hang down to the ground, in order to defend them from the inclemency of the weather; they have an opening, however, above, to prevent them from being smothered with smoke; the tops, therefore, must, by consequence, be perfectly black; tho', in all the other parts, they are of a yellow, or reddish hue; as they are supported by poles, the tops whereof appear some feet above the rest of the tent. The door-ways to these their little huts are for the most part about four feet in height,

and are covered with a large piece of the same bark, which is made to fall up and down at pleasure, and their fire-place stands in the center.

As to their diet, they feed for the generality on the carcases of oxen, sheep, horses, or any other carrion they meet with in their way; or what is given them by strangers. Sometimes they make a hearty meal (as they are not over dainty) of the guts and garbage of the creatures above mentioned, which they boil, indeed, first; and when ready, fall to, without either bread or salt.

During the short time I was amongst them, I perceived a large kettle upon the fire, plentifully stocked with these delicious viands; which their cooks took no manner of pains with; tho' no pots in the world sure ever wanted skimming more. In one part of the tent there was heaped up a profusion of raw horse-flesh, which the reader may easily imagine was a most shocking sight. After taking a full survey of the tent within, I took a draught of it with my pencil, as appears by plate VI.

Whilst I was about my little sketch, they hovered round about me, and looked upon me with more than common attention; from whence I perceived, that they were so far from being ignorant of my design, that they testified some very visible marks of their approbation. In this here represented, there lay an infant, about two months old, in a kind of cradle, or rather tray, made of a yellow coloured wood; in some measure resembling the top of a trunk. This cradle had at the head of it, a half hoop, and was hung up, hammock-like, with two ropes, upon a pole. It was covered over, in the form of a tent, with a grey cloth, but open both above and on one side, in order to take the child out or in, as occasion should require. The infant was in swaddling-cloths of the same colour, and bound about the breast, middle and feet with cords; its head, however, and part of its neck, was bare. Tho' the people themselves, it is true, make but a shocking figure, the poor, helpless babe

1701 appeared agreeable enough, and was tolerably white.

Not having time sufficient to make an end of my draught; as some of the women and children were absent and in the woods, I determined to leave it unfinished till my friend and I came back; so that we proceeded directly on our way, and was not long before our arrival at his rural habitation.

Extraordinary Turnips.

Whilst we were here, one of his servants brought us divers sorts of turnips, of various colours, and more beautiful than any I had ever seen before. Some were of a purple hue, like one of our plums; others grey and white; others again of a yellowish cast, streaked with a red, as fine as our finest lake, or vermillion, and more agreeable to the eye than the carnation itself. Some of these I drew upon papers in water-colours, and sent them away to Holland, in a box of dry sand, to a virtuoso of my acquaintance, who was a great admirer of all curiosities, in their kind. Those which I had painted on canvas, I brought with me to Archangel, where, when I produced them in company, scarce any one of the spectators could be prevailed on to believe that I had copied them from nature; till at last, for their conviction, I produced the originals themselves. This I think is a plain demonstration, that the inhabitants of that place, pay but very little regard to such beauties of nature. In number V. you have a perfect representation of them.

See Plate V.

Septem. 13.

On the thirteenth I returned to the Samoëds, and took a draught of the inside of one of their tents, which I laid open on both sides, in order to be the more exact.

Tents of the Samoëds.

I had my friend with me, and three female Samoëds standing by, one of whom held the cradle before mentioned, in the manner I desired her, in her husband's presence, as the plate expresses it in number VI.

Plate VI.

These tents, for the generality, are full of the skins of the rein-deer, which they make use of, not only to set on, but to rest upon at nights; so that this, together with the manner of their cookery, which

is seldom any thing better than carrion, creates such a stench as is intolerable to those who are not accustomed to it.

My friend, who sat on one side of me whilst I was taking a draught of the cradle, was so far influenced by the noisome smell, that he bled at the nose, and was forced to get into the air, notwithstanding we were plentifully provided both with brandy and tobacco. Nor is this incident in the least to be wondered at; since the people themselves, through their nastiness, smell very strong and offensive.

As soon as ever I could, with any convenience, I got out of my filthy situation, and prevailed on them to come to my lodgings at Archangel, and bring with them one of their handsomest women, dressed as fine as they could make her in their way, in order that I might draw her picture. They not only assured me that they would comply with my request, but fulfilled their promise. I drew her accordingly, as she appears in plate VII.

They dress (as I observed before) in the skins of rein-deers, decorated with streaks of white, grey, and black. The woman they brought with them, was dressed up like a bride, and as fine as their fashion would admit of, and, indeed, she appeared perfectly neat, as the sailors say, from head to stern. She kept her eyes steadily fixed on mine, and seemed so highly delighted with what I was about, that one of her companions grew jealous of her, and seemed affronted because I refused to draw her picture likewise. The trouble that attended the taking a draught of the first was sufficient to determine me not to oblige the second; especially as my curiosity induced me to draw the picture of the man that accompanied them, and who was the husband of the former. For which reason, I desired him, the first time he came my way, to dress himself in his winter-habit, which he accordingly did in a day or two after. His upper garment was one entire skin, whereto the cap which he then had on his head was fastened. He put it on and off, as we do our shirts; so that nothing but his face appeared; the gloves likewise which

1701

Sketch of this people.

Plate VII.

A representation of a Samoëd woman.

Sketch of her dress.

Picture of a Samoëd man.

His habit.

1701

he put on were made of the same skin as his coat; and to confess the truth, had it not been for the features of his face, which were well-favoured enough, he had looked more like a bear than any human creature. As to his boots, they were fastened below his knees. As this dress of his, however, was so hot; and as I had a large fire likewise in my stove, the poor man was under an absolute necessity of pulling it off several times during his stay with me; and of taking a turn every now and then into the air to recover his lost spirits.

PLATE VIII.

I have represented him, you will see in plate VIII, with a long gut in his hand, as an indication of the coarse diet which he and his countrymen are forced to feed on. On one side of him, you see several other guts, and the head of a horse scalped. And the motive that induced me to add those decorations, was, his having had a horse given him, that very day, as it was just expiring, which, with inexpressible joy, he caused to be conveyed into the woods, where he killed him, and flayed him; and tho' afterwards he sent the head to me, that I might copy after the original, he was loth to make me a present of it; for such a head, when dressed, is looked upon by them, as great a dainty, as a calf's head is to a poor Dutchman. Tho' this horse, at the time of his decease, was little less than thirty years of age; yet he was pretty fat, and in good case; and the man talked of his present with as much pleasure, as a Dutch peasant would of a fat ox. At the same time, I painted one of his Rein-Deer, and at his feet I delineated his bow and arrows, with the points out of the quiver, as 'tis customary with them when they go a hunting. This quiver they wear buckled upon their back, with a kind of strap or garter, which comes over their left shoulder. On one side of him, you see, I have drawn a bundle of white moss, as a representation of the favourite food of the Rein-Deer, of which I shall take more particular notice in another place. As to the Deer's head, I must confess, I have made it somewhat larger than the life; but then 'twas with this view, that my readers

might have a more adequate idea of all the parts and features that belong to it.

1701

As my lodgings were on a ground-floor, I ordered the Samoid to come to me in his sledge, drawn by one of his Rein-Deer; which accordingly he did, and I delineated him in that point of light, on purpose to give my readers an adequate idea of the manner in which those creatures are harnessed.

Sledge of the Samoid.

As to their sledges, they are for the generality about eight feet in length, and three feet four inches or thereabouts in breadth, and rise up in the front much after the form of a Dutchman's skates. He that drives sits with his legs a-crois; there is a small board, which is rounded at top; and another behind him, but somewhat higher than the other. He has a long rod in his hand, with a knob at the end of it, which serves him instead of a whip, in order to quicken the pace of his Rein-Deer, when his affairs require more expedition than ordinary. There are two round pieces which turn like a swivel, at the end of the sledge; and the harness is passed over them; from thence it runs between the creature's legs, and from thence to his neck, where 'tis made fast to a collar. The driver holds the reins, which are tied to a strap that goes about the head of the Deer, in his right hand. However, as I was somewhat more curious than ordinary, in regard to the nature of these harnesses, and very desirous to make some farther remarks on the motion of these creatures, I prevailed on this Samoid to get ready two sledges with a pair of Rein-Deer to each of them; which he did, and we crossed the river with them several times upon the ice. Nay, my curiosity carried me still farther, and I every now and then slept out of the sledge, in order to make my proper observations, and to be as accurate and exact in my draught of that machine as possibly I could. Upon a due examination, I could very plainly discern, that the sledge, which the Samoid had drove into my room, was not fitted with judgment. The reader in Number IX. will see a complete representation of it.

PLATE IX.

I ob-

1701

Horses fly
from the
Rein-Deer.

I observed, whilst we were upon the river, that every horse startled, and flew with fear, both from the Rein-Deer and his driver, and from every other Rein-Deer that approached them, whether harnessed in sledges or not. Nay, the horses in the city will avoid them, if possible; which is a plain indication, that those creatures, as well as those Samoëds, are the objects of their terror.

The
Rein-Deer.

These Rein-Deer run with an incredible velocity; they regard not in the least whether their path be beaten or not; they run, as they are directed by their driver, with an equal pace, let the road be ever so bad, with their noses in the air, and their horns upon their back. They never sweat but when they are tired; and then they loll out their tongues on one side of their mouths; and when excessively hot, they pant as dogs do.

The man-
ner of tak-
ing them.

The method observed by those that catch them is this. They have three different kinds of darts. The first, like common arrows, have one point only; the second two; and the third is somewhat like a wedge, and very sharp before; but the reader will have a more perfect idea of them by consulting the representation of the quiver in the plate.

Darts of the
Samoëds.

These darts are called Streli by the Samoëds, but by the Russians Sterla. Their bow is distinguished by the name of Loack. When they go out a squirrel-hunting, they make use of another sort of dart; which is blunt at the end, in the manner of a pear, and is made either of wood, bone, or horn; which kills them, however, as surely as if they were sharp; but then they no ways damage their skins or furs, which, were they pierced thro', would not be so saleable, or fetch so good a price.

The hunt-
ing the
Rein-Deer.

When they hunt the Rein-Deer in the winter season, the method observed is this. They furnish themselves, in the first place, with a sort of skates, made of wood, near eight feet in length, but not above half a foot in breadth, which they fasten to their feet with a sort of a strap both before and behind. When they are thus commodiously provided, they will skim over the ice and snow with a velocity almost incredible. These wooden

The skates

skates are lined at the bottom with Rein-Deer skins, in order to prevent them from casually falling backwards, and to enable them to stop with the greater ease, whenever they are inclined to halt, or are fatigued, as they are ascending any hill. These sportsmen carry a long staff in their hands, not unlike our paring-shovels, with which they throw the snow at the Deer, in order to make them fly the faster towards the place where they have planted proper toils to secure them; but this is practised only, when they are at too great a distance for their darts to do any material execution. At the head of these staves there is a small ring, about four or five inches in circumference, with cords which cross each other, like chequer-work, by the assistance whereof, they stop themselves at pleasure; the point whereof, which runs not only through this ring, but considerably beyond it, penetrating the snow, and stopping at the ring. When they have hunted their prey into their toils, which are spread in the manner of nets for their reception, they pursue them as fast as possible; and such as cannot happily release themselves are instantly dispatched. When they have thus secured them, they flea them, and either carry their skins to market, or reserve them for their own private use, as has been before hinted, and cut the flesh in proper pieces for the provision of their families. Such likewise as they preserve, and bring up tame, are equally advantageous to them; for they dispose of one part of them at the best price they can procure, and reserve the rest for drawing their respective sledges in the winter season. If a wild male happens to couple with a tame female, the foal is immediately killed; for, in the compass of three or four days time at farthest, it would most assuredly take its flight to the deserts. Such, however, as are tame, feed up and down the woods, amongst the huts; will come, as it were, at call, and are caught with ease. These tame Deer seek round about for their subsistence; and a kind of white moss, which they find in plenty in the Moors, is their favourite food. Nature directs them to find this moss, let it lie buried ever so deep in the snow, which they gra-

1701

The prin-
cipal food
of the
Rein-Deer.

1701

A description
of the
Rein-Deer.

Their water
chase after
Seals.

gradually remove with their feet till they accomplish their ends. This (as we observed before) is their principal food, but when they cannot find it, which is sometimes the case, rather than starve, they will take up with grass and hay. As to their form, they very nearly resemble our stags, but they are infinitely stronger, and have much shorter legs, as the reader may clearly perceive by the print. Tho' these creatures for the generality are of a whitish colour, yet there are some few of them grey; and their hoofs are of black horn. They change their antlers annually in the spring; at which time they are covered with a sort of black, soft skin, which goes off, however, at the approach of winter. Very few of them live longer than eight or nine years.

Besides this land-chase of their Rein-Deer; they have another by water after the Seals; of which there are whole shoals in the (c) White Sea, during the two months of March and April, where 'tis imagined, they come from (d) Nova Zembla, in order to propagate their species. They copulate on the ice, where the Samoëds lie in wait for them, disguised in such an artful manner, as renders them unsuspected, and enables them, with greater ease than otherwise they could do, to surprize them. The method they observe is this. They get upon the ice, which sometimes extends itself near half a league into the sea. They carry a staff in their hands, with a harpoon fixed at the end of it, to which is fastened a line of about twelve fathom in length. On first sight of their prey, they crawl along on their bellies, and get as near them as possible, without being discerned, whilst they are busy in the act of copulation, but lie still, and seemingly lifeless, in case their approach disturbs them. By slow degrees, however, they glide forwards, till they get within their reach, at which time they dart their harpoons at them with all their strength, and very seldom fail of wounding them. The creature, sensible of the pain, immediately takes to the water. The Samoëd holds fast, and draws the line, which is either tied round his middle, or made fast to his belt, and plays with the seal 'till he is

quite spent, and then is secured in course. Sometimes it happens, that the poor creature, unable to bear his agonizing pains, which are aggravated by the saltiness of the water, jumps out again upon the ice, where he is killed directly. When thus taken, his flesh serves the sportsman for provision, his skin contributes towards his cloathing, and the oil that proceeds from him is disposed of at public sale. This water-chase, however, frequently proves fatal to the hunter; for it sometimes falls out, that the seal, which is very strong, after he feels himself deeply wounded, hurries into the water with the utmost precipitation, and before the Samoëd can get rid of the line, so fastened as before-mentioned, round his middle or to his belt, is all on a sudden dragged down at once into the water, and inevitably lost.

They practise much the same stratagem, when they go armed in pursuit of the Rein-Deer; for they disguise themselves in the skin of one of those animals, and creep gently along in the midst of such as are tame, till they are within the reach of their dart. They take care to get on the leeward side of them; for, as the sense of smelling in these creatures is peculiarly quick, they would otherwise be liable to meet with a disappointment. But by these stratagems, for the most part they gain their ends, which sometimes turn out to a very good account.

This method of their hunting was communicated to me, by the Samoëd's wife, who came to my apartment to have her picture drawn. There was not one of their women, that, in my opinion, had such good features, or was so affable in her conversation. I made it my business, therefore, to get into her good graces, in order to procure all the information I possibly could. I found, however, that nothing was so prevailing, or proved so infallible a charm as my brandy bottle, with which she was perfectly delighted, and with which I was ready to oblige her. In this country, the women drink as hard as the men, and indulge themselves with liquor, till they can scarce stand on their legs. And this was the true state of the case

E

with

1701

This water
chase proves
often fatal.

1701 with my fair favourite; and her husband discerning it, fell a laughing till his sides ached. After she had rolled a little upon the floor, she got upon her legs again, and fell into a fit of tears, upon an imaginary notion, that she was childless, tho' she had no less than four at the same time living. This part of the story was communicated to me by my landlady. Such odd kind of fancies will sometimes possess the brains of those who are far gone in liquor. As I was discouraging with her one day on the subject of children, she acquainted me with the manner of their disposing of them after their decease, in which there is something peculiarly remarkable, and not unworthy I think of the attention of the reader. When a child at the breast, whom they always suckle for a year at least, happens to die, before it has tasted of any kind of meat, they wrap the babe up in a cloth, carry it to the wood, and there hang it on a tree.

The manner
and custom
of the Samoëds.

As their customs and manners are widely different from those of all other nations, I made it my study to get all the information relating thereto that possibly I could. As soon as a child comes into the world, it is named either according to the creature that first enters their tent, be it man or beast; or else after the first they meet with, when they go abroad; nay, sometimes they name it after the first object they set their eyes on, be it animate or inanimate, beast, bird, river, or tree. Children that dye after they have done sucking, be they older or younger, are deposited in the earth between two boards.

Their mar-
riages.

When they are inclined to marry, they look out for one, as others do, who strikes their eye and fancy most, and enter into an agreement with her relations for the purchase, in the same manner as we do for an ox or a horse. Sometimes they give two, three, or four rein-deers for a spouse elect, each of which for the generality is worth about fifteen or twenty florins; sometimes they deposit a sum of money of equal value, according as the parties can agree. They are confined to no number of wives; but may have as many

as they can well maintain; some amongst them, however, that are more continent than their neighbours, sit down well satisfied, as we do, with one only. If a wife happens to give disgust, the husband has nothing more to do, but to return her to her relations, who are obliged to receive her; but then the purchase-money, or the effects given are all sunk. There are other Samoëds, as I have been informed, who are inhabitants of the sea-coasts, and some who reside in Siberia, who purchase their wives in the same manner as these do, but then, in case of distaste, they sell them for the best price they can procure.

When a father or mother dies, their bones are preserved and never interred: But in case they are very far advanced in years, and perfectly helpless, they are thrown into the next river, as I have been credibly informed by those who have been eye-witnesses of the inhuman action, tho' they do not look on it as such. In a word, after a man is once dead, they dress him in the same manner as he used to be clothed when living, and after having dug a pit, deep enough for the reception of him, they cover him over with the mould; with the additional ceremony of hanging up his bow, and quiver, ax, hatchet, and all his other accoutrements upon some adjacent tree. The women are interred in the same manner.

Having thus fully gratified my curiosity, in regard to their manners and customs, I was very desirous of being informed of the religion they professed, and the most essential articles of their belief. In order to answer this end, I paid a visit with my friends to a particular Samoëd, whom I entertained with a profusion of brandy; for, as I observed before, that was their favourite liquor; and without such friendly treatment, they receive you but coldly, and can seldom be prevailed on to communicate their thoughts with any manner of freedom. At that very juncture, I recollected, that it is said in the Sacred Scriptures, "the Gentiles, without the knowledge of the law, did nevertheless, by the light of nature, fulfil the law"; from whence I immediately inferred, that in all probability these poor illi-

66
These people
to me as imperi-
ous. Her
my body, I
was almost
impossible
I was then
his fellow-
there was a
made in his
they were
very bold,
whenever
a man but
a law, the
of all the
and of God's
him, but that
was to be
others were
other than
here, he
here, he
of uninter-
men of man-
their own,
wishes to
we were, and
the depth of
they were
him, they
their home
him. Before
kind of
with a
thence of a
of the length
determined
and to perma-
has made it
room to rep-
ment. Their
fence are
a nation, to
over the
other wild
They have
when they
Homer, or
and, or a
a point
learning, but
he is a
occurrence
whether they

illiterate people might form some idea, tho' but an imperfect one, of the Supreme Being. Having, therefore, first drank pretty freely, I began to enter into a serious discourse with this Samoëd on that important topic. The result of his answers was this; that both he and most of his fellow-natives were fully persuaded there was a Heaven, and a God, that made it his favourite habitation; that such Deity was by them called Heyhu; that they firmly believed, that there was no being whatever more powerful; and that all things in nature had their entire dependence upon him; that Adam, the common parent of all the human species, was either the work of God's hands, or proceeded from him, but that none of his posterity either went to Heaven or Hell; that all whose actions were just and praise-worthy, would, after death, be planted in some place above Hell, and there be forever in a state of uninterrupted bliss, and entirely free from all manner of pain. Notwithstanding these notions, they pay the tribute of worship to their particular idols; the sun, the moon, and all the other planets are the objects of their adoration; but sometimes, according as their fancy or interest leads them, they are so weak as to pay divine homage to some favourite birds or beasts. Before their idols, there is a kind of iron plate planted, to which they affix a large parcel of sticks, about the thickness of a common handle for a knife, of the length of two or three inches, and sharp-pointed at one end, by which they intend to personate a man; and by little holes made in it, at a small distance, they mean to represent his eyes, nose, and mouth. These little parcels of sticks so formed are covered over with the skin of a rein-deer; to which they generally annex the tooth of a bear, a wolf, or some other wild creature.

They have one amongst their clan, whom they distinguish by the name of Siaman, or Koedifnick, that is to say, a priest, or a magician; and they pay a peculiar deference to him, as vainly imagining, that by his superior wisdom, he is capable of foretelling them any future occurrences of importance, either good or ill; whether they shall prove successful

in their undertakings or employments; whether persons that are sick, or within the verge of the grave, shall recover or die. In short, they entertain abundance of other idle notions of the like nature. When they apply to him for his advice on any affair of consequence, they send a messenger for him, and at his first entrance, they throw a rope about his neck, and draw it so tight that he falls down, as one dead before them: after lying speechless for some small compass of time, he begins to stir, and by slow degrees comes to himself again. Upon his offering to foretell any future event, the very blood starts out of his cheeks, and when he has ended his predictions, that bleeding ceases: if he proceeds to make farther discoveries, his cheeks bleed afresh; as I have been very credibly informed by those who have been present at these solemnities. These priests or magicians wear iron plates and rings under their vestments, which make a hideous noise at their first approach; such, however, as reside in these parts have none of them; they wear only a net made of cat-gut, or some such mark of distinction, to which they fasten the teeth of a great variety of creatures. In case one of these Siamans or Koedifnicks, happens to dye, they erect a monument of timber work, closed all round, to prevent the wild beasts from devouring his remains. When the burial-place is thus safely fenced, they lay him, stretched out at length, on the top of it, dressed in his best habiliments, and plant his bow, quiver, and hatchet, in some commodious and adjacent place. To this monument they fasten a rein-deer or two, in case the deceased was ever in his life time possessed of any of those animals, and there barbarously leave them to starve, if by their struggles, they have not strength sufficient to break their cords, and make their escape. All this particular detail of their religious ceremonies, I had from persons of indisputable veracity, who reside in those parts; and all this was furthermore confirmed by one Michael Ollalioff, a Russian merchant, whom I invited to my quarters for that very purpose, as I was well assured he had several times crossed Siberia both winter and summer, in his way to China, and that he had travelled over all those parts

for

1701

~~~~~

The Jalov  
T. A. and La-  
moetkie.Peter fa,  
Koe na-  
Koe.The Kara-  
Kie and Bo-  
Kie.Their reli-  
gion is  
very odd.Their re-  
ligion is  
very odd  
and very  
strange.

for fourteen or fifteen years successively. He was a gentleman of about threescore years of age, and a very sober, sedate person; and he assured me, that these Samoëds are dispersed all along on all sides to the great rivers of Siberia; that is to say, the (c) Oby, the (f) Jenescia, the (g) Lena, and the (h) Amur, all which discharge their waters into the great ocean. The last of these four is a boundary, which divides the dominions of Muscovy from those of China, and for that reason, these people never presume to cross it. Between the two last-mentioned rivers lie the Jakotes, who are natives of (i) Tartary, and the Lamoetkie; who, like the Samoëds, make the rein-deer one principal part of their daily provisions. These people are very intrepid and expert in war; and in number, they amount to little less than thirty thousand. There is another nation, called Jaecogerie, or Joegra, who are planted towards the sea coast. These in all respects whatever, act like the Samoëds; their dress is exactly the same, and they reside in the deserts. These people devour (as dogs do) the entrails of any creatures perfectly raw; and each of them speak a different language. To these may be added two more; namely those who are called Korakie, from the country in which they reside; and who live after the very same manner as the Samoëds; and those again who are called Soegtie. These last wilfully cut a large slit in their cheeks, and insert in the orifice whilst fresh, the bones of a Narwhale to render the scar still more conspicuous, which they are proud of, and look upon as an additional beauty. The following odd custom is daily practised among them, namely, the men wash themselves with the urine of the women, and the women with that of the men. Tho' they are looked upon as vile wretches, and adepts in the Black Art, yet they boast of such wicked practices, and carry about with them the bones of their predecessors for such hellish purposes. Their religion, however, is somewhat still more remarkable; for they pay their tribute of divine adoration to the Devil; and their common complaisance to strangers is very extraordinary;

for, in order to testify their hospitality, they prostitute not only their daughters, but their wives themselves, when they are thought more agreeable companions; and they think a stranger entitled, as it were, to any favour that they are capable of conferring on him. What a surprising difference is there between the courtesy of these nations, and that of the Europeans? The Russian, from whom I received my intelligence of all these extraordinary circumstances, told me moreover, that after about a week's journey farther from these people, he met with a sixth kind of them towards the sea-coast, who were called Lafatie Saegtia, or Couchant Soegtie, from the manner of their lying, or sitting in their tents during the winter-season, which are composed, as he assured me, of the Narwhale, and are covered all over with snow, for no less than five months successively out of the twelve. These furnish themselves with a sufficient quantity of the Whale, which, when properly dried, is their principal provision; for they never stir abroad till the approach of spring.

It seems, the Samoëds of these parts, some years ago, formed a project for their better subsistence, which was this; namely, they would artfully tho' secretly wound the Muscovite cattle between their small ribs, with a particular instrument which they made use of for that purpose, or run a very fine iron into their ears, with the anguish whereof the poor creatures would lie languishing for a short time, but inevitably die at last, and then they were sure to find them and convey them to their tents. These mal-practices, however, were in process of time discovered, and great numbers of them were taken into custody, and soon after, without any ceremony, hung up, some by the heels, and some about the middle, as a public example to deter others from such iniquitous practices. Tho' this discovery, and this instantaneous punishment struck them, no doubt, with a panick for some time, yet they ventured, it seems, but the very last winter, to enter upon the same dangerous scheme; and some of them were caught, and confined for it; but

Lafatie Sa-  
egtia, or  
Couchant  
Soegtie.

1701  
The Jalov  
T. A. and La-  
moetkie.  
Peter fa,  
Koe na-  
Koe.  
The Kara-  
Kie and Bo-  
Kie.  
Their reli-  
gion is  
very odd.  
Their re-  
ligion is  
very odd  
and very  
strange.  
Lafatie Sa-  
egtia, or  
Couchant  
Soegtie.  
1701  
The Jalov  
T. A. and La-  
moetkie.  
Peter fa,  
Koe na-  
Koe.  
The Kara-  
Kie and Bo-  
Kie.  
Their reli-  
gion is  
very odd.  
Their re-  
ligion is  
very odd  
and very  
strange.  
Lafatie Sa-  
egtia, or  
Couchant  
Soegtie.  
1701  
The Jalov  
T. A. and La-  
moetkie.  
Peter fa,  
Koe na-  
Koe.  
The Kara-  
Kie and Bo-  
Kie.  
Their reli-  
gion is  
very odd.  
Their re-  
ligion is  
very odd  
and very  
strange.  
Lafatie Sa-  
egtia, or  
Couchant  
Soegtie.



1701 but by some means or other, they all, fortunately for them, made an absolute escape, leaving only one little helpless infant behind them, who was taken particular care of by the governor of the province, and in a few days after, admitted, by baptism, into the pale of the Russian church.

A new island.

During my residence in this place, I was likewise informed, that they had discovered, about seven years since, an island to the left of China, which had been brought under subjection to the Czar, notwithstanding it was a whole year's journey from thence to Moscow. This island, they told me, abounded in fables and furs; and might possibly afford a profusion of other commodities of equal value and importance, but what in particular they could not tell, for the place was known but to a few strangers, and the natives lived much after the same savage manner as the nations we have just been talking of.

A violent storm, 18 Sept. 1701.

On the eighteenth day of September there arose such a hurricane as blew off the roofs of a great number of houses: at that very juncture, I was at dinner with the Sieur Houtman, and had no apprehension in the least of the danger to which we were exposed; but when I was taking my leave, and had got a step or two out of the doors, several large pieces of timber fell down to the ground within a few yards of me; which startled me, and

made me hurry into the house again for safety. As none of the family were in the least apprized of this sudden storm, they wondered at my return; but when I acquainted them with the danger I was in, and my happy escape, one of the servants went up directly into one of the garrets, and found the roof of it totally demolished. Upon the report he made, we all returned our humble thanks to Almighty God for our preservation.

1701

On the twenty-fifth of the same month, five hundred dragoons arrived from Moscow in four barks; and as this happened on a Sunday, there was a vast concourse of people flocked down to the water-side; who being, most of them at least, dressed in their best cloaths, made an appearance agreeable enough.

Arrival of 500 Russian dragoons.

Our last ships weighed anchor, on the fourteenth of October, and set sail for Holland. All of them got safe out to sea, except the White Eagle, which unhappily ran ashore by the meadows. One half of her loading at least was taken out, before the crew could get her afloat again; but even that would never have saved her, if the weather had not proved so remarkably fair in her favour. Upon the nineteenth, however, all damages being repaired, she got out likewise safe to sea, and made the best of her way to the same port.

Departure of the ships for Holland.

*Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.*

(a) Samoida, the most northerly province of Russia in Europe, situate on the Frozen Ocean and the river Oby.

(b) Siberia, or Asiatic Russia, formerly denominated Great Tartary, is situate between sixty and one hundred and thirty degrees of east longitude, and between forty-seven and seventy-two degrees of north latitude; being bounded by the Frozen Ocean on the north; by the Pacific Ocean, China, and Chinese Tartary, on the east; by the Mogul's and Usbec Tartars on the south; and by the rivers Oby and Irtysh, which separate Asiatic from European Russia on the west; being upwards of two thousand miles in length from east to west, and one thousand five hundred miles in breadth from north to south; the north of it

a cold, barren, uninhabited country, covered with snow for eight or nine months in the year; the southern provinces, a more fruitful soil, but most of the natives lead a vagrant life, like the ancient Scythians and Tartars, depending chiefly on what they take by hunting and fishing, or the produce of their flocks and herds; there are very few towns, and very little of the land cultivated, except near Tobolski or Tobolska, the capital, to which part of it the Swedish prisoners were banished, and to which the Russians send most of their prisoners, and some large colonies; but as hands are still wanted to manure the ground, great part of Siberia remains a desert. They have scarce any trade or manufactures; the principal traffic of the Mulcovites of Siberia is by sledges over the lakes and

F

frozen



1701 frozen country to China in the winter; they have been endeavouring to find a way into the sea of Japan and China by their rivers, which fall into the Frozen Ocean, but have not succeeded hitherto, as I can learn; they relate, however, that they have met with some rich mines of silver and copper in the mountains of Siberia, which they have begun to work. I include the Kalmuc Tartars within the limits of Siberia, as they acknowledge themselves subject to the Empire of Russia.

(c) White Sea. See page 7. n. b.

(d) Nova Zembla, or Newland, which the Dutch call the island of Weygats, is situate in the North, or Frozen Ocean, between fifty and eighty degrees of east longitude, and between seventy degrees of north latitude, and the north pole separated from the province of Samoieda in Russia by a narrow strait, called the Straits of Weygats. Whether it be an island, or part of some great continent is uncertain; no ships having ever passed to the northward of it, tho' many attempts have been made to find out a north-east passage to China that way. The Dutch, indeed, passed the Straits of Weygats, south of Nova Zembla, and wintered on the east side of it in the year 1596, but did not find it practicable to sail farther, for the fields of ice they met with. There are no constant inhabitants here, but the Samoeds and Ostiaks climb over the mountains of ice in the Straits, when they are frozen over, and hunt Elks and Rein-Deer here at the proper season.

(e) Oby, a great river of Russia, which rises in the Lake Kisan in Kalmuc Tartary in Asia, and running north joins the river Irtyz; and continuing its course north forms the boundary between Europe and Asia till it falls into the Frozen Ocean in seventy degrees of north latitude, having run a course of two thousand miles and upwards.

(f) Jenescia, or Jenisa, a great river of Russia, that runs from south to north, through the province of Siberia, parallel to the Oby, and falls into the Frozen Ocean east of that river in seventy-two degrees of east longitude, and seventy degrees of north latitude.

(g) Lena, a great river, which rises in Siberia, in Asiatic Russia, and running north from the latitude of 55 to 72, falls into the Frozen Ocean, by which river the Russians

seem to have some expectations of finding a way to Japan and China.

(h) Amur, or Amour, a large river, the source whereof is in Siberia, in about one hundred and twenty degrees of east longitude, and fifty-four degrees of north latitude, runs east through Chinesian Tartary, and falls into the Bay of Corea, in the Pacific Ocean in about one hundred and fifty degrees of east longitude.

(i) Tartary, which is the same country as the antient Scythia, comprehended all the north of Europe and Asia, of which the Russians possess much the greatest part at present, and have given it the name of Siberia, which extends from the rivers Oby and Irtyz, that divide Asia from Europe, to the Pacific Ocean. Chinesian Tartary, which lies north of China, and is bounded by Siberia on the north and west, is now the largest country that goes by the name of Tartary, possessed by one Sovereign, and for that reason is sometimes called Great Tartary. The Tartars, who lie south of Siberia and Muscovy, are the Tartars of Astracan, Circassia and Dagistan, situate north-west of the Caspian Sea. The Kalmucs, who lie between Siberia and the Caspian Sea: the Usbec Tartars and Moguls, who lie north of Persia and India, and those of Tibet, which lie north-west of China: of these the Tartars of Astracan are subject to Muscovy; those of Circassia and Dagistan sometimes put themselves under the protection of the Russians, and sometimes acknowledge the Turks and Persians to be their Sovereigns. The Kalmuc Tartars at present acknowledge themselves subjects of Russia. The Usbec Tartars were lately independent, but are now tributary to Kouli Kan, Sovereign of Persia, who lately took possession of their capital city Bochara. The Moguls seem to be still independent, as well as those of Tibet, which occasions this country to be called Independent Tartary sometimes; and the Tartars of Tibet are so powerful, that they are frequently at war with the Chineses. The Northern Tartary is a cold, barren country, almost always covered with snow, wherein are very few houses or inhabitants. The Southern Tartars, for the most part, enjoy a temperate climate, and a fruitful soil; but as few of them have fixed habitations, or apply themselves to cultivate the soil, but are continually moving from place to place, to find pasture for their numerous flocks and herds, that fine country produces little.

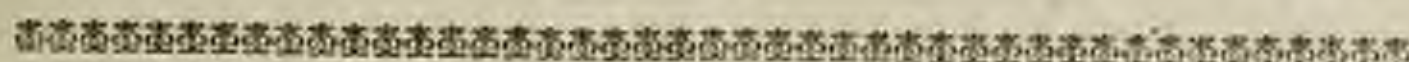
There



1701 There are some other countries in Europe which still bear the name of Tartary, but these are separated from the rest by the Palus

Mæotis and the Black Sea, viz. Little Tartary, Crim Tartary, and Budziac Tartary, which are all subject to the Turk.

1701



C H A P. III.

*A Description of Archangel. Provisions in Plenty. Revenue of the Customs, &c.*

The City's dock-yard.

Place X.

October 19.

Archangel, its situation.

In Royal Palace.

**H**IS Czarian Majesty has a spacious and pleasant dock-yard, set a-part for the building of ships, about a mile and an half westward of Archangel. All shipping, both coming and going, pass by it. When I drew the draught of the prospect in Number X. there were several vessels riding at anchor, in expectation of some others, which were to constitute a fleet homeward bound.

This dock-yard is distinguished on the plate by the letter A. At the point of land in the river, if you will consult the plate, you will find a vessel with her deck unfinished.

The village, at a small distance, which is marked with the letter B, is commonly called Strambol.

The city of (a) Archangel is situate in the north-western parts of Muscovy, and lies to the north-eastward of the river (b) Dwina, which discharges its waters into the sea, about six leagues lower. It lies along the banks of the river; and, according to the best of my remembrance, is more than two miles in length, and about three quarters of a mile only in breadth. Its principal edifice is the Royal Palace, which is composed of free-stone, and is divided into three distinct parts. The first is inhabited chiefly by the foreign merchants, who have several commodious warehouses there for the reception of their various effects. These lie to the left as you come up the river. Here likewise the merchants who come hither annually from (c) Moscow, have their several apartments, where they reside, for the generality, till the last ships return home. Strangers likewise are accommodated here in much the same

manner. These, however, soon after the ships are departed, which for the most part is in the month of October, they remove from thence to other apartments till they return to Moscow in November and December following, when they can travel in sledges upon the snow and ice, at which times the rivers may be crossed without the least danger.

On your entrance into the palace, you go under a great gate, and from thence into a quadrangular court, where the warehouses lie both on the right and the left. There is a long gallery above, to which there are two separate stair-cases; both leading to the merchants apartments as before-mentioned.

The second division of this palace has a gate, as well as the first, where there is another range of buildings; at the end whereof stands the town-house, which has several commodious apartments belonging to it. When you have gone up a short flight of steps, you come directly into a long gallery, from whence you go into their courts of judicature, above which there is a spacious door that leads into the street. In these courts, all processes are begun and ended, except in cases where sentences of death are past on criminals, which are exhibited in that place in particular where the sentence is past, be it where it will. Such commodities as are the peculiar property of the Czar, are deposited in this palace, in different magazines, some of wood, and others of stone, erected for that particular purpose; the merchants, however, have leave sometimes to secure their goods there likewise. When you have passed the third gate, there is another range of buildings,

By courts of judicature.



1701 buildings, for such commodities as belong to the Russians, and where likewise many of the merchants of that country have their residence; the natives, however, are not, in all respects, so well accommodated as the foreign merchants. The square before this palace is spacious enough, and extends quite down to the river. When any ships arrive here in the summer season, they raise two great timber bridges, which project a considerable way into the river for the better convenience of lading and unlading. The bridges likewise which they raise for the transportation of corn are considerably large.

The citadel, in which the governor himself resides, abounds with shops, where the Russians, who come there at such times as their fairs are kept, expose their various merchandizes to public sale. There is a wooden wall which extends to the very river, and surrounds it.

All the houses in this city are built with wood; or more properly speaking are composed of large pieces of timber, artfully joined together; and make an odd figure enough on the outside. However, you may meet with very commodious apartments in some of the principal houses, and especially in those which are inhabited by foreign merchants. Within, the walls are very smooth and even, and are wainscotted with proper boards, large, unpolished; the pieces of timber being intended chiefly for the safety and support of the house, without any other view. For the generality, there is a stove to each room; but the fires in them are always on the out-side; the greatest part of them are very large, and ornamental too, when artfully contrived. The Christian merchants, or, as they are otherwise called, The strangers from beyond sea, who reside amongst them, are as neat as they are in Holland, and their apartments are as richly furnished.

The streets are covered with broken pieces of timber, and by crossing them, without a great deal of care and precaution, a man is liable to fall, and do himself a mischief. They are so full, moreover, of rubbish, that they resemble, in many places, the ruins of fire; the snow,

however, which falls thick in winter, covers such defects, and makes all appear smooth and even.

In this city there are two churches; one set apart for the service of the Calvinists, and the other for the Lutherans; but in both, Divine service is performed twice every Sunday. They are situate near the river-side, and stand but at a small distance one from the other. Each minister resides on one side of his church; and the church-yard, where they inter their dead with the same solemnities as the Europeans do, lies between both. In winter, however, as 'tis so excessively cold, they have no public worship, 'tis true, at church; but then they meet at the minister's habitation, which is properly heated for their reception.

I took the draught of this city upon the river, as I was on board one of our ships then riding at anchor, the representation whereof you'll find in plate XI. where each particular of any importance is distinguished by a numerical figure, as for instance, (1) Oespinge Bogeroedifza, that is to say, the church of the repose of the blessed Virgin Mary. (2) The Lutheran Church. (3) The church belonging to the Calvinists. (4) The German Palace. (5) The court of judicature, and the Grand Duke's Arsenal, or military storehouse. (6) The Russian Palace. (7) The Goose-house, or the house belonging to the head commissioner of the customs, which stands upon the river. (8) The great church. (9) The citadel. The governor of this city had formerly, indeed, a despotic power of proceeding; the form of its government, however, was changed but last year, at which time four burgo-masters were appointed; the first resides in this city; the second at Kolmegra, and the two others in the parts adjacent. From whence the reader may perceive, that the authority of the governor extends no farther than over the militia; since the Burgo-masters preside over the police, and all civil affairs.

There comes a grand commissioner, or principal inspector of the customs, once a year, that is to say, when the merchants generally arrive there, in order, not only

1701

In churches

A prospect of the city, Plate XI.



1701 to pry into and take care of such duties as belong to his Czarian Majesty, but to purchase such merchandizes as the court may have occasion for. This grand officer, or head-master, has four assistants, or deputies, who act in his absence with equal power, and are distinguished by the title of Gostieni-Sotni, or Sub-Delegates; from amongst whom he himself is elected. There are other officers besides these, who are selected from amongst the people, and employed in the towns and villages; but their number is not absolutely settled. These subaltern officers are obliged to serve for a whole year, without the least fee or reward; and to obey any orders that they receive from the head-master, or any other of their superiors, in regard to such matters as relate to the duties and revenues of the Grand Duke. They are dispersed every where as occasion requires, and have soldiers allowed them in case of any opposition, in order to prevent all clandestine practices, and to secure smugglers, and all their contraband goods. When the year is expired, they are discharged, and others substituted in their stead.

Plenty of provisions.

This city is plentifully furnished with all the necessaries and conveniences of life. — They have a profusion of fowl, and at a very moderate price: you may purchase a partridge for two-pence. There are two species of these birds. One alight upon trees, and have somewhat of the appearance of our owls; but they are delicious eating; the others, in winter, are perfectly white, which is something extraordinary; and, in the language of the country, are called Koeroptie. — They have here likewise two different kinds of Tetters, birds of the bigness of our turkeys, and adorned with very fine feathers: the cocks are, for the generality, black, with a mixture of a very deep blue; the hens are of a much smaller size, and their feathers are speckled with grey. Hares likewise are here so plenty, that they are sold for no more than a groat a-piece. These are white in the winter, and their rabbits are black. You may purchase woodcocks too for about two-pence, or three-pence a-piece at

most: they have vast numbers likewise of ducks, and a particular sort of them called Gagares, which not only fly with prodigious velocity, but mount surprizingly high. Whilst they are on the wing, they make a noise not unlike the human voice. These swim as fast as they fly, but as their feet come out from behind, they have not the faculty or power of running.

Their rivers abound with fish. A man may purchase here as many perch as would serve twenty reasonable stomachs for twenty-pence. The best sort are those called the Karoetsie. They are the smallest, indeed; but then they have a much finer flavour, than any we have in our country; for which reason, I preserved a small quantity of them in spirits. As to their shape, they very much resemble our roach; they are of a dark brown colour; but their scales are bright and shining. They have pike too in plenty, and a kind of small eels, which are very delicious. In short, they have vast numbers of smelts, gudgeons, roach, whittings, flounders, and a brown fish, by them called Garius, which is extremely fine and luscious: they are much about the bigness of a common cod. All this variety of fish are caught within twelve miles distance of the city, in a certain gulph or bay, formed by the river, and where the water is perfectly calm, and smooth. It were altogether needless to say any thing of their salmon; since 'tis universally known, that they are sent from hence to all parts, both salted and smoked. Of these, there is likewise a white sort, which are called Meelma by the Muscovites, and are caught upon the coast of (d) Lapland. These are all dried before they are sent abroad. I saw one of them which very much resembled a ray, and was about two foot broad. These they call Paf-ciskaet. Two mice were found in the belly of him, and its oil is an excellent ingredient in some particular medicines.

Their markets likewise are full of all sorts of meat. The best beef in the world may be purchased there for a penny a pound. A lamb, of about six weeks old, will

1701

Its rivers abound with fish.

Its market abounds with meat.



1701

In plenty  
of poultry.

In beer.

Their wine  
and spiritous  
liquors.Revenue of  
the customs

will cost you no more than fifteen-pence; and a calf of the same age may be purchased, according to the season, for half a crown or three shillings at most.

All the inhabitants in general breed turkeys. One may buy four or five common fowls, or a good goose for about eight-pence.

Their beer is extraordinary good; they are not permitted, however, either to brew or vend it without a licence from the Grand Duke, which is, without any great difficulty, to be procured for a reasonable consideration; but an inhabitant may brew what quantity he thinks proper for the use of his family, provided he pays only after the rate of four shillings and two-pence for a certain number of quarters of malt that he proposes to make use of for that purpose. There are some particular tenants who are entirely exempted from that duty.

As to their wine and spiritous liquors, they are brought hither by sea from France; the last, however, is held up at an exorbitant price, by reason of the heavy duty that is laid upon it. Notwithstanding this high excise, there is a kind of malt spirit, which is wholesome enough, whereof strangers drink in plenty, and very seldom taste of any other, which is sold at as reasonable a rate as can well be desired.

His Czarian Majesty has a very considerable annual revenue levied upon this city. It was formerly reported, that the duties arising therefrom arose to no less than 300,000 rubles; in my time, however, I found, by the best calculation that could be made, that they amounted to very little more than 180, or 190,000 of the same rubles, each ruble being reckoned after the rate of five florins of Dutch money.

There used to arrive annually, about thirty, or five and thirty ships in this harbour; but in the year 1700, there came fifty at least, besides thirty three from England; to which, in case we add such ships as arrived from Hamburg, Denmark, and Bremen, the total will amount to one hundred and three sail; this, however, was occasioned by the war with

Sweden, by means whereof a stop was put to the trade which was carried on by the Muscovites with (e) Riga, (f) Nerva, and (g) Revel; nay, with (h) Konigsburg, and (i) Dantzic; inasmuch that at this time the whole trade and commerce of Russia is centred in Archangel. According to the most exact calculations, it is computed, that the Czar has received this year (1701) upon the merchandizes from the arrival of the first vessel in this harbour to the last, no less than 130,000 rubles, which are equal to 160,000 rixdollars. The agreement was, that one moiety of these duties should be paid in rubles, and the other in golden ducats; for was payment to be offered all in ducats, they would not be taken, but rixdollars are never refused. This, however, is to be understood in regard to foreign commodities only, the principal whereof consist in gold and silver stuffs, silks, cloths, serges, gold and silver laces, and gold wire; besides indigo, and other ingredients requisite for dying.

But to return to such customs as are levied on foreign commodities; here 'tis to be observed, that from the year 1667 to the year 1669, the merchants paid the sum of six and twenty rixdollars on every cask of wine; whereas for the three years last past, they paid no more than five. Notwithstanding this, they pay six and thirty rixdollars on every barrel of brandy, and forty on a barrel of Spanish wine, which contains the quantity of two barrels.

Pot-ashes, weed-ashes for soap, leather, hemp, tallow, elks, otter skins, and furs; all the natural produce of the country, are exported from Muscovy into other parts; we are credibly informed likewise, that the muscles which are taken in the rivers of Kola, Warfigha, Wufma and Solia, produce a very good sort of pearl. Sometimes they will fetch five and twenty florins a-piece; and in the parts adjacent to Ombacy, they will bear twice the value.

Thus I have given my readers an impartial account of all the information I could procure during my residence in this city; and I dedicated all my leisure hours

1701



1701 to the conversation of the Sieurs Beants and Lup, who were exceedingly complaisant, and made it their study to oblige me. Their usual recreations are gaming, dancing, eating and drinking, and in all of them they indulge themselves

1701 till midnight. My friend Mr. Brants contributed no small share to these evening entertainments, as he was not only a great admirer of all sorts of music; but a distinguished performer on the harpsichord and organ.

*Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.*

(a) Archangel. See p. 8. n. d.

(b) Dwina, a river, which gives name to the province of Dwina, and running through it from south to north, discharges itself into the White Sea a little below Archangel.

(c) Moscow City, east longitude 38. latitude 55. 45. the capital of the province of Moscow, situate on the river Moscowa, 360 miles south east of Peterburgh, 800 east of Stockholm; 1000 north east of Constantinople; 900 north east of Vienna, and 1400 north east of London.

(d) Lapland. See p. 7. n. a.

(e) Riga, east longitude 24. latitude 57. a city, and port-town of Livonia, in the division of Lettenland, situate near the mouth of the river Dwina, and a bay of the Baltic Sea, one of the best harbours and trading towns in the Baltic, from whence the Dutch import corn, naval stores, &c. and the English and other nations traffick with this city, but not with such advantage as the Dutch, who exchange their herrings for the merchandize of Russia, to which crown Riga, and the rest of Livonia, is at present subject.

(f) Nerva, or Narva, east longitude 27. 35. latitude 59. situate on the river Nerva, or Narva, which divides Livonia from Russia, a thousand miles south west of Peterburgh, a large city and port town of Livonia, besieged by the Russians in the year 1700. but relieved by Charles XII. King of Sweden, who gained a signal victory over the Russians with 20,000 men, tho' the Russians were 100,000 strong. But the Czar, Peter the Great, afterwards took Narva by storm, and transplanted the inhabitants to Astracan; and the Russians have been in possession of Narva and all Livonia ever since, making it one of the stations of their fleet.

(g) Revel, east longitude 24. latitude 59. a port-town of Livonia, in the division of

Estonia, or East-Land, situate at the south entrance of the gulph of Finland, 140 miles north of Riga, and 110 miles west of Narva. It is a large city, and has a commodious harbour, where part of the Royal Navy of Russia is usually laid up. When the Czar invaded this country, multitudes of people fled hither to avoid the barbarous Collats in his Army; but the plague happening there, at the same time, upwards of 50,000 people were swept away by that distemper in this city.

(h) Konigsburg, east longitude 21. latitude 54. 40. a city of Poland, capital of Ducal Prussia, and of the King of Prussia's Polish dominions, situate on the river Pregel, near a bay of the Baltic Sea, seventy miles north east of Dantzick, being one of the most considerable port-towns in the Baltic.

(i) Dantzick, east longitude 19. latitude 54. the capital of Regal Prussia, in the Kingdom of Poland, situate on the western shore of the river Wesel, or Vistula, which a little below falls into the Baltic Sea. It is an excellent harbour, and has the best foreign trade of any port within the Baltic. It stands 140 miles north of Warsaw, and 70 miles south west of Konigsburg. The town is large, and encompassed with a wall, and fortifications of a great extent. The houses are well built of stone, or brick, six or seven stories high, and the granaries, containing vast magazines of corn, and naval stores, are still higher, to which the shipping lie close, and take in their lading; for the Dutch annually import from hence a great many thousand tons of corn, timber, and naval stores, and other nations some, but the Dutch have the greatest share of this trade, paying for their merchandize with pickled herrings, the spices of India, sugars, brandy, and other produce of the more southern countries; whereas the English, and other nations, are forced to purchase these things chiefly with treasure. The inhabitants are computed to amount to 200,000 souls, who are subject to a mixed kind of government. Their magistracy consists of thirty senators, who

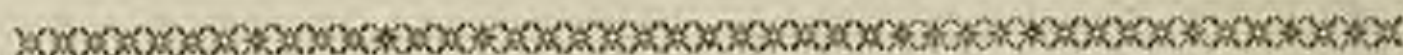


1701

who continue for life; four of them burgo-masters. Besides these, there are thirteen consuls, who elect the said burgo-masters out of their own body, and chuse likewise the judges, and all other officers of the city, from whom there lies an appeal to the thirteen consuls and four burgo-masters, and from them to the republic of Poland. The King annually nominates a burgo-master out of the consuls to represent his person in the senate, and all sentences of death must be signed by him in the King's name. One hundred burgesses are elected to represent the people's grievances, and defend their privileges, and inspect the administration of the government; and the hundred, with the concurrence of the senate, present the clergy to vacant benefices. The established religion is the Lutheran, but Papists, Calvinists, and Anabaptists are tolerated. The jurisdiction of the town extends forty miles round the city, and they maintain a garrison at their own expence, and coin money, with the effigies of the King on one side, and the city-arms on

the reverse. They are said to be under the protection of Poland, but if they had not been supported by other powers against their enemies, their state had been subverted long since. In the year 1703 the English, the Dutch, and the King of Prussia entered into an alliance for their protection against the Swedes, who would have extorted a sum of money from them, as they did again in the year 1706, when the King of Sweden threatened them with a visit, on his success against King Augustus, if they refused to acknowledge Stanislaus for their King. But in the year 1734, when they took the part of Stanislaus against the present King of Poland, and actually harboured and protected him in their city, having been purchased with French money, they were besieged by the Muscovites and Saxons, obliged to surrender, and forced to purchase their peace with several hundred thousand pounds for suffering Stanislaus to make his escape out of the city during the siege.

1701



## C H A P. IV.

*The Author's Departure from Archangel. The Russians Manner of travelling in the Winter Season. A Description of Wologda, and of the Monastery at Trooyts. His Arrival at Moscow.*

21st Dec.  
Departure  
from Arch-  
angel.

ON the twenty-first of December, about three in the afternoon, I set out from (a) Archangel for (b) Moscow, accompanied by one Mr. Kinfus, who had procured two soldiers to attend him, and (what here is called) a Podwoden, that is to say, an order for horses upon the road gratis; though the persons from whose hands we receive them, indeed, expect some small gratuity as a perquisite, which is seldom refused. He had six sledges, and I one only, as I had disposed of my baggage amongst the effects of Mr. Brants.

Manner of  
travelling.

When any one is determined to travel from Archangel to Moscow, he must furnish himself with what number of sledges he shall have occasion for, before he sets out; for there are no horses to be hired upon the road. These sledges are

so contrived, that a man may lie down stretched out at his full length, and not be incommoded: he must take his own bed along with him; and other proper furniture to secure him from the cold, which, in this country, in the winter season, is excessively keen and piercing; the back-part of the sledge is covered with matting, but all the rest is lined, either with strong cloth, or leather. The top is covered with a skin, and lined in the same manner, to keep the passenger from all the inclemencies of the weather, wind, rain, or snow. The driver travels day and night, and each sledge has two horses, which are always changed at the end of every fifteen wersts, which is about three German leagues. At the end of every werst, the Russians cry Wersta, which space contains about a hundred fathom, and each fathom

1

three

they deliver, that  
the Dutch call  
the sledge for  
the twenty-second  
there is the abundance  
manner, which is about  
Archangel.  
This Kolmogor is  
situated on the south-west  
which is one of the great  
rivers. In the winter  
the lower part of the  
sledge, and after a  
large covered by some  
in a way, it is all by  
the (1) White Sea, it is  
from Archangel. Mr.  
pious, having time  
think, but it is to  
of the city, we went  
by whom we were  
civil. Our first night  
of common water, a  
and a much deer as  
to trail, which, the  
here, we crossing  
as shortly with force  
and other like trails  
He was upwards of fifty  
thousand. His place  
house, which is a  
contiguous to the  
we had great horses  
the light Archangel  
condition was very agree-  
ment of good natural  
great number of every  
because, he considered  
of his, which found at  
the place, where we  
winter forest, two  
his own riding, and  
which were taken  
which, of which we  
where. When we  
most fine of his dogs  
we saw, who were  
pious. One of  
which he had for  
man, that was the  
travelling as he journey  
but it was not in the  
pious, that he



1701

Kolmogora

Decem. 22.

The com-  
mune treat-  
ment of the  
Archbp. of  
Kolmogora

three Arsiennes, that is to say, about three Dutch ells. The passenger gets out of his sledge for refreshment but once a day. Having passed by several villages, on the twenty-second of December, about three in the afternoon, we reached Kolmogora, which is about fifty wersts from Archangel.

This Kolmogora is a pretty large city, situate on the south-west of the (e) Dwina, which is one of the principal rivers in all Russia. Its fountain-head is in the southern parts of the province of (d) Wologda, and after a long course, and a large encrease by waters from other rivers in its way, it falls by two mouths into the (e) White Sea, at some small distance from Archangel. Mr. Kinsing, my companion, having some knowledge of the Vladika, that is to say, the Archbishop of the city, we went to pay him a visit, by whom we were very courteously received. Our first refreshment was a dram of cinnamon-water, a bottle of good wine, and as much beer as we thought proper to drink, which, tho' what we call table beer, was exceeding good. He treated us likewise with some Egyptian Dates, and other little trifles of the like nature. He was upwards of fifty, and his name was Aïfonassi. His palace is his place of residence, which is spacious enough, and lies contiguous to the monastery there. After we had spent about two or three hours with this Right Reverend Prelate, whose conversation was very agreeable, as he was a man of good natural parts, and was a great admirer of every branch of polite literature, he conducted us to an armory of his, which stood at some distance from the palace; where were, amongst other warlike stores, two small brass guns of his own casting, and two iron-pieces, which were taken out of the Swedish vessels, of which mention has been made before. When we took our leave, he ordered five of his clergy to attend us to our inn; who were all furnished with provisions. One with bread, another with fish, &c. for our farther refreshment. About ten that night, we proceeded on our journey with fresh horses; but it was with no small difficulty that we procured them; for it happened, that a

considerable number of passengers had been there before us, who were furnished with Podwodens, as well as we, and had secured almost all the horses that were in the town.

On the twenty-third, the weather was exceeding fine, and we passed thro' divers woods abounding with two sorts of firs: the branches of the one shoot out of the head only, whereas those of the other proceed from the sides of the trunk. We saw likewise a great number of alders and birch-trees. From these woods we pursued our way to several villages, till at length we arrived at Salke, which is the last that stands within the jurisdiction of Archangel.

On the twenty-fourth we reached Briefnick, which lies in the province of Waeg, where we took fresh horses, and were obliged to cross the river of that name several times. On the twenty-fifth we got to Schenkerske, which is the capital of the last mentioned province, and is situate on the same river. On the twenty-sixth we passed through a large village, called Virghowacsje, where they have a considerable market once a week. On the twenty-seventh we reached Soloti. On the twenty-eighth having passed thro' divers little villages, we crossed the great forest of Komenaf, which is twenty wersts in breadth at least, and came to a place called Dwienitse, situate on the river of the same name; where we were informed, that three Russian merchants, in their passage from Archangel, had met with a gang of banditti, or highwaymen, about twenty-six in number, who had robbed them of a considerable sum: that one of them in particular took away from the richest of the three, and a gentleman with whom I was well acquainted, a silver cross, which he wore on his breast, and is held here in great veneration, notwithstanding his associates used their utmost endeavours to prevent so gross an insult: that this particular villain, it seems, wore a cross himself, which he took off his neck, and put upon the merchant's with this sarcastical proverb, *Exchange, Sir, you know, is no Robbery.*

This intimation put us into a kind of panic; but upon mature deliberation,

H

we

1701

Decem. 23.

Decem. 24.

Briefnick.

Decem. 25.

Schenker-

ke.

Decem. 26.

Virghow-

acsje.

Decem. 27.

Soloti.

Decem. 28.

Forest of

Komenaf

Dwienitse.



1701

Decem. 19.  
Rabanga,  
Soegue,  
Wologda.

we determined, at all adventures, to pursue our journey, without waiting till other company might casually arrive to join us; and therefore got all our fire-arms in readiness, in case of distress. On the twenty-ninth we reached Rabanga, which lies on the river Soegue, and from thence got to Wologda about three in the afternoon. This city makes an handsome appearance enough on one side. Here we got out, and went directly to the house of the Sieur Wouter Ewouts de Jough, a Dutch merchant, with whom I am intimately acquainted, and from whom we met with a very courteous reception.

Decem. 30.

The church

The day following I took a tour round the town, and an accurate survey of the church, called Saboor, which is a very fine building, and was erected by the same celebrated Italian architect as worked at Moscow-Castle. There are five domes to this church, which the Russians call *Glassa*, that is to say, heads of churches. Each of them is covered with plate-tin, and adorned with large gilt crosses. Besides this church, there are twenty others in this city, built with stone, most of which have domes, covered and decorated in the same manner. These gilt crosses strike the eye very agreeably, when the sun shines upon them. To these stone-churches we must add forty-three more, that are built principally with timber. Here are likewise three convents, inhabited by monks, and one cloyster, by nuns; the principal ornament whereof is a little stone-church, erected in the center, which is surrounded with little commodious cells for the nuns, in a retired place, into which you enter by a small door.

The mar-  
ket-place.

After I had gratified my curiosity thus far, I took a survey of the market-place, which is very full of shops; and I observed, that there is a separate place for each particular commodity; as for instance, flesh in one place, and fish in another.

From these markets, I passed thro' the gate of a very spacious building which had never been perfectly finished, tho' begun by the Czar Ivan Vassiliewitz,

who proposed to make a citadel, or fortress, of it; but the apprehensions they were at that time under of the Tartars, who had obliged this Prince to withdraw from Moscow, occasioned him to drop his design, and leave the place unfinished. From thence I took a walk on one side of the river Wologda, which runs thro' the city. The other side, which is called *Dofresene*, is not near so pleasant; and notwithstanding one side as well as the other is part of the same city, yet each has a distinct governor, or head. It is a full league in length, and in some places about a quarter of a league in breadth, little more or less. All the goods that come from Archangel pass through this city; and there are, at this present juncture, three or four very commodious warehouses for such commodities as belong to our Dutch merchants. This city is situate in fifty-nine degrees fifteen minutes of northern latitude on the east of the river, which is pretty broad.

We set out from hence on the thirtieth of December, about ten at night; and by six the next morning, we got to Greelnewits, which is forty wersts from Wologda. At this Greelnewits we baited our horses, and 'twas highly reasonable that we should; for we had still twenty wersts farther to travel. We met with fifty sledges at least that day; some of which set out from Archangel before us, and some after. We did not, however, all take the same road; there were but twenty of them that were going to Moscow, or the parts adjacent. About noon we arrived at a place called *Obsnorkoy-jain*, to which place we had dispatched one of our soldiers before us, in order to secure fresh horses. From thence we proceeded to *Danilofskoy*, which is threescore and seven wersts from *Obsnorkoy-jain* last mentioned. This *Danilofskoy* is a very fine, large town, remarkable for the trade that is carried on there; and for a fine stud of horses, above two thousand whereof belong to his Czarian Majesty.

On the first day of the year 1702, we reached *Jeresslaw*, one of the principal cities of Russia. The river (*f*) *Wolga* runs hard by it, and is very broad there.

We

1701

Decem. 30.

Greelnewits.

Obsnorkoy-jain.

Danilofskoy.

Jan. 1.

Jeresslaw.

Wolga.



1702

Kotris.

Troepene.

Rosloff.

The mon-  
astery of  
Peter Zarow-  
itz.

Wafke.

Pere-  
slaw  
Soleikoy.

Jan. 3.  
Tier-  
berewa.

Trooyt.

A fine mo-  
nastery.

We crossed both that, and the Kotris, not far from whence, to the southward, the last discharges its waters into the first. In this city there are a great number of stone-churches, of which, as I took views of them all on my return, I shall speak more at large in another place. Having crossed the Kotris, we went to a suburb hard by, called Troepene, where we took fresh horses. We set out from thence about ten at night, and on the second we got to (g) Rosloff, which we only crossed. There is an archbishop, resident in this city, which abounds with fine stone-churches. It is situate on the right of the lake of the same name. Soon after we had traversed this lake, we saw, at a small distance, several little villages, where the inhabitants, or the greater part of them at least, live upon garlic and onions. About half a league from thence stands the monastery of Peter Zarowitz, which is surrounded with several houses. We arrived at a place, called Wafke, about one in the afternoon, having travelled thirty-eight wersts. There we dined, and set out soon afterwards for Pereislaw Soleikoy, which was about twenty wersts onwards of our journey. Notwithstanding this city is the capital of the province, from whence it derives its name; yet 'tis but a poor place, and is situate on a lake. We got there by nine that night, and left it again about twelve. On the third we went through Tierberewa about six in the morning, and from thence, for near the compass of thirty wersts successively, we were constantly going up and down one hill after another, till we came to Trooyt, where we arrived about one in the afternoon. There we staid some time, and took a survey of the fine monastery which bears the name of the little village, which we pass'd by, just before we came into the town. This monastery is composed all of stone, and is surrounded likewise by a fine and lofty stone-wall, which is quadrangular, and at each corner thereof is a noble, spacious, round tower; between which there are square ones; and two of these which are the most ornamental, face the road. It has three gates, like-

wife, in front, and stands about a quarter of a league from the village, which lies to the right-hand of it, as we went to Moscow. The middlemost, through which we chose to enter it, has two Arcades, under which there was a little Corps de garde, where we found several soldiers on duty, as well as at the outward one. As soon as we had passed this inner gate we saw the principal church standing in the center, and separate from the rest of the buildings. His Czarian Majesty's apartment, which stands on the right-hand side, makes a very grand and magnificent appearance on the outside; and, as the front is very extensive, we went up to it by two flights of stone-steps. It is several stories high; but when we came to examine the furniture within, it was mean, and by no means correspondent with its outward grandeur. The refectory, which is another stately edifice, stands over against it, and is built in much the same form. Each window is adorned with a small pillar, and the stones are painted in various colours. The church, just before-mentioned, stands between these two buildings. Besides these, there are nine others; four whereof are pretty large, but the other five are much smaller. On the outside, this monastery has the appearance of a citadel, or fortress; and the Abbot, or Archimandrite, has the principal command of it. For the generality, there are two or three hundred monks resident here, and some of them waited on us from one place to another, and shewed us abundance of respect. This monastery is very rich, in respect to its revenues; for there are about 60,000 peasants dependent thereon, and pay a certain annual duty towards its maintenance and support. Besides, as there are abundance of illustrious personages interred in the great church, and divers masses solemnized therein, the profits arising therefrom make a very large addition. The village itself is of a considerable length, and on the right-hand-side, there are abundance of farrier's shops, with posts to them for the better convenience of shoeing their horses. When we had travelled thirty wersts from this place,

1702



1702

Brato Fiena

Arrival at  
Moscow,  
Jan. 4.

place, we reached the village of Brato Fiena, where we were obliged to tarry till midnight, in order to have our baggage searched; which is sealed immediately afterwards, and not opened again till in the custom-house at Moscow, where we arrived safe about eight in the morning on the fourth instant.

We alighted at the Slabode, which is the privileged quarter for the Germans, and the place where the greater part of other foreigners reside, tho' there are some, indeed, that live in the city.

As soon as I had refreshed my self, I

went directly to Mr Jurtsen's, to whom I had been recommended by Mr. Brants, who at that time lived in the same place, and had been but lately arrived there from Archangel. The Czar honoured him with a visit the very next day, accompanied by several Peers in their respective sledges; amongst which, that belonging to his Majesty made the least appearance. This visit continued for about two hours, and this was the first time I ever had the honour of being in company with this august Monarch.

1702

### Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

(a) Archangel, see page 8. n. d.

(b) Moscow, see p. 23, no. (c)

(c) Dwina, see p. 23, no. (b)

(d) Wologda, east longitude 42. 20. latitude 59. Capital of the province of Wologda in Russia, situate on the river Dwina, 235 miles north of Moscow.

(e) White Sea, see p. 7. n. (b).

(f) Wolga, a river of Russia, which, rising in the north of that Empire, runs south-east, passing by the cities of Jeressaf, Kasan, and Bulgar, and then entering Asiatic Russia, continues its course due south to Kamisinea, from whence it runs south-east, and passing by

Astracan, falls into the Caspian Sea, fifty miles below that city, having run a course of between two and three thousand miles, being deep enough, great part of the way, to carry large ships; but the mouth of it is so choaked up with sand, that loaded ships cannot enter it; for which reason, the Russian ships lie at an island without the mouth of the Wolga. It is by this river, that the Russian merchants of England are endeavouring to establish a trade with Persia.

(g) Rostof, or Rostova, east longitude 40. latitude 57. 20. a town of Russia, in the province of Moscow, capital of the territory of Rostof, situate one hundred and twenty miles north-east of Moscow.

## C H A P. V.

*The Author has the Honour to be admitted into the Presence of the Czar.  
The solemn Manner in which the Russians consecrate their Water;  
with a particular Description of a fine Fire-work at Moscow.*

Jan. 5.

Visit of the  
Czar.

IT has been a constant custom for the Czars of Muscovy, ever since the year 1649, to visit their own principal courtiers, and some foreigners of distinction, either in the city of Moscow itself, or in the Slabode of the Germans, some short time before Twelfth-Day. The person thus honoured, always makes a suitable entertainment, which, in the Russian language, is termed, their Sla-

weien. They are accompanied with the Princes, Lords, and other illustrious personages belonging to the court. In the year 1702. this ceremony was solemnized on the third of January old stile. The first visit which his Czarian Majesty at that time made, was to Mr. Brandts, to whose house the Czar came about nine in the morning, attended by about three hundred persons; some in sledges, and some



1702 on horseback. The tables were all decently covered, and served immediately, first with a great variety of cold meats, and afterwards with a great number of hot dishes. The company were very jovial, and free, and there were liquors of all sorts in abundance. His Majesty tarried till two in the afternoon, and then withdrew; and from thence, he and his retinue went directly to visit Mr. Lups; where they were entertained in the same elegant manner, and from thence again made divers other visits en passant. These formal visits thus paid, they resorted in proper time to the several houses that were prepared before-hand for their respective receptions. The next day, he honoured Mr. Hulst, our resident, and several others with his company. This minister, after having made mention of me to his Majesty, thro' the recommendation of Mr. Witsen, burgo-master, and one of the principal counsellors at Amsterdam, was pleased to honour me with a kind invitation, and gave orders for my being planted in a particular room, thro' which his Czarian Majesty was to pass. The Knez, or Prince, of Troebetskooy came by mere accident into the same room where I was in waiting; and having no knowledge of me, but perceiving me to be a foreigner, asked me, in Italian, with the utmost complaisance, whether I understood that language; I answered him, in the affirmative, with all due respect: whereupon, with a seeming pleasure, he entered into conversation with regard to Italy in particular, and some other countries thro' which we had both travelled. He then withdrew to give his Majesty an account of this our casual interview, who, to gratify his curiosity, came attended by a numerous train to the place where I stood. As I was no ways apprehensive of seeing his Majesty so soon, I was in a kind of flutter at first; but upon an immediate recollection, I made my address to him with all due deference and respect. — He seemed a little startled at it, and asked me in the Dutch language, how I came to know he was the Czar, and by what means? — I made answer directly, that I

had seen his Majesty's picture at Sir Godfrey Kneller's, in London, which had made so deep an impression on my mind, that I was morally assured I could not be mistaken. As this answer, I found, did not give him perfect satisfaction, I added, that I had the honour, moreover, to see him come from court, when he was pleased to visit Mr. Brandts. With this answer he seemed better pleased than the former. He then asked me what townsmen I was; who my parents were; what brothers and sisters I had, and whether they were living or dead. Having made proper answers immediately to these familiar interrogatories, he asked me some questions in regard to my former travels; in what year I commenced them; how long I continued abroad; in what manner I pursued my travels; and what way I returned home. After that, he conversed with me about (a) Egypt, the river (b) Nile, and the famous city of (c) Grand Cairo; its extent and particular buildings; then he asked me about what state and condition Old Cairo and (d) Alexandria were in when I was there last, and divers other adjacent places; adding withal, that he was very sensible there was another place called (e) Alexandretta, or lesser Alexandria. I thereupon informed him, that the place last mentioned was the sea-port town for Aleppo, and acquainted him with the exact distance that they were from each other. This conversation passed all in Dutch, and his Majesty was pleased to desire me to continue speaking in my own native language, as he understood me perfectly well. And it was self-evident afterwards that he did so; for he explained the whole purport of our conference to the Russian Lords that attended him, with that accuracy and freedom, that perfectly surprised both our resident, and all the natives of Holland who had the honour to hear him. — He then directed me to address my discourse to the Knez before-mentioned, in the Italian language, as he understood that better than Dutch, and so left me. After he had spent three full hours at least with our resident, he made several other shorter visits in the Slabode,

The author's address to the Czar; with the conversation that passed between them.



1701

it being then the last day; for the grand festival appointed for the consecration of the water, was to be solemnized the next, and Monday was the sixth of January old stile. That very day the son of General Bories Petrowitz Czeremetof arrived at court; and during the time that his Czarian Majesty was at church, he communicated to him the agreeable news that the Swedes had been defeated by the Muscovites in (f) Livonia, which is about five or six leagues from the town of Derpt. He assured him that, in this battle, the enemy lost near 4000 men; that several hundreds had been taken prisoners; and that several superior officers were amongst them. This nobleman, who was in the heat of the action himself, and had been dispatched by his father with these credentials, departed himself in such a handsome manner, that he diffused a general joy throughout the whole court. The grand festival last-mentioned is annually solemnized in commemoration of our Blessed Saviour's Nativity, of which I was an eye-witness.

*Festival of the consecration of their water.*

On one side of the castle, erected on the river Jousa, a square hole, of about thirteen feet from corner to corner, that is to say, fifty-two feet in circumference, was made in the ice. This hole was inclosed by an elegant piece of wood-work, having a column, or pillar, at each angle, which supported a sort of cornish, whereon four several pannels were painted in the form of arches; and at each angle, a statue representing one of the four Evangelists; and over all two sort of semi-domes, on the middle whereof was a large cross. These pannels, which were painted within as well as without, were embellished with the pictures of the Apostles, and other Patriarchs of the New Testament. The most beautiful picture of them all, however, facing the east of the river, was the representation of our Blessed Lord's baptism by St. John in the river (g) Jordan, with four angels on the right. On the outside of each of these pannels were the figures of five angels heads with wings on their shoulders. On the west side of this square hole, there were four steps, to

which a large weight of lead was affixed, in order to make them sink into the water. The patriarch, or priest, who was appointed to perform the intended ceremony, stood on the highest step, which was level with the water, and the water in this place was at least eight feet deep, several large, scarlet carpets, surrounded with a square inclosure, forty-five paces from angle to angle, or one hundred and eighty paces in circumference, were spread upon the ground. This inclosure had two others, in the nature of balustrades, each four paces distant from the other, and four feet in height, and covered in the same manner with proper carpets. On the western side, and near the brink of the hole, two altars were erected. There were four several entrances to them, the largest whereof was to the southward of the castle-gate. These doors likewise were painted, indeed, but after an inelegant manner, and embellished with one hieroglyphic or another. After I had taken a full survey of what I have been hitherto talking of, I went to a commodious eminence, not far distant from the castle, between the two gates, on one side of that which the Russians call Taynaimski, or the private gate, in order to have a full view of the procession as it passed through. About eleven in the forenoon it began to move, from the church of Saboor, that is to say, from the place of the assembly of the saints, situate in the castle, and the principal church, moreover, in all Moscow. This grand procession was wholly composed of the Russian clergy, some few laymen only excepted, dressed in their common habiliments, who led the van, with standards in their hands, made fast to staves. The priests were all dressed in their canonical robes, and made a very fine appearance. The inferior clergy, and the monks, in all about two hundred, advanced first, preceded, however, by a great number of choiristers and singing-boys, dressed in their usual cloaths, and each with a book in his hand. They were guarded on each side by a detachment of soldiers, all under arms; whilst others went with staves in their hands to clear

1701



1702

clear the way. After them walked about three hundred of their prelates, all dressed in their episcopal habits. The twelve that went foremost were metropolitans, or cardinals, in a dress which the Russians commonly call a Sackoste. After these, went four archbishops, three bishops, and a great number of Archimandrites, or superiors of convents. After about two hundred of these last were gone by, every thing was displayed, that these priests carried in possession. Some had poles, with a lantern affixed to the end of each of them, emblematically representing the true Light of the Gospel; either to do honour to the pictures of the saints, or else to give themselves an air of grandeur and importance. Others again bore two cherubims, called in their language, Lepieds, at the end of two poles, in the same manner as the former. Then followed two crosses; after them the representation of our Blessed Saviour at half-length, and almost as big as the life; then a large folio book; and after that, twenty gold and silver caps, decorated with real jewels, or other precious stones; but each was carried singly by an officer appointed for that purpose. When the ceremony was over, the principals of those that were present appeared in those caps. That of the Metropolitan, in particular, being made of gold, and decked with pearls and precious stones. The superior part of the prelates likewise wear these caps, which they call Mietris, and we mitres. This metropolitan, who personated the patriarch, followed the large book directly, holding in his hand a large cross of gold, embellished with jewels, which every now and then touched his forehead. He had a priest on each side of him for his supporters. When they were arrived, in this order, at the river-side, and their other ceremonies, which were at least half an hour in their performance, were all over, the metropolitan approached the water, and dip't his cross into it three several times, making use of the patriarch's words in their own language, the purport whereof is, *May God preserve his people, and bless his inheritance!* After this benediction, they all returned towards

the castle; the two hundred priests who preceded the solemnity only excepted; for they dispersed. All such as had either the sacerdotal, or episcopal dress on, went back in form, and in good order. I observed two men, very meanly dressed, amongst several others, with a tub, or something like it; but as it was covered up with a cloth, I could not well tell what to make of it. There was another vessel followed this, which was carried in the same manner as the former; after that, another ordinary person went with a pewter flagon full of the river-water, which, having been blessed in form, was conveyed to the castle, in order to sprinkle and purify the apartments as well as the paintings. No sooner was the procession returned, but they hurried away all the materials that served as an ornament to the water: and I remember, particularly, that a Muscovite plunged a large broom into the hole, with which he very plentifully besprinkled the populace round about; but I did not perceive that it had any material influence over them. In this part of the solemnity, indeed, there seemed to be something very low, and extremely absurd. This procession, which lasted till two in the afternoon, had drawn together a vast concourse of spectators, and it was a show, indeed, that would have been worth any one's seeing, had there been nothing besides, nothing to give disgust. It had a very good effect, it must be allowed, upon the river; for, as the castle stood on a rising ground, we could from thence see all the whole croud, even those that had got upon the wall, without the least interruption. As we were on our return home, however, and had got to the Castle gate, there was such a throng, or mob, that it was with no small difficulty that we made our way through it. Our curiosity, in short, had like to have cost us too dear, besides the risk we ran by standing so many hours successively in the snow.

In former times, this grand festival was solemnized with much more pomp and magnificence than it has been for some years last past; for then their Czarian Majesties, and all the grandees of the

court



1702

court made a part of the procession; the present Czar, however, has lately made a great many very essential alterations in this public ceremony, and indeed in divers others; of which we shall give our readers a more particular and distinct account in another place.

Jan. 9.

On the ninth of this instant January, it not only began to thaw, but to rain likewise; the weather being at that time more warm and open than it had been before for several years.

Jan. 11.

On the eleventh, there were great demonstrations of public joy on account of their signal victory before-mentioned over the Swedes. In the Bizat, or market-place, which lies on one side of the castle, a grand fire-work was erected, which extended from one end of the square to the other; which lies in a bottom, and is very spacious. The workmen had run up a large, but slight wooden edifice, full of windows, that faced the castle, wherein his Czarian Majesty entertained the principal grandees of his court. The foreign ministers were likewise invited to partake of this amusement; and the Danish minister in particular, and the resident of Holland were then present, besides a great number of officers, and substantial merchants from beyond-sea. In order to cast an agreeable shade over this building, as well as to embellish it, there were three rows of large branches, like young trees, planted before it. At two in the afternoon, there was a grand entertainment, and about six in the evening the fire-work began to be played off, which lasted till nine. It was raised upon three large tables, or wooden theatres, which were very spacious as well as lofty, whereon several figures were fastened to planks, and painted of a brown colour. The plan, or design of this fire-work was perfectly new, and widely different from any thing of the kind I had ever seen before. In the center, on the right-hand, there stood the figure of Time, as big again as the life, with an hour-glass in one hand, and a palm-branch in the other, which was supported by the figure of Fortune, of the same size, standing on the left, with the following inscription in

A grand  
fire-work.A grand  
entertainment.The fire-  
work  
played off,  
and de-  
fined.

the Russian language, *Let God therefore be praised!* On the left, towards the building, where his Majesty and his counsellors sat, there was the trunk of a tree planted, with a beaver busily employed in gnawing it, with this inscription, in the same language, *By perseverance, thou shalt be torn up by the roots.* Upon the third theatre, or table, on the other side, there was another trunk of a tree placed, with a young branch shooting from it, and at a small distance from that, the representation of the sea in a perfect calm, whereon appeared a demisun, which, when set fire to, looked very red, with this inscription, *There are now some hopes again.* Between each theatre, there were several little square pieces of fire-works, which continued to burn; and each of them had its particular device. The second of these last-mentioned little pieces, near which I happened to stand, and which was first set on fire by his Czarian Majesty himself, represented a cross, with four several arms; the third a vine-branch; the fourth a bird-cage, each with different inscriptions. As all of them were illuminated after the Dutch manner, there was no great difficulty in the explication of their various designs. In the middle of the square likewise was erected a large Neptune, sitting astride on a dolphin, and on each side of him, a great variety of little fire-works planted on the ground, surrounded with piles, to which cases, or fuses, were fixed, and had a very fine effect; some of them forming a golden shower, whilst others threw out a vast number of little glittering stars. Just before these fire-works were played off, several of the Russian clergy, and other persons of distinction, who sat in the building with his Czarian Majesty, removed from their seats, and withdrew to a covered place, in the midst of all this machinery, in order to perform some particular rites and ceremonies. There was a guard of soldiers over the gate-way of this lodge, which was adorned with a great number of standards. In short, the vast concourse of people which flocked to the market-place on this public occa-

1702

sion



1702

tion was inexpressible. The Czar's sister likewise, and a great number of fine ladies, who accompanied her, were present at this public spectacle, and seated in a tower at one angle of the square. There was another tower, one of the highest in this part of the town, which was finely illuminated from top to bottom. Each of the large theatres before-mentioned burned for near a quarter of an hour without intermission. At the same time we heard the report of the artillery, which had been discharged before the entertainment. As soon as the fire-works were all over, the tables were all covered again. As for my part, I withdrew to the Slabode, and at about ten, I heard the report of at least ninety guns more; and indeed several after them. What seemed very remarkable, and something, I thought, very extraordinary, was this, that, notwithstanding such a night of

public rejoicing, and such a prodigious throng of all sorts of people, there was not the least disorder or confusion: but this, indeed, must be ascribed to the particular care that was taken to have a sufficient number of guards and soldiers so properly planted as to prevent all manner of tumult. Notwithstanding all this precaution, there was, however, a kind of skirmish between a parcel of noisy French officers, and some swords were drawn near his Majesty's lodge; but to prevent any farther ill consequences, there was a post put up near the Dutch church, in the German Slabode, to which were affixed a sword and an ax, with proper labels thereto, in the Russian, Latin, and German languages, whereby all persons whomsoever were strictly enjoined not to draw a sword, or fight a duel upon pain of death.

1702

*Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.*

(a) Egypt, situate in the north east part of Africa, between thirty and thirty-six degrees of east longitude, and between twenty-one and thirty-one degrees of north latitude, bounded by the Levant, or Mediterranean Sea, on the north by the Red Sea, and the Isthmus of Sues, which divides it from Arabia, on the east by Abyssinia, or Ethiopia Superior, on the south, and by the deserts of Barea and Nubia on the west, being six hundred miles in length from north to south, and from one hundred to two hundred in breadth from east to west; the river Nile, which rises in Abyssinia, running the whole length of it from south to north, and overflowing it annually, beginning to rise in the months of May or June, and is at the height usually in September, from which time the waters decrease till May or June again. There being no other water in the country, (or not more than two springs) they were under a necessity of building their towns on the banks of the Nile, on some eminences, natural or artificial; so that on the overflowing of the river, they look like so many islands, which have no other communication than by boats. The lower Egypt is contained in a triangular island, made by the Levant, and the two chief branches of the Nile, which dividing five miles below Cairo, one branch takes its course to the north-west, and falls into the Levant at Rossetto,

and the other north-east, falling into the sea at Damietta, the ancient Pelusium; these mouths being about an hundred miles asunder. This part of the country called the Delta, or Lower Egypt, having the greatest advantage by the overflowing of the Nile, is much the most fruitful, but not the most healthful, the mud which covers it, after the flood is gone, sending up an unwholesome vapour. The mountains and sands which inclose Egypt on the east and west would render the valley between excessive hot, if it were not for this annual flood; nor would the soil produce much without it; for the country is naturally barren, where the waters do not reach, and they have seldom any rain, unless in the Lower Egypt; tho' travellers relate, that they have sometimes seen heavy showers even in Upper Egypt. They have canals cut quite through Upper Egypt to distribute the water to their fields and gardens, and preserve it in the dry season; and these they fill with great ceremony annually, when the river rises to a certain height; and by these means, Egypt is rendered the most fruitful country in all Africa, supplying Constantinople, and other towns in European Turkey with corn, as it did Rome and Italy of old. They only harrow their grain into the mud, on the retiring of the waters, and, in March following, usually have a plentiful harvest. As to their rice-

K

fields,



1702

fields, they supply them with water from their canals and reservoirs constantly, this grain always growing in water. Those lands that are not sown yield good crops of grass for their cattle. No place in the world, says Mr. Sandys, is better furnished with grain, flesh, fish, sugar, fruits, melons, roots, and other garden-stuff, than the Lower Egypt; Oranges, lemons, figs, dates, almonds, cassia and plantains abound here; and they have some grapes, but not proper for wine; which defect is, in some measure, supplied by palm-wine. The country is excessively hot for two or three months before the flood rises, and the musketoes, or gnats, will not suffer people to sleep in the night. The sands also are extremely troublesome, insinuating themselves into the closets, chests, and cabinets, and even into the bed-cloaths, making them as hot, as if they had been warmed with coals; and these sands are, probably, the occasion of sore eyes, with which the natives are almost universally afflicted in summer. Fevers and fluxes are frequent in Autumn, and the swelling of the scrotum; but the greatest misfortune is the plague, which visits them, at least, once in seven years; but when the Nile begins to overflow, 'tis said the plague, and all other diseases are abated. It must not be forgot also, that the hot winds are very troublesome in April and May, and one occasion of their sore-eyes as well as the sands.

Among the curiosities of Egypt, the pyramids are the most considerable; they are built of stone, but by whom, or when, no one knows; the base of the largest taking up ten acres of ground, and running up to seven hundred feet perpendicular height; eye-witnesses, however, frequently differ an hundred feet as to that article; and indeed, the sands are driven up so high on the sides, that it is impracticable to take the height exactly. The mummy pits are another curiosity, which, with the pyramids, are on the west-side of the river, opposite to Cairo; in these pits have been thousands of embalmed bodies interred, which have continued three or four thousand years at least; the coffins are set upright, in niches in the walls, and never laid at length.

Egypt is generally held to be subject to the Grand Signior, and so it is in part; but his authority is extremely limited by the Egyptian Princes, who are all of them absolute in their respective territories; and assemble at Cairo, in a kind of parliament, or great council, which submits to the Grand Signior's Bassa, or Vice-roy, no farther than they see fit, and sometimes depose him, and demand another of the Grand Signior, who is more acceptable

to them; however, they suffer the Grand Signior to collect a revenue in their several districts, but by no means equal to what the country is able to pay; and if more be demanded; or any innovations attempted; it endangers a revolt. They come to Cairo with such bodies of troops as protect them against the arbitrary administration of the Bassa, and the only way he has to manage them, is by dividing them into parties, and siding with that party which is most devoted to the Grand Signior. These Egyptian Princes are not natives of the country, neither are they ever succeeded by their children in their respective governments, but by some slave, whom they appoint their successor; and these are usually slaves, purchased in Georgia, or Circassia. This is their constitution, as was that of the ancient Mamalukes; no man could be a Sovereign, who had not been a slave, and purchased in some foreign country; but out of these we must except some Chiefs, or Arab Chiefs, who are proprietors of villages, or small districts in the country; these are succeeded by their children, on paying a fine, or small rent, to the government. The religion of the governors of the country is Mahometan; but the Coptis, the posterity of the ancient Egyptians, the Greeks and Latins are Christians, but of different sects; and there are besides a great number of Jews at Cairo, and in the great towns, where any thing is to be got.

(b) Nile, the great river of Egypt in Africa, has its source in Abyssinia, or the Upper Ethiopia, in twelve degrees of north latitude. It runs generally from south to north, thro' Abyssinia into Egypt, and then continues its course north in one stream, till it comes below Cairo to the Delta, where it divides; one branch discharging itself into the Mediterranean at Damietta, and the other an hundred miles to the westward of it at Rosetta. In the upper part of the stream, we have been told, that there are dreadful cataracts, where the water falls in sheets, from high precipices; but later travellers of credit of our own nation assure us, that there are no such cataracts, only some rocks, which indeed hinder navigation; but the water does not fall in sheets from high hills or precipices, as was currently reported by the ancient and moderns till very lately. It runs, 'tis observed, thro' the hilly country of Upper Egypt, with greater rapidity than it does thro' the Delta, or Lower Egypt, where the country is level; which is the case of many other rivers. There are great rejoicings every year, when the Nile rises to a certain height, their

1702



1702

their future harvest depending on it. The just height of the inundation, according to Pliny, is sixteen cubits; when it arises but to twelve or thirteen, a famine is expected, and when it exceeds sixteen, there is danger apprehended; the moderns do not exactly agree with the ancients about the height of the inundation; but there is no great difference in their accounts. The river begins usually to arise in May or June; and there stands a pillar on an island opposite to Old Cairo, divided into Picks, a measure of about two feet, to observe how much it rises; and when it is high enough, the Khalis, or great canal is cut, from whence it is conveyed into other reservoirs and cisterns, to be distributed to their fields and gardens as they want it. As to the Delta, or Lower Egypt, that is all overflowed; there needs no Art to carry it into their fields. This part of the country is always sowed with rice therefore, which grows in water. Their towns, standing on little eminencies, during the flood appear like so many little islands. This overflowing of the Nile is occasioned by the periodical rains, which annually fall within the tropics, where the source of the Nile is; and that which makes the flood the greater is, that Ethiopia, or Abyssinia, where it rises, is full of high mountains, from whence the waters shoot in torrents, and swell the river beyond its usual bounds.

(c) Grand Cairo, east longitude 32. latitude 30. the capital of Egypt, in Africa, is situate in a plain, at the foot of a mountain, two miles east of the bank of the river Nile, and an hundred miles south of the mouth of that river. The town is ten miles in circumference, and may contain a million of inhabitants, and some have computed them at five millions, which must be a mistake, tho' 'tis certain they are very numerous, thirty or forty people frequently lodging in one house. Their private buildings make a mean appearance on the outside, but are often very richly furnished and adorned within; and their chief mosques, or temples, are very magnificent. The castle stands on the top of a hill on the south-side of the city, and is three miles round, of great antiquity, but hardly so ancient as the natives give out, who imagine it was built by the Patriarch Joseph, and shew a well, near the top of it, that is little less than three hundred feet deep, and is the only well almost in all the country. There is a grand Bazar, or market-place, in the middle of the city; but the streets are generally narrow, except the Khali, or grand canal, which runs thro' the middle of it from one end to the other, into

which they let the water of the river Nile, when it rises to a certain height; and from this canal the water is let into others, and distributed to the adjacent fields and gardens. The Khalis remains dry one half of the year, and appears a spacious street. The plague usually visits Cairo once in three or four years, and is observed to decrease as the waters of the Nile rise. Either on the site of this city, or near it, it is supposed, that the ancient Egyptian Babylon stood. The English and other Europeans have their consuls and factors here at this day, for the protection and management of the Turkey trade on that side.

(d) Alexandria, east longitude 31. 15. latitude 30. 40. a great city and port-town of the Lower Egypt, in Africa, situate fourteen miles west of the most westerly branch of the river Nile, and one hundred and twenty miles north-west of the city of Grand Cairo. The old town was about seven miles in circumference, built by Alexander the Great, and still called Scandria by the Turks; but, except one long street, which faces the harbour, it is only a heap of ruins at this day; there is little left standing but part of the walls, which have great square towers, at the distance of two hundred paces, and a little tower between them; every one of the great towers could contain two hundred soldiers, and had a cistern in it, to which the water of the Nile was conveyed; and the cisterns still serve to receive the rain-water, and what is brought them from the Nile; for Alexandria stands in a barren, desert country, where there are neither springs nor rivers, tho' it was once the capital of Egypt, and had the greatest trade of any town in the world, when the spices and treasures of the East-Indies were brought hither; and from hence distributed all over Europe; which was, in a great measure, lost, when the Portuguese found the way to the East-Indies, round Africa, about the year 1400; however, it has still a good foreign trade. The land, on which the town stands is so low, that the seamen can hardly discern it till they are very near, which was the occasion of erecting the celebrated Pharos, or high watch-tower here, so often mentioned in history. The gates of the town are still composed of Thebaic and Granite marble; but the finest piece of antiquity left, is Pompey's Pillar, being one entire piece of Granite marble, seventy feet high, and twenty-five in circumference. Alexandria, and the rest of Egypt is subject to the Grand Signior, who seems, however, to have a limited authority, being often obliged to submit the administration of the government

1702



1702 to the humours of the petty Princes of Egypt.

(e) Alexandretta, otherwise called Scanderoon, east longitude 37. latitude 36. 15. a port-town of Asiatic Turkey, situate on the coast of the lesser Asia, fifty miles north-east of the Island of Cyprus. It is the port-town to Aleppo, with which the English, and other European merchants have a considerable trade.

(f) Livonia, anciently a province of Poland, but since of Sweden, and now of Russia, is bounded by the gulph of Finland on the north, by Ingria and Great Novogorod on the east, by Lithuania and Courland on the south, and by the Baltic, or Livonian Sea, on the west, being about one hundred and sixty miles long, from north to south, and an hundred and twenty broad, and is usually subdivided into two parts; that on the north called Eastonia, or Eastland, and that on the south Lettenland, or Letticia; the chief towns wherof are Narva, Revel and Riga, all of them good harbours. It is a country, fruitful in corn, with which it supplies Sweden, Germany, and many other countries. And as it is extremely well situated for a foreign trade, and abounds with commodious harbours, it has been contended for many hundred years, by the neighbouring nations, and sometimes possessed by one, and sometimes by others; so that the inhabitants are a mixture of Germans, Danes, Poles, Swedes, and Russians. Terrible were the calamities which this country suffered in the beginning of this century; for whilst the Russians and Swedes were contending for the dominion of it, the Czar Peter the Great,

doubting whether he should be able to maintain the possession of that part of the country which he had taken from the Swedes, permitted the Calmucs, and other Tartars of his army, to commit unheard of barbarities. And at length, when the Czar had made an entire conquest of the country, observing the natives to be more inclined to their old masters the Swedes than to Russia, he compelled the natives to abandon their country, and drove multitudes of them in chains as far as the confines of the Caspian Sea; though the Czarina Catharine prevailed on the Czar afterwards to recal them, she being a native of this country; but most of them perished before that edict was published. The Livonians also were afflicted by plague and famine, and their country miserably harrassed and laid waste before they were driven from it, and other Russian nations being introduced here, the Czarina now remains in the quiet possession of all Livonia.

(g) Jordan, a river of Asiatic Turkey, in the province of Judea, or Palestine, rising in Mount Libanus, in the north, runs south quite through the country a course of about one hundred and fifty miles, forming two lakes; the first, which is almost dry in summer, called the Sea of Galilee, and the Lake of Tiberias, and sometimes the Lake of Genesareth, being about twelve miles long, and eight broad; the other called the Dead, or Salt Sea, where Sodom and Gomorrah stood; is about seventy miles long, and sixteen broad; but the ordinary channel of the river Jordan is not above twenty yards broad at present, and discharges itself into the lake, called the Dead Sea.

## C H A P. VI.

*A very rigorous Execution at Moscow; an Account of the magnificent Nuptials of one of his Czarian Majesty's particular Favourites. The Author has the Honour to be admitted into the Presence of the Empress, his Majesties Brother's Widow.*

Jan. 19.  
A shocking  
execution  
at Moscow.

ON the nineteenth of this month there was a most severe and shocking execution at (a) Moscow: A woman who had murdered her husband had sentence passed upon her to be buried alive

in the ground up to the shoulders. I had the curiosity to take a view of her under those deplorable circumstances, and to all outward appearance, her countenance was not changed. A white linnen cloth

had



1702

had been at first tied round about her head and neck; but she procured it to be taken off, because it was bound so tight that it almost choked her. There were three or four soldiers ordered to attend her, and permit no manner of sustenance to be given her, in order to prolong her life.

The populace, however, were not prevented from throwing into her grave what number of Kopukkes, or little pieces of money they thought proper to bestow upon her; for which acts of indulgence she returned her thanks by a submissive nod with her head. The small money that is thus collected is for the most part expended in little tapers, which are lighted up in commemoration of such particular saints as the delinquent then invokes, and set in a coffin. It is very probable, that the guards, appointed to attend on these unhappy wretches, secure some part of these benefactions, and apply it privately towards their own refreshment, for many of them live in this shocking condition for some considerable time. This woman, however, died in two days after I first saw her. On the very same day there was a man likewise buried alive; but for what crime in particular I cannot determine. In the prosecution of this account of mine, I shall expatiate more largely on the manner of their administering justice in this country; but shall drop that topic for the present, that I may proceed in my narrative with respect to order of time.

Jan. 26.

A magnificent wedding.

On the twenty-sixth of this instant was solemnized, with great pomp and magnificence, the nuptials of a peculiar favourite of the Czar, one, by name, Fielact Prinewitz Soutkie, a Moscovite Nobleman, with the Knezna, or Princess Mary Swrjovena Schorkofskaja, sister of the Knez Eedder Swerwitz Schorkofskaja, who was as great a favourite with the Czar as the bridegroom. To the celebration of these nuptials, this Prince invited the principal Lords and Ladies of the court, several of the foreign ministers, and a great number of such merchants and their wives as were not natives. All the guests in general had particular orders

for being dressed in the antient mode observed in that country, and more or less richly, according to a certain regulation for that purpose prescribed. This wedding was kept in the Slabode of the Getmans, at the Hotel of General Le Force, who was then lately deceased. It is a spacious edifice, and erected in the Italian taste. You go up to it by a flight of steps both to the right and left, on account of its extent; and when you are in, the apartments are all very grand and magnificent. There is a very fine Salon likewise, which was hung with rich tapestry, and in which the ceremony was performed. In one part, were two large leopards to be seen, with collars round their necks; and with their fore-paws extended on an escutcheon all of solid silver. In another, the representation of Atlas, with a large silver globe upon his shoulders; besides several large fine wrought vases, and other pieces of silver and gold plate; a considerable part whereof was brought from the Royal Treasury on this joyful occasion. The place appointed for the intended cavalcade to meet at was in the city, at but a small distance from the castle, in two grand buildings, which stood one directly against the other. The Grand Duke himself, as well as the guests that had received invitations, resorted early in the morning to these two commodious places for their reception; that is to say, the gentlemen repaired to the one, and the ladies to the other: From thence they began to move about ten o'clock; in order to proceed in form to the castle, in the center whereof I had planted myself, that I might be a spectator of this grand cavalcade, which, as the weather was exceeding fine, made a much better appearance than otherwise it would have done. In the first place, the Czar in person appeared, mounted on a pampered, black courser, dressed in a most magnificent cloth of gold; his mantle, or robe, which was thrown over it, was embellished with divers figures of variegated colours, and on his head, he wore a large scarlet fur-cap, not unlike a Turkish turban. His horse was richly caparisoned with a fine gold housings, having

L

an



1702

on each of his fore-legs, a silver hoop of about four inches at least in breadth. The majestic air of this grand Prince, who appears to a great advantage on horse-back, contributed greatly to the pomp and grandeur of the shew, which, to speak ingenuously, was perfectly Royal. On the left hand of his Majesty rode Prince Alexander Danilewitz de Menzikof, drest in as rich a cloth as the Czar, and on a horse that was caparisoned much after the same manner as his master's. The principal Knezes, or Princes, followed two and two, on horseback, according to their rank, and all drest much alike, amounting in the whole to about forty-eight or fifty. His Czarian Majesty being thus pompously accompanied to the castle, he halted there, till the rest of the company were all come up; but in the mean time, he embraced every opportunity of shewing the graces of his fine horse, by making him prance and corvet at pleasure. This was done near the gate of the Ewaritz, or the court, where were his own apartments, and where over-head were seated the Princess his sister, the Empress, widow of the late Czar, and her three daughters, all seated, and exposed to public view. As he went under this gate, the Princesses paid their compliments to him in the most respectful manner, which he returned with as good a grace. When these noblemen were thus passed through, two and two as before-mentioned; there advanced a great number of lights, surrounded by a crowd of valets; and after them an hundred and twenty of the principal courtiers, two and two, and as richly drest almost as the former. Then came the Goofs, or Custom-house officers, our Dutch resident, and the rest of the foreign merchants, whose cloaths and caps were quite different from any that had gone before them. They had all yellow-boots on, indeed, but made no figure or appearance in the least equal to the rest. Of these there were only about four and thirty; insomuch that the cavalcade might properly be said to consist of above two hundred persons, all drest in the genteel manner. Several of their

horses had silver bits; and others had silver chains about two fingers in breadth, and of a considerable thickness, which hanging from the horse's head to the bridle, and being fastened to the pommel of the saddle, made a very agreeable jingle. Some of their bits, indeed, were perfectly flat, and made only of block-tin. After these proceeded five sledges; in the three first of which were the three German doctors, and in the two last, the two most antient of our Dutch merchants. These were followed by a grand car, or chariot, covered over with scarlet cloth, and intended for the two Empresses. This is the title, or appellation, which is given by the Russians to those whom the Czar is pleased to nominate and appoint ladies of state in this, or any other public ceremony of the like nature. The first of these ladies, who was the consort of the Knez Fudder Scuserwitz Romadanofski, who acts as Viceroy at Moscow in the Czar's absence, happened to be indisposed, and could not therefore possibly be present; so that the other lady, who was the consort of Ivanawitz Boeterlieu, was obliged to appear alone. She had on her head a small, white, high-crowned felt-hat, with a narrow brim, with two maids of honour, who were seated over-against her, in this car, or chariot, which was drawn by twelve white horses, and surrounded by servants in scarlet liveries. This car was followed by twenty-five others, but all of them were much smaller, and each drawn by two horses only, tho' their covering, indeed, was of the same cloth; in one of which was the bride, and the Russian ladies in the rest. Amongst these vehicles, there was a little despicable sledge, fastened to the tail of as contemptible an horse, and in it was seated a little fellow of a very mean aspect, who made as bad an appearance to the full as his carriage, and drest like a Jew. I imagined he was thus made a public spectacle of for some crime he had committed; and so upon enquiry I found that it was intended to expose and punish him, he being a Jew by extraction, but a profelyte it seemed to the Christian faith. After these came

1702

seven



1702 seven other sledges, filled with Dutch ladies, and these were followed by a few empty chariots, which closed the procession. In this order, they all went through the castle, and from thence through one part of the city, as far as the church of Bogojastnja, that is, of the Annunciation, where the nuptials were solemnized in the presence of his Czarian Majesty, and a numerous concourse of other illustrious personages belonging to the court. Having gratified my curiosity thus far, I returned to my lodgings; and after that, I pitched upon as commodious a feat as I could get in the Slabode, in order to see the company take their tour to the place where the grand entertainment was to be when church was over. They did not come till three in the afternoon; being then about five hundred in number, both sexes included. However, the gentlemen went into one apartment, and the ladies into another, where there could be no interview. The Empress Dowager, the Czar's sister, and her three daughters sat at one table, accompanied with some of the court ladies; and the bride at another, with some of her particular female friends; and she who personated the Empress sat alone, and was raised above the rest. The other ladies, whether Russian, or foreigners wives, were in another apartment; but the music was so commodiously placed, as to be heard in all places alike. When the entertainment was over, which was very grand and magnificent, and lasted several hours, the bride and bridegroom were conducted to the place, where the nuptials were proposed to be consummated; which was at a small edifice, erected near the river Yuska, for that particular purpose; where the bed that was prepared for their reception, made but a very mean appearance. Tho' most of the company dispersed before twelve o'clock; yet a great part of them tarried in the Slabode, in houses prepared for their reception, by the Czar's express command, in order that the Russians might with greater ease meet again the day following at the same place; and from thence proceed to the Hotel of

Major General Menefius, whose widow was then living. The lady, who personated the Empress, went thither in the night time; but the bride did not go till after break of day. The Czar himself set out about ten that morning, without the attendance of any foreigners; and after he had been there about an hour, he proceeded in good order to visit Mr. Lups, who waited for him at the door, accompanied by several Dutch merchants. He tarried there some little time, with his retinue, but would not dismount, notwithstanding he was plentifully regaled with the best of liquors.

There was one occurrence, which I cannot forbear mentioning, as it created the company abundance of diversion. The bridegroom was mounted upon a very fine stone-horse; and one of his companions on as fine a mare; both of them snuffed the wind, and both were prepared for action. Tho' the bridegroom's horse did not fail to cover his friend's mare; yet the Lord, by his dexterity and address, got clear, without any misfortune; whilst the bridegroom kept the saddle during the whole amorous operation; which created laughter enough, and several witty remarks amongst the spectators. They both longed to be at the sport before they came out of the stable; but their wishes there were disappointed. Then the Czarian Prince appeared on horse-back, accompanied by several young noblemen about the same age as himself, but a groom went before, and led his horse by the bridle. He was followed by the bride's chariot, and her's by the grand car, with twelve white horses, in which was the lady who personated the Empress, and that by a great number of others full of Russian ladies. When they came to the Palace, where the nuptials were solemnized, and where I took care to be in time by going another way, his Majesty went in first; and after him the bride; who went into another set of apartments on the left-hand, which formerly was the residence of General Le Fort. The grand car stooped to make room; it being very troublesome to proceed as the cover was so lofty; and im-

1702

A diverting occurrence.



1702

impossible to turn as the passage was so narrow. During this stop, the Czarian Prince dismounted, and stood on one side of the chariot, and there continued till it was actually got in, which was attended with some difficulty; for it stuck hard at the top. After that, the young Prince crossed the Palace-yard; and the Empress alighting from her car, went up some steps on the right-hand. The foreigners and their wives resorted thither likewise, and tarried there much in the same manner as they had done the night before. On the third day, being the last, they determined to appear in the German dress, with which every body complied, except only a few Russian ladies. And they waited once more on the new-married pair; but separately. The gentlemen and the ladies sat at table together, as we do in Holland; and after the entertainment was over, there were several comic dances, which gave entire satisfaction both to his Majesty, and all the guests. And thus concluded this grand solemnity, a particular detail whereof I imagined, would be acceptable to my readers, as it was so singular, and so perfectly Royal.

Feb. 2.

On the second of February, one part of the Swedish prisoners before-mentioned were brought hither in sledges.

Feb. 4.

On the fourth, a messenger came to me, with orders for my waiting on the Czar, who was at that time in the palace of his grand favourite Prince Menzikoff. This palace is called Semennostskies, the name of a petty village, at the distance of about a mile and an half from the Slabode; where I found his Majesty very busy in trying some fire-engines, which were lately arrived from Holland: that Prince perceiving that I was there, called me to him, and went again directly into the palace. *Well!* says he, *Sir, you have seen, undoubtedly, in your travels, abundance of strange things; and yet I dare venture to assert, that you never saw a greater curiosity, than that which we intend to show you.* He then ordered a poor Russian, who had instructions to attend for that purpose, to open his cloaths. I shuddered at the very sight. He had

The author makes his appearance before the Czar.

The conversation that passed between them.

A description of the extraordinary man.

an excrescence about a hand's length below his navel, which was about four inches in substance, through which unnatural passage he voided his daily food; and in this deplorable condition (it seems) he had lived for nine years successively. This calamitous case proceeded first from a cut with a knife, which had irritated the part to that degree about the natural passage, that no relief could possibly be procured. I confessed ingenuously, that I had never seen so extraordinary a case before; but that I very well knew a certain person, who brought up his daily food, and discharged it at his mouth: at which relation he seemed almost equally surprised. After this discourse, he ordered the poor wretch's excrescence to be squeezed, that I might entertain a more adequate idea of his case, and whatever came out appeared but half digested. This miserable object was about five and thirty years of age. After I had had the honour to converse with his Czarian Majesty for about two hours, and had been plentifully regaled with the best of liquors, he left me, and Prince Alexander immediately came up to me. He informed me, that his Majesty, having heard I had practised for some time the art of painting, was very desirous that I should draw the portraits of the three young Princesses, the daughters of the late Czar Joan Alexowitz, his brother, who had reigned jointly with him to the day of his decease, which happened on the twenty-ninth of January 1696, and intimated, at the same time, that it was principally for that purpose, that I had been invited to their court. You may imagine, I very readily accepted of the honour done me; and I attended this young nobleman accordingly, who conducted me directly to the Empress, the mother of those young Princesses, who was then at one of the Czar's pleasure-houses, called Ismeilhoff, most delightfully situated, about a league's distance from Moscow, in order that I might take an uninterrupted view of them before I entered upon my intended undertaking. On my first approach to the Empress, she asked whether I was conversant with the Russian language;

1702

The occasion of it.

The author is desired to draw the portraits of the three Princesses.

Accepts of the honour done him.

Appears before the Empress.



1702

to which the young Prince immediately answered for me, that I was not : whereupon, they had a short discourse between themselves. After that, the Empress filled out a small cup of brandy, which she presented to the Prince, who, when he had emptied it, delivered it to one of the maids of honour then in waiting ; and the lady delivering it again to that Princess, she filled it a second time, and presented it to me with her own hand ; she gave the Prince and my self likewise a glass of wine ; and the same compliment was made us by the three young ladies. After this refreshment, a large glass of beer was filled out, which the Empress again presented to Prince Alexander, who, after having taken only a sip, delivered it to the same maid of honour as before ; the like ceremony was observed in relation to my self ; and I just tasted it only in the same manner ; for in this court, it would be looked upon as the grossest act of ill manners, to empty the last glass of beer that is offered. I then conversed with Prince Alexander for some time, in my own native language (as he talks Dutch pretty fluently) on the art of painting. And when we took our leave, the Empress herself, as well as the young Princesses, offered us their right-hands to kiss, which is one of the highest honours that can be conferred on a stranger in this country. Some days after this interview, there was a grand nuptial festival going forwards at Prince Menzikoff's Palace, at which the Czar himself, and the Prince, his uncle, were personally present, with a numerous train of others belonging to the court of both sexes. Several English and Dutch merchants likewise, with their respective ladies, attended these nuptials, to which they had been properly invited. The table, which was made in the form of a horse-shoe, was spread in the Grand Salon ; and the Czar and the Russian noblemen sat on one side, and the ladies on the other. The young Czarian Prince, Prince Alexander, and the English and Dutch merchants sat at a round table, in the center of the hall, to which I had the honour of being admitted. When the entertainment, which was a very

elegant and magnificent one, was over, there were several dancers, who performed after the Polish manner. On the left-hand, were seated all the musicians, who, to do them justice, performed exceedingly well.

Prince Alexander went away before it was dark, in order to spend some few days in the country, where he had some private avocations. On the eleventh instant, Mr. Panwel Heins, the Danish Envoy, set out directly for his own court, with an intention, however, to return in the spring, but left his lady behind him at Moscow. On the fifth of March, then next following, I had the honour of dining with his Majesty at Probrosensko, the usual residence of that Monarch. After dinner he took me with him to the Empresses Palace, in order to see the three young Princesses pictures, which had been begun for some time, and he entertained her a-while on the topic of my travels. On the eleventh, his Majesty went, accompanied by several noblemen belonging to the court, to pay Mr. Brants a visit, where he saw several pictures which I had drawn at (b) Archangel, and with which he seemed highly pleased. After a variety of conversation on different topics, his Majesty made mention of some particular pieces of cannon, which were generally thought to have the arms of Genoa wrought upon them ; which, like those of Venice, are a Lion with one of his paws upon a book. And as he was not perfectly satisfied, whether this general conjecture was really matter of fact, he was determined to take a view of them, in order to gratify his curiosity in that particular, and appointed the Prince's palace for the place of inspection. His Majesty accordingly was very punctual to his time ; and Prince Alexander, in the name of his Majesty, made a present of a gold medal to each of the inspectors, who, for the most part, were foreign merchants, to whose judgment he paid a great regard. On this medal his Majesty was represented with a crown of laurel on his head, with this following inscription round it, but in the Russian language, *Peter Alexowitz, Great*

M

Czar

1702

Converses with Prince Alexander on the art of painting.

Attends grand nuptial festival.



1702 *Czar of all Russia.* On the reverse were two eagles, with the day and year, viz. the first of February 1702.

After a very magnificent entertainment at this place, the company returned to Probrosensko, which was looked upon as no better than the residence of a captain, his Majesty at that time having never assumed a higher title. This palace is not above one league from Moscow, and but at a small distance from that belonging to Prince Menzikoff. It is the

arsenal likewise of the regiment of his Majesty's life-guards. It was here that we took our survey of the three cannon just before-mentioned, on each of which there was a lion visible enough, tho' worn down, indeed, pretty much. They were remarkably short, and not much unlike our mortar-pieces: but how they should have fallen into the hands of the Russians, is such a mystery to me, that I am perfectly at a loss, I confess, how to account for it.

*Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.*

(a) Moscow, see p. 23. n. c.

(b) Archangel, see p. 8. n. d.

C H A P. VII.

*Sumptuous Entertainments made by his Czarian Majesty in the Country. Several Particulars relating to the Empress. His Majesty takes his Diversion on the River (a) Moskva. The Manner of solemnizing the Festival of Easter amongst the Russians. His Majesty's Departure for (b) Archangel.*

WHILST we were taking our survey of the guns last-mentioned, all things were duly prepared for our going to a village, which appertained to Prince Alexander, called Alexcejeskie, at but a small distance from Lemuenefskie, which is about twelve wersts from Moscow, where that nobleman has a very magnificent country seat, situate on the river Youfa. 'Tis a most delightful place, where there are a great variety of canals profusely stocked with all sorts of the choicest fish. Nothing, however, struck my fancy more agreeably than the stables there, which are all very spacious, built with timber, as well as the seat itself, and above fifty of the finest horses I ever saw contained in them. On our arrival, we found, that there were several German ladies sent thither before-hand by his Majesty's express orders, with intent to make the proper provisions for a future elegant entertainment. There were ten of us in all; our resident, three

English, and the rest Dutch, exclusive of about thirteen or fourteen Russian noblemen, and ladies, amongst whom was Prince Alexander's sister. We were received there in the most courteous manner, and very elegantly entertained at supper with a profusion of all sorts of flesh and fish.

There were two tables spread in a spacious salon, or hall; one of which was a very long one, at which sat the Czar, and several of his noblemen on one side, and the ladies facing them. The other was a round table, placed in the middle of the hall, whereat were seated, the English guests, and the greater part of the German, or rather Dutch merchants. As soon as supper was over, the Russians withdrew to their respective apartments: the noblemen on one side, and the ladies on the other: the foreigners, however, tarried some considerable time longer in the hall. The day following there was a much more mag-

An agreeable entertainment.

Another.



1702

~~~~~

nificent entertainment, accompanied with a great variety of instrumental music; such as violins, bassoons, trumpets, hautboys, flutes, &c. After which, there were several dances in the Polish manner. And as his Czarian Majesty happened to be in a perfect good humour, he encouraged the company to be as jovial and free as possible; neither did he forget to supply them with a profusion of the best liquors. When night came on, every one withdrew to their separate apartments, in order to be ready for the next day's entertainment, which was spent much after the same manner as the preceding, in a variety of innocent amusements, as no one was visibly overcome with liquor, notwithstanding there was plenty; then all broke up, and went to their respective abodes with the utmost decency and decorum.

A Girl.

I then procured leave to have the pictures of the young Princesses, which I had painted in full length, returned to my apartments, in order that I might retouch them, as they were not absolutely finished; and the Czar himself pressed me to dispatch them as soon as possible, he having intentions to send them to another place. I obeyed his Majesty's commands, with the utmost expedition, and made the drapery according to the German taste, when they appear in public; but as to their heads, which were left entirely to my own discretion, I thought proper to dress them after the manner of the antients.

A description
of the
Empress,
and of the
three young
Princesses.

I shall now proceed to give you a short description of the Empress herself, called Paraskowna Feodorofna. This Princess was not then above thirty years of age; she was somewhat corpulent, it is true; but as she was moderately tall, the gracefulness of her person was not in the least diminished by her bulk. In short, we may assert, without flattery, that she was a very handsome lady, perfectly genteel, and graceful; and that her deportment was exceedingly courteous and engaging; and we must add, that the Czar had a peculiar regard for her. The young Czarian Prince Alexey Petrowitz, used frequently to visit her, and

the Princesses, her daughters, the eldest of whom, named Catharine Iwanoffna, was at that time but about twelve years of age; the second, called Anne Iwanoffna, no more than ten; and the youngest, whose name was Paraskowya Iwanoffna, but eight. All three, however, were very graceful young ladies. The first and last very agreeable brunettes; the hair of the second of a silver colour, and her complexion very fair. The youngest, indeed, seemed the most sprightly, but the demeanour of them all three was perfectly affable and courteous. It would be a difficult task for me to enumerate the many favours that were conferred upon me whilst I was employed in drawing their several portraits. In the morning I was plentifully supplied with all sorts of liquors, and a variety of other refreshments. I often likewise had the honour of dining with them; and notwithstanding it was in the middle of Lent, we had at table as great a profusion of flesh as fish; which somewhat surprized me. In the day-time I was always furnished with wine and beer in plenty; and, indeed, 'tis my opinion, that no court, especially such a court as this, was ever more indulgent to any one private person whomsoever than myself; and I hope I shall retain a grateful sense of all their civilities to my dying day. Encouraged by all these testimonies of their respect for me, I was so presumptuous as to present a book of my travels, which I had taken care to be very neatly bound for that purpose, to his Czarian Majesty, who was then at the palace of Probrosensko, flattering my self, at the same time, that it would meet with a very favourable reception; neither was I in the least disappointed in my most sanguine expectations.

1702

~~~~~

On the twenty-ninth of March 1702, his Czarian Majesty went in a boat down the river Moskva, against tide, three or four wersts beyond the bridge, and past by the castle; he then came up again with the tide, at a prodigious rate, three or four wersts on this side of the same bridge, to which he afterwards returned, and where Prince Alexander was waiting,

The artist  
presents his  
travels to  
the Czar.

Departure  
on the river  
Moskva.



1703

waiting, accompanied by several English and Dutch merchants for his arrival, whom, after his landing, he again entertained with a profusion of flesh as well as fish, notwithstanding it was Lent, and in the Passion-Week. Every one was left to his own option; but as for himself and his retinue, they never tasted the fish.

A great  
food.

The month of April commenced with such an extraordinary thaw, that in a short compass of time, there was not a block of ice to be seen; and upon this sudden and unexpected alteration, the river swelled to such a prodigious height, that the like accident had never happened before in the memory of the oldest person then living. The mills that stood on the banks of the river Youfa were greatly damaged; and the Low-lands behind the houses were laid under water from the adjacent ponds. The high-roads and lanes were likewise all overflowed; that, however, is no uncommon occurrence in the spring, when the snow begins to melt. The Slabode belonging to the Germans was in such a wet, and nasty condition, that the horses went up to their very bellies in mud and dirt; but the Czar, having soon information of it, gave orders directly for the cleansing it, and turning off the current of such filth another way.

April 5

The vigil-  
ance of the  
Cruz,  
wherever a  
fortification

On the fifth day of this month, about six in the morning, a fire broke out in the apartments of a Dutch merchant, who resided in the Slabode; to which the Czar immediately resorted, in order to be as assistant as possible, and give the proper directions, as 'tis his constant practice on such urgent occasions. There is a watch set, every hour in the night, who never fail, on any such emergency, to give the alarm.

Festival of  
Tulips.

On the same day, the Russians solemnized the festival of Easter, with all the demonstrations of public joy imaginable; because, not only the wished for time of our Saviour's Resurrection was come, but because their Lent was then over. The bells never ceased from ringing all the night before, and the two subsequent days. At that time they begin to di-

tribute their Easter-eggs amongst their friends, which holds for about a fortnight; and this custom is observed by the grandees and other substantial families, as well as by those of the lower class; by the old as well as the young; who make formal presents of them one to another: and, in short, there is not a shop in the city without numbers of them coloured and boiled. Tho' the major part of them, indeed, are painted with a plumb-blue; yet there are several done neatly enough in green and white; there are some painted more accurately than ordinary, and for which they demand two or three rixdollars. Some of them, in a word, are embellished with the following inscription in capitals, CHRISTOS WOS CHREST? That is to say, IS CHRIST RISEN? Some persons of distinction will have a considerable number of these ready in their houses, in order to make presents of them to their visitors; and when they deliver them, they kiss them with their lips, saying as above, CHRISTOS WOS CHREST? To which the person who receives them replies; WOISTINE WOS CHREST, that is, YEA VERILY HE IS RISEN. Gentlemen carry them in their pockets, and give them to such friends as they happen to meet with in the streets, as we have before-mentioned; and nobody, of what sex or station soever, will refuse to accept the offer. It is customary likewise for servants to present them to their masters; who, in return, for the generality, give them what they call a Præsnik. I had about thirteen or fourteen of them made me a present of, very neatly coloured by some of their women. In times past, these presents were deemed matters of a serious concern; but these, as well as many other things, have of late years been greatly altered. The Russian quality, and foreign merchants, in times past, were wont to present their congratulatory eggs to his Czarian Majesty himself, and have received others in return; but that custom is at present laid aside.

On the ninth of April 1702, the Czar diverted himself once more on the river Moskva. His Czarian Majesty's watermen, who

1702

April 30

□ *Journal*  
□ *in the field*  
□ *study*

who



1702

who had the management of his barge, and those belonging to the barge of the Princess, his sister, were dressed in white shirts (after the Dutch fashion) all laced down before; each of the foreign merchants had orders the night before to provide themselves with two watermen. These barges, or boats, had each of them two masts, that in case the wind should favour them they might sail without rowing. The company fell down the river from the country seat of the General Velt Marshal Bories Petrowitz Czeremetoff, which is situate on this river, at some small distance from Moscow, and directly over-against his Czarian Majesty's fine house, called Worobjowegoro. That General had the very day before the honour of entertaining his Majesty and all his train at that very house; which train consisted of the Czarian Prince, the Princess, his Majesty's sister, who was accompanied by three or four Russian ladies, a considerable number of Lords and officers of his Majesty's household, our resident, several foreign merchants, and about fifteen or sixteen German ladies. All the barges, or boats, which amounted to about forty in all, appeared before this nobleman's seat, each of them furnished with ten or twelve oars. When his Czarian Majesty, with all his train, were embarked, they sailed down the river, with great rapidity, beyond the bridge, and made the best of their way to Kolomensko, a country palace belonging to his Majesty, about twenty wersts from Moscow by water, though very little more than seven by land. There they went on shore by seven in the evening, and were entertained in a very royal manner. The next day they were entertained as magnificently as before, but with the additional amusement of a grand concert. About three in the afternoon, they returned to the city; some in coaches, some in chariots, and others on horseback. The next day, Mr. Brandts entertained the Czar, who was attended by the resident of Holland, and several English and Dutch merchants. They spent their time there in such a jovial manner, that

his Majesty himself tarried there till eleven at night; but the rest of the company did not break up till two the next morning.

On the nineteenth I received orders to carry the portraits of the three young Princesses to the Empress, in order that she might see them, as they were then compleatly finished. I went accordingly with Prince Alexander's brother-in-law; but the Princess at that time unfortunately happened to be so far indisposed as to keep her bed. However, I placed the pictures in the most advantageous light I could, that she might have a view of them even there. She seemed to approve of them very well; returned me many thanks, and made me a present of a purse of gold, with her own hand, which I had the honour to salute. After which, she asked me whether I should tarry in the country long enough to paint her three daughters over again; to which having made her a satisfactory answer, one of the young Princesses gave us some brandy in a small gilt cup, and after we had drank one glass of wine, we immediately withdrew. I gave orders directly for all the pictures to be conveyed to the palace of Prince Alexander, where I packed them up as safe as possible, in order to be sent away on an hour's notice. The same night his Czarian Majesty set out for Archangel, attended by Prince Alexander, the Patriarch Mekile Moysewitz Solof, Lord Keeper of the Great Seal, the first minister of State, Count Fedder Alexowitz Gollowin, the Sieur Gabriel Gollofskiem, the Knez Gregory Grogiewitz Rosiedanofskie Bojar, the Knez Tuerje Tuerjewitz Froetbetskoy, and the Stolnick, who attends his Majesty, as his cup-bearer, wherever he goes.

On the twenty-sixth of April, the scavengers, as we call them, began to clean the streets in the Slabode, which was carried into execution in the following manner. In the first place, the dirt was thrown up all along the sides of the houses, in order to its being the more easily removed; there being two Germans appointed to inspect their work, and give the proper direction.

1702

April 19.

They clean the way.



1702

May 3.

A flood.

directions. And this absolutely necessary undertaking was carried on with such unwearied industry and application, that at the week's end, the inhabitants of the Slabode could walk about their business without any material molestation.

About the third of May then next ensuing, we received the disagreeable intelligence from Archangel, that the thaw had swelled the river there to that degree, that it had done incredible mischief; that much the greater part of the houses which stood near the fort of New Dwinko, had been laid under water; that the timber, and the works in his Majesty's dock-yard there, were carried away by the rapidity of the torrent; that a ship which was before upon the stocks, was turned with its keel upwards; that several ships before riding at anchor, in sight of the town, had been driven with violence against the bridge, near the palace belonging to the merchants; and, in short, that the waters were risen so high as to cover even the gardens in the heart of the city.

May 4.

The next day, the inhabitants began to remove the dirt in the Slabode, that had been so thrown up as before-mentioned; each house-keeper having permission so to do, at his own expence; and to carry it into his own garden, if he had one, in order to raise it, or dispose of it in such other manner as he saw most convenient. And that so important a work might be finished with the greater expedition, the German merchants assembled themselves together at the hall belonging to the grandees there. The house is very stately, spacious, and magnificent; and commodiously situated in the midst of a very fine garden. At this their meeting, they pitched upon two other proper inspectors to aid and assist these other two who had been appointed before for that very purpose. This election was made by a majority of votes, each writing down on a slip of paper the name of the person he particularly favoured. To these four, they added eight others, as assistants, and invested them with a sufficient authority to see the work completed with the utmost expedition.

May 5.

On the ninth of May, being the festival

of St. Nicholas, several letters arrived from Holland, bearing date the twenty-eighth of April then last past, with the melancholy news of the decease of his Britannic Majesty King William the third, of immortal memory, after a short indisposition but of four days only. This created a great consternation amongst the foreign merchants, but principally amongst my own country-men the Dutch, who were more conscious to themselves than the rest of the ineffinable worth of that departed Prince, and as an incontestible proof of their sincere regard for him, and of their due sense of so great a loss, they went into deep mourning for him for six weeks successively.

On the nineteenth, we had information of a great flood, that had happened at Holland, and had not only laid several villages under water, but had proved the deaths of a great number of persons. We were farther advised likewise, that the allies had made themselves masters of Keyserwaert.

On the twenty-first was solemnized the grand festival of Walla Diemerska Bogarodiestla, a certain town, wherein, the inhabitants tell you, that the Blessed Virgin Mary had formerly made her appearance, and that in order to commemorate that condescending goodness of her's, they observed the Thursday before Pentecost, which they call Seemie, as a festival, in one of the churches belonging to that city. Early in the morning of that day, several of their clergy resort in form to a pit or ditch, and cast into it the dead bodies of all such persons as have either been unfortunately murdered, or of such others as have been justly executed according to their demerits. These ditches, or pits, of which there are three or four in the parts adjacent to Moscow, are annually filled up, and fresh ones are dug on the preceding night. On that day likewise the Empress's mother was interred with great pomp and solemnity, tho' she departed this life but the very day before. The reason, however, was, that it is contrary to the custom of the country, to keep their dead any considerable time above ground; but of this particular

1702

King William's death.

May 19.

Flood in Holland.

The allies take Keyserwaert.

May 21.

A festival in commemoration of the Birth of the Virgin Mary.

The Empress's mother interred.

re-



1702

A fire at Moscow.

Another on June 3.

religious custom we shall speak more at large in another place. In the morning of the same day a fire broke out at Moscow, which could not be extinguished till ten o'clock. On the third of June

there was another, at a village not far from thence; and on the fourteenth a third at Moscow. About the same time several merchants set out from that city for Archangel.

1702

Another on the 24th.

*Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.*

(a) Moskva, or Moscovia River, rises in the west of the province of Moscow, and running east through that province, passes by the city

of Moscow, and falls into the river Oocca, at Kolomna.

(b) Archangel, see p. 8. n. d.

XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

C H A P. VIII.

*A Description of the Products of the Earth; of the Fruits; rural Seats, fine fish-ponds, and other Articles, wherein the Russian Gentry take a peculiar Delight; as also, of the Russian Hermits who were Prisoners.*

I WENT frequently, during my residence at (a) Moscow, to take the country air, by way of amusement, with some of my most intimate acquaintance; and as I was in the woods, one day, in the month of July, I met with some Costenitza, as they call them, that is, a kind of gooseberry, which had a very agreeable acid. The gentry here eat them with honey, or fine sugar, after much the same manner as we do strawberries. They frequently likewise make with them (if we may be allowed the expression) a kind of lemonade, which is a very refreshing liquor, and is often prescribed to sick persons as a diet-drink. The woods all round about Moscow abound with this particular fruit, which grows in profusion under the shadow of the trees, not only there, but throughout the whole country. The term Costenitza, signifies, in the Russian language, a stony berry; and this gooseberry accordingly has one. Each large stalk produces three or four of a smaller size, on which the berries grow in large clusters, as may be seen in Plate A annexed. The leaves of them are green both winter and summer, and in July they are in their utmost per-

fection. There is another species of this berry, which the Russians call Brusnitsa, which are considerably larger than the former, and grow single, like those in Holland, and bear twenty or thirty in a bunch. These grow very low; some are not above a single span from the ground, and the highest not exceeding a span and an half. These are carried to Moscow annually in large quantities, at which time, not only the natives, but the foreigners, who reside there, lay in large stocks. The former throw them into tubs or casks of water, and there let them lie during the whole summer season; after that, they draw it off, and drink it; and very pleasant and refreshing this liquor is; especially, when it is properly sweetened with either honey or sugar: these gooseberries are likewise preserved, and frequently eaten by way of desert. The Germans squeeze the juice out of them, and then boil them up with sugar, or honey, till they come to a proper consistence, and make use of it with their roast-meat, and, in my opinion, the relish of it is perfectly agreeable. They cask it up likewise, and mix it with the juice of other gooseberries.

With

Delicious  
fruit.

Plate A.



1702

Plate B.

Their roots  
and greens.Their cab-  
bages.Their cu-  
cubers.Their gar-  
lick.Their green  
or horde-  
radish.Their turn-  
eps, red  
cabbages,  
and colly-  
flowers.Their aspa-  
ragus and  
artichokes.Their car-  
rots, par-  
snips, and  
beet-roots.Their sal-  
letting and  
celery.Their straw-  
berries.Their ras-  
berries.Their me-  
lons.Their fruit-  
trees.Their nuts,  
and wall-  
nuts.Their ap-  
ples.

With this liquor they entertain their vi-  
sitors; and it has a fine flavour. The  
leaves of these berries resemble those of  
the rose, as may be seen in the Plate B  
annexed, and are always green. The  
Russians have a profusion of roots and  
greens throughout their country. They  
have what they call their Koposse, that  
is to say, cabbages, which they lay by in  
heaps; and the poorer sort of the people  
regale themselves with them sometimes  
twice a day; they have likewise what  
they call their Ougertie, that is, cu-  
cubers, which they eat, as others do  
apples and pears; and these are laid by  
in their garners, by even people of fashion.  
Their country abounds likewise with  
garlick, of which the common people  
eat so profusely, that you may smell  
them at a great distance. This in their  
language is called, Siasnock. They have  
plenty likewise of what they call Green,  
and we horse-radish, with which they  
make very good sauces both for fish and  
flesh. They have divers kinds of tur-  
nips; as also of red cabbages, and colly-  
flowers; for which, indeed, they are ob-  
liged to foreigners, who have brought  
them there in plenty for some considera-  
ble time. Asparagus and artichokes are  
also common enough there; but then  
they are eaten by foreigners only. They  
are obliged to the Dutch likewise for se-  
veral roots that grow under-ground;  
such as carrots, parsnips, and beet-root;  
of all which they have plenty at present;  
as also of all manner of salletting and  
celery, to the culture whereof they were  
perfect strangers formerly, tho' at present  
they are great admirers of them all.  
There are strawberries, moreover, in  
plenty, especially of the smaller sort, in all  
the parts adjacent to Moscow. The  
larger sort they gather, and eat them by  
handfuls. Raspberries likewise grow there  
in plenty, as also a large sort of melon,  
but these are two watery, much like  
our cucumbers, and produce very little  
seed.

As to their fruit-trees, they have a  
abundance of small-nuts; but a very few  
wall-nuts. Their apples, as well such  
as are sweet, as well as those that are

sour, are pleasant to the taste, and strike  
the eye in a very agreeable manner. I  
have had a present of some of them,  
that are so transparent, that the kernels  
may be discerned in the heart of them,  
by holding them up to the light. Their  
pears, however, are just the reverse;  
they are not near so common; neither  
are they so palatable; besides they are  
extremely small. Their plumbs and  
cherries likewise are but very indifferent;  
excepting such as have been cultivated  
there in some of the orchards belonging  
to the foreign-merchants. The gardens  
of the Germans in particular abound with  
good gooseberries, and a great variety of  
the finest flowers. Those of the Russians,  
on the other hand, are wild, artless, and  
inelegant: notwithstanding the natives  
have plenty of water, and notwithstanding  
fountains and jetteaux are very ornamen-  
tal in a garden, and might be procured  
at a very trivial expence; yet they are  
perfect strangers to such rural amuse-  
ments. The Russians begin, however,  
to have a better taste than they had  
formerly, both in regard to the manage-  
ment of their gardens, and the decoration  
of their public structures; but they had  
little or none till the Czar himself was  
pleased to take a tour through the Ne-  
therlands. The Knez Daniel Gregoritz  
Serkaskie has a garden cultivated entirely  
after the Dutch taste; near one of his  
villages, called in their language, the  
Sietjove, which is at the distance of  
about thirteen wersts from Moscow; it  
is very spacious, and neat enough; and,  
in short, the finest garden throughout the  
country; but then the reader is to ob-  
serve, that the whole is submitted to the  
care and inspection of a Dutch gardener,  
retained for that purpose. Take Russia  
all together, they have not a great many  
curiosities to boast of. The principal  
beauty of their rural seats consists in their  
canals, or fish-ponds, which are exceed-  
ingly fine. There are sometimes two  
or three of them properly disposed,  
which are not only very large, but full  
of fish, which is one of their favourite  
dishes; and upon a visit of any friends  
for whom they have any regard, the  
first

1702

Their pears

Their  
plumbs and  
cherries.Their par-  
snips.Their ca-  
nals, or  
fish-ponds.



1702 first step they take is to conduct them to their pond's side, and divert them with their casting-nets, which are so capacious, that at one single haul or drag, they will furnish themselves with more fish of various kinds than would serve for twenty dishes, or more, when artfully drest.

Abundant with fish.

Their rural amusements.

I shall never forget a party of pleasure I was once concerned in with some Dutch ladies, in whose company I went to pay one Mr. Strefenof a visit. He was a very substantial merchant, and resided at a village called Fackeloof, about fifteen wersts from Moscow, by whom we were very courteously entertained. This gentleman's lady was not only exceedingly handsome, but perfectly good-natured, and used her utmost endeavours to make us jovial and gay. The house was built elegantly enough, with abundance of commodious apartments; and what was somewhat remarkable, the kitchen was very neat, and furnished in the Dutch taste, where our ladies had part of the fish, drest *Alamode Hollandoise*; notwithstanding there were dishes in plenty of all sorts of cold meats, besides twenty dishes of fish at least, drest in the Russian manner, with very elegant sauces. After dinner we were conducted into a room, that had several ropes well fastened to the beams: in these the ladies alternately swung, which is a favourite pastime in the country; and the lady of the house herself opened the diversion, by being swung by two of her female attendants, who were pretty girls enough. During the time of her swinging, she took a child in her lap; and began to sing a merry, rural song, accompanied by her maid, which was highly entertaining, and performed in the most obliging manner. She made an apology, however, for her inelegant concert, and assured us, at the same time, that had she had any previous notice of our friendly visit, she would have entertained us with instrumental as well as vocal music. After we had returned our compliments for this part of our diversion, she conducted us down to one of her fish-ponds, and ordered her servants to catch a sufficient quantity of the best fish she had, in order

to our carrying them home with us perfectly fresh. We took our leave of our kind entertainers, and took them with us into our coach, highly delighted with our agreeable present.

On one side of this village I discovered a tree of an extraordinary size; with wide-extended branches; all in due proportion. The trunk of it was at least three fathom and an half in circumference. It was a white poplar, which the Russians in their language call an *Alina*.

The white poplar, an extraordinary tree.

There are very few of the foreign merchants but what have gardens behind their apartments, or else at some small distance from the city; where they cultivate, with all the care imaginable, a great variety of fruits and flowers, which they send for from their respective homes. The beds of their gardens, indeed, are all bordered with boards instead of box-trees; and as the country-gardens have no flowers to boast of, those that grow in their woods being very indifferent; a foreigner cannot oblige a native better, than by presenting him with a nosegay out of his garden. There are some Russians, however, of the more substantial sort, that are curious enough; and cultivate as fine flowers with equal care and equal judgment.

Their manners are singular enough: when they pay a visit, and enter any room, they look about them, without saying one single word, for some faint or another; there being no visiting-room at least without such sort of decorations; and when they have fixed their eye on such picture, they make three profound formal bows to it; and signing themselves with the cross, they cry *Gospodi Pomilus!* that is to say, Lord have mercy upon me! or else they say, *Mier Ešdom Zjeiewoefonon*; that is, Peace be unto this house; and to all who reside therein! with the usual ceremony of their crosses. After that, they salute the people of the house, and speak to them. This custom they strictly observe, tho' they are paying their visits to strangers; and address themselves to the first picture they cast their eye on, lest they should pay their respects to man before his Maker. Their principal diver-

Manners of the Russians.



1702

Howling  
and Crying  
are their  
favourite  
diversions.

Their in-  
strumental  
Music.

Are particu-  
larly fond  
of Mahomet,  
perfect re-  
markably  
deformed,  
or very  
drunk.  
Their usual  
Dress.

Their man-  
ner of writ-  
ing.

Their man-  
ner of  
dressing.

Russian  
hermits.

diversions are hawking, and courting with greyhounds; and as to both those articles, they are under very proper restrictions; for the number of dogs is six; and no one is indulg'd to keep more than what is due to his rank; and as to private diversions, they have but very few. As to their instrumental music, it principally consists in the harp, the kettle-drum, the hunting-horn, and the bag-pipe. They are highly delighted when they casually fall into a madman's company; or one that is remarkably deform'd, or in short, who is perfectly intoxicated with strong liquors. Upon an entertainment of their friends, they set down to table about ten in the morning, and depart about one. Then they adjourn to their respective homes, in order to lie down to rest. This is their constant practice both winter and summer. Their manner of writing is very peculiar; for they take their paper in their left-hand, and set it on their knees, and in that posture go to work. There are some of them, however, who copy after the Dutch, especially such as are clerks, either public or private. As their manner of writing, so is their manner of stitching widely different from ours. They put their thimbles on the first finger, and therewith and the thumb, they draw the needle two and fro, which with us is directly the reverse. They make use of their feet likewise, which are for the generality naked on this occasion; and some of them will hold their work between their toes, with the same ease as we do between our knees, or by pinning it fast: I have seen some of them, indeed, take other measures.

About the beginning of July I accompanied a friend to Probrosensko, in order to have some discourse with three hermits, who had been prisoners there for near a week. They had resided in some part near (b) Asoph, upon the banks of a small river which discharges its waters into the Danube. I was startled at the sight of them. The oldest was about seventy years of age, and the other two seemed to me, not to be advanced beyond fifty. The first had resided there for near forty years successively in the hollow of a rock, where he had been once taken by the Tartars, and sold

(as a slave) to the Turks; but finding ways and means to make his escape soon afterwards, he returned to his cell, where he had passed the remainder of his days. They were accused, as they informed me, of being apostates from the Russian Faith; but all of them absolutely denied the charge, and were ready to undergo the strictest examination; and as for his part, he solemnly declared, that, notwithstanding he could neither write nor read, he was ready and willing to suffer the severest torments that could be inflicted on him for the sake of his Lord and Master JESUS CHRIST. They had no other apparel than a dark coarse gown: their hair hung half way down their back, which they never combed; and they covered their faces likewise to that degree, that it was impossible to see them, unless they purposely put their hair aside: in short, I took them to be downright savages. On their breasts they wore a large iron cross, that could not weigh less than four pounds a-piece. This hung by two iron bands which went across their shoulders, fell down their backs, and were fastened to another iron band, which served each of them for a girdle, and was joined before upon the breast underneath the cross. The two youngest expressed such a high regard and veneration for their old brother Recluse, that they supported him under each arm, whenever he rose from his seat, as he did immediately on our approach. They were ordered to continue thus under confinement till his Czarian Majesty's return. These three were always kept, however, together, without any fetters on, and sat on mats in a corner where they had the benefit of some fresh air, and at some small distance from the other prisoners, who for the most part, were chained by their feet, and thereby rendered almost incapable of stirring, their fetters being very close. Besides, for fear of their making any attempt towards an escape, there was a supervisor over each of them within-doors, as well as a proper guard without. The prison itself was composed of substantial pieces of timber; though it was not very spacious, it was square, however, and open at top for the

1702

Their habit

Their  
crosses.

Their prison  
described.



1702 the most part; there were some apartments in it, indeed, which were dark and close covered. I had a great inclination to pay these three hermits a second visit, but was informed they were removed to an adjacent house, which was more private and retired, where they were to continue till farther orders.

A victory over the Swedes.

The author paints the Pleiscovia a second time.

About the latter end of the present month of May arrived the agreeable news of a second engagement with the Swedes, and of their total defeat. Her Imperial Majesty sent for me some short time after that, in order to my painting the young Princesses once more at full length, and in the same dresses as before. I did all that lay in my power to be excused from so long and tedious a task, by pretending the unavoidable necessity I was under for the immediate pursuit of my travels; but perceiving the Empress was not a little disgusted at what she imagined a formal excuse, and little better than a genteel denial, I determined for several very cogent reasons, not to disoblige her, and went upon the work therefore with seeming alacrity, and the utmost expedition.

On the fifth of June all the merchants, who were then resident at Moscow, set out from thence directly for (c) Archangel.

We attended them, according to custom,

about ten wersts from Moscow, to a village, situate on the river Youfa; where there were tents properly spread with carpets, for the reception of several ladies who were expected there; and in short, after drinking several healths and success to them in their intended journey, we returned to the city from whence we came.

Some few days after our return, as I was taking a solitary walk round the garden, which lies behind our house, with a gun in my hand, (as shooting is one of my favourite amusements) in order to kill some snipes and ducks, which frequent the pond, or rather the river Youfa, I discerned a crane flying in the air over my head: whereupon, I loaded my piece with a ball, as common shot was not sufficient to bring down a bird of her size, and by good fortune, and a little skill, down she dropt directly into the pond. This occurrence, it seems, was somewhat remarkable; because there are but few birds of that species to be met with throughout the whole country. There are several of them, 'tis true, which are kept here for pleasure; but then they are for the generality presents from foreign parts. Out of curiosity, I ordered him to be roasted; but I cannot boast, indeed, of the entertainment; for she had fed in the fens, and tasted more like fish than flesh.

1702

The author kills a crane and gets it.

*Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.*

(a) Moscow, see p. 23. n. c.

(b) Asoph, east longitude 44. latitude 47. 15. a city of Coban Tartary in Asia, situate on the south shore of the river Don, near its mouth, a little to the east of the Palus Meotis. This town standing on the frontiers of Russia against Turkey has been several times

taken and retaken of late years, but on the last peace concluded in the year 1739, between those two powers, it was agreed that the fortifications should be demolished, and the town remain subject to Russia.

(c) Archangel, see p. 8. n. d.

CHAP.



## C H A P. IX.

*A particular Description of Moscow; together with a succinct Account of all the Churches and Convents, or Monasteries, therein contained; as also several other Articles equally curious and entertaining.*

HAVING proceeded thus far, I think it incumbent on me now to expatiate a little on the states of his Czarian Majesty, who, by word of mouth, honoured me with full permission to say whatever I thought proper on that topic; provided I took care to advance nothing but what was matter of fact.

I shall commence with an accurate, though compendious description of the city of (a) Moscow, of which I took a survey from the top of one of the Czar's palaces, called Morobjowa, which is a wooden structure of a very large extent, though but two stories high only. On the ground-floor, there are no less than 124 several apartments, and I presume there are the same number over them. The whole fabrick is surrounded by a wooden wall. It stands upon an eminence, and directly over-against the convent, called the Dewits, on the other side of the river (b) Moskwa, about three wersts westward from the city. Some few days before I had been very elegantly entertained there, together with some of my acquaintance, and a select company of ladies, by the brother-in-law of Prince Alexander. His Czarian Majesty himself had pitched upon this particular spot, as most commodious for my purpose; and so in effect it was; but as his Majesty's sister, had taken it for the summer season, I begged the favour of that Prince's brother-in-law to introduce me to the Princess, and give me an opportunity of communicating to her the order I had received. I had no sooner told her my errand, but she very courteously informed me, that I was welcome to come there when, and as often as I pleased, with this restriction only, that I brought but one attendant with me. Ac-

cordingly I went thither day after day for some time, till I had accomplished my design upon paper in water-colours, from one of the windows belonging to the palace, as the reader may observe in the plate annexed. From thence I had a full prospect, not only of every thing remarkable in the city it self, but of many things worthy of notice likewise in the parts adjacent. Every article is carefully distinguished by some numeral figure; as for instance; (1) The new convent, or monastery, of Dewits, that is to say, of the Nuns. (2) The quarters belonging to a regiment of foot. (3) The porters lodge, called the Worstruki. (4) A place distinguished by the name of Sufchowa. (5) The cloister, called the Newinskoy monastery. (6) The Sawinskoy monastery, or convent of St. Sawin. (7) The church of Nicola-n-Rhipach, so called from its being consecrated to the memory of St. Nicolas. (8) The church of Blagowischena, that is to say, the annunciation of the blessed virgin Mary. (9) The Dewits Monastir Strathnoi, or the convent of the maid in distress. (10) The Ultretskoy Baschna, that is to say, the tower of the gate, called Ultretsk. (11) The Potrofschey Monastir, or convent of St. Peter. (12) The castle, or palace, from whence this survey was taken. (13) The Troitska Baschna, or the tower of the church, without the palace, which is distinguished by that name. (14) The grand church of Saboor, which is by far the most magnificent, and can boast of more valuable reliques than any other church throughout the city. (15) Iwan Welick, or the lofty tower belonging to the castle. (16) The Izerkot Philatowa, or the fine church, that was erected by one Philatowa. (17) The church called the Wassafesuja

Borofchal

See Plate  
Numb. XII.



1702 Borofchal. (18) The Kodafchewa, a place on one side of the church, set apart for the residence of his Majesty's linnen-cloth weavers. (19) The church of St. Nicholas. (20) The church of Elijah called Glym Borock. (21) The Tugauin, a church so called from the place whereon it is erected. (22) The Andonot Monastir, that is to say, the convent dedicated to St. Andronius. (23) The fine Monastir, called the Spas-Novoy, or the new Saviour. (24) The palace belonging to the cloister of Krutisch. (25) The Donko Monastir, or the convent of the Donfche, or mother of God. (26) The Spasa Novoy Monastir, or the new convent dedicated to our blessed Saviour. (27) The convent of St. Andrew. (28) The Danilofski Monastir, or the cloister of St. Daniel. (29) The river of (b) Moskva. (30) The Worobjowa Gora, or the hill of sparrows.

Authors  
misinform-  
ed in re-  
gard to this  
city.

In extent.

In gates.

Some historians peremptorily assert, that Moscow was as big again formerly as it is at present; but, upon the strictest enquiry that I could make, I found that it is much larger now than ever it was before; and that it never could boast of so many spacious stone-buildings as at this Day, and which are still daily encreasing. This city is in 55 degrees 30 minutes of northern latitude, and is sometimes called Moscow or Mosco, and sometimes again Muscov, or Moscu. It is situate in the southern parts, and much about the center of Russia or Moscovy, upon the little river Moskva, from whence it derives its name. It is three leagues at least in circumference, without the earth or clay-wall, and has twelve several gates belonging to it; that, for instance, (1) called Potroffe Warate, or the gate of Potroffe. There is a whole street that goes under that denomination, which extends itself as far as the Red-wall, called the Kitai. (2) The Mefnite gate, which has a street likewise of the same denomination. These two gates, which are both stone-structures, belong to the stone-wall. The (3) is, properly speaking, nothing more than a high-way leading to a gate of the city, called the Ustretensc Bralon; for there is no gate, but an opening only on that side in the clay-wall. The (4) is called the Petroffe, where there is a

street that leads to the city. The (5) is called the Twerkfke, where there is a street of that name. The (6) is called the Mekitfe, with a street likewise under the same denomination. The (7) is called the Arbatfe. The (8) The Pref-zikhwetfche, which has a street likewise, and was formerly known by the name, of 't Zertelfe. The (9) Drefwetfche, of the same situation. The (10) Kak-netfke, situate on the river Negliene. The (11) of the same situation. The (12) Tagantfe, or Tantfe, situate in the same manner.

Having taken this tour, I went the very next day all round the city-wall, called Belay Gorod, and found, that it was no more than an hour and an half's moderate journey in circumference. Between most of the city-gates just before mentioned, there are two towers at least upon the walls; but three between some of them. Though they are quadrangular, they are by no means fit for cannon, and stand four hundred paces at least distant one from another. There are two gates only, between which no towers are erected; and on that spot, indeed, his Czarian Majesty has made a garden; infomuch that there is no passage perfectly round by the wall-side.

The walls.

Moscow is divided into four parts. The first whereof is the castle, or palace, called Viremsgozod, situate on the river Moskva which flows to the westward, and empties its water into the ocean near the city of (c) Columnia, or Kolomna, which is about thirty six leagues from Moscow, and the (d) Occa falls into the (e) Wolga, not far from (f) Nifi-Novogorod, which is about one hundred leagues from Moscow. This castle is surrounded with a high stone-wall, which is flanked with divers towers; and the plate above referred to is the fine prospect of it from the river-side near the great bridge. It has four gates; the first called the Spakae, where the dial stands; the second called the Nikolske Demkamennon-Morlu; the third called the Trifwalske; and the last Taynufki. It is surrounded likewise by a dry ditch that leads down to the river. As there are no cannon in this castle, or

The palace.

P

palace,



1702

palace, they fire their guns on all public days of rejoicing, from the Arsenal, and plant others in the Bazat, or grand market-place, before the court. This castle, in which his Czarian Majesty never resides, is erected with blocks of stone, and is for the most part very dark and dismal; it is inhabited, however, by the Patriarch; and the courts of judicature, which are called the Pritsies, are held there. Some of the principal courtiers had formerly several houses there; but his Czarian Majesty took possession of them all for his own use, one only excepted. In the center of the great court, which is surrounded with buildings, stands a tower called the Iwan Welike, or Great John, where hung the Maffy Bell, which fell down, by means of the fire that happened in the year 1707, and split; it is asserted by some, that it weighed no less than 266,666 pounds of Dutch weight, or 8000 Peels, at 33 pounds each. It was founded in the reign of the Grand Duke Gudenan. It is, doubtless, of a surprising size, has several Russian characters on the borders of it, and on one side, three heads in basso-relievo. You must go up one hundred and eight steps between two towers, in case your curiosity leads you to see it. And if you go but one and thirty steps higher, you will there see eight other bells hung in the cross-pieces of the windows belonging to this tower; and by ascending only thirty steps above that belfry, you will see nine more, which are hung in the same manner; some larger than the other; and some only two and two; but to gratify your curiosity in this particular, you must go up two different wooden ladders; one of ten steps only, and the other of twenty. From the top of this tower, you have a very advantageous prospect of the whole city, and of all the fine stone-churches with which it abounds; and as the domes and steeples of a great number of them are gilt, they strike the eye in a most agreeable manner on a fine sun-shiny day. There is nothing, however, so grand and magnificent, as the before-mentioned church of Saboor. Besides this, there are divers other fine stone-structures interspersed throughout the city; workmen are at this present

A prodigious heavy bell.

Several other bells.

The church of Saboor.

junction employed in erecting a new grand Arsenal, but of wood-work, before St. Nicholas's gate, which, when finished, is to be principally set apart for the public performance of their theatrical entertainments.

Within these few months they have retained several comedians from (g) Dantzick, who performed divers pieces this winter at the Hôtel of General le Fort lately deceased; and the Russians have already attempted to copy after them; but, as it may easily be imagined, in but a very faint and imperfect manner: It is certain, however, that they have some taste and genius for such public representations; besides, it must be allowed, that they are fond of mimicry, be it good or bad; and when they are made sensible of the polite deportment and good manners of some foreigners, and how much superior it is to theirs; they very ingenuously will acknowledge themselves by far out-done; but they will insinuate, indeed, at the same time, that their imitation is none of the worst.

Having thus given a short, but I hope a satisfactory account of this first division, I shall proceed to the second, which almost covers one fourth part of the castle, known by the Kut Kietay Gorod, which stands almost in the center of the city, and is surrounded by a high stone-wall, called Krasnaja-stenna, that is to say, the red-wall; because that was in former days its real colour, but it has since been totally whitened by the express orders of the then reigning Princess Sophia Alexesna, and her younger brothers. Within this wall, and directly over-against the castle, stands the grand church of St. Troïtski, or the Holy Trinity, which was erected by a famous Italian, and is looked upon as the most beautiful church in the whole city, that of Saboor only excepted. Here likewise is kept the grand market, which is daily frequented by a vast concourse of people of all ranks and degrees whatsoever; here likewise stands some of the best houses in the whole city, some of the largest warehouses in the possession of their own, as well as of foreign merchants, who attend them daily; and, in a word, some of the finest shops, that the best tradesmen can

1702

The new Arsenal, and the other public edifices.

Comedians from Dantzick, who performed this winter at the Hôtel of General le Fort.

Are copied after by the Russians, but in a very imperfect manner.

Their taste.

A famous Italian, who erected the church of St. Troïtski.

The red wall.

The grand church of St. Troïtski.

Its guard-house.

Its various warehouses for merchandise.

best



1702

In front  
for houses  
shops, and  
public.The third  
division of  
the city, or  
the white  
wall.The little  
river Neg-  
lina.The fourth  
division of  
the city,  
within the  
earth, or  
clay-wall.The first  
Czar of  
Moscow.

boast of, according to the commodities they respectively deal in, whether by wholesale or retail. There are, moreover, divers covered places for such as vend all sorts of cloths, either linnen or woollen, stuff, gold-smith's works, filks, furs, and other wares of the like nature. There are likewise some whole streets in this division, peculiarly appropriated to the inferior artificers, such as pedlars, and other petty chapmen.

The third division of the city is called *Beloy Gorod*, that is to say, the White Wall. This and the *Kietay Gorod* before-mentioned, absolutely surround the castle to the river of *Moska*: this division likewise has a wall peculiar to itself. The small river of *Neglina* runs through it, and has the arsenal on the one side of it, and the *Grand Kabac*, or public brandy-shop, on the other.

The fourth and last division, comprized within the clay-wall, or wall of earth, bears the name of the *Skerodum*, that is to say, thrown up in a hurry; this wall having been erected in a very short compass of time; and more particularly those parts of it towards the rivers *Moska* and *Neglina*, in order to prevent any sudden incursions of the *Tartars*, which happened in the Reign of the Czar *Fedor Iwanowitz*, and in the year of our Lord 1584. That Prince was the son of the Czar *Joan Wessielewitz*, the first that ever assumed the title of Czar, after he had added by conquest to his Empire, the four kingdoms of *Kasernof* (*b*), *Casan* (*i*), *Astracan*, and (*k*) *Siberia*. The appellation of Czar, which is a Slavonic term, does not signify an Emperor, but a King only; according to some historians; for the Slavonians, say they, write the word *Keiser*, *Zesar*, or *Kesar*, to denote an Emperor; whereas they use the word *Koning*, or *Karotie*, to signify a King. The Germans likewise are grossly mistaken, who imagine, that the term *Czarietse* means *Keisarin*, or *Empress*; since it denotes nothing more than a Queen.

In this division, at present, stand most of the *Slabodes*, that is, places of residence for the *Streltes*, or military gentry; notwith-

standing in former times their habitations were, for the most part, within the circuit of the red and white walls. His Czarian Majesty, however, thought it most advisable to remove them, as they were very insolent, and greatly addicted to mutiny and desertion.

I must own, in regard to their buildings, nothing surprised me more than their custom of buying and selling their particular tenements, or apartments, daily in open markets, as they would any other commodity whatsoever, to which they had a legal title. These habitations, or apartments, are composed of pieces of timber, or trees, so contrived, as to take to pieces, and be carried away with you where you please, and to be erected again on what particular spot you judge most proper. A house of this kind of building will stand the purchaser perhaps in one hundred or two hundred rubles, each ruble to be valued at five Dutch florins, and so any room or apartment, in proportion.

There are certain suburbs, villages, and monasteries or convents, situate beyond the clay-wall, or wall of earth, which lie scattered all round about the city; some of them, indeed, stand contiguous to each other, and some are even adjoining to the wall. The *Slabode*, or district of the Germans, is not above a mile and a half distant from the city; and there are divers other villages to be met with which with lie more remote.

The churches and convents belonging to the city of Moscow, the castle, and other grand structures in the other divisions, and adjacent to the clay-wall before-mentioned, on the outside, are so numerous, that they are computed at no less than six hundred and seventy-nine, the chapels inclusive. The structure of these churches are, for the generality, as round as an apple, or an orange; not as some vainly imagine, to imitate the grand dome of the Heavens; but to aid and assist the priests in their sacred chauntings: there are some again, who imagine, that the Russians have a peculiar veneration for bells, as deeming the sound of them

1703

Habitations  
lodgings  
follow  
houses as  
other towns  
inhabitants.The structure  
of  
churches  
and  
con-  
vents.The struc-  
ture of  
their  
churches  
round, and  
why.



1702

Their monasteries, or convents, and their various other institutions.

acceptable in the ears of the Almighty: but such historians are greatly mistaken; the Russians are not so superstitious as that comes to; they consecrate them, indeed, as the Roman Catholics do, and ring them always on grand festivals, and on Sundays before divine service.

The convents, or monasteries, in and about the city of Moscow, are distinguished by several names and titles; there are two of them in the castle, one for the peculiar service of their male devotees, called Zudoff Monastir; that is to say, the convent, or cloister of miracles; and here they inter the bodies of their Czarinas and Princesses. The remains of the Czars are deposited in another Royal dormitory, of which particular notice shall be taken in another, and more proper place. The other is called Wofnenskoy, that is to say, the monastery of the Ascension of Jesus Christ; which is set apart for their female devotees, or nuns: there are several convents likewise, situate without the stone-wall of the city, which are very fine and very rich; such, for instance, as the Spaskoi Monastir, or convent of the Saviour of Mankind; the Simonofskoi, dedicated to St. Andronius; the Doufkoï, devoted to the Mother of Christ; of whom they tell you a thousand of her miraculous operations, if you will believe them, on the Don, or Tanais; the Danilof, or that of St. Daniel; the Dewitfe, or the grand monastery of nuns; the Noofinkoi Statoutenskoi, or that of St. Chrystom: the Iwanofskoi, or that of St. John; the Rosihestrunkoi, or that of the Incarnation; the Warfonofskoi, a convent devoted to a Saint of that name; the Satzatoï, or that of the reception; the Moisefskoi, or that of Moses; the Strefnoi, or that of the Tremendous; the Sawifenskoi, so called from its situation; the Stretenskoi, or that of the Assembly; the Miklaefskoi, or that of St. Nicholas, together with two others of the same denomination, making, in the whole, no less than two and twenty convents. Almost all the streets are over-spread with timber, or wooden bridges, and are impassable in the summer-season, when it frequently rains; for upon such occasions, there are nothing but quagmires, consist-

The houses here, as in most, are built of timber, and are very close together.

ing of loads of mud and dirt. The shopkeepers in this city are so very numerous, that they are obliged to contract themselves into a very narrow compass, for the prosecution of their respective occupations, which they shut up a-nights at proper hours, notwithstanding some of their streets are tolerably large. There are likewise several prickaes in the city, that is to say, public offices, or courts of judicature, the principal of which is that called the Possolfe, for the transaction of foreign affairs; the Rosfed, where the register of the Russian nobility, governors, and other ministers is kept, in order to have recourse to on all proper occasions; the Dworets, where the account of the Czar's house-hold affairs are kept; the Posnew, or register-office, for all the lands within the dominions of Russia; and, in a word, the register of the Strelfes, or military gentry, whose number has greatly decreased since the last insurrection. All these public-offices, or prickaes, in general, are stone-buildings, and are crowded with hackney-writers and clerks, whose several apartments have more the appearance of gloomy prisons, than places set apart for public business; and it is no uncommon thing to meet with persons that are under close confinement there; for in some of the apartments theretobelonging, even criminals are locked up, and fettered; nay, creditors likewise, who are allowed, indeed, to walk about, but have irons rattling at their heels; the head-clerks, it is true, have proper apartments allotted them; but in some of the prickaes, the officers sit together promiscuously at a long table, covered with coarse red-cloth, like the hangings of an ordinary room. The registers of such offices as have the administration of foreign affairs entrusted to their care and conduct, are kept in that called the Mosens: those registers of the lands of Casan and Astracan, and the provinces thereto annexed, in that which they call the Kafans d'Woore. There is likewise a register of the arms, kept at an office newly erected for the admiralty, called Ruschewne. The dispensatory is kept in the same place; as is also the register for the names of all such goldsmiths as are retained

1702

Great numbers of shopkeepers.

Their Prickas, or public offices, and their respective names.

Clerks and hackney-writers very numerous.

The Dispensary.



1702

tained in his Majesty's service, and are paid in that office. The registers of the greater part of the revenues of the state, are kept in the *Bolschaia Kassa*. The nobility, and the commissioners, or head-clerks, have their trials in those offices, distinguished by the names of *Soednoi Wolodinerskoi*, and *Sudnoi Moskovskoi*. The duties belonging to the seals, are paid into the office called the *Perfutoi*, and are registered therein. Every religious house is subject to the *prikaes* of the convents; and all ecclesiastical causes are heard and determined in that belonging to the patriarch; such for instance, as relate to marriages, estates of inheritance, arbitrations, family-dissentions, adulteries, fornications, and cases of the like nature. That called the *Jamskoi* is the office peculiarly set apart for registering of all such carmen, or drivers, as are annually employed in his Majesty's service.

During my residence at Moscow, all these eighteen several *prikaes*, or public offices, were kept in the castle; but there were several, indeed, without; such, for instance, as that called the *Puschkarisch*, for the registering of their cannon; the *Sibiersch*, for the administration of the affairs of Siberia; the *Rosboina*, where murderers, and other capital criminals, are tried, condemned, or acquitted. The principal, or head-officer of these *prikaes*, is, for the most part, a favourite at court, and one of the prime ministers of State, whom his Czarian Majesty invests with this important post, either through favour and affection, or as a grateful acknowledgment of some signal services. It is one step, likewise, towards the very highest posts in the whole kingdom, that is to say, it is an introduction to the being constituted a Boyard, or Counsellor of State, which is an office of that dignity, as, with great propriety, may be compared to that of a grandee of Spain, or a peer of France; or else to be one of those called the *Okolnitsches*; that is, one of those who personally accompany his Czarian Majesty, when he goes abroad; or of the *Doemne Divorens*, that is, one of the noble counsellors, or of the *Doemne Diack*, that is, one of the se-

cretaries of the council; or of the *Stolniks*, that is, one of the officers that attend on his Majesty at table; or of the *Worenes*, that is, one of the officers of the court; or, to conclude, of the *Schilfi*, that is to say, an officer but one degree inferior to those last-mentioned. The first of the nobility, and all such as have the honour to be in any degree of consanguinity with the Czarina, are frequently promoted to the post of a *Spalnick*, that is to say, is constituted one of the gentlemen of his Majesty's bed-chamber; after these follow the stewards of the household, the carvers, the cup-bearers, and so gradually descending. The Czar, soon after his return from the (m) Netherlands, created an order of knighthood, under the patronage and protection of the Apostle St. Andrew, and has already dignified five of his favourite courtiers with that honourable title, whose names are as follow, viz. the Count Fyodor Alexowitz Gollowin, a Boyard, Prime Minister of State, and High Admiral of the seas; Hetman, the Grand General of the Cossacs; Mr. Printz, Ambassador Extraordinary from the King of Prussia; the General Velt-Marshall Boris; and Petrowitz Czeremetof; to each of these he made a present of St. Andrew's Cross; together with the image or picture of that Saint in miniature, set with diamonds.

To the grandeur and dignity of this court we may farther add, that his Czarian Majesty is a despotic Prince, and invested with an unlimited power over all his subjects; that his will alone, however partial, is his law; that he can, if he thinks fit, dispose not only of the fortunes, but the lives likewise of any of his people, from the courtier to the peasant, on the least disgust; in a word, that his power extends itself over all affairs, spiritual as well as temporal; for he can new-model, just as his fancy directs him, the whole form of divine service; which is an attempt too dangerous for any other crowned head, and such a ticklish point, that no other would venture to interpose so far, for fear of raising the clergy's resentment to too high a pitch.

Having thus expatiated pretty largely  
Q on

1702

The order  
of St. An-  
drew.

Officers of  
State.



1762 on the rewards conferred on merit, and on all such as testify their zeal and attachment to his Majesty's interest, and deport themselves so as to be entitled to his favour, either in peace or war, and to be entrusted with the administration of all public affairs; we shall now drop that topic, and proceed to give a cursory account of the various kinds of punishments as are inflicted on criminals, or such other delinquents as unhappily fall into disgrace, and become the objects of his Majesty's resentment, and high displeasure. The most shocking and severe is that of their burning persons alive. For this purpose, they erect a small wooden house, in a quadrangular form, which is loaded with a profusion of straw both within and without; in this, the poor unhappy criminal, after sentence pronounced, is shut up, and then fire is immediately applied; which, in a few moments, suffocates the party, and, in a short compass of time, reduces the whole structure, to dust and ashes.

Their various punishments, and such, their burning delinquents alive.

Their beheading and hanging.

Their burying alive.

Their whipping.

Their manner of beheading persons of distinction is with an ax upon a block, and their method of hanging of common delinquents, is on a gibbet erected for that purpose, as in other countries. Some again are buried alive in the ground up to their shoulders, an instance of which we have before related. Now, what is peculiarly remarkable is this; that whenever these executions happen, they are transacted with that silence and precaution, that one end of the town knows nothing of what passes at the other. As for such whose crimes are not so flagrant as to touch their lives, their punishment is, for the most part, the Knoet, that is, a large leather thong, or whip, which the executioner sometimes lays upon the naked back with so heavy a hand, as that some of them actually expire under the operation. Their manner of inflicting this particular punishment is something odd and peculiar; for the executioner has a power to pitch upon any person amongst the gaping crowd, who appears to him to be a strong, robust fellow, and make him take the delinquent upon his back, with his arms laid over his shoulders, and

across his breast; after that, the executioner ties his feet; and one of his assistants, taking fast hold of the hair of his head, he administers the number of strokes appointed, be they more or less, which never fail of flinging off the skin, unless peculiarly and partially favoured: for crimes of a less heinous nature, they make use of drubbing only: in this case, the delinquent is laid flat on his belly; one of the executioner's assistants sits upon his head, and another on his heels, while the punishment to which he is doomed is duly inflicted. When any delinquents are tortured, in order to extort from them an open confession of the crimes and misdemeanours laid to their charge; they hang the party up, and, after having whipt him severely with the Knoet, draw a red hot iron over the wounds he has received; but the most severe, and most afflictive torture that some, who are more obstinate and stubborn than ordinary, undergo, is, when the crowns of their head are close shaved, and cold water is gradually dropt down upon them.

The punishment which they generally inflict, either on insolvent debtors, or such as are able, but not willing to satisfy the demands of their creditors, is this; they are, in the first place, exposed to public view before the prikacs, or public offices, and then and there receive three heavy strokes with a cudgel on one side of their legs. Such as are indebted to the amount of an hundred rubles, or five hundred florins, are punished in that manner, daily, for a whole month without intermission; and such whose debts fall short of that sum, are only punished in proportion, but in the same manner. And after all the mortifications that they have laboured under, in case they cannot compromise matters, and procure their discharge; an appraisement of their effects is immediately made, and the money raised thereupon delivered into the hands of their creditors; and, in a word, if even this falls short of giving satisfaction to their merciless creditors, their very wives and children are delivered into their custody, till the whole debt is discharged by service; and for

1762

Their Arab-  
bag.

Their last  
torture.

The punishment  
inflicted on  
debtors.

such



1702

such service, they are allowed only five rubles annually for a man, and half the sum for a woman: there is some reason, however, to be given for so small a deduction; because the creditor who receives them is obliged, not only to maintain them, but furnish them with decent apparel. And in this unhappy state of servitude, must the poor wives and children remain, be the time longer or shorter, till the last penny be duly and truly discharged.

Moscow, its situation

Moscow is said to be situate in the center and best part of Moscovy, 120 leagues from the frontiers on all sides; 86 from those of (n) Poland, and 460 from the Empire of (o) Persia, or the town of (p) Tarku, which is under the Moscovite, on this side of the (q) Caspian, admitting each league to be equal to an hour. From Moscow, likewise, to the last frontier place belonging to his Czarian Majesty in (r) Siberia, or to the river of Argoon, or (s) Argun, which divides the dominions of that Prince from those of the Cham of (t) China, are 7,600 wersts, or 1,320 leagues, and from thence to (u) Pekin, the capital of China, 2500 wersts, as I have been credibly informed by the Sieur Everhard Ibrants, who travelled this journey in the quality of Envoy from (w) Russia. As for Moscovy in general, that part which the Latins call Russia-Nigra, or Rubra, that is to say, Black or Red Russia, and sometimes called Lesser Russia, is situate in the southern part of (x) Poland, between (y) Polesia, (z) Volhinia, (aa) Podolia, (bb) Transilvania, and (cc) Hungary; whilst Russia is to the northward of the Red, and is the largest country in all Europe, lying between the Icy-Sea, the river of Ialick, the Caspian Sea, one part of (dd) Wolga, the (ee) Crim, or Precopian Tartary, the (ff) Nieper of Borysthenes, the Grand Dutchy of (gg) Lithuania, (hh) Livonia, (ii) Esthonia, (kk) Ingria, (ll) Sweden, and the (mm) Swedish Lapland.

The principal cities of Russia, or Moscovy.

Its principal cities are Moscow, (nn) Wolodimet, (oo) Novogorod, (pp) Smolensko, Casan, (qq) Bulgar, Astracin, (rr) Wologda, (ss) Plekow, (tt) Refan, (uu) Archangel, and (vv) St. Nicholas.

1702

The General Cause of Moscow.

In the year 1533, this Empire of Russia was under the dominion, and subject to the Grand Duke, or Czar Iwan, or John Basilowitz, a perfect savage, and a tyrant, who departed this life in the year 1584. His son Fedor, or Theodore Iwanowitz, was his immediate successor, but died within fourteen years after his accession to the crown. Upon his decease, which was in the year 1598, Boris Gudenon got possession of the throne, but died suddenly about seven years afterwards, that is to say, in the year 1605. His son Fedor Borislowitz Gudenon succeeded him, 'tis true; but reigned three months only; for he was put to death by the treacherous Demetrius in 1606. As he got possession of the throne, however, by usurpation, the Russians actually burnt him in 1607. One Basil Zuski succeeded him; but his subjects delivered him up into the hands of the Poles, amongst whom he died in the year 1610. In his stead, reigned Prince Uladislau, the son of Sigismund, then King of Poland; but one Michalowitz, or Michael Federowitz of Romanof, seized on the crown in the year 1613, and reigned in his stead till the year 1645. Alexius Michalowitz, his son, succeeded him, but died on the twenty-ninth of January 1676. In his stead reigned Fedor Alexewitz, who died on the twenty-seventh of April, 1682, without issue. His brother Peter Alexewitz was soon after elected by the Russians; but a powerful faction arose, who espoused the interest of his brother Ivan Alexowitz, and before the year was expired, established him as joint-partner in the throne. He died, however, on the twenty-ninth of January 1696.

These Patriarchs, and others.

They reckon but eleven Patriarchs only to the year 1700, whose names were as follow, viz. (1) Joff. (2) Germogen. (3) Ignatius, tho' he is not reckoned, indeed, amongst the rest, as he was a Roman-Catholic under the usurper Demetrius above-mentioned. (4) Philaret. (5) Jofaff. (6) Joffiff. (7) Nikon. (8) Jofaph. (9) Pesterim. (10) Joachim, and (11) Advan; since whom no other has been elected to this day.

In



1702

The Czar's  
family of  
State.

In the year 1689, there were no less than forty-four Boyars, that is to say, Counsellors of State, who were illustrious personages of the several families herein-after particularly mentioned, viz. Two of the family of the Zirkasses; three of that of the Galithens; one of the Odieskoy; three of the Ptozofskoy; five of the Sollickowes; three of the Wrusforey; three of the Czeremetof; one of the Dolgoruki; one of the Bonadanofski; one of the Trokurof; one of the Repum; one of the Wolenskoy; one of the Koslofskoy; one of the Berantenskoy; one of the Tzerbutof; two of the Golowins; one of the Scheyn; two of the Bakurlino; one of the Puskin; one of the Chilkoff; one of the Stueschnoff; one of the Sabakim; two of the Miloslavskoy; two of the Nariulkans; one of the Sokoffinus; one of the Tufchoff; and one of the Martunskin. These are the attendants on the Czar in his Privy-Councils; and these favourite courtiers have the administration of all his public affairs.

The Czar's  
army forces.

The troops which his Czarian Majesty, for the most part, keeps on foot, amount to no less than 46, or 50,000; besides several regiments both of horse and lances, who are paid out of the Royal treasury, and receive part of their annual stipend in cash, and part in corn, and other necessities of life. In time of war, the whole body of the Russian nobility are summoned to attend, who are, doubtless, a very potent body, and amount (according to the nearest computation) to little less than 2,000,000, their several servants, and other attendants included: some of them, indeed, have no less than ten or twenty in their retinue; but the majority make their appearance with two or three only at most.

The revenues  
of Russia.

The revenues of Russia, of which some notice has already been taken, principally arise from the skins and furs, corn, leather, ashes, hemp, mats, tar, tallow, and other commodities of the like nature. A considerable sum likewise arises from the Kababs, which are houses belonging to his Czarian Majesty, where are publicly vended beer, brandy, and mead.

The customs inward amount likewise to a large sum. Caviar is transported from Archangel into foreign countries; as is ising-glass also, which is the bladder of the sturgeon, and taken in great quantities at Astracan, and other places on the Wolga. This latter commodity is principally used for the refining of wines; and besides, it makes an excellent glue. A great part of it, moreover, is consumed by those who practise the art of dying.

I shall close this chapter with a succinct account of the length of the days and nights in Russia, which I flatter myself, will be an acceptable amusement to the curious. The autumnal equinox falls out on the eighth of September, which makes the day and night equal. On the twenty-fourth, the day is eleven hours, and the night thirteen. On the tenth of October, the day is ten hours only, and the night fourteen. On the twenty-sixth, the day is but nine, and the night fifteen. On the eleventh of November, the day is eight only, and the night sixteen. On the twenty-seventh, the day is but seven hours, and the night seventeen. On the twelfth of December, the days begin to lengthen. On the first of January, the day is eight hours, and the night sixteen. On the seventeenth, the day is nine hours, and the night fifteen. On the second of February, the day is ten hours, and the night fourteen. On the eighteenth, the day is eleven hours, and the night thirteen. On the sixth of March, the vernal equinox makes the day and night equal. On the twenty-second, the day is thirteen hours, and the night but eleven. On the seventh of April, the day is fourteen hours, and the night only ten. On the twenty-third, the day is fifteen hours, and the night only nine. On the ninth of May, the day is sixteen hours, and the night but eight. On the twenty-fifth, the day is seventeen hours, and the night only seven. On the twelfth of June, the days begin to shorten. On the sixth of July, the day is sixteen hours, and the night eight. On the twenty-second, the day is fifteen hours, and the night nine. On the first of August, the day is fourteen hours,

1702

Length of  
the days  
and nights  
in Russia.



1702  
On hours, and the night ten. On the twenty-third the day is thirteen hours, and the night eleven. Then comes the autumnal

equinox, and makes the day and night equal again.

1702

*Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.*

(a) Moscow, see p. 23. n. c.

(b) Moskva, a river, see p. 47. n. a.

(c) Kolomna, or Columnia, east longitude 40. latitude 56. a city of Russia, in the province of Moscow, situate at the confluence of the rivers Moskva and Oka, forty miles south east of Moscow.

(d) Oka, or Ocka, a great river in Moscow, which rises in the province of Szeffk, and running north, passes by Orel, and Peremil, and then turning east, joins the river Moskva at Kolomna; after which, it continues to run east by Refanskoi and Nis-Novogorod, falling into the river Wolga, a little below Novogorod.

(e) Wolga, or Volga, see p. 28. n. f.

(f) Nis-Novogorod, east longitude 34. latitude 58. a city of Moscow, and the capital of the province of Novogorod, situate on the river Wolcuff, near the lake of Ilmen, 130 miles south-east of Petersburg. It is the see of an Archbishop, and has in it 180 churches and monasteries; the country about it abounds in corn, flax, hemp, wax, and honey; and they manufacture the best Russia leather there.

(g) Dantzick, east longitude 19. latitude 54. the capital of Regal Prussia, in the Kingdom of Poland, situate on the Western shore of the river Wesel, or the Vistula, which a little below falls into the Baltic Sea. It is an excellent harbour, and has the best foreign trade of any port within the Baltic. It stands one hundred and forty miles north of Warsaw, and seventy miles south-west of Koningsburgh. The town is large, and encompassed with a wall, and fortifications of a great extent. The houses are well built of stone, or brick, six or seven stories high; and the granaries, containing vast magazines of corn, and naval stores are still higher, to which the shipping lie close, and take in their lading; for the Dutch annually import from hence a great many thousand tons of corn, timber, and naval stores;

and other nations some; but the Dutch have the greatest share of this trade, paying for their merchandize with pickled herrings, the spices of India, sugars, brandy, and other produce of the more southern countries; whereas the English, and other nations, are forced to purchase these things chiefly with ready money. The inhabitants are computed to amount to 200,000 souls, who are subject to a mixed kind of government. Their magistracy consists of thirty senators, who continue for life; four of them burgo-masters; besides these, there are thirteen consuls, who elect the said burgo-masters out of their own body, and elect the judges, and all other officers of the city, from whom there lies an appeal to the thirteen consuls and four burgo-masters, and from them to the republic of Poland. The King annually nominates a burgo-master out of the consuls, to represent his person in the senate, and all sentences of death must be signed by him in the King's name. One hundred burgeses are elected to represent the people's grievances, defend their privileges, and inspect the administration of the government; and the hundred, with the concurrence of the senate, present the clergy to vacant benefices. The established religion is the Lutheran; but Papists, Calvinists, and Anabaptists, are tolerated. The jurisdiction of the town extends forty miles round the city, and the inhabitants maintain a garrison at their own expence, and coin money, with the effigies of the King on the one side, and the city-arms on the reverse. They are said to be under the protection of Poland; but, if they had not been protected by other powers against their enemies, their State had been long since subverted. In the year 1703, the English, the Dutch, and the King of Prussia, entered into an alliance for their protection against the Swedes, who would have extorted a sum of money from them, as they did again in the year 1706, when the King of Sweden threatened them with a visit, on his success against King Augustus, if they refused to acknowledge Stanislaus for their King. But in the year 1734, when they took the part of Stanislaus against the present King of Poland, and actually harboured and

R

pro-



1702

protected him in their city, having been purchased with French money, they were besieged by the Moscovites and Saxons, obliged to surrender, and forced to purchase their peace with several hundred thousand pounds, for suffering Stanislaus to make his escape out of the city during the siege.

(b) *Kazan*, or *Kasan*, a province of Russia, bounded by the province of Permian on the north, by Siberia on the east, by the river Wolga, which separates it from little Novogorod, on the south, and by the province of Moscow proper on the west.

(i) *Astracan*, east longitude 52. latitude 47. the capital of the Kingdom of Astracan, in Asiatic Russia, situate on the eastern shore of the river Wolga, eighty miles north of the Caspian sea, eight hundred miles south-west of Moscow, and four hundred and fifty miles north of Astrabat. It is a large, populous city, and a good sea-port, where the Russians, the English, and other Europeans, embark for Persia.

(k) *Siberia*, see p. 17. n. 3.

(l) *Don*, or *Tanais River*, rises in the province of Rasan, in Russia, and running south-east, passes by Woronets, and continuing its course still south-east, approaches near the river Wolga, where the Czar Peter the Great was cutting a canal for a communication between the two rivers. The river Don turns to the south-west, and, dividing Asia from Europe, falls into the Palus Meotis, a little below the city of Asoph. But tho' Czar Peter did not live to finish the last canal, he had made another between the river Woronets, and another river which falls into the Wolga, whereby the Don had a communication with it, and both those rivers are deep enough to carry ships of a good burthen down to the Euxine and Caspian seas; but the losing of Asoph has made the navigation of the Russians to the Euxine sea impracticable.

(m) *Netherlands*, situate between two and seven degrees of east longitude and between 50. and 53 degrees 30 minutes of north latitude, bounded by the German sea on the north, by Germany on the east, by Lorraine and France on the south, and by another part of France, and the British seas on the west, extending near three hundred miles in length from north to south, and two hundred miles in breadth from east to west. The ancient name of this country was *Belgia*, but since de-

nominated the *Netherlands*, or *Low Countries*, from their low situation, near the mouths of several great rivers; the maritime parts whereof were a morass, till drained by the industry of the numerous people that retired thither from the persecutions and oppressions of the Spaniards, and other bigotted powers. These provinces are in number seventeen, and formerly enjoyed great privileges, being governed by as many Princes, under the various titles of Dukes, Counts, or Lords, but became at length united by marriages, compact, or conquest, in the house of Burgundy, anno 1430; and came under the dominion of Spain about the year 1506, by a marriage between the heirs of the house of Burgundy and Spain, and were by Charles V. Emperor of Germany, and King of Spain, constituted part of the circle of Burgundy. Philip II. King of Spain, succeeding his father the Emperor Charles V, and persecuting and oppressing his subjects in the low countries, either upon account of their opposing his encroachments on their liberties, or embracing the doctrines of the reformation, occasioned a civil war in these countries; and at length, seven of the seventeen provinces threw off the Spanish yoke, and formed an alliance at Utrecht, anno 1579, which obtained the name of the Union of Utrecht; and these provinces have ever since been called the *United Provinces*. The other ten provinces were reduced to the obedience of Spain, and were subject to that crown, till conquered by the allies, and resigned to the house of Austria by the treaty of Utrecht, anno 1713, under whose dominion most of the ten still remain, and are called the *Austrian Netherlands*. But Artois, part of Flanders, Hainault, and the Cambresis, are in the possession of the French, and called the *French Netherlands*. The Dutch also possess the north part of Brabant, and Flanders, which are therefore called *Dutch Brabant*, and *Dutch Flanders*. The French have reduced almost all the *Austrian Netherlands* in the late war, Limburg and Luxembourg only excepted. The *Netherlands*, Austrian and French, consist of ten provinces, viz. (1) Flanders, (2) Brabant, (3) Antwerp, (4) Mechlin, or Malines, (5) Limburg, (6) Luxembourg, (7) Hainault, (8) the Cambresis, (9) Namur, and (10) Artois.

The soil is generally fruitful, producing good corn and pasture, and their gravelly, light lands are now as valuable as the rich, heavy ground, by the improvements they have made with sown grass, turnips, &c. but chiefly by their plantations of flax and hemp; their manufactures of linen and lace are brought



1702

to great perfection; viz. their lawns, cambrics, Mechlin and Brussels lace; their tapestry is very rich, and they have still a good woollen manufacture, particularly cambrics and light stuffs.

Flanders is a flat country; scarce a hill or a stone to be met with in it. The richest land lies between Dunkirk and Bruges, extending forty miles in length, abounding in wheat, barley, and as good meadow and pasture as is to be met with in Europe; but between Bruges and Ghent, and Ghent and Antwerp, is a gravelly or sandy soil, and that part of Brabant which lies between Antwerp and Holland is equally unfit for corn, but enriched with plantations of flax, hemp, and hops.

The rest of the Austrian Netherlands consists of little hills and valleys, woods, inclosed grounds, and champaign fields, not unlike England; and their numerous rivers, and navigable canals give them a great advantage over us, their carriage of the produce of the country from one part to another, costing them, comparatively speaking, but a trifle. They had the greatest woollen manufacture in the world, while Bruges was the market for English wool, and the foreign trade of Antwerp exceeded that of any port in Europe, until the Dutch built forts at the mouth of the Scheldt, and turned the current of trade to Holland. No country has larger towns, or finer fortifications. It has been the seat of war for near three hundred years past, the French and Spaniards, and their allies, contending perpetually for this rich country.

The legislative authority of the respective provinces is, or ought to be, vested in the Sovereign, and the States of each province, which consists (1) of the bishops, abbots, and dignified clergy, (2) of the nobility and gentry, and (3) of the burghesses of their great towns, who meet at Brussels, but assemble in separate houses, and make laws for the respective provinces. The civil and canon law are in force here, where they do not interfere with the municipal laws of the country.

By the ancient laws of the country, no foreign forces ought to be introduced; but this is not regarded now, either by the Austrians, or the French, any more than some of the rest of their privileges. By the treaty of Utrecht, their barrier towns were to be garrisoned by 25,000 Dutch. Their religion is moderate popery; the inquisition does not reign here.

(\*) Poland Kingdom is situate between six-

teen and thirty-four degrees of east longitude, and between forty-six and fifty-seven degrees of north latitude, being bounded by the Baltic Sea, Livonia, and Russia, on the north by Russia, and Bodziac Tartary, on the east by Belarabia, Moldavia, Transilvania, and Hungary, on the south (separated from Transilvania and Hungary by the Carpathian mountains) and bounded by Pomerania, Brandenburg, and Silesia on the west, being almost square, and seven hundred miles over either way. It is a flat, level country, well-watered by lakes and rivers, and an exceeding fruitful soil, abounding in wheat and rye, with which the Dutch load some hundreds of ships every year, to distribute to such countries as happen to have a scarcity of corn. They have also rich meadows and pastures, which feed vast flocks and herds of cattle, with which they supply Germany; and they have an excellent breed of horses. There are mines of silver, lead, iron, and copper also, in several parts of Poland; but they make more advantage of their salt-mines than any of the rest; the country also produces flax, hemp, and furs, and they have manufactures of finnen and leather, which they export, as well as malts and yards, and naval stores, taking in return cloth, silks, tapestry, wrought-plate, wines, spices, herrings, and other salted fish, tin, and fruits; but the balance of trade is very much against them, and they have very few ships, or port-towns, besides Dantzic. Their constitution is a mixed monarchy, in which the people seem to have the greatest share of the government, which makes it frequently called a republic. The King is elected by the whole body of the gentry, who put what conditions on their Prince they see fit, before they crown him, which he takes an oath to observe, and this is called the *pacta conventa*; nor can the King raise forces without the concurrence of the gentry, who are in reality petty Sovereigns in their own estates; and the Crown-General, as he is called, will obey no commands but that of the Diet, or Assembly of the States; and every Palatine, or officer, will take the liberty to return home out of the field, whenever he sees fit, let the consequence be what it will. The King is at no expence in keeping armies on foot, or providing for the officers of State; these are all maintained by the republic, and accountable to it, tho' nominated by the King, with this limitation, however, that he can prefer none but gentlemen, and those, natives of the province where they are to act, and not related to his Majesty; nor can any one be deprived of his office, but by the unanimous consent of the Diet. The King's revenues are

140,000

1702



1702

140,000*l.* per annum, which, with his paternal estate, and what he makes by disposing of places, is an ample revenue; since all the charges of the administration are borne by the republic, as well as the expences of the Queen-Consort's court. The senate consists of the bishops, palatines, castellans, and ten great officers of the crown, who are consulted by the King in all acts of State. The grand Diet of Poland consists of the King, the senate, and deputies, or representatives of the gentry of every palatinate or county, who ought, by their constitution, to assemble once in three years, and their session continue six weeks, and no longer; and in this Diet the legislative power is lodged: every province also has its particular, or provincial Diet, who make laws for the respective provinces; so that Poland is rather a great many united and confederated States, than one Kingdom. There are also some free states, and independent cities and provinces, who are governed by their respective Princes and magistrates; as Ducal Prussia, by the King of Prussia, Courland, by its own Duke, and Dantzic, by their magistrates: the religion of the country is Roman Catholic, except in the north, where the subjects of the King of Prussia, and those of Dantzic, and several other cities, are protestants. The forces of the Poles are all horse, and are rather a militia, consisting of the gentry and their dependents, than regular troops; for they serve no longer than they see fit; and if the republic have occasion for foot, they hire them of other Princes; and since the Electors of Saxony have sat on the throne of Poland, they have furnished the Poles with more foot than they desired; insomuch that they frequently assembled the crown-army to drive them out of the country in the last reign.

(s) Persia, a kingdom of Asia, situate between 45 and 67 degrees of east longitude, and between 25 and 45 degrees of north latitude, being 1200 miles long, and almost 1200 broad, and is bounded by Circassian Tartary, the Caspian Sea, and the river Oxus, which separates it from Ussac Tartary, on the north, by East-India on the east, by the Indian Ocean, the gulphs of Ormus and Bassora or Persia on the south, and the Turkish Empire on the west. The limits, on the side of India, have lately been extended farther eastward by the present Sophi Sha Nadir, who has added all the Indian provinces, on the west side of the river Attoc or Indus, to the Persian Empire; which the great Mogul confirmed to

him, when he relinquished his conquests of the Indian provinces which lie east of the Indus, anno 1739. On the side of Turkey, the boundaries cannot be exactly fixed; for tho' the river Tigris forms part of the western boundary, near its mouth, the Turks and Persians are still contending for the provinces which lie further north, upon that river. The air of Persia is excessive hot in the summer, lying near the tropic of Cancer; even the winds are so hot, for two or three months in the year, that there is no travelling or stirring abroad about noon; several have been killed by them. These winds come from the eastward, over a vast tract of burning sands, heated like an oven; but then the wind shifts, and they are refreshed with cool breezes in the afternoon: there is very little water in Persia; scarce a river, that will carry a boat; and a traveller does not meet with water sometimes for several days; but there is no place where they husband the water better. They collect all their little springs and rivulets, and turning them into one stream or aqueduct, direct them to their towns, and to the fields and gardens, that are cultivated, forty or fifty miles frequently. The country is much encumbered by mountains, and some of them exceeding high, and generally dry, barren rocks, without trees or herbage; but there are many fruitful valleys, in which their great towns stand; nor can any country be more fruitful than that part of Persia which lies upon the Caspian Sea: and in other parts, it is not so much a defect of the soil, as the paucity, or slothfulness of the modern inhabitants, that renders the country barren; for there was not a more plentiful country formerly in the whole world, if we may credit antient history. The chief produce is rice, wheat, and barley; their kitchen-gardens are supplied with a great variety of roots and herbs; and they have no less than twenty several sorts of melons, which the common people make their constant food in the season for them as well as cucumbers. They have also a great variety of grapes, making wine of some, and others hang upon the vines good part of the winter; the air being so dry, that it preserves all kinds of fruit a great while after they are ripe. Dates are a most delicious fruit here, which being laid on heaps, candy and preserve themselves without sugar; they have also pistachio-nuts, and trees that produce manna; nor do they want many of the fruits of Europe. Here also we meet with rhubarb, fenna, and abundance of other medicinal drugs. They have a very fine breed of horses; but their camels

1702

and



1702

and dromedaries are the most useful animals in this sandy country, for carrying of burthens over the deserts; as some of them will carry near a thousand weight, and travel several days without water. They have also mules, oxen, buffaloes, and asses for their husbandry; and large flocks of sheep and goats; some of their sheep having six or seven horns a-piece: they are sometimes visited with locusts, which destroy all the fruits of the earth, wherever they happen to light. There are a multitude of eagles, hawks, and other birds of prey, which they teach to fly at the game, and even at deer and wild beasts; and these, with the assistance of dogs, will take the fiercest beasts; nothing except the wild boar can escape their clutches. The manufactures of Persia are embroidery, especially that of gold and silver, either in cloth, silk, or leather; and that which we call Turkey-leather comes chiefly from hence through Turkey; but silk is the chief manufacture of the country; such as taffeties, tabbets, sattins, and silk mixed with cotton, or camel and goats-hair; brocades, and gold tissue; and their gold velvet is admirable; and those called Turkey carpets, are really Persian. They make also camel-hair stuffs, camblets, silk and worsted druggets, and goats-hair stuffs.

Their greatest ministers do not think the business of a merchant beneath them; the King himself has his factors and agents in the neighbouring countries, who export silks, brocades, carpets, and other rich goods; but the Armenians and Banians of India, who reside here, carry on the most distant foreign traffic; and may be looked upon as the greatest merchants in the world. They export raw as well as wrought silk, in great quantities to India, Turkey, Moscow, England, &c. But the English are endeavouring now to establish a trade with Persia, through Russia, directly by the Wolga, and the Caspian Sea, and deprive the Armenians and Banians of that branch of business; and the English have been of late countenanced in the attempt by the present Sophi, Sha Nadir, who offers to take English cloth, and other woollen manufactures, in return for their silk, &c. The English East-India company have long traded with Persia, by the way of Gombroon, and the Persian Gulph; and the Turkey company have purchased the Persian merchandizes in Turkey; but this traffic through Persia by the Caspian Sea is but just beginning by the Russia company, in which they have met with some losses and misfortunes, which may possibly discourage their proceeding. Persia is an absolute monarchy, and the crown hereditary;

but the reigning Prince takes the liberty sometimes to appoint his younger son to succeed; and whenever the King mounts the throne, he orders the eyes of all his relations to be put out, who may possibly prove his rivals. The present King, Sha Nadir, is the first of his family, that ever wielded a sceptre. After a civil war, of near thirty years continuance, and three or four successive usurpations, Sha Thomas, the almost only surviving heir of the last Royal family, was so fortunate as to defeat all his enemies, and was looked upon to be well established in his father's throne, for which he was, in a great measure, indebted to the conduct and bravery of his General Kouli-Kan, and in gratitude for his services, vested him with an unlimited power, both in the army and the civil administration; which the general making ill use of, the King, 'tis said, had determined to lay him aside; and some suggest, that he only waited for an opportunity to cut off his head. At least the General pretended that the King had a design against his life, and thereupon caused the Sophi to be seized, and imprisoned, if not murdered; and soon after usurped his throne. After which he assembled a more numerous army than Persia had seen of late years, invaded India, and plundered that country of immense treasures; compelled the Great Mogul to yield him all the provinces west of the river Attoc; since which, he has made a conquest of the Bucharas and Ussbec Tartary, and enlarged the Persian frontiers on the side of Turkey; but has not yet been able to make a conquest of Bagdat, or Babylon, tho' he has besieged it several times.

As to the religion of the Persians, they were generally Mahometans of the sect of Haly; but the present Sophi, being a native of Chorassan, in the north of Persia, where the sect of Omar prevails (being the same sect that the Turks and the subjects of the Moguls are of) he has compelled all the Persians to declare themselves of the sect of Omar, which many of the Persians, and especially their priests opposing, Sha Nadir, the present Sophi, ordered the Musty, and several more of the priests, to be hanged; since which, none of the Persians have dared to murmur at the alteration. As to the forces of the Persians, they were not very numerous till the present reign; but Sha Nadir having such large conquests in view, increased them to upwards of 100,000 men, whom he has maintained hitherto out of the plunder of his new conquests, and eased his Persian subjects of a great part of their usual taxes; by which means he has gained their hearts: only those who oppose his usurpation are oppressed; and the estates of these have been confiscated, which still adds to his

S

treasury,

1702



1702

treasury, and enables him to be favourable and generous to his friends.

(p) Tarku, east longitude 51. latitude 42. a port town of Persia, in the province of Chirvan, and territory of Dagistan, situate on the west-side of the Caspian Sea, three hundred miles north-east of Tauris, and as much south of Astracan.

(q) Caspian Sea, situate in Asia, bounded by the province of Astracan, and the country of the Calmuc Tartars on the north, by the Bochara's, and part of Persia on the east, by another part of Persia on the south, and by another part of Persia and Circassia on the west, being upwards of four hundred miles in length from north to south, and three hundred miles in breadth from east to west, in which the great river Wolga, and many others, discharge themselves, and yet the waters are generally about the same depth, no tides observed, but once in fifteen or sixteen years it rises a great many fathoms, and drowns the adjacent country, and by these floods Astracan has sometimes suffered pretty much. It is properly a lake, having no communication with any other sea.

(r) Siberia, or Asiatic Russia, see p. 17. n. b.

(s) Argun, east longitude 104. latitude 51. 30. a city of Asiatic Tartary, situate on the river Argun.

(t) China, including Chinesian Tartary, is situate between 95 and 135 degrees of east longitude, and between 21 and 55 degrees of north latitude, being bounded by Russian Tartary on the north, by the Pacific Ocean on the east and south, and by Tonquin, Tibet, and the territories of Russia on the west, from which it is separated by the river Argun, being about 2000 miles in length from north to south, and 1500 in breadth from east to west. It is usually divided into sixteen provinces. In these provinces it is computed that there are 155 capital cities, 1312 of the second rank, 2357 fortified towns, and upwards of ten millions of families; which may amount to fifty millions of people, and some have computed them at fifty-eight millions. There are several very large rivers, and where these are wanting, the whole country is cut through with navigable canals, and a brisk trade driven on them from one end of the kingdom to the other. There is a long wall of stone one thousand five hundred miles in length, which

the Chinese built to defend themselves against the incursions of the Tartars; but the Tartars, notwithstanding, made a conquest of their country, about one hundred years since, and they are now governed by Tartar Princes, who permit them, however, to retain their own laws, obliging them only to cut off their hair; and as to their religion, they were all Pagans, and so no great change made in it. The Popish missionaries had once made a considerable number of profelytes amongst them, but have lately been expelled the kingdom.

The chief produce of this country is silk, tea, china, japan ware, and gold dust, of which every maritime people of Europe, almost, import a great deal, sending them silver in return.

The Europeans complain of them as very tricking, unfair dealers; and that their custom-house officers take all opportunities of extorting money from foreigners.

Their writing and printing is a sort of shorthand, every character expressing a word, and sometimes a sentence. They have not the use of letters.

The Emperor is an absolute Prince; but all his laws and acts must be passed by a certain great council of his nobility, before they are of any force. However, he does not want means to oblige them to yield their assent to what he purposes, any more than the Sovereigns in this part of the world.

The government requires a profound submission of children to their parents; they even make statues and images to represent their ancestors, and worship them in their houses; and mutual civility among all men is enjoined by law, which seems to have made a nation of hypocrites, having very little regard to the solemn professions they make of their friendship.

The revenues of the crown are computed at twenty-one millions sterling, which is not difficult to know; because an account of every man's family, estate, and substance, is taken every year, and enrolled.

Their forces are said to consist of five millions of men in time of peace; a militia, that are very seldom raised, having few enemies since the union of Tartary with China.

(a) Pekin, east longitude 111. latitude 40. the metropolis of the Empire of China, and of the province of Pekin, situate about sixty miles south of the wall, which separates China from Tartary, and two hundred miles west of the Cang Sea, a bay of the Pacific Ocean. The city is about twenty miles in circumference,

1702



1702

rence, and contains 2,000,000 of people, which is more than double the number there is in London. The chief streets are one hundred and twenty feet broad, and three miles long. In the shops before their houses, their silks and China-ware are exposed to sale, from one end to the other, and make a very beautiful appearance. The walls of this city are so high, that they cover the town, and broad enough for several people to ride a breast; and are strengthened by square towers, at about a bow-shot distance. The gates are of marble, and have a large fortress built before each of them. The Emperor's palace, with the gardens, are in the middle of the city, being two miles long, and one broad; inclosed with a wall. The town stands on a level plain; no hills in it, only two artificial mounts in the Emperor's palace. They have no coaches, but are carried on horseback, or in chairs, from one part of the town to another. They have no chimneys in their houses; but use stoves, or charcoal in cold weather; nor have they any beds, but sleep on mattresses.

(w) Moscow, or Russia, see p. 7. n. c.

(x) Polesia, a province of Poland, bounded by Polachia, and Lithuania on the north, and by Volhinia on the south.

(y) Volhinia, or Volonia, a province of Poland, bounded by Polesia on the north, by the lower Volhinia, or Ukrain (in the territories of Russia) on the east; by Podolia on the south, and by the province of Red Russia on the west. The chief town Luko.

(z) Podolia, a province of Poland, bounded by Volhinia, and the Russian Ukrain on the north and north-east; by Budziac Tartary on the south-east; by the river Niefter, which separates it from Bessarabia and Moldavia in European Turkey on the south-west, and by the province of Red Russia on the north-west.

(aa) Transilvania is a principality, bounded by the Carpathian mountains, which divide it from Poland on the north, by Moldavia on the east, by Walachia, and part of Hungary on the south, and by another part of Hungary on the west, being about one hundred and twenty miles long, and almost as many broad. It lies between 22 and 25 degrees of east longitude, and between 45 and 48 degrees of north latitude. And as it is surrounded almost by woods and mountains, is a very warm

country, and has a very fruitful soil, producing great plenty of corn, wine, large cattle, and rich pasture and meadow grounds. In their mountains there are good mines of copper and iron, which they manufacture, and export, and have cloth sufficient for their own use. But this having been long a frontier-country against Turkey, the produce of it is frequently destroyed, and the husbandman discouraged from making the best of his lands. It is at present subject to the house of Austria.

(bb) Hungary, a kingdom, situate between 16 and 23 degrees of east longitude, and between 45 and 49 degrees of north latitude, bounded by the Carpathian mountains, which divide it from Poland, on the north by Transilvania, and Walachia on the east, by the river Drave, which separates it from Sclavonia on the south, and by Austria and Moravia on the west. It is one continued plain of three hundred miles and upwards from Presburg, the capital, to Belgrade, divided by the river Danube, into the Upper and Lower Hungary.

There are no hills but the Carpathian mountains, which divide it from Poland, and in these are abundance of rich mines of gold, silver, copper, iron, vitriol, sulphur, and salt; the rest of the country is exceeding fruitful, abounding in corn, wine, and rich pastures, replenished with herds of cattle; and their numerous lakes and rivers afford them plenty of fish and fowl; but the country is very unhealthy, occasioned by a boggy, sulphurous soil, and the sudden changes of the weather: a kind of pestilence visits this country once in three or four years, and it is called the grave of the Germans; on another account, many thousands of them have perished here by the sword, as well as sickness, whilst they contended for the dominion of it with the Turks, the last two hundred years.

The constitution of the government was a limited monarchy, and the crown elective, until the house of Austria found means to influence the States so far as to render the Sovereign absolute, and the crown hereditary, which is now possessed by the Empress Queen.

The established religion is Popery; but half the people are Protestants, who have suffered a very long and severe persecution from the house of Austria, and have been thereby frequently provoked to join the Turks, the French, and other enemies of that house; but in the present war, they have been the principal support of the Empress.

Their

1762



1702

Their troopers are called Hussars, and their foot Heydukes: and the Insurgents are a militia that are raised on the last necessity.

No country is better furnished with baths and mineral waters, and the buildings of those at Buda were esteemed the most magnificent of any baths in Europe, while that city was under the dominion of the Turk.

Game is so plentiful here, that it is the common food of the peasants; but with all these advantages, the common people are in a state of vassalage to their respective Lords, and the gentry have lost their antient privileges.

(re) Wolga, see p. 28. n. f.

(dd) Crim Tartary, the antient Taurica Chersonesus, is a peninsula, situate in the Black Sea, between 33 and 37 degrees of east longitude, and between 44 and 46 degrees of north latitude; having the Palus Meotis on the north-east, and the Black Sea surrounding the rest, except a narrow Isthmus, which joins it to Little Tartary, the chief towns whereof are Bachiserai and Kassa; the town of Crim, from whence it received its name, being reduced to a village. The Tartars who inhabit this peninsula are subject to the Turks, who were not able to defend them from the invasions and ravages of the Russians in the years 1738 and 1739, tho' the Russians quitted the country again, as not tenable, being too far from their frontiers. The Cham, or Han of Crim Tartary, is obliged to furnish the Turks with a body of 30,000 men, when they take the field; they subsist on their plunder, having no other pay. Every man takes two or three horses with him on their incursions, to carry off their slaves and booty; and whenever they lose a horse, they immediately feast upon him, inviting their comrades to the entertainment. When they are not at war, their chief traffic is in buying up children in Circassia, and other countries, and selling them to the Turks, who give them rice, coffee, raisins, dates, and cloathing in return. The country is naturally fruitful, and produces excellent wine, where there are Christian, or Jewish inhabitants; but this being a liquor prohibited the Mahometans, they do not cultivate the vine, or indeed any other produce of the earth, any farther than necessity compels them.

(ee) Nieper, or Boristhenes, a river which rises in the middle of Mokovy, runs west by Smolensko, then running south through Poland, passes by Mogilof, or Mohilow, then

enters the Russian Ukraïn, passing by Kiof and Circassia, and continuing its course south-east separates Little Tartary from Budziac Tartary, falling into the Black Sea near Ozakow. On that river the old Cossacs inhabit, who frequently cross the Black Sea, and plunder the maritime places on the coast of Turkey.

(ff) Lithuania, a province of Poland, is bounded by Samogitia, Livonia, and part of Russia on the north, by another part of Russia on the east, by Volhinia and Polesia on the south, and by Prussia and Polachia on the west, being of a circular form, pretty near two hundred and fifty miles over either way, and contains eight palatinates, or counties. It is called the Great Duchy of Lithuania, and may, in some respect, be looked upon as an independent State, in alliance with Poland, being governed by its own peculiar laws and magistrates, tho' united under one Sovereign, who is the titular head of both nations; for they are, in reality, both of them Republics, and each of them send their representatives to the Diet, or general Assembly of the States; and each of them has its distinct provincial Diet, or Assembly of the States, which enact laws for their respective subjects.

(gg) Livonia, see p. 35. n. f.

(hh) Estonia, a province on the north of Livonia; the chief town Narva, subject to Russia.

(ii) Ingria, a province of Russia, bounded by the lake Ladoga, the river Nieva, and the gulph of Finland on the north, by Great Novogorod on the east and south, and by Livonia on the west; the capital city Peterburg.

(kk) Sweden, a kingdom of Europe, part of the antient Scandinavia, is bounded by Norwegian Lapland on the north, by Russia, and Russia Lapland on the east, by the Baltic Sea, which separates it from Germany and Livonia on the south, and by the seas called the Sound and the Scaggetach, and the Do-fine mountains, which separate it from Denmark and Norway, on the west, lying between 10 and 30 degrees of east longitude, and between 56 and 69 degrees of north latitude; so that it must be eight hundred miles in length, and upwards from north to south, and five hundred miles in breadth from east to west. The provinces of Kexholm, Carelia, Ingria, and Livonia, which formerly were pos-

1702



1702 possessed by Sweden, are now ceded to Russia; part of their German territories also have been ceded to other powers, particularly Bremen, Verden, and the Eastern Pomerania; Sweden retains nothing in Germany at present, but that part of Pomerania which lies north-west of the river Pene, the island of Rugen, and the town of Wismar. It is for the most part a wretched, cold country, encumbered with barren rocks and mountains, and great part of the year covered with snow; few navigable rivers, but torrents in abundance, running precipitately from the rocks and mountains, and after a short course falling into the Baltic Sea, which is frozen up four or five months in the year. The country is also full of great lakes and marshes: Lapland, and the northern parts, produce scarce any vegetables. The riches of Sweden are chiefly in the bowels of the earth, having mines of silver, copper, and iron, which exceed any in Europe; and they have some fruitful valleys between their mountains; but these do not produce corn enough for the subsistence of the inhabitants; their being driven out of that plentiful country of Livonia, therefore, was an irreparable loss to Sweden. They stipulated, indeed, with the Russians, that they should be at liberty to import corn from Livonia; but the Russians frequently excuse themselves for not complying with this article, under pretence of a scarcity. The manufactures of Sweden are chiefly those of copper and iron, and they have been endeavouring to establish linnen and woollen manufactures of late years. The exports from Sweden, besides their hard-ware, are pitch, tar, masts, deals, and wooden-ware; they import silks, stuffs, wine, brandy, sugar, spices, tobacco, paper, linnen, and haberdashery-ware, which balance their exportations, and sometimes exceed them. Their trade to England is the most gainful, the English taking off the produce and manufactures of Sweden, and giving them near two thirds of silver in return. By the laws of Sweden, foreigners are prohibited to import any goods but what are the produce of their respective countries. The forces of Sweden consist of a well-disciplined militia; every considerable farmer is obliged to maintain one soldier, in time of peace, and the officers of horse and foot have lands assigned them for their maintenance; the soldiers are subject to the civil magistrate, while they remain in their quarters; but when they are in actual service, they are subject to military discipline. The militia of Sweden, before the loss of Livonia, and their German territories, amounted to 60,000 men. Charles XII. during his wars,

augmented them to 120,000, but he beggared his country by it. The naval forces of Sweden have always been reckoned inferior to those of the Danes; but the Swedes usually were an overmatch for the Danes by land. The public revenues, which arise by the crown lands, customs, the silver and copper mines, tithes, poll money, and other duties, are computed to amount to 1,000,000. sterling per annum. Charles XII. and some of his predecessors were absolute Monarchs, and claimed the crown as their hereditary right; but upon his death, the States of Sweden elected his youngest sister, and put such limitations on the crown, that their Sovereign enjoys little more than the name of a King. The States obliged that Princess to declare, that she held the crown of the States, and renounced for herself and her posterity all arbitrary power; that she should profess the Lutheran religion, and no other should be tolerated; that the States should not submit to any taxes or laws that were not made by their own consent; and that she should not make peace or war but by the like consent; and the administration of the government was lodged in twenty-four senators, of whom the Sovereign was no more than president. She was disabled from meddling with the public treasury without their consent, or disposing of any office, civil or military. And this they insisted was the original constitution of their government, which the present King also was obliged to declare, and renounce Calvinism, in which he was educated, when the late Queen procured him to be elected King; and the same article the Duke of Holstein Entin was obliged to subscribe, when they declared him successor to the crown.

(11) Swedish Lapland, see p. 7. n. d.

(am) Wolodomer, or Wolodomir, east longitude 30. 5. latitude 57. 40. a city of Russia, capital of the province of Wolodimir, situate one hundred and sixty miles south of Petersburg.

(an) Novogorod City, east longitude 34. latitude 58. a city of Moscow, capital of the province of Novogorod, situate on the river Wolcuff, near the lake of Ilmen, one hundred and thirty miles south-east of Petersburg. It is the see of an Archbishop, and has in it one hundred and eighty churches and monasteries; the country about it abounds in corn, flax, hemp, wax, and honey; and they manufacture the best Russia leather here.

T

(ao) Smo-



1702 (see) Smolensk, east longitude 33. latitude 56, capital of the province of Smolensk in Moscow, situate on the confines of Poland, two hundred miles west of Moscow.

(pp) Bulgar, east longitude 51. latitude 54. capital of the province of Bulgar in Russia, situate on the river Wolga, 120 miles south east of Kasan, and 450 miles east of Moscow.

(88) Wologda, see p. 28, n. 4.

(rr) Plekow, or Pleskow, east longitude 28. 30. latitude 57. 20. a city of Russia, capital of the province of Pleskow, situate at the south end of the lake Woriero, 130 miles east of Riga.

(35) *Rezan*, *Rezan*, or *Rezanikoi*, east longitude 41, latitude 55, a city of Russia, capital of the province of Rezan, situate on the river Ooka, eighty-five miles south east of Moscow.

(11) Archangel, see p. 8, n. 4.

(*us*) Nicholas (St.) east longitude 41. latitude 64. a port-town in Russia, in the province of Dwina, situate on the White Sea, at the mouth of the river Dwina, six miles below the city of Archangel, the White Sea being sometimes called the bay of St. Nicholas.

(we) As Peterburg (St.) is at present the metropolis of all Russia, tho' the foundation of it was not laid at the time our author published his travels, we think it incumbent on us, in this place, to give a succinct account of its first establishment, and the difficulties which the Czar Peter the Great at first laboured under, in the accomplishment of so important a design.

Peterburgh, east longitude 31. latitude 60. is now the capital city of Russia, situate on both sides the river Nieva, in the provinces of Carelia and Ingria, between the gulph of Finland and the lake Ladoga. There are several small islands also in the mouth of the river Nieva built upon, which make part of the city; so that it is of a very large extent, and appears like several distinct towns rather than a single city. There were no less than 60,000 houses built within three or four years after the foundation was laid, which was in the year 1703. It stands very low, and is exposed to inundations; by which means, part of the fortifications were washed away before they were well fi-

17  
nished. The breadth of the river at Petersburg is about half a mile, and as it is very deep and rapid, the building a bridge over it was held impracticable; whereupon it was proposed to the late Czar, Peter the Great, to make a bridge of pontoons, or boats; but he would not consent to it, he said, because his intention was to breed up as many watermen as he could, and these he prohibited the use of oars, that they might learn to manage sails; but these boatmen being ignorant peasants, many people were over-set and drowned, in passing from one part of the town to the other at first. The nobility and people of distinction were obliged to build grand houses here, but the generality were timber-houses, till they began to burn bricks at Petersburg; and now the town appears with a much better face than it did at first. The sands at the mouth of the river prevent ships from coming up to it, and therefore they are obliged to take in their loading four or five miles lower. It may seem strange, that Peter the Great should fix upon this place to build his capital city, it lying in a barren country, and so far to the north, that they scarce enjoy the light of the Sun in winter; but it was in order to have a communication with the Baltic Sea, and that his subjects might traffic with the rest of the nations of Europe; for as yet there was no sea that touched upon the territories of Russia, but that of Archangel, to which ships were obliged to pass thro' the Frozen Ocean. It was with the greatest difficulty, that the Czar compassed this grand design, his people shewing the utmost aversion to removing to this cold, barren country, as he commanded them, from all parts of his dominions, and such rules were laid in his way by his nobility and officers, that it was thought impossible he should ever accomplish his design. There were neither sufficient tools, or necessary provisions for the workmen, to encourage them in the prosecution of so laborious an undertaking; by which means they underwent such incredible hardships, that, according to a moderate computation, no less than 100,000 people perished in laying the foundation, and raising the superstructure of this metropolis. All difficulties, however, were at last happily overcome; and it is at this present juncture, one of the largest, and most populous cities in the world. The Czar established here an academy marine, to which he obliged every considerable family in his Empire to send one of their sons, or relations, to be instructed in navigation; here also they learnt the dead languages, were taught to ride and fence, and divers other

1722



1702 many exercises. He set up linen and woollen manufactures, had paper-mills, powder-mills, laboratories for gunnery and fire-works, places for preparing salt-petre and brimstone; he erected yards for making of cables and tackling for his navy, and a foundry, where they are perpetually casting great guns, mortars, and small arms; the country furnishing him with vast quantities of iron ore. A printing-house was also set up, to encourage his subjects to

enquire into the state of the world; and he sent numbers of them into foreign countries, to learn mechanic arts, giving great encouragement to foreigners to reside and settle at Petersburg, and instruct his people in every science; plays, operas, and music-meetings were also introduced in a country, where none of these arts or diversions were seen till the reign of Peter the Great.

C H A P. X.

*Alteration of Fashions and Customs in Russia. Triumphal Arches erected at (a) Moscow. The triumphant Entry of his Czarian Majesty, on Account of the Surrender of (b) Nottcburg.*

Alterations brought in to the Empire.

Alterations in dress at court, &c.

An edict in force, for the manner of their appearance in public.

The new court fashion.

GREAT alterations have been wrought in this Empire by time; but more particularly since the Czar's return from his travels. On his first arrival, he altered the modes of dress, with respect to the ladies, as well as the gentlemen; but more especially, in regard to all such as had any dependance at court, or was possessed of any post there: none, not so much as children excepted. For which reason, the Russian merchants and others, now dress in such a manner, as that there appears no distinction between them and foreigners.

There was an edict passed last year, whereby all Russians were enjoined not to appear in public, unless they were dressed after the Polish, or Dutch fashion. The valets of foreigners were the first that were obliged to comply with this new order; for they were most assuredly taken into custody by proper officers from behind their master's sledges, and were obliged to pay a fine before they could be released, for their contempt of that injunction. This order, however, no ways affected either their peasants, or people that resided at a distance in the country. As this extraordinary change in their dress may possibly obliterate the remembrance, in process of time, of their ancient habits, I have delineated one of their

ladies on canvass, in profile, that the reader may have a more adequate idea of their head-cloaths, and the manner of their falling down behind, with their graceful decorations, as appears in the Plates XIII. and XIV. hereto annexed.

It is proper to observe, in this place, that the maidens only appear perfectly uncovered; and on the other hand, that should a married lady appear without a proper head-dress, she would be looked upon with an eye of contempt. These last-mentioned ladies, for the most part, wear a fur-cap, which is flat at top, and at bottom, pointed round in the shape of a crown; the whole being embellished with as great a variety of precious stones, as their respective circumstances will well admit of. This head-dress has two points, and that which is the longest hangs down behind. 'Tis called in their language the Tryogheh.

The ornament on the head of their young ladies, which is here represented in Plate XIV, is likewise in the shape of a crown, or rather diadem, embellished with rich trinkets of various sorts, and is called by them their Perewaske. Some of them add a ribband thereto, called their Swistske. What they wear round their necks is called their Ofarelje, and their ear-rings Sergé. Their mantle, or upper

Plates XIII. and XIV.

Maidens, bare head.

Married ladies, have dress.

The head-dress, and other ornaments, of their young ladies.

Their neck-dress and ear-rings, here called.



1702

These under-  
clo, and  
with under-  
neath it,  
have called.

Their  
bracelets.

Their  
stockings.

Their slip-  
pers.

Their  
beards to  
be cut off.

An order  
issued for  
the same  
that the  
force of it.

The order  
given that  
they should.

upper vestment, which is lined with furs, is called their Soebe, the vest underneath it, their Tellagree, or Serrataen, their shift, Roebachi; the sleeves whereof are so wide, and so full of plaits, that some of them take up between sixteen and seventeen ells of cloth. Their bracelets, or decorations for their arms, which fall down upon their hands, are called their Sarokavie. Their stockings, which they never tie up, are called Zoelki; and their slippers, which, for the most part, are either red or yellow, with high, sharp pointed heels, are called their Basmakje.

Besides this variation in their dress, the Russians were under an indispensable obligation to have their beards cut off, the hair on the upper lip only excepted; and some at court have that taken off likewise. That this edict, or order, might be executed with the utmost rigour, there were proper persons employed for that particular purpose, and they were to act impartially without favour or affection. No one, in short, could be excused. This injunction appeared to be so rigid and severe, that some would tempt these commissioners at large by private bribes, but all in vain; for they instantly met with others, who would hearken to no terms of accommodation. Nay, this order was carried into execution, even at the Czar's table, and, in short, every where else. No person, of what quality or degree of distinction soever, was excused; and 'tis hardly to be conceived what universal disgust it created; some were almost inconsolable on the occasion, as they had worn them for such a length of time, and always looked upon them as badges of honour and distinction. There were numbers, in a word, who would have given almost any consideration whatsoever to have been exempted from the force of this general injunction.

Variations in point of dress, however, have not been so very extraordinary, with respect to the fair sex, except it be amongst those of the first rank, who dress entirely in the taste of our Dutch ladies.

In order, however, to accomplish this

perfectly, it was absolutely necessary, to send for hats, shoes, &c. from beyond-sea; but as this proved not only very inconvenient but expensive likewise, the Russians began to copy after other nations, awkwardly enough, one may imagine, for some considerable time; but they improved by degrees, when they had once procured workmen from foreign parts to aid and instruct them; for (as we have hinted before) they are pretty good imitators, and ambitious enough of being improved.

At the same time, there were very wholesome regulations made in regard to vagrants or beggars, who before would appear in the streets in swarms, as it were, both men and women, and hover round any person that went but into a tradesman's shop, throughout the whole city of Moscow. What was still, however, of much worse consequence, was this; thieves would join these vagrants, in hopes of a favourable opportunity of either cutting a purse, or picking a pocket, which are looked upon as very venial crimes, and never ruffle the conscience of a Russian. His Czarian Majesty, being determined to put a stop to such irregular proceedings, issued out an order, that no beggar should presume to ask any alms in the streets; and, on the other hand, no person, how charitably soever inclined, should offer to relieve any mendicant, on the penalty of five rubles, that is to say, twenty-five florins.

In order, however, that the poor might have some proper subsistence, hospitals were erected for them, at some small distance from each church, not only within Moscow, but in the parts adjacent, all which the Czar himself endowed with an annual pension. By this means, the people of fashion were delivered at once from a shocking inconvenience; for before, there was no such thing as stirring out of a church, without being perfectly persecuted by those insolent wretches from the end of one street to another. This good regulation produced likewise another very happy effect; for the poor, by this means, were, in some measure, indispensably obliged to be industrious, for fear of being confined

1702

Good regu-  
lations con-  
cerning  
beggars.

An order  
issued that

Hospitals  
were erected  
for them.

The happy  
effects of  
this order.



1702 against their inclinations; for tho' mendicants mortally abhor work of all sorts; yet they cannot bear the thoughts of being looked upon with an eye of contempt for such an indolent course of life. And this brings to my remembrance a story, which I cannot forbear telling.

A story of a young beggar.

One day, there came to my landlord's, a young fellow to beg charity of a merchant, who lodged in the same house. The gentleman asked him why he did not seek out for some work, or get into some service, rather than go a begging. The young fellow replied, that he did not know how to work; for he had not been used to any all his life; and as to a service, he knew of no one who would take him in. Upon this, the gentleman, observing that he had a good honest face, asked him whether he should be willing to become his servant, and whether he would be industrious; and added, if he was so inclined, whether he could procure any person, who would be answerable for his honesty; for it is absolutely necessary, and a common practice amongst the Russians, to require a security for servants; since without, they have no remedy, no recourse to take, in case they should be robbed. The poor boy made answer, that he knew of nobody but God Almighty that would be bound for him; and he called God to witness, that if he would please to trust him, he would be very honest. The gentleman was satisfied with the boy's promise, and took him into his service accordingly; and found no occasion for distrust; it happened, however, in process of time, that the young fellow grew too familiar with a servant maid, whom he got with child.

As soon as she found out how matters stood with her, she gave him notice of it; and since he had brought her to shame, it was but reasonable, as she and her friends said, that he should make her his wife. He had no great inclination to comply with that proposal, because she was much older than he; but being pressed hard to perform his promise, and being asked, whether he could justify his conduct before his security (meaning God Almighty) he ingenuously confessed, that he should find it

a difficult task to do it, and therefore promised to marry her, and kept his word. As soon as the wedding was over, he set up with what little he had saved in his master's service; and met with such great success, that at this instant, he is one of the most substantial woollen-draperies in all Moscow, and is reckoned to be worth little less than 30,000 livres. His wife lives still with him, and he is very indulgent towards her; but as she is now turned of threescore, and all the children he has had by her are dead and gone, he would fain prevail with her to reside at a convent, at his own expence; by which means, he might marry again, and have a new issue, without any breach of the Russian laws; but all his arguments have hitherto proved ineffectual.

These alterations have had a great influence on all the public offices, where all writings are at present executed according to the method observed in (c) Holland. His Czarian Majesty has this regularity much at heart; (as he has every thing else, indeed, that may any ways contribute towards the public good, and the security of his subjects) and there is nothing transacted there without his knowledge, privity, and consent. He has already, with unwearied diligence and application, fortified (d) Novogorod, (e) Pleskow, (f) Asoph, (g) Smolensko, Kieof, and (h) Archangel; and notwithstanding this could not possibly be effected without an immense charge; yet he has been so frugal an economist, that he has still no less than 300,000 rubles in his coffers. This piece of good husbandry he communicated to me with his own mouth; and I had the truth of it afterwards confirmed by others; and this was the remainder likewise after all the expences of the war he had been engaged in, after his building of all his ships, and after he had defrayed, and answered all the exigencies of the State.

As to the building of ships, indeed, it must be allowed, the public bears the expence; for every thousand of the peasants are obliged to bring in all that is any ways requisite for the building of ships, and any thing relative thereto. These peasants are either vassals of the Czar himself, or

1702

Alterations in the public offices.

Places fortified.

Treasury of the State.

The expence of the ship-building raised upon the peasants.



1702

of some Lords, or other gentlemen of the court, or of some monasteries, where there are great numbers of them, and more particularly (as has already been hinted) at that of Trooytz.

Thus the subjects of this Monarch have very just grounds to pray to the Almighty for his health and preservation, and long reigning over them, in order that they may gradually come to the knowledge of such things, as may contribute to their future benefit and advantage. And great reason have they to hope for success; for the young heir to this Empire, tho' now but about fourteen years of age, treads already in the footsteps of his father, and gives great indications of a rising genius. He takes notice of every thing that passes, and is not only very curious and inquisitive, but very good-natured. The Czar himself takes a great deal of pains to form his mind; and bring him up in the politest manner; and, amongst a great number of other qualifications, he recommends to him the study of the Latin and German languages.

On the fourteenth of September 1702, no less than eight hundred Swedish prisoners, men, women, and children, were brought into this city. Many of them, indeed, were sold for three or four florins only per head at first; but afterwards the price was advanced to twenty or thirty. This encouraged foreigners to purchase them, to the great good fortune of those poor unhappy people; for they proposed only to detain them during the war, and then to restore them to their pristine liberty. The Russians, likewise, purchased several of them; but hard was the lot of those, who fell into the hands of the Tartars; for by that means they were doomed to a perpetual state of bondage; a deplorable state indeed!

On the twentieth, news arrived that Notteburg had been taken by his Majesty's forces, and that the city had surrendered on certain terms and conditions, after it had sustained three vigorous attacks, and on the twenty-third Te Deum was sung upon the occasion.

Towards the latter end of this month

it began to snow, and in the beginning of October, to freeze hard; but it soon thawed again, and then rained, as it had done, to our great inconvenience, for some considerable time.

In this year a great number of merchant-men arrived at Archangel. In all there were no less than one hundred and fifty-four; that is to say, there were sixty-six English-men, under the convoy of four men of war, sixty-six Dutchmen, under the convoy of three men of war, sixteen Hamburgers, four Danes, and one only from (i) Bremen.

Several of the English ships, 'tis true, were small ones, and their cargoes of no great value or importance.

About the middle of November, the river Yufa was frozen over behind our Slabode, and several of the Dutch, as well as some Russians, skated over it, as there had no snow fallen thereon. I had procured a hand-sledge, made in the Dutch taste, and embraced this opportunity of amusing a young lady on the ice with it, which was a vehicle to which she was a perfect stranger. Tho' this was but the second time for thirty-two years past, that I had put on any skates; yet I found a man seldom or ever totally forgets a diversion, that he had once thoroughly learnt. This amusement was soon over, however; for the snow fell very heavy the day following.

On the twenty-fourth, the Priskact, or office of Poloske, within the castle, was burnt down to the ground, and created a great consternation.

News came, in the beginning of December, that the Czar was arrived at a place called Peshick, which is about fourscore and ten wersts from Moscow; from thence he came to Salnikof, a country seat belonging to Prince Lofreilis, his uncle, thirty wersts only from this capital; from thence to Nikeolskie, at the mansion-house of the Knez Mighalo Sakoliets Seerkaske, Governor of Siberia, which is but seven wersts from Moscow.

At that time every thing was in readiness for his Czarian Majesty's triumphal entry; and most of the foreign merchants

1702

Several  
merchants  
men arrive  
at Arch-  
angel.

A hand-  
sledge, as  
mentioned  
before.

An office  
burnt  
down.

Preparation  
for the  
Czarian  
Majesty's  
triumphal  
entry.

The Emperor  
complains  
of the young  
hereditary  
Prince.

Sept. 14.  
Swedish  
prisoners  
brought in,  
and sold.

Sept. 20.  
Notteburg  
taken.

Sept. 23.  
Te Deum  
sung on  
that occa-  
sion.



1702

had received orders to furnish themselves with a greater number of horses than usual; with an attendant, dressed in the German fashion, to conduct the artillery, that had been taken from the Swedes. The foreign ministers, our resident, and the English Consul, accompanied by several merchants, set out the next day, in order to pay their compliments to the Czar at Nikolsk, and returned the next morning, which was the fourth of December, and the day appointed for this Monarch to make his entry. For this purpose several triumphal arches had been prepared before-hand made of wood, and erected in the street of Mechnits; the first in the Red-Wall, over-against the Greek monastery, which is situate near the printing-house, and the house of the Velt-Marshel Czeremetof; the second in the White-Wall, near the Admiralty-Office, about four hundred paces from the former. The streets and the fields were crowded with spectators to see this pompous procession; and for my own part, I crossed the streets, and went out of town to see the first of it. When I came, I perceived there was a halt, that things might be put in order, and that the Czar himself was personally employed in the regulation; and as I was on foot, I approached him in order to pay him my congratulations on the occasion; and his happy return. He thanked me, and favoured me with his friendly embraces, and seemed to be pleased that I was still resident in his dominions. He then took me by the hand, and told me, that he had some ships colours to shew me, and that I should have free liberty to draw whatever I pleased. Whilst I was taking a draught, a certain Russian nobleman, with several servants in his retinue, came, and took the paper from me, and called to a German officer to know what I was doing; but when he was informed that I was at work by the Czar's own order, he returned it me again, and I finished my design, which I could never have done, had not I been favoured with his Majesty's special licence.

This public entry was made in the following order. In the first place came

the regiment of guards, which consisted of eight hundred men, under the command of Colonel de Ridder, by birth a German. One half of this body were dressed in scarlet, after the German manner; and the other in Russian habits; because there had not been time sufficient to finish their new cloaths. The Swedish prisoners, as well such as were soldiers, as others who were peasants, walked between two, three a-breast; and were divided into seven several bands, each consisting of about fourscore, or fourscore and four persons, making in the whole, about five hundred and eighty men, between three companies of soldiers. After these came two fine sumpter-horses, and a company of grenadiers, dressed in green, lined with scarlet, after the German mode, with this exception only, that they had bear-skin caps on, instead of hats; these were the first grenadier-guards; and after them came six halberdiers, five hautboys, and six officers. Then came the Royal regiment of Probstensko, consisting of four hundred men, all new-clothed after the German fashion; in green, lined with scarlet, and white faced hats; with the Czar himself, and Prince Alexander at the head of them, who were preceded by nine German flutes, and some fine led horses. This regiment was followed by a party of that belonging to Semenofsk, his Majesty's guards also, all clothed in blue, lined with scarlet; and after them came the colours which had been taken from the Swedes. First, two standards, followed by a large flag, which had been displayed upon the castle of Notteburg, carried by four soldiers; next came six ships-colours, and twenty-five ensigns, blue, green, yellow, and red. Each carried by two soldiers. Most of these ensigns had two golden lions and a crown painted over their heads. After these came forty pieces of cannon; some drawn by four, some by six horses, all of a colour; four great mortars, and fifteen brass field-pieces; some larger than the other; then came another mortar-piece; and after that came several very long and heavy brass cannon; some drawn by six, and others by eight horses.

After

1702

Triumphal arches erected for that purpose.

The author engraves the Czar on his happy return, and is carried by him in a friendly manner.

Draws several of the colours that belonged to the Swedish flag.

The manner of the procession.



1702

After these came a large chest of kitchen utensils, ten sledges with fire-arms, three drums, and another sledge with smith's tools, and a large pair of bellows. Then came the officers who had been taken prisoners, amounting in the whole, to the number of forty; each of whom walked between two soldiers; and after them came several sledges with such other prisoners as were either sick or wounded. When these were passed by, a small band of Russian soldiers closed the procession. It was about one in the afternoon when they first entered into the city; and after they had passed Twerskie-gate, which stands to the northward, they marched up to the first triumphal arch, and the regiment of guards went through. Here his Czarian Majesty halted for a full quarter of an hour, in order, not only to refresh himself, but to receive the congratulations of his clergy. As in this place, the street was pretty broad, the triumphal structure was composed of three arches; that in the middle was a large one, and the two on each side were considerably smaller: all which were so covered with tapestry, pictures, figures, and devices, that none of the wood-work could be discerned. At the top was a balcony, where were planted eight young musicians, two and two, very richly drest. The middle arch was crowned with an eagle, and a great variety of trophies. And all the houses, within sight of it, were hung with carpets, tapestry, and pictures; all the balconies were full of streamers; and in some, which were very near the arches, were planted a large band of musicians, with all sorts of instruments, which, being accompanied by

a very good organ, made a very polite concert. The streets were strewn with green boughs, and other things of the like colour, in which were planted a great number of the nobility. The Princess, his Czarian Majesty's sister, the Czarina, and the Princesses her daughters, attended by a great number of Russian and foreign ladies, were planted at some small distance, in the house of the Sieur Jakof Wassiliouff Feuderooff, in order to see the procession.

After the Czar had saluted the Princesses, he advanced on towards the second arch, which was decorated in as elegant a manner as the first; and having marched through the city, in the same order, he went out at the gate of Meosnietsie, and proceeded towards the Slabode, which is principally inhabited by the Germans; where, when he was arrived, the Dutch resident made him an offer of some of the best wine he had; but his Majesty chose a glass of beer, which I had the honour to deliver into his own hand. As the glass was somewhat large, he drank only some part of it, and moved forwards to Probrosensko; as night, however, came upon him before his departure from the Slabode, he mounted his horse; and then the show was over. Notwithstanding the multitude of spectators on this joyful occasion, I did not hear that any fatal consequences attended it; every thing was conducted with the utmost decency and decorum, and every one seemed pleased, since there was no mischief done (as we hinted before) in any of the streets, notwithstanding there were numberless scaffolds erected all along for the reception of the spectators.

1702

#### *Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.*

(a) *Molcom*, see p. 23. n. 4.

(b) *Notteburg*, east longitude 31. 40. latitude 60. a city of Russia, in the province of Ingria, situate on an island in the lake Ladoga, at the entrance of the river Nieva, twenty-five miles east of Petersburg, the capital of that Province before Peterburgh was built.

(c) *Holland*, one of the united provinces, situate one hundred miles east of England, bounded by the German Sea on the north and west, by the Zuider Sea, which separates it from West Friesland, Overijssel, and Guelderland on the east, and by Zeland and Utrecht on the south, about one hundred miles long from north to south, and scarce

thirty



1702 thirty miles broad; but enjoys the greatest foreign trade of any one province in the world; and in point of strength and riches is equal to the other six of the united provinces, tho' it has scarce any native, or staple commodities or produce of its own, except some rich pasture-grounds, which furnish them with plenty of butter and cheese; and their seas and rivers, which supply them with a profusion of fish. They import every thing else from abroad; and yet have as great a variety of manufactures and merchandize as any nation whatsoever. It is a magazine, or store-house, where the produce of every country is lodged, bought in very cheap, and often sold out very dear, to the same countries, sometimes, from whence they purchased them. Their fleet, if not their army, is a match for almost any power in Europe.

(d) Novogorod, city, east longitude 34. latitude 58. a city of Moscovy, capital of the province of Novogorod, situate on the river Wolcuff, near the lake of Ilmen, one hundred and thirty miles south-east of Petersburg. It is the see of an Archbishop, and has in it one

1702 hundred and eighty churches and monasteries; the country about it abounds in corn, flax, hemp, wax, and honey; and here they manufacture the best Russia leather.

(e) Pleskow, see Chap. IX. n. 17.

(f) Asoph, see Chap. VIII. n. 6.

(g) Smolensko, see Chap. IX. n. 60.

(h) Archangel, see Chap. I. n. d.

(i) Bremen, or Breme, east longitude 8. 20. latitude 53. 25. the capital of the Dutchy of Bremen, situate on the river Weser, seventy miles north-west of Zell, and as many south-west of Hamburg, one of the most considerable port-towns of Lower Saxony, in Germany, but large vessels are obliged to unload six miles below it, on account of the sands in the river. It was one of the Hanse-towns, and is still an imperial city, or Sovereign state, governed with the adjacent territory by its own magistrates.

## C H A P. XI.

*The Dedication of the Palace of Ismeelhoff. A great Variety of rich Presents carried thereto. A French Surgeon unhappily killed there. The Religious Rites and Ceremonies observed throughout Russia, with Respect to Births, Marriages, and Burials, even amongst those who are not Natives.*

ON the twelfth of December, his Czarian Majesty came, without any previous notice, at ten in the morning, in order to dine with the Sieur Lups, who was but just arrived from (a) Archangel. I went directly to pay my compliments to him on his return, not in the least suspecting that his Majesty was there before me. The Czar came incognito, as it were; for he had only two Russian nobles to attend him; and as soon as he perceived I was there, he gave orders for my being introduced to him. Upon that honour done me, I embraced the opportunity of presenting

him with a short copy of verses which I had composed on the agreeable subject of the surrender of (b) Notteburg to his Majesty's forces, with a short apology for their imperfections, as they were the dictates of my zeal for his Majesty's interest, and joy for his success, rather than the result of a poetic genius: the Czar received them in a very complaisant manner, made me sit down by him, and give the Sieur Lups a particular detail of his triumphant entry on that joyful occasion; which accordingly I related in the best manner I could, and which gave general satisfaction. After that, we

X

drank

The author congratulates his Czarian Majesty on his conquests, in a copy of verses,

which are graciously received.



1702 drank a few bumpers to the future good success of his Majesty's arms; and at two in the afternoon his Majesty returned home.

Decemb. 19.

On the nineteenth of December I received orders from the Empress to carry the portraits of the young Princesses, which I had drawn the second time, to the palace of Imceelhoff. They set out from (c) Moscow at the same time that I did, and were there but some few minutes before me. The Empress's brother, accompanied by several priests, were in waiting, in order to introduce them (by way of formal procession) into the palace, which having lain for some time before in a ruinous condition, was but lately rebuilt, and perfectly finished; and this was the day appointed for the dedication of it before the court came to reside there. My instructions were to wait in the first apartments, where I found several ladies of the court to whom I was no stranger. The floor was strewed with hay; and on the right-hand was placed a large table, whereon were several loaves, some smaller than others, over some of which a small quantity of salt only was sprinkled; but over others, there were salt-bellers well filled. It is a custom amongst the Russians in general, that when any relation, or intimate acquaintance, is going to reside in a new habitation, to pay them a visit, and to dedicate, in a religious manner, the house to the Lord, with salt, and that for several days successively; which is done as a testimony of their peculiar regard for the party, and their sincere wishes for his future health and prosperity; or at least, that he may never want the conveniences of life. And 'tis customary, moreover, when any one quits his habitation for another more commodious, to leave hay and bread upon the floor of the former; by which he intimates his good-wishes to his successor, tho' unknown. The rooms of the apartment, where I was in waiting, were decorated, particularly over the doors and windows, with a great variety of pictures, drawn after the manner of the Greeks, which represented several of their favourite Saints, whom they plant for the

generality in the first room; the others, however, are not entirely without.

The Empress's brother was at the farther end of this room, accompanied, as I hinted before, by several priests, who were all standing with books in their hands, and singing of hymns suitable to the occasion. During the performance of this part of the ceremony, which took up near two hours, her Imperial Majesty was in the next apartment but one to it. As soon as this devotional exercise was over, I was conducted into another room, into which the Empress soon after came, and having a proper interpreter with me, I paid my compliments, and wished her all the pleasures that palace could afford her. She took me very familiarly by the hand, and said she would shew me some of her other apartments, which was a surprising act of indulgence from a Princess of her high rank and character. She then gave orders to one of her maids in waiting to fill me a little gold cup of brandy, which she presented me with her own hand, and when I had drank it off, she did me the honour to permit me to kiss her hand; and all the young Princesses were pleased to do the same. After this, I was dismissed with orders to attend again in about three days time.

As the Christmas holy-days were near at hand, I made bold to make her Imperial Majesty a present of a picture, representing the Nativity of our Blessed Saviour, drawn by my self, together with a small string of curious beads, which I bought, and brought from (d) Jerusalem, and begged her acceptance instead of those other ceremonial ones of bread and salt. She seemed to be extremely pleased with her unexpected trinkets, for which she returned me many thanks, and made me a present in her turn of a far greater value: I then shewed her another string of beads, which I had devoted to the young Princess's service; which, after she had turned them over, and admired them a little, she ordered me to deliver them my self into the hands of those for whom they were intended: I made my present accordingly, as they were sitting

1702

The author's compliments to her Imperial Majesty, on her arriving at her new Palace.

The author's present to her Imperial Majesty.



1703

1703

Am. 1703-1704

Barbarous treatment, and a ridiculous de-  
liverance.

Arrival of  
the person  
who per-  
formed the  
Patriarch's

January 9.

Twelfth-  
Days.

at a table in another room, and then withdrew.

No sooner was I returned to her Imperial Majesty, but one of them followed me directly, and presented me with a small cup of brandy, in the first place, and after that, with a bumper of delicious wine. Whereupon, I took my leave of the Empress, and with all the testimonies of the profoundest veneration and respect, returned her, and all her illustrious family, my hearty thanks for all their condescending goodness towards me.

Brants, 29.

On the twenty-fifth instant the Russians solemnized their grand festival of Christmas, according to their own form; and his Czarian Majesty began his circle of visits, after the same manner as he did the preceding year.

The weather continued so very wet till about New-Years-Day, that the Roads were almost impassable, and the merchants and others, who were on their journey from Archangel hither, were obliged to postpone their intentions for some days: such a wet season had not been known before for several years.

No sooner, however, was the new year commenced, but there was a sudden alteration; the sky cleared up, and at once came on a very severe frost. New-Years-Day was a very busy one; for then great preparations were making for a fire-work that was to be played off, on account of the conquest at Notteburg. The structure was erected on the side of the river (e) Moskva, behind the castle, in a spacious spot of ground, called the Royal Meadow, the grass or hay whereof is conveyed on a stated day into their churches. There was but a very little variation in this from the former on the same occasion; some few figures and devices only excepted.

The next day his Czarian Majesty honoured Mr. Brants with a visit, accompanied by no less than two hundred persons of distinction, who were all agreeably entertained in a spacious hall below stairs, with a grand concert of trumpets and kettle-drums. Here, amongst a great variety of other curiosities, was produced

a sword of a monstrous size, which was five foot and an half in length at least, and three inches and an half in breadth within the sheath; it was well-proportioned, and weighed about thirty pounds. I begged the favour of the person whose property it was, to draw it, and perceived it was waved on each side; the blade, however, was tolerably light in proportion to the hilt, and of some service. When it was sheathed again, and the point of it fixed on the ground, it was as much as a man of common strength could do to poise it with one hand. Three of us, however, one after the other, shewed the proprietor, that we were as capable of doing it as himself. That gentleman, it seems, was the son of the late governor of (f) Astracan, by name Petroski, who was put to death by the Strelitzes, that is to say, the soldiers, who threw him down to the ground from the summit of a high tower. Tho' this son of his was but an infant, when this act of barbarity was put in execution; yet they carried their inhumanity so far, as to hang him up by the heels, and leave him in that deplorable condition for forty-eight hours successively; which had such an effect on his feet, that he was a cripple forever after: and at this very juncture he is obliged to have shoes of a peculiar form made for him; and cannot stir abroad without crutches.

Some short time before night came on, a certain person made his appearance, who represented their Patriarch, dressed in his pontifical mantle, and chanting to the sound of a bell. This was a signal for all persons to withdraw; and the Czar himself went away directly, with all his retinue, in order to pay the remainder of his visits. On the sixth of January, 1703, the Russians solemnized the Twelfth-Day in the same manner as in the year preceding; but 'tis observable, by the way, that there were not an equal number of church-men, that attended on the occasion, as there were before; nor so many fine caps, or mitres, as there were in our last account. From whence it is very natural to conclude, that, in process



1703

Jan. 20.

Presents to  
the CzarinaA fatal ac-  
cident.

process of time, there will be some remarkable variations in the solemnization of that anniversary festival. On the twentieth instant his Czarian Majesty sent particular orders to no less than three hundred Russian noblemen and ladies to meet him at Ismeelhoff by nine the next morning. The same orders had been communicated to the foreign ministers, merchants, and their respective ladies; inasmuch that there was an appearance of near five hundred persons; and each of them had previous notice, that it was expected they should bring with them such present as they thought proper for the Czarina, which was to be delivered to her use at the time of their congratulation. These free-gifts, for the generality, consist in gold and silver toys, medals, with ingenious devices, and such other little trinkets of the like nature, which are of more or less value, according to the abilities, or the peculiar affection and attachment of the respective donors. Before they are presented, however, they are registered, and the name of the person thereto annexed; and after that delivered into the hands of one of the young Princesses, who, in return for the favour, offers her hands to kiss. Most of the Russian Lords and ladies withdrew in a very short time; but the rest were invited to dinner; after which there was a ball and other amusements till Midnight.

That very night there happened a very unhappy accident at the nuptials of Capt. Staets, where two surgeons, dancing with their wives, two officers, who were but just entered the room, would fain take out those two particular ladies to dance with them. Whereupon high words arose, and one of his Czarian Majesty's officers, called Bodon, drew his sword, and ran one of the surgeons, whose name was Garée, directly through the body. He was a French gentleman; and being unarmed, and incapable of defending himself, fell down dead on the spot. The other, whose name was Havy, was, at the same time, wounded by one Capt. Saks, another officer in his Czarian Majesty's service; but perceiving himself to be wounded, he stopped the blood

from gushing out with one of his fingers, as well as he could, and withdrew from the house; but his adversary pursuing him, he was obliged to return to his dead companion, and fell down in a fainting fit, on one side of him; but a gentleman then present, who had a peculiar regard for him, sucked his wound with so much success, that he soon revived. These Russian officers, it seems, had attacked them once before; but one of the surgeons, snatching up a sword, and the other a chair, very manfully drove them out of the room: enraged at this disgraceful repulse, they returned to their charge, and in the height of their resentment, committed the cowardly action here related. It is difficult for words to express the confusion that this presumptuous and blood-thirsty fact created; by the means whereof the two assassins then made their escape, tho' in two days afterwards they were happily taken and secured. Their colonel, who was an eye-witness of this barbarous and unmanly transaction, prevailed on one of his servants to take the crime upon himself, and boldly to declare, that he was the perpetrator, upon his specious promises, not only of procuring an immediate pardon for him, but of advancing him likewise to an ensign's post. The innocent vassal, willing to oblige his master on those conditions, gave it out peremptorily, that he was the only person who committed the murder: Upon this open confession, he was instantly put to the torture, in order to find out, if possible, the real fact. In his agonies, however, he absolutely disowned the whole affair, and publicly pronounced the name of the assassin; but this discovery happened to be too late, as shall be taken farther notice of in a more proper place.

At this juncture, his Czarian Majesty was determined on taking a tour to (g) Veronis, accompanied by several of the Russian nobility, and some particular Germans, whom he honoured with his orders to get ready for that intended journey. On the the twenty-fifth I received an order likewise of the same import from the Sieur Heinsius, who informed me that his Majesty was desirous

1703

The worst  
deaths  
taken.Prepara-  
tions to go  
to Veronis.

Jan. 21.



1703

that I should see that Port, the ships there, and whatever else was thought worthy the attention of the curious.

It is now, however, high time to give my readers a detail of the intermarriage of the Boyar, Iwan Feoderowitz Golowin, or John Theodore, the son of Count Golowin, Prime Minister of State, with the Lady Boreefowitz Czeremetof, the daughter of Boris Theodore, Velt-Marshall of Czeremetof, who had been employed by the Czar in divers embassies, and particularly in one to the court at (b) Vienna, where he transacted the trust reposed in him with so much honour and reputation, that he was thereupon constituted a Knight of the order of (i) Malta.

As there was somewhat very peculiar at the solemnization of these nuptials; and as this intermarriage was between two such illustrious personages, I shall here amuse my readers with a circumstantial relation of it. The ceremony was performed on the twenty-eighth instant at the palace of the Boyar Feodor Alexewitz Golowin, which was new decorated on that joyful occasion. 'Tis a very genteel structure of timber-work, well-designed, according to the strictest rules of architecture, abounding with curious apartments both above and below, and situate on an eminence, not far distant from the Slabode of the Germans, on the other side of the river Youfa. In the spacious salon, or great hall, were several tables ranged in very good order, where was a band of music; and in another apartment was placed a large table for his Czarian Majesty's sister, the Empress, the three young Princesses, and for several ladies of the court; the Lords and ladies, who resided in the adjacent parts of the country, sat at one end, and at some distance by themselves. On this occasion, there were not wanting, you may imagine, a great number of spectators. About eleven o'clock, the bridegroom made his appearance alone in the audience-chamber, on the left-hand, where he received the congratulations of the nobility, whom he entertained with a profusion of the best distilled liquors. About noon, proper

messengers were dispatched to inform him, that it was time to repair to the place where his nuptials were to be solemnized; and accordingly he was conducted, with trumpets and kettle-drum, who were in waiting for that purpose, to a small chappel in the palace. It would be no easy task to give the reader an adequate idea of all the pomp and splendor of this grand festival, at which his Czarian Majesty himself officiated as marshal, and was principal manager. No sooner was the bridegroom got into the chappel, but the bride was sent for; she had spent the night before at the habitation of one Mr. Montman, then lately deceased, in the Slabode of the Germans, directly over-against the Dutch church; and by the Czar's particular orders, had been for some time delivered up to the Velt-Marshall, the bride's father. All the Russian and German ladies, who were invited to this grand festival, repaired thither likewise to wait on the bride, who was conducted to the little chappel above-mentioned, in the following order. The first that made his appearance was a kettle-drummer on a white horse, followed by five trumpeters, mounted in the same manner; then came sixteen stewards of the household, selected from amongst the natives and the foreigners. After them went the Czar himself, in a fine coach, made on purpose for him at (k) Holland, drawn by six dappled grey horses. After him, five other coaches of State with six horses; but no body in them; then a calash and six, in which was the bride, and some ladies of her particular acquaintance. Whilst these were in procession, the Princess, his Majesty's sister, the Czarina, and the three young Princesses, came to the nuptial palace, in vehicles without wheels, like sledges; each in one, and all drawn by six horses; and after them followed a long train of ladies belonging to the court. In about half an hour, the bride made her personal appearance, with the ladies of her retinue, who had got into the empty coaches. When she alighted at the palace, she was received by two noblemen, who were to

Y

personate

1703

A remarkable  
and modern  
style

Jan. 28.



1703

personate her fathers; the one a Russian, but the other Count Conigzegg, the Polish Envoy, who, taking her by the hand, conducted her into the chappel, and placed her on one side of the bridegroom. She was followed by the Czar's sister, the young Princesses, and other ladies of the court, who halted at the entrance into the chappel; and several Russian and foreign ladies ranged themselves on each side without; for the chappel was so remarkably small, that ten or a dozen persons would perfectly crowd it: so that those who actually went in, were only the Czar, the Czarian Prince, the bridegroom and bride, the two fathers, and two or three other Russian noblemen; but as I was very ambitious of seeing the solemnity, I planted myself behind the bridegroom, who was very richly dressed, according to the German mode, as was the bride likewise, who appeared in a white satin, wrought with gold, with her head-cloaths, decked with a great variety of diamonds; behind her, hung down, under her fontange, a large tress of plaited hair; a fashion that has been long in vogue amongst the Germans, and on her head, she wore a small crown, embellished with precious stones. As soon as the ceremony commenced, the priest came and stood before the persons whose hands he was to join, and began to read in a book for some small compass of time. After that, the bridegroom pulled off a ring, and put it on his bride's finger. Then the priest took two crowns of silver-gilt, which were placed by each other, and made both parties kiss them. When they had so done, he placed them in form upon their heads. This done the priest began to read again, and the wedded pair gave their hands to each other, and in that manner, moved gradually three times round the chappel. Then the priest took a glass of red wine, and made each of them drink off some part of it, which when they had done, they returned the glass, and he delivered it to a proper person who was in waiting to receive it. His Czarian Majesty, who was walking about, during the whole ceremony, with his marshal's staff in his hand, observing that

the priest was going to his book again, gave him orders to conclude as soon as possible; whereupon, in about a minute's time he pronounced the benediction. His Majesty then directed the bridegroom to salute his bride; which she at first declined, but on his Majesty's repeated command, she thought proper to comply. When the nuptial rites were over, they repaired to the bridal-hall. During the time of the solemnity, the Czarina and the ladies of the court were at the several windows which fronted the chappel. In a short time, they sat down to table; the bridegroom among the men, and the bride among the ladies, at the common table in the large salon. This festival continued for three days successively, which were spent in dancing, and a great variety of other innocent amusements. On the third day they regaled those gentlemen in particular, who officiated as stewards of the household. The solemnization of these nuptials were widely different, from the mode, or fashion formerly practised, which would be needless, if not impertinent here to repeat, as others have so frequently taken notice of it before me.

Having thus expatiated as far as I think any ways requisite, in regard to their marriage-ceremonies, I shall now proceed to treat of their customs both at births and burials.

As soon as ever an infant is brought into the world, a priest is sent for immediately, if not in waiting, in order to its purification. This act is extended to every person then present, whose names are called over for that purpose, and who jointly receive the benediction. Nobody is admitted till the priest is at hand; and on his entering the room, the child is named either after the saint, whose festival was commemorated eight days before the child's nativity, or that which is to be kept eight days then to come. The sacrament, according to their ritual, is administered to the infant, before he is baptized; but more particularly amongst persons of distinction; and they seldom, if ever, baptize them till after the expiration of five or six weeks, when the infant is become somewhat strong and hearty.

1702

Russian  
customs at  
births.



1703

If the child proves to be a boy, then the mother is purified, or churched, at the expiration of five weeks after her lying-in; but if it be a girl, she is not churched till at the six weeks end. Then they make choice of its godfather and godmother, and never alter them afterwards on any consideration whatsoever. Nor can such godfathers and godmothers intermarry with each other; nor those in the third degree from them.

Russian  
customs at  
their marriages.

When any person of substance or figure is buried, all the friends of both sexes attend the funeral without any formal invitation. The corpse is placed upon a bier, supported either by six, or four men at least, the coffin being covered with a fine pall, and those of the fair sex, who are the nearest relations, make most hideous lamentations. This, however, is a circumstance, that I took particular notice of in my former travels. The priests chant the funeral dîge; but there is not the like formality and shew of public sorrow in the interment of the vulgar.

Customs among  
foreigners in  
Russia.

The customs amongst the foreigners residing in Russia are widely different from these with respect to their births and weddings; and much the same with the Germans. In their marriage-rites, indeed, they observe a much greater solemnity. They send a formal invitation to those they think proper by two stewards of their household, which is done, if it be in the winter, in a fine sledge, drawn by two horses, dressed up in ribbons, with two valets behind the sledge. The number of persons invited on such an occasion amounts sometimes to one hundred and fifty persons, or an hundred at least, according as things are circumstanced. At these festivals the marshal is the principal man, and goes to and fro with a trancheon in his hand, adorned with ribbons; and he, and the steward, commence all healths; besides the head-steward, there are generally four, six, or eight under-stewards, who take care that all necessaries are duly prepared, not only in regard to the furniture, but the provisions themselves. These assist the steward in waiting on the guests, and are

distinguished by a fine scarf on their right arm, which they wear in common with the head-steward, but then his is the richest; and these are tied on for them by the bride-maids. These bride-maids are introduced into the hall, where the entertainment is made, with great pomp and solemnity, and a great variety of instrumental music. And still the more to honour the bride and bridegroom they make choice of two fathers, two mothers, two brothers and two sisters on each side; who are all introduced in the same pompous manner. After that, they sit down to table in such order as is settled and determined before-hand.

The person appointed to carve is planted between the two bride-maids, who sit fronting the bride, and they tie a scarf upon his arm. The bridegroom seats himself between the fathers and brothers, and the bride between the mothers and sisters. When this entertainment is over, there is another in a side-room, for the marshal, the stewards, and the carver. After that, they proceed to dancing, and the marshal opens the ball with the bride, and then the other ladies are requested to dance with the stewards. After these, dance the fathers and mothers, then the brothers and sisters, and at last the new-married couple, and two or three pair perhaps besides. When these dances are over, the marshal cries out, with an audible voice, Liberty; and then every one is free to dance that pleases. These nuptial merriments, for the generality, are continued for three days successively; and on the last, the bride-maids entertain the marshal, the steward, his deputies, and the carver.

As to their funeral-rites, they are performed after the following manner. The body of the deceased is kept for some days; and the chiefs of the nation to which he particularly belongs are invited; and afterwards most of the foreign merchants and other friends, as well those in the city, as those in the Slabode. Which invitation is performed in form by two of the deceased's nation, appointed for that purpose, or pitched upon by his nearest

1702

Their funeral  
rites.



1703

nearest relations; and these are dressed in long black cloaks, and crape hat-bands. Notwithstanding the company, on these occasions, meet for the most part about two in the afternoon, it is dark before the corpse is interred in the winter season, and pretty late, in case it be summer. They have about fifteen or sixteen mourners, and twelve bearers, all married persons, and dressed in black, with long black cloaks, which are kept for that purpose in their churches. The mourners sit in the best room on the right-hand, with the male-relations of the deceased; and every one that enters the room pay their proper respects to them. The bearers have a crape hat-band, and a crape-scarf over their shoulders, and sometimes white gloves. They have a cold collation placed on two several tables with a great variety of provisions; and wine, flip, sweet-meats, toasted bread and lemons, in case they are to be procured, are handed about in plenty. Before the corpse is carried out of the house, 'tis customary to present each of the bearers with a silver spoon, with the name of the deceased neatly engraved upon it. The minister likewise, the school-master, and the mourners are favoured with the same present. If, however, the party deceased be a maid, then gold rings are given instead of spoons, with the name engraved. The coffin, before it is carried out, is nailed up by the bearers; and as soon as the procession commences, the school-master and his young pupils begin to sing with books in their hands; but the Calvinists never begin to sing till the corpse is arrived at the church-yard. The singing-boys move first, and are followed by their master, the minister, and the principal persons belonging to the funeral. Then comes the body of the deceased, and after it the nearest relations, the mourners, the mer-

chants, and officers, who don't go regularly two and two, as they do in Holland, but four or five together, or in what other number they think proper. As soon as they have reached the church-yard, and deposited the corpse into the grave, they renew their chanting some psalms suitable to the occasion; then the minister makes a funeral harangue, and thanks all the persons then present for the honour they have done him; then the bearers, who have each of them a shovel in their hands, throw in the earth upon the coffin, till the grave is nearly filled up. Then all the persons who were invited, are desired to return to the house of the deceased; but very few accept of the offer, except the bearers, who are always entertained there with drink and tobacco. Sometimes there is a funeral sermon preached in the church, and the women are invited to attend. When that is the case, the widow of the deceased comes with her nearest female relations, all covered over with crape; and these very frequently vent their sorrow in tears even in the streets. Sometimes she gives her friends an entertainment afterwards. They go either in coaches, or on horseback in the summer, it being then impracticable to go on foot. Formerly, indeed, their coffins were made of oak; but that practice is now prohibited, as the Czar proposes to reserve that wood for other uses.

The number of Calvinists in these parts may possibly amount to two hundred or thereabouts. The Lutherans are much more numerous; and have two churches, indeed, whilst the former have but one in the Slabode. There have been two Jesuits settled here for some considerable time, who instruct several children, who are profest Roman Catholics, in the Latin language.

1703



1703

1703

*Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.*

(a) Archangel, see p. 8. n. d.

(b) Notteburg, see p. 76. n. b.

(c) Moscow, see p. 23. n. c.

(d) Jerusalem, east longitude 36. latitude 32. the capital city of Judæa, or Palestine, in Asiatic Turkey, situate thirty miles east of the Levant, or Mediterranean Sea, ninety miles south of Damascus, three hundred miles south of Aleppo, and two hundred and thirty miles north-east of Grand Cairo. It stands on a high rock, with steep ascents on every side, except on the north, surrounded with a deep valley, which is again encompassed with hills. The city is at present three miles in circumference, and has a little altered its situation; for Mount Calvary, appropriated to the execution of criminals, was formerly without the walls, but has now drawn the city round about it, and stands in the middle of Modern Jerusalem, and Mount Sion is left without the walls, which stood near the center; the walls and fortifications, however, seem very antique. The private buildings are very mean, and but thinly inhabited. The resort of pilgrims hither only renders it considerable at present; and the accommodating them with lodgings and provisions is the principal business of the inhabitants. For the protection of the pilgrims against the Arabs, and for the reception of the tribute exacted on them, a Basba always resides here with a guard of janizaries. The church of the Holy Sepulchre, which the pilgrims chiefly come to visit, stands upon Mount Calvary, and is a magnificent fabric, in which every Christian nation almost has a peculiar chappel, over the middle of the temple there is a cupola, open in the middle, at which it receives the light, and under this open cupola stands the glorified sepulchre. There are also in this church twelve or thirteen places consecrated on account of some particular actions done in them, relating to the death and resurrection of Christ; as the place where he was nailed to the cross; the place where the soldier stood, who pierced his side; the place where the angels appeared to the women after the resurrection, &c. and on Good-Friday annually our Saviour's passion is solemnized in this church, and all the parts of it acted; such as the nailing him to the cross, crowning him with thorns, and taking the body down from the

cross; and here is seen the cleft of the rock which was made by the earthquake, when our Saviour expired.

(e) Moskva River, see p. 47. n. d.

(f) Astracan, see. 62. n. d.

(g) Veronis, see the description of this city at the beginning of Chap. XIV.

(h) Vienna, east longitude 16. 20. latitude 48. 20. the capital city of the circle of Austria, and of the German Empire, is situate on the river Danube, one hundred and thirty miles south-east of Prague, two hundred miles east of Munich, six hundred south-east of London, five hundred and fifty east of Paris, three hundred miles north-west of Belgrade, and seven hundred miles north-west of Constantinople. The city, within the walls, is not more than three miles in circumference, but the suburbs are much larger than the city. It is so well fortified, that it has sustained several sieges; the last by the Turks, in 1683, continued two months, and was a very terrible one; but it was relieved in a critical hour by John Sobieski, King of Poland, and the Duke of Lorrain.

Vienna is built of stone, the houses five or six stories high, with flat roofs. The Imperial family have two large palaces here, in which there are several grand apartments; but the buildings are neither uniform or elegant; nor the furniture so rich as might be expected in the palaces of the first Prince in Europe; but the houses of the nobility and great officers of State are magnificent structures; the palace of the late Prince Eugene particularly is the admiration of all that view it, as well for the grandeur of the building and conveniency of the apartments, as for the richness of the furniture.

The Prat in Vienna is frequented by people of quality, as the Mall is at London. It is a wood in an island, formed by the branches of the Danube, which renders it exceedingly pleasant.

Vienna is an Archbishoprick, and the cathedral of St. Stephen a magnificent old building, but very dark: the university is equal to any in Europe, in point of antiquity, the number of students, or their privileges and accommodations. The Austrian library is



1703 in great esteem, containing fourscore thousand volumes.

There is no place where people eat and drink more plentifully, and are better served with wine, as well as eatables, than they are at Vienna. People of distinction will have eighteen or twenty different sorts of wine at their tables, and a note is laid on every plate, enumerating the several sorts of wine that may be called for; and it is a very difficult thing for a stranger to get off without being made sensible of the strength of them.

This city, tho' it be so far within land, has in some parts of it the air of a sea-port; for here are magazines of naval stores, and ships of war built, and fitted out, which serve upon the Danube, against the Turks; and there have been many smart engagements between the fleets of the Turks and Germans upon that river, especially about Belgrade.

(i) Malta, east longitude 15. latitude 35. 15. an island in the Mediterranean, situate sixty miles south of Cape Passaro, in Sicily, and two hundred miles east of Tunis, in Africa. It is of an oval figure, twenty miles long, and twelve broad. It is a white, soft rock, covered a foot deep with earth; producing indigo, cotton, grapes, olives, figs, lemons, oranges, and other fruits; but they have not corn enough for their use, nor make any wine, but import both from Sicily; it produces, however, plenty of pease, beans, and other pulse, melons, and garden-stuff; and they have very good springs, but no

1703 wood, except their fruit-trees. This island was successively subject to the Phœnicians, Carthaginians, and the Romans: and the Emperor Charles V. gave it to the Knights of St. John of Jerusalem, after they had lost the island of Rhodes, which they defended two hundred years against all the power of Turkey. They were attacked in the island of Malta by Solymán, the Turkish Emperor, anno 1566, but he was forced to abandon the island, after he had lost above 20,000 men in the attempt. The Knights formerly consisted of eight several nations, but now only of seven, the English having withdrawn themselves on account of their superstitious rites. All the Knights are to be of ancient, noble, families, and legitimate. The grand crosses, or heads of each nation, are styled grand priors, having each of them their convents of Knights, and estates in every popish nation appropriated to their maintenance, which are styled commanderies. The priors chuse a grand master, and are all subject to the Pope in spirituals, and depend also pretty much on those Princes where their lands, or commanderies lie. They are obliged to suppress all pyrates, and are engaged in a perpetual war with the Turks, Algerines, and other Mahomedans. The Knights take vows of celibacy, chastity, &c. And as to matrimony, they generally keep their vow, but introduce, however, great numbers of Grecian girls, who serve them in quality of concubines.

(k) Holland, see p. 76. n. 4.





1703

1703

## C H A P. XII.

*The Czar's Departure for Veronis, to which Place the Author, and divers other Gentlemen attend him. Several remarkable Occurrences on the Road thither. His Arrival at Veronis.*

Journey to Veronis.

THE time appointed for his Czarian Majesty's departure for Veronis being come, he was accompanied thither by John Alexewitz Moefin Poefkin, prime inspector, and principal visitor of the Russian convents, who had been governor of (a) Astracan, an office which he had discharged with the utmost credit and reputation; Alexis Petrowitz Imeelhoff, the Knez Gregory Gregoriwitz Gagarin, John Andrewitz Tolstoy, governor of (b) Asoph, Joan Davidewitz governor of (c) Kolomna, Alexander Wasselewitz Kifken, head-steward of the household, and gentleman of the chamber to his Czarian Majesty; and one Nariskie, his Majesty's uncle's son. Divers other persons of high rank and distinction likewise came after us to Veronis. His Czarian Majesty likewise was pleased to honour the following persons so far as to invite them to accompany him in that journey; namely, the Sieur Konigsegg, envoy extraordinary from (d) Poland, the Sieur Kiferling, envoy from the King of (e) Prussia, the Sieur Belloseur, agent from the Sieur Ogienkie; one of the principal generals, and one of the King of Poland's sincerest friends; several officers of his household, and sons of the famous general Le-Fort. He invited, moreover, the three following merchants, viz. Mr. Steel, a fine gentleman, and a great favourite of his Czarian Majesty, and Mr. Hill, both natives of (f) England, and the Sieur Kinsius, a native of (g) Holland, who were all perfectly well affected to his Majesty. He desired, at the same time, that I should set out with them some short time before him; which accordingly we did upon the thirty-first

of January, and his Czarian Majesty, with all his retinue, set out the very next day. We had taken particular care that the bottoms of our sledges should be well strengthened and secured by proper plates of iron, in order that they might hold out the journey without any farther repairs; since the ground was hardly covered with snow, and the road at that time, by consequence, extremely bad. His Majesty had ordered several post-wodens for us, besides six sledges for the use of our selves and our servants. We set out from the Slabode of the Germans about three in the afternoon, and we were ordered likewise to have relays of fresh horses at every twenty wersts. At the end of every werst, between Moscow and Veronis, there are proper posts, or land-marks, whereon is inscribed the date of the year 1701, in which they were first erected, not only in the Russian, but the German characters likewise. Between each of these land-marks, or pillars, which are pretty stately, and painted red, there are eighteen or twenty small trees on each side of the road; and sometimes three or four all in a cluster, interwoven with branches, as your gabions are, the better to support, and keep them fast in the ground. Of these pillars there are about five hundred and fifty-two. So that from Moscow to Veronis, and the parts adjacent, it is computed at about an hundred and ten leagues, allowing five wersts to a league. As to the number of small trees, that are planted on each side of the road as before-mentioned, I am apt to believe, on a moderate computation of them, they may amount to about 200,000. And this



1703 contrivance is so much the more commodious; because, without such pillars and trees, it would be morally impossible to keep the road; since, during the winter-season, they are all covered with snow; besides 'tis customary to travel as well by night as in the day. In about two hours time we reached Sgelina; where we changed horses, in order to proceed to Oeljamina, at which place we arrived about eight o'clock: and there we alighted at a Kabak, belonging to his Majesty, which was a very handsome structure for a timber-house, and had divers very commodious apartments in it. At our entrance, we went up a fine Savare of five steps, with five angles, and were entertained with good beer, and very comfortable fires, as his Majesty himself was expected there, who has ordered Kabaks to be erected every twenty wersts for the accommodation of strangers. After we had refreshed our selves here for about two hours, we proceeded on our journey, tho' the night was very damp. There were horses always ready for us at the stated places, and there were fires in all the villages; where the country people stood at their respective doors with trusses of straw, all in flames, to testify their joy for his Majesty's arrival, which in the night-time had a very good effect. Tho' from this place to Kolomna we had thirty wersts to travel; yet we reached it before break of day; and there we waited till his Majesty came, which was about nine in the morning; at which time I was gone out in order to take a survey of the place both within and without. On Friday, or the fifth day of the week, I went out at the gate, called by the inhabitants Pjaetnietke; and from thence went to that of Cossi, which are the only gates they have. This town is surrounded with a very substantial stone-wall, about six fathom high, and about two thick, which is flanked with several towers, some circular, and others square; at about two hundred paces distance one from the other; but not calculated for the reception of cannon: it is about a mile and an half in circumference, and the little river called Kolommenske, from

Direction of  
Kolomna.

whence it derives its name, glides along by it. Here, indeed, I should have taken notice of the river of Moscow; but as we crossed it afterwards by water, I shall postpone the account of it to another time, that I may not be interrupted in my description of this city. The wall is almost all broken down on one side, and in order to get at the hinder-gate, where the land lies low beyond the river, one must go over a pretty high hill. At the other gate, there are suburbs, where they expose their wares to sale; and I saw a great number of country-people pass through this gate with their respective commodities for the supply of the town. The form of it is almost round, and on the highest side there is a dry ditch, and a very high wall. The church of Usplenja, that is, of the Separation of the Mother of God, is the most ornamental structure in the whole place; 'tis pretty large, and built with stone: the archiepiscopal palace likewise is no contemptible building; but there is nothing besides in the whole city that has the appearance of any grandeur. Having thus gratified my curiosity, I went to the governor's house, whose name was Ivan Davidewitz, where I found his Czarian Majesty, and the rest of his retinue at table. When I had got up to that Prince, and paid my duty to him, he honoured me so far as to salute me; and after I had given him a short detail of my survey, he ordered me to sit down. At two in the afternoon we proceeded on our journey, and went directly to the country seat of Mr. Alexander Waselewitz Koecken, which was about five wersts distance from Kolomna, where we were very elegantly entertained. It is a wooden structure, indeed, and but two stories high; but the apartments in it were very large and commodious. We refreshed ourselves there till about five o'clock, and arrived by about nine, at the little lake, called Ivan, not far distant from the village of Ivanofra, which was near one hundred and thirty wersts from the seat of Mr. Koecken. The river (i) Don, or the Tanais, has its source in this lake, and from thence flows in a long canal, the water whereof is exceedingly

The little  
Lake Ivan.

1703



1703

A great canal dug by order of the Czar.

The Don, or Tanais.

Large, close Baker.

Turf made in these parts, and used.

ingly clear, and perfectly well tasted, not only in the opinion of the Czar himself, but of all who were with him; notwithstanding that lake, or more properly speaking, that pool, is very marshy. There is one circumstance relating thereto that is peculiarly remarkable; and that is, one half of its water runs one way, and the other half another. It was at this place that the Czar, in the year 1702, began to dig a canal, in order to open a communication between the Don and the (k) Baltic. His Majesty then surveyed the whole ground in person, as he did at this present juncture while we were with him. This canal, the waters whereof are very deep, receives them from the Don, or Tanais, and is proposed to cross the lake Ivan, and so flow into the little river Sobata, which discharges its waters into the Upa; this into the (l) Occa, and this last into the (m) Wolga; by virtue whereof, the end proposed might be attained of making a communication between this river and the Baltic sea; the contrivance whereof is to be accomplished by a great variety of sluices, at about four-score paces in length, and in breadth only fourteen, under the care and inspection of Prince Gogarin, whose skill in such like mechanical operations, and other extraordinary endowments of mind, are beyond the power of words to express. His Czarian Majesty caused us to be carried on this canal in sledges, having first ordered the horses to be shod accordingly, and shewed us the whole work as it was then completed, which consisted of seven large, close sluices, composed of grey stone. It was there likewise, that I saw an engine for discharging of mud, made much after the manner of those in Holland; with which, when the ice was broke, his Czarian Majesty got up earth, proper to make turf with, which is managed there, just as it is in the (n) Netherlands. There were several houses full of it, and, by experience we found that it was very good.

His Czarian Majesty having entertained us at noon, about three o'clock we proceeded on our journey to a country seat belonging to Mr. Le Fort's, situate

in a village about thirty wersts farther. As this rural habitation, however, stands somewhat out of the high-road, three of our guides turned to the right, instead of following the company, and went to one of his Majesty's houses, at about five wersts distance only; and as night was come upon us, I went in there, accompanied by two French officers, where we tarried till ten o'clock, in expectation of our companions; but perceiving nobody came near us, we pursued our journey thro' a desert, where we met with a little coppice here and there, but nothing else. On the third instant, about nine in the morning, we arrived at the country seat of Prince Alexander Danilewicz de Mensikof, which was about an hundred and ten wersts from Mr. Le Fort's. It is a very spacious and magnificent structure, like a pleasure-house, with a lantern, or turret upon it, which was covered with a loose roof, to be taken off, or kept on, as occasion required, and was very neatly painted both within and without, with a great variety of colours. This pleasure-house of his was lofty enough in reason, and contained in it several very superb apartments. There is no other way to it than by the gate of the fort; for both of them are within one common enclosure, and that not of any considerable extent. Here were several fine works well mounted with cannon, which on one side were well covered with a hill, and on the other, by a fort of fen, or lake. No sooner was I admitted into the Czar's presence, but he asked me where I had been? I made answer, where Providence and my guides had pleased to direct me; for I was a stranger to the road, and the language they talked there. Upon this he laughed very heartily, and acquainted the Russian Lords who attended him with my ramble. He then gave me a bumper, by way of panishment. After that, he regaled us in a very elegant manner, and ordered the cannon to be fired at every health. When the entertainment was over, he carried us upon the ramparts, and treated us there with a variety of liquors on each work. After that, he ordered several sledges to

A a

be

1703



1703 he got ready to divert us on the lake, which was then frozen over, that we might from thence take a perfect view of the whole at our leisure: he did me the honour to take me into his own sledge; still careful of his liquors, which accompanied us wherever we went in great profusion. From thence we returned to the castle, where bumpers again began to be handed round in order to warm us; and at last, as that place had never been distinguished by any particular name, his Majesty was pleased to call it Oranjenburg. Prince Alexander's village, which is situate on one side of it, is called Slaboolke. From this agreeable place we set out about nine at night. On the fourth instant, we travelled hard, indeed, but afterwards at a more moderate rate, as there was but little snow upon the ground. His Czarian Majesty, however, did not put up, till we were arrived at Stepena, where were ten ships but newly built. We proceeded on our journey in the night-time; and on the fifth instant, about one in the morning, we reached (e) Veronis, which is an hundred and ninety wersts from Oranjenburg. As the company were divided whilst 'twas dark, one part dropt in after another. The two first that made their appearance at Mr. Le Fort's, was his son and my self; and as there had been no regulation settled in regard to our respective lodgings, we went directly to vice-admiral Rees; where we were informed, that he had kept his bed for three weeks then last past, through the misfortune he met with by a casual fall; and as soon as it was broad day, we waited on him, and condoled with him on that unhappy occasion: he received us in a very courteous manner, and begged of us to make free with his house, and whatever provisions we could meet with. His Czarian Majesty arrived himself about one in the afternoon, not only under the discharge of all the cannon in the castle, but under the fire of the

guns from the ships which lay there frozen up: and on his first arrival, he went directly to pay the vice-admiral a visit. From thence he went to Mr. Fewdor Maschewitz Apraxins, one of the Lords of the Admiralty, and commandant in that place. We received orders to follow him, and were very agreeably entertained, in the midst of the noise of the artillery; for fifty cannon at least were fired off at different times; and so the public acclamations concluded with the day. In the mean time, orders were given, that proper apartments should be prepared for the reception of strangers in the castle; that they should be regaled in the most elegant manner, and want for no provisions that the place could possibly afford: neither was there the least deficiency in point of liquors; for Mr. Konigsegg, the Envoy before-named, who had the direction of the table, discharged the trust reposed in him, in the politest manner. The Sieurs Steel, Knifius and Hill, lodged with a particular acquaintance of theirs, and Mr. Le Fort and I at the vice-admiral's; but we went every now and then to the castle to partake of the entertainments there. His Majesty, with his Russian nobility, lay at a private house upon the quay. On the sixth instant, we went to take a view of the ships there; where we drank very freely, and were innocently gay. Fewdor Maschewitz entertained us at noon, and all the next day: and so ended our festivity; for on the eighth the Russians grand fast commenced. On the ninth I solicited his Czarian Majesty for his free permission to take draughts of whatever I saw worthy of my attention; which request was immediately complied with; and he closed it with the following remark: "Come, Sir, said he, we have lived well, and been innocently merry; and as we have had some little rest after our fatigue, 'tis now high time to set to work, and dispose of our future hours to better advantage."

*Occasional*



1703

1703

*Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.*

(a) Afracan, see p. 62, n. i.

(b) Afoph, see p. 51, n. b.

(c) Kolomna, see p. 61, n. c.

(d) Poland, see p. 63, n. n.

(e) Prussia, a province of Poland, is situate between 17 and 22 degrees of east-longitude, and between 53 and 56 degrees of north-latitude, being bounded by the Baltic Sea on the north; by Lamogitia and Lithuania on the east; by Great Poland and Warovia on the south; and by Brandenburg and Pomerania on the west; being about two hundred miles long, and hundred broad, and divided into Regal and Ducal Prussia; the Regal Prussia, which lies on the west, being still subject to the crown of Poland; and Ducal Prussia, which is the eastern part of it, subject to the King of Prussia, whose ancestors began to stile themselves Kings about the year 1700, and have been since recognized Kings by most of the powers in Europe. The chief town of Ducal Prussia is Koningsburg, situate on the Frischhoff, a bay of the Baltic Sea. This country has been subject to the Marquisses of Brandenburg upwards of two hundred years, and here they are absolute Sovereigns, the Poles having acknowledged their independency on the crown in the year 1663, upon condition, however, that upon failure of issue of the Marquis and Elector of Brandenburg, Ducal Prussia should revert to the crown of Poland, and be deemed a fief of that crown. Ducal Prussia is one of the coldest, and most barren countries in Poland, but is well situated for a foreign trade, having several good ports upon the Baltic Sea. The King of Prussia's German dominions, consisting of Brandenburg, Pomerania, Magdeburg, Halberstat, and Silesia, if he can keep the last, are much more considerable; but they are separated from his Polish dominions by Regal Prussia. Brandenburg Marquissate is bounded by Pomerania and Mecklinburg on the north; by Poland on the east; by the Electorate of Saxony on the south; and by Brunswick and Lunenburg on the west; extending two hundred miles in length, and between fifty and an hundred in

breadth; the capital city Berlin, subject to Prussia.

(f) England is of a triangular figure, bounded by Scotland on the north; by the German Sea on the east; by the English channel, which divides it from France on the south; and by St. George's, or the Irish Channel on the west. In South Britain, which comprehends both England and Wales, there are 52 counties, 26 cities, 207 borough towns, 803 market-towns, 2 archbishopricks, and 9284 parishes. It is about 380 miles in length, and 300 in breadth, containing about eight millions of inhabitants. And how remarkable this island is for trade and commerce is almost needless to inform our English readers: in case, however, any of them may casually want farther information, for brevity's sake, we shall refer them to Mr. Postlethwait's general dictionary on that particular and important subject; wherein every article is occasionally inserted, with so much accuracy and judgment, that it cannot fail of gratifying the curiosity of the most inquisitive reader.

(g) Holland, see p. 76, n. e.

(h) Moskva River, see p. 4, n. a.

(i) Don, or Tanais, see p. 62, n. l.

(k) Baltic Sea has Sweden on the north, and Germany and Livonia on the south. It is observable, that a current always sets out of this sea through the sound into the ocean; for which reason, and the numerous fresh-water rivers which fall into it, its waters are not so salt as other seas; and there are no tides in it; and it is frequently frozen three or four months in the winter.

(l) Occa, see p. 51, n. d.

(m) Wolga, or Volga, see p. 28, n. f.

(n) Netherlands, see p. 62, n. w.

(o) Veronis. See the Author's particular account of it, in the beginning of Chapter XIII.



## C H A P. XIII.

*A Description of the City of Veronis; as also of the Don, or Tanais.  
A short Account of our Return to Moscow, and of His Majesty's  
Departure from thence to Sleutelenburg.*

*Situation of  
Veronis.*

THE city of Veronis is situate on a high hill in fifty-two degrees and an half of northern latitude, and is surrounded with a wooden wall, which was then all perfectly rotten, and divided into three parts; in one whereof, commonly called Jakatof, the most substantial Russian merchants principally reside. Within the city there is a remarkably long ropewalk; and without the wall there are several magazines, or store-houses for their powder. On the side of the hill, and all along the banks of the river, there are a great number of houses within the extent of four hundred paces; the most magnificent of these structures belong to the Admiral Golowin, Mr. Apraxin, one of the commissioners of the admiralty, the Boyard Lofkrielowitz, Prince Danielowitz, and other Russians of high rank and distinction. The much greater part of these houses front the citadel, and those of the vice-admiral, and other officers are on one side of them; and behind these buildings there are streets, wherein the inhabitants are principally employed as ship-carpenters, or in other professions of a similar nature. This city is situate on the west side of the river Veronis, from whence it derives its name; and the citadel stands on the other side, to which there is a large bridge for a more commodious communication. The ditches that surround it are all full of water proceeding from the old river. This citadel is a quadrangular structure, with towers at each corner, has several very spacious apartments, and makes a grand figure from without. The new river is choaked up to that degree with sands that it is not navigable; and the ships for that reason

*The citadel*

are obliged to sail through the old one. The citadel is, as they themselves look upon it to be, the principal magazine, and has above one hundred and fifty pieces of cannon in it; the greatest part of them, however, have no carriages, in order that, on any emergency, they may be transported to any other place with greater ease. This citadel, moreover, is defended by palisades in various parts of it, and is filled with a good garrison, as well as the country round about, in order to withstand the Tartars, in case they should oppose them. The conveniencies for the building of ships now lie on one side of the citadel; whereas formerly they were scattered all round about it. The store-house, which is a large capacious structure, is situate on the other side, and is raised three stories high; the two first of which are all stone-work; but the upper, or higher story, is built with wood. In this place, there are several apartments full of naval stores; in some there are cloaths for sailors of all sorts, and in others, all such other conveniencies as they imagine they should principally stand in need of. The sail-house, or loft, stands on one side of this store-house; and at a moderate computation, the number of inhabitants amount to near ten thousand. There are two or three small villages that may be seen, tho' at a considerable distance, in the plain.

On the tenth instant, I went in pursuit of a commodious stand, or situation, from whence I might take a draught, or sketch of the city; and I pitched accordingly upon the highest part of an adjacent hill, which is but two wersts at most to the south-westward part of it: there I began my

*The ditches  
for shipping*



1703 my operation; but could make no considerable progress through the excessive coldness of the season, and the keenness of the wind. The next day I took a walk thither, in order to get my self into a moderate degree of heat by the way, attended by nobody but my own servant, and three men belonging to the vice-admiral, who might keep off any such Russians as might probably attempt to interrupt me in the prosecution of my design. I gave orders for a mat to be got ready, some few poles, an ax, and a spade, in order to dig a pit for me, where I might with convenience take my stand. When this was done, I secured my back from the wind with the mat; and being thus planted, there was no great difficulty in seeing what I was about both from the town and the river-side. And, indeed, I was not long here before I was found out; for two English shipwrights discerning me from the river, sent two or three of their people to know what business I had there. Perceiving they were advancing towards me, I gave orders to my sea-men, who were armed with half-pikes, to keep them at a distance; to tell no one what I was about; and to say, they knew nothing of the matter, in case any impertinent or curious enquiries should be made. In the mean time, above fifty Russians in a body got together upon the hill, drawn thither through the novelty of such a sight, and their incapacity of conceiving what my intention in reality was; my people, however, taking due care to drive them back, they were not so presumptuous as to advance near enough to give me any interruption. When I returned to the town, the vice-admiral informed me, that it was the current report, that one of the Czar's domestics had been buried alive upon the hill; as nobody could tell who it was, nor what crime had been committed; and that the poor, unfortunate fellow, who was buried up to the middle, had a large prayer-book before him, which was the paper I was drawing on; and that no one was permitted to come near him, as there were three proper centinels appointed to guard him, and

prevent any attempt to assist him; nay the officers themselves were so much in the dark as to the real matter, that they enquired of one another who the poor domestic was, that was thus under sentence of condemnation. On the twelfth instant, however, as they perceived the criminal had shifted his quarters, and consequently, that they were mistaken in regard to his interment, they unanimously ran into another suggestion, as whimsical as the former. At some small distance, there was an old burying-ground, where they had seen me some few days before, and where I went that day to take a draught of it. The Russians, thus flattered and confounded, now imagined, that I might be some prophet arrived from beyond-sea, to visit the old burying-grounds, say masses for the dead, and perform some other religious ceremonies there; especially, as I always appeared with a book before me. They observed, as all agreed, that I had an Hungarian vest on; that I had a servant who attended me, and carried on his arm a blue cloak, or something like one; and in short, that I had three of the vice-admiral's people set over me as a guard. This notion, as idle and extravagant as it was, might possibly have been attended with bad consequences, had not the Czar himself been personally in those parts, and been a check on the multitudes which would otherwise have assembled together.

In the Plate, Number XV. hereto annexed, the Reader has a perfect view of the whole town. The capital letter A denotes the place where his Majesty resided. B the docks, where the ships are built. C the d'Woritz, that is to say, the citadel. D the Ambact, or store-house; E the sail-house, or loft; F the house, or palace of Prince Alexander Danielowitz; G that of Fewdor Masnewitz; H Uspenje Dogeroditza, or the Church of the Conception of the Mother of God. I Cisma Idenjan, or the church devoted to Cosmus and Damian, who were brethren in the catalogue of their saints; K Saboor, or the church of the Assembly of the saints; L Petritza Bogoroditza, or the Friday Church, which was



1703 so distinguished, because in that place the Blessed Virgin Mary appeared in an extraordinary manner on that particular day; and from thence it was presumed that she required it to be set apart in honour of that day above any other in the week. M the old river. N the new river. O the hill from whence I drew the prospect of the town. As the old monuments before-mentioned appeared to me somewhat extraordinary in their kind, I drew them likewise, as well as the ground wherein they stand. And as they are on a hill, which has suffered greatly by the inclemency of the weather, this hill is by itself, and is from the top to the bottom of it covered over almost with skulls and bones, and large pieces of coffins. On the top there are two; one only a small matter damaged; but the other is shattered to pieces. I gave orders to a Russian to climb up this hill, which had two trees upon it, in order to try if he could bring back with him some bones which appeared to lie upon the surface, and which had been so perfectly blanched by the air that they were as white as chalk, which had a very odd effect in that black soil; but the earth was frozen so hard, that he could not possibly extract them. In Number XVI. the reader has a full view of the Old Burying-Ground. What now lies before it, was formerly one part of it; and the way to it on this side the river lies beneath this hill, on the left-hand; and on the right lies Siefoskie, in the bottom near the river, together with some mills, as the reader may see in Plate XVII, hereto annexed. As to the ships which we saw here, there were fifteen in the water, four men of war, the largest of fifty-four guns, three victualling vessels, two fire-ships, and six bomb-ketches. There were likewise five men of war on shore, ready to be launched, all built after the Dutch manner, from sixty to sixty-four guns, two in the Italian fashion, from fifty to fifty-four, a galeas, after the Venetian mode, and four gallies, besides seventeen other gallies at Siefoskie, which is about two wersts only from the city. Besides all this, the workmen were fully employed about five

men of war, which were building after the English taste; two of them bored for seventy-four guns, and two for sixty or sixty-four; and the fifth, which is called after his Majesty, by reason he had the management and direction of her himself whilst on the stocks, is bored for four-score and six guns. The same workmen were likewise farther employed about a packet-boat; and upon the shore, on the other side the river, there were about two hundred brigantines, most of them built at Veronis; and at this very juncture there were four hundred very substantial brigantines upon the (a) Nieper, or the Borysthene, in the parts adjacent to (b) Crim Tartary, and three hundred flat-bottomed boats, upon the (c) Volga; and to these may be added eighteen men of war, a bomb-vessel, and a yacht at (d) Asophi. His Czarian Majesty has, moreover, divers other ships, the largest whereof are of sixty-six guns, four from forty-eight to fifty. Five of thirty-six. Two of thirty-four, and others smaller; the least of twenty-eight.

On that day his Czarian Majesty took the diversion of sailing on the ice, in a place that was made level, and fit for the purpose. On the thirteen that night, about twenty bombs were fired off from two vessels, and several others from a pinnace, or galley, with twenty oars. When I returned, the vice-admiral informed me, that the Czar had sent a special messenger after me. Accordingly, I went that minute on board the ship where I knew he was, and saw several bombs fired off after the Dutch manner. I found his Majesty with a profusion of liquor before him; and was informed, that the next day, being the fourteenth instant, he was to go with a numerous retinue to the (e) Don, or Tanais, which is about twelve wersts from Veronis, in order to take a survey of the shipping at that particular place. We set out about three o'clock in the afternoon. Most of the company went on horseback; the rest either in waggons or coaches; and when we had got at some small distance from the town, the Czar stooped at a small church, and after that, we went a little

1703

Plate XVI.

Plate XVII.

Journal to  
the Don, or  
Tanaïs.

on



1703

on one side to take a view of a mill, that was of an octagon form, and of a very extraordinary construction, by a Circassian architect. Within this mill, there are four others which work all together, without either sails, or any other contrivance for the wind to assist it from without; but there are seven sails within, like those of a ship, and shut up without by large windows or doors. When there is a brisk gale of wind, two or three of those same windows are immediately thrown open, on that side which is next to it; so that rushing upon the sails, it sets the machine a going with great rapidity. The reader will find a representation of this machine in Plate XVII, hereto annexed.

Arrival at  
the Don, or  
Tschou.

The Czar came up with us in a calash, and desired us to mend our pace; but that was more than all of us were capable of doing; we reached, however, our journey's end before the night came upon us. At our arrival, there was a general discharge of the guns from all the ships in the river; and we went on board several of them, where they obliged us to drink bumpers. At night, we were agreeably entertained at the house of Ivan Alexewitz Moesin Poeskin. When supper was over, a great part of our company retired to the ships for lodging; for there were none to be procured on any consideration whatever on shore; for they had not at that time begun to build upon the place; tho' there had been a rumour that a town would be built there. The day following we went to see the operations that were going forward in order to stop the current of the Don, and to turn it into another channel. For that purpose there was a sluice contrived on that side whereon they proposed the water should have its course. This river, which is likewise known by the name of the Tanais, and by the inhabitants in the parts adjacent, called Donetz, is one of the most noted rivers in all Russia. It crosses the Precopian, or Little Tartary, to the eastward; and after it has winded about a long way, it takes a prodigious sweep towards the Volga; and when it has been swelled by the influx of several

The mills  
of the Don.

smaller rivers, discharges its waters by Afoph, formerly called Tanais, into the Lake (f) Maotis, or Sea of Zabalkey, or Zabac-Sea, where it divides Europe from Asia. Here, to our great surprise, we met with several elephants teeth scattered up and down upon the ground; one of which I am still in possession of, but cannot rightly conceive by what means they should lay there. The Czar, indeed, assured us, that Alexander the Great, having traversed that river, if he could credit the historians whom he had consulted on that occasion, came as far as the little town called Kaskinke, which lies but about eight wersts from that very spot; and that, in his opinion, it was highly probable, that several of his elephants died there, and that these teeth might possibly be all that were left behind.

1703

Elephant  
teeth.

After this we returned to the ships, where we met with a very courteous reception. There were eleven men of war at anchor here, besides victuallers. One of these ships in particular was built under the immediate direction of the Czar himself, which made a much finer appearance than any of the rest, in regard to its extraordinary decorations. The captain's cabin was lined with walnut-tree. There was another, 'tis true, which lay along side of her, that had its peculiar beauties, which was built by a native of (g) England. As to the rest, they had no ornaments to boast of. At noon we were entertained with a profusion of fine fish, and at night, when we returned to the ships, we drank bumper after bumper to the cheerful roar of the cannon.

Return to  
the ships.

In the height of our carousals, a Russian sailor was so fool-hardy as to clap his hand to the mouth of a gun, by which mad frolic he was thrown down headlong, and by the violence of the fall broke some of his ribs. They used their utmost endeavours to conceal this unfortunate accident from the Czar; but by some means or other, it came to his ears, and he went directly, with abundance of concern, to see the poor wretch, whom he found upon the point of expiration.

An unhappy  
or accident.

About



1703

The author  
takes his  
leave of the  
Czar.

About eight in the evening we broke up, and by ten got to Veronis; notwithstanding it rained extremely hard. On the sixteenth, having first obtained his Majesty's leave for that purpose, I made preparation for my return to (b) Moscow with my three friends; but the rains having made the roads excessively bad, we were obliged not only to hire eight waggons, but to secure the wheels with large plates of iron. On the seventeenth in the morning, we took our leave of his Majesty, who first gave us his hand to kiss, and then embraced us, wishing us at the same time a good journey, and desiring us to take a survey of some mortars that lay in our way on the river-side, not above two wersts from the town; which accordingly we did without making any considerable stop. They were planted against a hill, near a barn, in which they had been cast. About noon, I had orders from the Czar to turn back, and attend him once more, who was then taking his diversion on the ice; and had been overfet in his vessel; but it was soon put in order again, without any ill consequence attending that mischance. About half an hour afterwards, he desired me to accompany him alone. Upon that, he got into a sledge with two horses, which he hired for that purpose. Soon after, one of our horses sank into a hole; but as the other luckily kept firm on the ice, that misfortune was likewise soon rectified. As I was sitting by him; "Come, said he, we will go to the Shalloop; I have a great inclination, as you were not present when the bombs there were last fired off, that you should see one of them discharged." On our arrival, we examined the vessel, and the wooden bed wherein the mortar was fixed, and which might be turned, we found, with ease to any direction. When the bombardier was ready, the proper signal was given for all the spectators on the plain to stand out of harm's way. We then got out of the shalloop, and fire was according set to the fusee, but the bomb bursted in her flight. As this was a disappointment in some measure, his Majesty very obligingly asked me,

whether I would see another or two more discharged, but I told him I thought it was needless, as my curiosity was sufficiently satisfied. I then waited on him to one Mr. Sleits, and from thence to his own habitation, which was not far off, and there I had the honour once more to take leave of him. He embraced me at my departure, and made use of his usual expression to his friends, namely, "God preserve you."

About three in the afternoon, I returned to my lodgings, and after a hasty meal, set out for Moscow. Before I went, however, I paid my compliments to the vice-admiral, thanked him for all favours received, and parted from him with pleasure, as I found he was greatly recovered from his late indisposition. He was a very worthy gentleman, highly esteemed by all the nobility, and by nobody more than the Czar himself.

We set out in the evening; and notwithstanding there was some snow fell in the night, it rained the next day. On the eighteenth in the morning we got fifty-eight wersts from Veronis, as we had three horses to each waggon, which carried us back the same road we came.

We observed, that the Kabacks, or houses belonging to the Czar, for the accommodation of travellers, were for the generality inhabited by the Circassians, who are extremely neat and cleanly, not only in their houses, but their persons. They are most of them very free and good-humoured, gay and lively, and divert themselves almost every day with some instrumental music or another. We met with some of these musicians at every Kaback, as we passed along, till we came to that of Prince Alexander. They never fail of giving you a tune at your first entrance; and the common liquors which they sell there are mead and brandy. They have women likewise amongst them, that are very obliging to strangers. They are very remarkable, in regard to their dress, which is widely different from the Russians; especially that of their females. Their ordinary dress is a shift with a girdle, which they plait

1703

Departure  
for Moscow

Manners of  
the Circassians

all round with a piece of  
that, say, like a piece  
to the feet. On the  
a new linen cloth was  
as part of their dress  
out of this cloth a very  
great number of small  
but the order is to be  
at hand, it is then not  
they themselves like to  
of plaited linen, which  
hand, and it is a habit  
has been in the dress  
this through the  
men are dressed in  
two layers of small  
linen, and when  
The order, however, is  
short like a shift, but  
we in the Palace  
in addition from one  
able to get through the  
climate as we found  
behind her was a  
of days, for her  
days, being after their  
my of the men. When  
the women when we  
learned that they were  
coming of late to  
circles, however, the  
to the men, and it was  
had married women  
a little more, which  
was, but not to sleep  
and sleep for a  
small it is no purpose  
business or our pleasure  
was not over a little  
as a Moscow village, it  
whether there was any  
the one travelling over  
and that is why we  
could be so near to a  
small place. When we  
back to the village from  
and gave him orders to  
was the morning in  
we were of our friends  
perhaps the day before  
had come on a great  
other could we have  
in the morning to



1703

all round with a piece of party-coloured stuff, that, like a petticoat, hangs down to their feet. On their heads, they wear a white linnen cloth wound round; and one part of their chins is covered. One end of this cloth is turned up in a pretty genteel manner on one side of their heads; but the other is for the most part loose at least, if it does not hang down. On their foreheads likewise they wear a piece of plaited linnen, which goes over the head, and is flat behind, much after the same manner as the Arabian women, and those amongst the eastern Jews. Their shifts are gathered about the neck at least two fingers in breadth, as the Dutch ladies formerly did, when they wore ruffs. The reader, however, will have a much clearer idea of their habit, by casting his eye on the Plate annexed, which I drew in miniature from one of the most agreeable girls amongst them, and in the same attitude as we found her in her stove. Behind her was a maid-servant kneading of dough, for bread, and several children, sitting after their manner on the top of the oven. It was about three in the afternoon when we went away from hence, and it then mizzled, with a small quantity of snow. In about an hour afterwards, however, the north-wind began to blow, and it froze hard. After we had travelled fifteen wersts, we came to a little river, which was partly frozen over, but was too deep to ford: we made several attempts for two hours together, but all to no purpose. Upon this obstruction in our passage, we sent two of our servants over on horse-back, and a third to an adjacent village, in order to enquire whether there was not some proper place for our crossing over; but he brought us word that it was impracticable; neither durst he venture to cross the river a second time. Whereupon, we sent him back to the village from whence he came, and gave him orders to wait there till we came in the morning. In the meantime there was one of our servants missing, who had got drunk the day before, and whom we had thrown into a peasant's sledge; neither could we hear any tidings of him. In this dilemma, our people being in

great danger of being frozen, we crowded our waggons as close together as possible to shelter them; whilst we were consulting what measures we should pursue. It was nine o'clock at night, and still we were perfectly at a loss; till at last, upon mature deliberation, we determined, as there were no houses in that part of the country, to turn back again to a little village that lay out of the high road, where we arrived about eleven, and got some refreshment for our horses, as well as ourselves. Our drunken valet, who had been missing, reached us that night; and informed us, that his driver had taken his horses out of the sledge, whilst he was asleep, and conveyed them away without his knowledge; and that he was obliged to look out for some new vehicle, which he had sought to no purpose, had it not been for earnest persuasions, and the additional temptation of a sum of money, of which he happened fortunately to be then possessed, sufficient to answer that wished for end; and, in a word, that it was with the utmost difficulty that he had overtaken us. The very next day, I perceived, that thro' the negligence of our drivers, the axle-tree of the waggon I was in, was either actually broken, or at least in great danger of being so; and that being the true state of the case, and the frost proving very severe, with a deep fall of snow, I came to a resolution to fix it on the bottom of a sledge, and to take the wheels along with me, in case the weather should happen to change. Besides this, one of our drivers took an opportunity to abscond, as 'tis frequent in this country for them to do, but had left us his horses, indeed, in hopes some of his comrades would bring them back with their own; insomuch that we were reduced to the necessity of hiring a new guide. We took three, with sledges and horses, and furnished our selves with a sufficient quantity of plank and timber to assist us, when we were obliged in our passage to cross a river. Tho' the sun shone out bright enough, 'tis true, yet it was extremely cold, and about ten o'clock, we reached the place, where we had attempted to ford the river the evening before,

1703

Violent cold was then.



1703 fore, but in vain. The river, however, was in that short compass of time so frozen, that several of our horses crossed it upon the ice; tho' one or two of them failed in the attempt. The horses were taken out, that the waggons might cross with the greater safety; and where the river was the deepest, we made use of planks and other pieces of timber; but notwithstanding all our precautions, some of our people slipped into a hole, and were well washed. There being help sufficient, however, at hand, they were soon taken up again. About one in the afternoon, we began to proceed on our journey; and in an hour's time, or thereabouts, we came to a place, where we found fresh horses ready for our service. All this time, we had travelled but twenty-eight wersts, and had two more still to go before we could reach a small town called Romanof, where we crossed the river of Belle Kollodis, that is to say, the White Pit, by a bridge, which was covered over with ice, about a foot and a half thick; where we dined, and were amused with Circassian music, during the whole time of our refreshment. We tarried there, tho' with no small reluctance, till eleven that night; for we were not able to prevail on the governor of the place to furnish us with horses till then. Here the wheels were taken off from our waggons, and laid on sledges, as I had done mine before; and in the dead of the night we went through a large village called Stœdunke; and on the twentieth instant, about break of day, we reached the pillar of one hundred and thirty-six wersts, where we tarried no longer than was requisite for the change of our horses. When we had proceeded two wersts farther, we passed the town of Dobri, which stands about a werst from the high-road, on the river Veronis. When we had travelled one hundred and fifty-one wersts, we came to a large village; at the end of one hundred and fifty-four to another, where we went up a hill, which was so steep, that on the left-hand of it, there were rails put up from the top to the bottom, in order to prevent passengers from falling. After that, we

passed thro' three other villages, and upon the pillar of the last of them, we saw an hundred and fifty-seven wersts. Soon after this, perceiving the main road so full of ice, that it was almost impracticable to keep it, we turned off somewhat to the right, in hopes of finding out a better way, and succeeded in the attempt so far, that we all got through, except one waggon, which was loaded with a greater weight than ordinary, and sunk down into the ice; but 'twas got out again, tho' with some difficulty, and no ill consequence ensued. In a word, after we had moved thro' several other villages, we arrived at Prince Alexander's house, which was an hundred and ninety wersts from Veronis. We did not tarry there, however, but made the best of our way to a village at some small distance from it; and there we dined. Tho' it was but six in the evening when we alighted, yet it was ten or better before we got our horses ready. On the twenty-first, about four o'clock, we were two hundred and eighteen wersts forward on our way, and soon after two hundred and thirty-eight, and then two hundred and fifty-seven, from whence, on the right-hand, we saw the town called Schoppin, which seemed considerably large, and some other villages, that lay between that and us: And as our post-wodens reached no farther, we went thither, and crossed over a bridge, which was a werst at least in length, and after that, over a spacious moor. However, this town, in reality, is not so considerable as it appears to be; neither has its castle, where the governor resides, and which is situate at the end of the principal street, any thing worthy of the least attention either without or within. Accommodations, indeed, were immediately appointed for us, and the burgo-masters, in the name, and on the part and behalf of the governor, waited on us, with a variety of liquors, such as brandy, mead, beer, &c. with bread, by way of refreshment. Here we made a demand of thirty horses instead of twenty-four, the better to carry our wheels with us; and this indulgence being granted us, we set out from hence about an hour be-

1703

Schoppin.



1703 fore sun-set, and travelled near forty wersts that night, then, on changing our horses we reached three hundred and eleven wersts, and came within a small distance of Mr. Le Fort's house, where we arrived safe on the twenty-second instant, about nine in the morning. This gentleman had sent full instructions to his servants, to entertain us in the best manner they possibly could, and not only to furnish us with horses, but with every thing else that we could reasonably require. It was here, that we left our waggon-wheels behind us, that we might not be so greatly encumbered as we had been; and as the frost and snow had greatly mended the roads, from hence we could make greater expedition with fewer horses. After having stopt here for about an hour only, we took fresh horses, and proceeded on our journey to the length of three hundred and twenty-nine wersts, and by three in the afternoon, we came to three hundred and forty-seven wersts, and to the village called Podassinnke, where we regaled our selves in a very plentiful manner. The snow fell down deep, and the bleak wind and frost continued; and after we had changed horses once more, we went thro' several villages in the night; and through the town called Nikole Saraiske, which, tho' no inconsiderable place, we got through it with abundance of difficulty; and the reason was, because a great number of country-people had crowded it with their sledges, which were laden with a great variety of wares for Moscow. On the twenty-third instant, in the morning, having reached as far as four hundred and twenty wersts, we proceeded on our journey with fresh horses to (i) Grodno, where we arrived at about nine o'clock, but did not tarry; and about seven or eight wersts farther, we came to the river (k) Occa, which took us up some time in crossing. At that time we had a very high and steep hill to get over, where there was but one narrow gut, on the left-hand side of the river; and in our passage, we met unfortunately with several sledges, by which means we were under an indispensable obligation to make

a considerable halt in order to let them pass by us; which could not possibly be effected in any other place but on the very brow of the hill; for the way was too narrow for us both; and the way they took was so very bad, so very steep, and so full of large stones, that not only the horses, but the sledges likewise were in great danger; as most of the horses went forwards without any drivers to direct them. This, however, was not all the misfortune that attended us at this juncture; for words arising between those sledge-men and our servants, they came to blows; because one had not given timely notice to the other, to prevent this Stop. As several of these vulgar fellows happened to be in liquor, they exasperated those who had got down to the foot of the hill, and made them come up after us. There were twenty of them, I am apt to believe in the whole. As for my part, I was laid at my length in my sledge, during this contest; and when I understood the occasion of the disturbance, I leaped out directly with my sword and pistol in hand, and the Sieurs Kinsius and Hill followed me, one with his naked sword, and the other with his pistols. Thus armed we went down to Mr. Steel's sledge, who was behind us and most exposed to the insults of these madmen. He had but just alighted, and had no arms to defend himself, and the Russian boors were menacing him very hard: he, however, like a very discreet man, had presence of mind sufficient, to order his servants to get out of the way, and began to soothe them by the softest expressions that he could devise, judging, and that very justly, that a more rash procedure would prove of fatal consequence, reflecting, wisely, that there were a great number of Russians below, who would have infallibly attacked us, had we ventured upon an open engagement. And those persons with whom we were thus parlying, plainly perceiving that we came up to them without any intention of creating a quarrel, kept back those that were drunk and obstinate, and hearkened to reason. Those who were the most turbulent

being



1703

being gone off, we proceeded on our journey on each side; tho' for my own part, I must confess, I was determined not to enter my sledge again, 'till we had reached the brow of the hill; notwithstanding it was so slippery, that I could scarce keep my footing, and the wind was so bleak, that I could scarce feel that I had any fingers. In the midst of this distress, I observed a sledge with one horse only, and without a driver, notwithstanding it was loaded more heavily than usual: the poor horse, thus embarrassed, incapable of turning a corner so advantageously as he should have done, on account of the high wind and the ice; incapable, in short, of keeping the beaten track, and coming unhappily too near the precipice, fell perpendicularly down upon the bank of the river, which was a sight most shocking to behold. The sledge broke into a thousand pieces, and in all probability, the horse broke all his ribs; tho' I saw him, indeed, lift up his head after this occurrence. At last, having reached the summit of the hill, tho' with no small difficulty, we proceeded on our journey, and about one in the afternoon arrived at the city of (1) Kolomna, which is four hundred and fifty-six wersts: when we were in the suburbs, we waited for an answer to a letter from the Czar, which we sent in, and no sooner had the Diack, or Secretary, of the city received it, but he came directly to us, offered us his service, and even desired that we would go into the city, and refresh our selves, but we made our proper excuses; and as he had sent us not only mead, brandy, beer, and some other provisions, we returned them all back with thanks, as we were plentifully supplied before with all manner of requisites for our journey. We conversed with him for about two hours, and drank a few bumpers briskly about, and at four set forwards with fresh horses, and travelled twenty-five wersts before nine, when we arrived at a village called Kosachof, where we baited for near three hours, for our horses sake, who were to carry us from thence to Moscow, the end of our journey. On the twenty-

fourth instant by eight in the morning, we had reached forty-six wersts farther, and came within a small distance of the village called Ostrawets. Here we rested, and fed our horses; and in about two hours time set out again, and about noon arrived safe at the Slabode of the Germans in Moscow, which was about twenty-five wersts from the place we left last.

On the twenty-seventh instant, the school-master and reader of the Lutheran church, named John Frederic Maes of (m) Koningsberg, was murdered by one Kraso, a German ensign, without the least provocation. He was taken, however, and confessed the fact.

After so fatiguing a journey, I proposed to indulge my self the next day; but on the fifth of March, about evening, I found my self very greatly indisposed, hot and feverish, and going thereupon directly to bed, I had a very tiresome night of it. However, I arose the next morning by break of day; but found my self so weak, that I could scarcely stand upon my legs; and besides was troubled with a very bad cough for some considerable time afterwards. The heat within me was so inexpressibly intense, that had I drank an hundred times a day, it would not have quenched my thirst. Sometimes I drank milk, and sometimes beer: but at other times, I drank water, boiled with tamarinds and sugar, which was my favourite liquor, and what relieved me most when I found my self indisposed in (n) Egypt; but in order to strengthen my stomach, I drank likewise every now and then a glass of Rhenish wine, and some other liquors, that were proper for that purpose. In this manner did I pass five days and five nights successively without one wink of sleep; and in the night particularly, I was frequently delirious. Upon this, my friends, perceiving that I grew every day weaker and weaker, advised me to send for a proper physician; but I told them, that on such occasions I always trusted to my own judgment; that I knew the nature of my own constitution better than the ablest physician in the country; and

1703

Feb. 27.  
An asthma  
arises.

The asthma  
subsided,  
March 5.

The asthma  
was cured  
physically.

A remarkably  
early frost  
had fallen on a  
sledge.



1703

consequently, what was better for me than they could possibly prescribe; that as I very well knew the real cause of my indisposition, I was well assured, that a proper regimen would prove a more effectual relief than any of their most specific medicines; and besides, I had been sensible for some considerable time of its coming upon me. On the sixth night, and the next following, I slept for some hours, and found my self greatly relieved, and refreshed thereby: in a word, after an uninterrupted regimen for ten days successively, I began to venture on strong-broths, and now and then a small quantity of meat. I bled sometimes likewise at the nose in the night, and I found great relief thereby in regard to the head-ach, with which I had some time before been very severely afflicted.

March 21.

On the eleventh his Czarian Majesty returned with all his retinue from Veronis, and on the thirteenth he gave orders, that Colonel Boden (of whom we have taken notice before) should be beheaded in his presence. He was executed in the German Slabode, near the post, whereon the sword and ax before-mentioned had been hung up.

Colonel Boden beheaded.

At the same time, ensign Crasso was hanged. After both these executions were over, his Czarian Majesty issued out an order that no person whomsoever should presume to draw his sword on any provocation whatsoever on pain of death.

Crasso hanged.

March 24.

On Sunday the fourteenth, Monsieur Camille Bolus, the Envoy of France, who had resided for some considerable time at Moscow in incog. had a private audience of his Czarian Majesty at the seat of Count Feodor Alexewitz de Golowins.

The Envoy of France admitted to an audience with the Czar.

The same day his Czarian Majesty went, but with a very small retinue, to pay Mr. Brants a visit; by whom he was entertained with a collation of cold-meats, and some other refreshments. On this occasion, I came out of my apartment, in order to have the honour of taking my leave of his Majesty, and of requesting his indulgence of a pass-port for my departure out of his dominions.

The Czar leaves Mr. Brants with a visit.

His Majesty, perceiving I was greatly altered in my countenance since he saw me last, asked me, with some kind of concern, how I did, and what disorder had attended me? But when I informed his Majesty, that I imagined my illness was in a great measure occasioned by indulging my self rather too much in my journey to Veronis; he answered, with a smile; if that's all, the most infallible cure that I can prescribe you is, to take a hare of the same dog. The resident, however, immediately entering the room upon us, we were interrupted in our conversation.

Having procured the favour I requested, and an order to Count Golowin for my pass-port accordingly, I took my leave of his Czarian Majesty, who honoured me so far as to give me his hand to kiss, and then gave me his usual benediction, "God preserve you."

The author takes his leave of the Czar.

It was about ten, when the Czar went from thence to Mr. Lups, and to divers English merchants, before he sat out for his journey to (e) Stentelenburg, and on the fifteenth he sat out betimes in the morning, and never so much as went to Probrosensko.

On that very day, the two other criminals, Captain Sax, and Colonel Boden's valer, were to be executed, where the head and body of the Colonel still lay unremoved upon the ground, as Krasso hung upon the gibbet, which was surrounded by a guard of soldiers. Tho' both of them were brought to the block, and the executioner ready at hand with his ax, in order to give the fatal blow; yet fortunately for them a reprieve came at once, and the former was sent to (p) Siberia, and ordered to reside there in perpetual banishment; and the latter was sentenced to receive thirty blows with the Knoet; and afterwards to be a galley-slave for life; but I heard soon after, that the rigorous execution of his first punishment relieved him from the terror of the last.

Two other criminals to be executed.

Our resident having demanded a pass-port for me (as I observed before) by order from the Czar, Count Golowin, whose business it was to sign it, gave

D d

orders



1703 orders for its being immediately dispatched.

March 21.

On the twenty-first, the grand festival of Palm-Sunday was celebrated with great solemnity; that likewise of the Annunciation of the Blessed Virgin Mary, for which the Russians have a peculiar regard, on the twenty-fifth; and the high feast of Easter on the twenty-eighth. Nothing extraordinary occurred at that time besides, except a fire, which broke

out at Moscow on the thirtieth, and that the river Mosca thawed, and was open on the first of April. This thorough thaw made the roads extremely bad; and on the third, the waters arose to a greater height than had been known in the memory of man. Tho' at this time I happened to be seized with a tertian ague; yet it happily went off after three or four shaking fits.

1703

April 1.

April 2.

### Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

(a) Nieper, or Boristhenes, see p. 68, n. c.

(b) Cism Tartary, see p. 68, n. d.

(c) Volga, or Wolga, see p. 28, n. f.

(d) Asoph, see p. 51, n. b.

(e) Don, or Tanais, see p. 62, n. l.

(f) Meotis Palus, is a sea of Turkey, which divides Europe from Asia, extending from Cism Tartary to the mouth of the river Don, or Tanais, being about two hundred miles long, and an hundred miles broad, to which there is no other passage than through the Straits of Kassa, from the Black Sea; of both which seas the Turks have the sole navigation, since the demolition of the fortifications of Asoph, at the Mouth of the river Don.

(g) England, see p. 910, n. f.

(h) Moscow, see p. 23, n. c.

(i) Grodno, east-longitude 24. latitude 53. 40. a great city of Poland, in the province of Lithuania; and Palatinate of Trukh, situate on the river Niemen, or Bereseni, eighty miles south-west of Wilna.

(k) Oeca, or Oeka, see p. 61, n. d.

(l) Kolomna, see p. 61, n. e.

(m) Koningsburg, see p. 23, n. b.

(n) Egypt, see p. 33, n. a.

(o) Sleutelenburg, or Stettelburg, east-longitude 31. 20, latitude 60. a town of Russia, in the province of Ingria, situate on the south side of the Lake Ladoga, thirty miles east of Petersburg.

(p) Siberia, see p. 17, n. b.

(q) Moska, see p. 4, n. a.

### CHAP.



1793

1793

C H A P. XIV.

*The Author is shewn all the most valuable Curiosities that are to be met with in their several Churches. A remarkable Cloth, not to be consumed by Fire itself, made of the Albestos, a Sort of Stone, peculiar to the Island of Cyprus.*

AS soon as I found that my agree-  
ment had left me, and that I was per-  
fectly recovered, I set out directly for  
(a) Moscow, in order to pay my respects  
to Ivan Alexewitz Moesin Poelkin, to  
whom his Czarian Majesty had been pleased  
to give orders, whilst at (b) Veronis, to  
shew me all the most remarkable things,  
that were to be seen, not only in the  
churches there, but in all other parts of  
that spacious city. This nobleman,  
whose name I have had occasion to men-  
tion before with the highest veneration  
and esteem, received me in the most  
courteous manner, and assured me, that  
he was ready, at any time, whenever I  
required it, to obey his Majesty's com-  
mands. Whereupon I made answer, that  
I should be glad to be favoured as soon  
as conveniently might be; because his  
Excellency was sensible, that I proposed  
to set out for (c) Persia in a very short  
time. Whereupon he appointed me to  
wait on him on the tenth instant, as early  
as I pleased in the morning. Accordingly,  
I went, and found him just mounting his  
horse, in order to go into the country.  
However, he told me, in a very obliging  
manner, that the gentleman, who was  
then with him, would take particular  
care to shew me whatever was worthy of  
my attention.

In the first place, then, we went to  
the church of Saboor; where is shewn a  
picture, pretended to be drawn by the  
Evangelist St. Luke himself; as also, the  
identical vestment which our Blessed Sa-  
viour wore when led to the cross, and  
for which, after his crucifixion, the sol-  
diers cast lots. This vestment, as they

told us, became the property of a soldier,  
who was a native of (d) Georgia; that  
he carried it with him into his own  
country, and made a present of it to a  
maiden sister of his, who, conceiving a  
more than ordinary veneration for it, re-  
quested on her death-bed, that it might  
be interred with her, and spread over  
her lifeless corpse; that her request being  
punctually complied with, a spacious  
tree instantaneously (as it were) shot out  
of her tomb; that the Persians soon af-  
terwards, having made themselves masters  
of Georgia, and their King having heard  
several miraculous stories of this tomb,  
gave express orders to have it opened;  
that it was opened accordingly, and that he  
took the vestment away with him, and  
conveyed it into Persia; that not long af-  
terwards, his Majesty having occasion to  
send an embassy into (e) Russia, he made  
a present of it to the Grand Duke, as he  
knew him to be a Christian; that the  
Moscovites being very zealous, and im-  
patient to know whether this inestimable  
present was genuine or not, and the  
identical vestment, as pretended, got  
together a numerous crowd of such as  
were lame, blind, or otherwise very sore-  
ly afflicted, being firmly persuaded, if  
it was real fact, that the touch of it would  
inevitably cure them; that, upon mak-  
ing the experiment, the effects of it  
answered their warmest wishes; that it  
had been preserved ever since with the  
utmost care, and was set apart for that  
charitable purpose; and, in fine, that the  
application of it never so much as once  
misfailed.

As the miraculous virtues of this vest-  
ment,

A story too  
told in  
China's  
history,  
for which  
see history  
vol. 10 p. 101

C H A P.



1703

~~~~~

The church
of Saboor.

ment, in general, are as firmly believed as the Gospel itself, by all the Russians, I determined that it should be the first article of this narration.

The church of Saboor is square within, and the length of it is about ninety-six feet. The roof is supported by four large pillars, and the whole is embellished with the pictures of a great number of saints, and other figures of the like nature. Some of them, even those in the five little domes, are drawn after the Grecian mode, and may be justly said to be executed with some degree of taste; which said domes are in the form of lanthorns, the largest whereof is in the middle, and the others at each corner.

That picture, which they insist was drawn by the hand of St. Luke himself, is placed on one side of the high altar, and is a half-length of the Blessed Virgin Mary, with the representation of Christ saluting her, their faces being close together: this picture is of a gloomy hue, if not absolutely black; but whether that accident is owing to the result of time, the smoke of their numerous tapers, or the real taste of the painter, is not easily to be determined: it is manifest, however, that it is no extraordinary performance; besides, it is all gilt, the faces and hands only excepted. The head of the Virgin is adorned with a crown of pearls and precious stones; and there is, moreover, a collar of pearls, which hangs down from her neck to her wrists. To say no more of it, it is planted in a particular nich, under which there is a stall. There is a large silver sconce, which was made at (f) Amsterdam (like those in our churches) with branches, hanging down between the two pillars of the high altar. However, there are three others besides these, composed of copper, or brass, which are commodiously enough disposed of in the body of the church. Notwithstanding there are but very few decorations in most of their churches, 'tis observable, in this, that there are no less than ten silver lamps around the altar abovementioned. These lamps, however, are never filled with oil; for the Russians make use of none, but instead

thereof have tapers, which are first put into nosfels, and then fixed upon the lamps. It is customary with them to hang an ostrich's egg at the bottom of their large sconces.

Our next visit was to the Patriarch's Church, which is small above, and erected in the form of a dome. Over-against the chappel, on the right-hand, there is an apartment, wherein our Blessed Saviour is delineated as sitting in a chair, in a picture which is all over gilt, the face and hands excepted; and the Virgin Mary; on the left-hand is represented St. John the Baptist; and on each hand one of the apostles in a kneeling posture, with a silver lamp. Between this picture and the chappel-door, there is a branch or seat, raised upon steps, which is covered with black velvet, and set apart for the reception of the Patriarch. At the entrance of this little church, there stands an altar, behind which there is a small choir, abounding with pictures from top to bottom; each representing the history of some saint or another; but there are columns, or pillars, which separate them from each other, in the nature of windows; and here likewise every thing is gilt; the other side of the walls, however, is painted blue. Once more, in the crown of the dome, there is the head of our Blessed Saviour, which almost fits it; and round about it, there is a great variety of other decorations. Over-against this church stands the Patriarch's Hall of audience, which is spacious enough; and as soon as you are entered, on the right-hand stands the patriarchal chair, which is all gilt; the seat is covered with a green velvet cushion; and there are gold fringes about the arms. This chair is raised upon steps; and over it, there is the representation of our Saviour in miniature, tolerably painted. At our departure from this hall, we were conducted into an apartment, called the patriarch's treasury, and full of chests and trunks, which were all opened to gratify my curiosity. In the first, there were six patriarchal caps, two of which in particular, were immensely rich, and separated from the others. These were

1703

~~~~~

em-



1703

embellished with large pearls, jewels, and other precious stones. The others were much like these, but not of equal value. There was a seventh cap, embellished with nothing but pearls, which belonged in particular to the Metropolitan. The next curiosity which was shewn us, was a box full of jewels; and amongst a great variety of costly trinkets, there were several diamond-crosses, which hung by chains of gold. All these trinkets had belonged to former patriarchs, who had made their appearance in them on public processions, and other solemn and extraordinary occasions. There were, moreover, divers girdles, which they call *Pojassies*, embellished with precious stones: we were shewn likewise a great number of large tortoise-shell combs, which had been made use of by former Patriarchs; and several crossiers, with jewels at the end of them. Besides the chests and trunks above-mentioned, there were no less than seventy-nine several presses, full of patriarchal robes, all of gold brocade, and embellished with pearls and precious stones. Amongst the rest, there were nine several vestments more beautiful and more magnificent than any of the others; and every one of them adorned with precious stones. In some of the presses, there were divers fine stoles, about a hand and an half broad; and one in particular, which was worn by the patriarch Constantine (according to the Russian computation) in the year 6176. Tho' this was of plain silk, and had been somewhat damaged by length of time; yet they shew a peculiar veneration for it, and preserve it amongst their most valuable vestments. In this treasury, moreover, are to be seen several silver gilt dishes, vases, and other vessels of the like nature.

Having sufficiently gratified my curiosity for the present, I deferred my visit to the other churches till the next day, which happened to be Sunday. In the first place, I made my application to Mr. Moesin Poeskin, to know whether I could be favoured or not, with a sight of our Saviour's vestment; but he informed me, that it was an act of indulgence not to be granted; since it was

deposited in a particular place, secured under his Czarian Majesty's own signet, and not to be exposed to public view without an express order under his own hand: I must needs own, I was somewhat concerned, that I was not better informed in time of so important an article. In short, I went once more to the church of Saboor, to gratify my curiosity with surveying such things as I had omitted in my first visit. I was accordingly shewn a large chalice, or cup of gold, about two hands high, which their priests make use of in the administration of the Holy Sacrament. This chalice had four rich jewels on the cover, and the foot of it was enamelled with the representation of the various sufferings of our Blessed Saviour. The next thing they shewed me was a large golden dish, enamelled in the same manner as the chalice, and adorned likewise as that with four large jewels; two golden plates, a golden spoon with an agate handle; and a golden ladle for the wine in the cup; as also, a crown, all embellished with pearls and precious stones. Add to these, two other small chalices of agate, enriched likewise with precious stones. All which precious stones (as we were informed) were found at the bottom of that large cask, which St. Anthony, who was a native of Russia, procured to be dragged up by some certain fishermen, just at the time he was transported from (g) Rome to Niengart, whilst he was sitting by, on a mill-stone, having made a punctual agreement with his hirelings before-hand, to be entitled to whatever should prove the product of their labours. After this, they shewed me a large book, which is generally carried in procession on some particular solemn festivals. This book is elegantly bound, and enriched with precious stones on the cover, and is filled within with a great variety of scripture-histories, finely painted, and wrote in characters of gold. All these curiosities are kept separate in cases of scarlet velvet. We were shewed, moreover, the body of Peter, the Archbishop, in silver, with a bas-relief of him above; a little slip of our Saviour's vestment before-mentioned, in a case, covered with glass: as also, the body of John, the Archbishop, in a coffin,

E c

in

1703



1703 like that of Peter's; and that of Philip, in a third. After this, they shewed me the reliques of divers saints; one of the hands of John Satoefleva; the skull, and the whole head of Gregory Bagaslova, &c. &c.

Having thanked the priest for the trouble I had created him, I took my leave, and went to the church of St. Michael the Archangel, which is exceedingly fine within, and, like the former, abounds with pictures. In one particular spot of this church, lie all the Grand Dukes of Moscow, very magnificently entombed; the two last only excepted; namely, the brothers to his Czarian Majesty, who are deposited in another. Their monuments are raised high, and covered with rich habits of scarlet velvet, with green velvet bands; and thereon, their birth, age, and the exact time of their decease are inscribed in Russian characters; each tomb is embellished with large pearl crosses. Not one of them, however, is near so pompous and magnificent as the last of Ivan Alexewitz, which is adorned with a profusion of precious stones. From thence, I went to the church of the Annunciation, or that which they call Blagowestine, which tho' but small, abounds also with pictures like the last. In a small apartment of this church I was shewed no less than thirty six silver boxes, filled with the reliques of some of their favourite saints, which, in order to oblige me, they had spread out upon a large table before I came. In the first, there was a small quantity of the precious blood of our Blessed Saviour; and in the others, several small crosses, composed out of the original; one of the hands of the Evangelist St. Mark; several bones of the Prophet Daniel; and divers other saints, in the manner of mummies; several heads, and a great variety of other reliques, all of a dark hue.

After having obliged me with the sight of the reliques above-mentioned, they offered their service to attend me to what other churches I thought proper; but my curiosity being sufficiently gratified, I excused myself in the handsomest manner I could, and returned my conductor many thanks for the trouble I had given

him, and the rest for their indulgence towards me, which was somewhat extraordinary, and I believe I may say, without example in that country.

On the fifteenth instant, I went with Mr. Poppe to pay a visit to the Knez Bories Alexewitz Galietien, at a neat country seat about five wersts from Moscow; and in our way we passed by the fine estate of the Knez Mighaile Serkaskie, which is the most valuable demesnes of all the Princes in his Czarian Majesty's Dominions. His power is so great, that besides his being Sovereign Lord of divers villages, he has above 20000 peasants who are his vassals and dependents. We met with the Knez, and I begged the favour of him to grant me a passport from the office of the Prikaes at (b) Casan, whereof he was viceroy, as well as of that at (i) Astracan, and the reason of my conduct in that particular was this; because Mr. Poppe had intimated to me some time before, that not only the governor of Casan, but that of Astracan likewise would pay no manner of regard to a passport procured from the Prikaes at Possolsch, which, in all probability, would have proved very prejudicial, and have retarded at least, if not put an actual stop to my intended journey. The Knez Bories was not only so complaisant as to gratify my request, and dispatch one in my favour, without the least hesitation, but (out of respect to Mr. Poppe, who was one of his favourite friends) wrote a line or two, at the same time, in my behalf to the governors of Casan and Astracan above-mentioned, in order to prevent the least casual delay. We both returned him many thanks for this act of indulgence, and took our leave of him. This Nobleman, some months before, had been at Casan, in order to act as mediator between two exasperated Tartar Princes, father and son, which difference arose from the important incident herein-after-mentioned. The son, it seems, had in his retinue a lady, for whom the father had a passionate regard. The old gentleman, in order to gratify his amorous inclinations, by some successful stratagem, procured her to be stolen away, and sheltered



1703

sheltered under his patronage and protection. The son, enraged at the clandestine proceedings of the father, declared open war against him, and appeared in the field of battle at the head of 20,000 men. The father, with the utmost expedition, assembled no less than 40,000 men on his; and both parties were resolutely bent to enter on an engagement; but the Knez happily arrived just at that critical conjuncture, and not only prevented a profusion of blood-shed, but established a happy reconciliation between them.

The Tartar Prince, as an acknowledgement of his friendly office on this important occasion, made him a present of a piece of coarse cloth, of such an extraordinary quality, that no fire will either tarnish or consume it; and the Knez making Mr. Poppe a present of some part of it, he bestowed that curiosity upon me. He informed me, that it was manufactured at a place called Katay, between (k) China and Boggar, and that they continued to work it there. I remember formerly I brought from the island of (l) Cyprus some part of the stone there, called Asbestos, which was then capable of being spun into thread, on which no fire had any manner of effect, and that in former times was fabricated into cloth; but that art at present is totally lost. Pliny makes mention of a cloth of the like nature; and some modern authors likewise, who have treated on the Roman antiquities, and the use of lamps in the monuments of the antients, have endeavoured to confirm the truth of his assertion.

On the sixteenth instant, I dined with my friend Mr. Poppe; and in my return

to the Slabode, I observed, that there was a fire at some small distance from it; whither my curiosity led me to see what measures they took for the extinguishing of it; but they did nothing more (as I could perceive) than demolish the houses on both sides the flames for the prevention of its spreading.

As my passports were dispatched, I prepared for my departure, in company with an Armenian merchant, one Jacob Diedoff, who had travelled before from (m) Ispahan to (n) Holland, and had resided for some time at Amsterdam. We agreed to enter on our intended journey on the twenty-second, and to fall down the river as far as Astracan. What time I had to spare I employed in taking my farewell of my friends and acquaintance, and more particularly, of Mr. Vander Hulst, our resident, and the two Sieurs Brants and Lups, to whom I owed a thousand obligations. I was equally indebted, indeed, to Mr. Coyet, who, being a perfect master of the Persian language, and well acquainted with all the customs of the country, gave me such important hints or memorandums, as proved of singular service to me in the prosecution of my journey. I set out from Moscow about noon, and not finding any vessel that would carry me on board the ship where my Armenian friend had been for some time embarked, and which had been fallen down as low as Malsko, in order to take the advantage of high water over the sands, I was reduced to the necessity of hiring three waggons to carry me and my effects thither, in order to my own embarkation on the same ship.

*Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.*

(a) Moscow, see p. 23. n. c.

(b) Veronis, see the author's description of it in the preceding chapter.

(c) Persia, see p. 64. n. d.

(d) Georgia, in Asia, the ancient Iberia, is

bounded by Circassia and Dagestan on the north; by the Caspian Sea on the east; by Armenia, or Turcomania, on the south; and by Mingrelia on the west; the eastern, and much the largest division, is subject to Persia; the capital city Teflis; though, it is thought, that neither Georgia, nor the ancient Iberia, extended so far eastward as the Caspian Sea.



1703

Sea; yet it is separated from it by the Province of Chiroan. It is a mountainous, but fruitful country, producing corn, wine, and cattle in abundance; and the difficult access of some of their mountains has preserved them from being absolutely subdued, either by the Turks or Persians; but what this country is most remarkable for, is the beauty of its natives, and the traffic they carry on with the Turks and Persians for their children, who are sold and carried young to both those courts, where they expect to be advanced to the greatest honours; and for this reason, their parents part with them with joy, instead of lamenting their absence.

(c) Russia, see p. 7, n. c.

(f) Amsterdam, east longitude 4. 30. latitude 52. 20. the capital of the province of Holland, and of the United Netherlands, situate on the river Amstel, and an arm of the sea, called the Wye, a little to the eastward of the Zuyder-Sea, two hundred miles and upwards east of London, two hundred and thirty north-east of Paris, and upwards of four hundred miles west of Vienna, twelve miles east of Haerlem, and thirty north-east of Rotterdam. The city lies almost in the form of a crescent; it is the greatest port of the known world; no where are such numbers of merchant-ships seen, and yet of the most difficult access, it being scarce possible for a loaded ship, or man of war, to enter the harbour; and indeed the whole Zuyder-Sea is so shallow and full of sands, that scarce any but their own flat-bottomed vessels can cross it; but then this is their great security against foreign enemies, whose men of war scarce ever venture to pursue them beyond the Texel, and other entrances into this sea. The foundations of this town are laid upon vast piles of timber, drove into the morass, on which it stands at a prodigious expence: the Stadthouse alone has upwards of thirteen thousand piles of wood, it is said, to bear up those foundations. The first mention of this town in history is about the year 1300, when it was a poor fisher-town. In 1585, it appears to have been the chief town of trade in these provinces, when they began to fortify it; and great additions were made to the fortifications in the year 1672, when Lewis the XIVth invaded the country. The houses are built with brick or stone; the streets are spacious, and well paved, and through most of them run canals, planted with trees; the town is computed to be about half as big as London, including the fortifications; in it

are people of almost every nation, and every religion in Europe, who are all tolerated in their respective persuasions; but none admitted to any share in the government but the Calvinists, or Presbyterians; all of them, however, apply themselves, with the utmost diligence, to heap up wealth, tormenting both body and soul (in the words of a late writer) to get an estate, not to enjoy it, but to have the pleasure of dying rich; money, the idol of the world, is adored most in this country, where it supplies the place of birth, wit, and merit.

(g) Rome, the capital of the Pope's territories, and of Italy, is situate in 13 degrees east longitude, and 41 degrees 45 minutes north latitude; one hundred and forty miles north-west of Naples, and an hundred and forty south of Florence, standing on the river Tiber, about sixteen miles north-east of the Tuscan Sea; the walls are about twelve miles in circumference, as they were in the time of the Romans, but not a third part of the ground within the walls is now built upon; the rest is taken up with vineyards and gardens. The inhabitants are computed to amount to about 120,000 souls. There are five bridges over the river, twenty gates, and three hundred antique towers still remaining; the castle of St. Angelo is a modern fortification, but of no great strength, and serves rather to keep the inhabitants in awe, than to defend them against foreign enemies. Modern Rome stands fourteen or fifteen feet higher than the old city, being built on the ruins of the former, and is much more upon a level than the old city was, great part of the hills being washed down into the valleys; insomuch that the Tarpeian rock, which was once a terrible precipice, from whence malefactors were thrown, is not more than twenty feet high. The city is for the most part magnificently built; the streets are spacious, and adorned with 300 fine churches, and a vast number of palaces and convents, and the triumphal arches, pillars, obelisks, statues, and fountains, are no small additions to its beauty; but then there are other streets as meanly built as in any town whatever. The greatest curiosities in Rome are the ancient theatres and amphitheatres, Pagan temples, triumphal arches, baths, aqueducts, fountains, catacombs, obelisks, cirques, sepulchres, bridges, churches, palaces, statues, paintings, piazzas, colleges, and hospitals. The people of this city are said to be more obliging than in any town of Europe, and that an universal civility reigns there. They are

1703



1703

are not at all possessed with a spirit of bigotry, or persecution against strangers of any country or religion whatever. The city is extremely well supplied with water, by their noble aqueducts and fountains; and there is great plenty of all manner of provisions, as corn, flesh, fish, fowl, and fruits; and the greatest variety of wines that are to be met with any where; and in the midst of all this variety, the people are extremely sober; never sitting down purely to drink, and very seldom drinking wine without water.

(b) Casan, see p. 62. n. b.

(i) Astracan, see p. 62. n. i.

(k) China, see p. 66. n. k.

(l) Cyprus, an island, situate in the most eastern part of the Levant, or Mediterranean Sea, between 33 and 36 degrees of eastern longitude, and between 34 and 36 degrees of north latitude; sixty miles south of the coast of Carmania, or Cilicia, and thirty west of the coast of Syria, being about an hundred and fifty miles long, and seventy broad; the chief town Nicosia, the seat of the Turkish Beglerbeg, or viceroy, and formerly the residence of the King of the island. Here is one of those mountains called Olympus; there is another of the same name in the lesser Asia, and a third in Greece; but there are no springs or rivers but what the rains produce, which happening to fail them thirty years successively, during the reign of Constantine the Great, the inhabitants were obliged to abandon the island for some time; the soil, however, produces corn, wine, oil, wool, cotton, salt, and some silk; they have plenty also of fish, fowl, and fowl; and a pretty brisk trade between the merchants of Europe and Asia: several European nations, particularly the English, have their consuls and factors in this island. It was very populous whilst it was in the pos-

session of the Christians, and had a great many good towns in it; but it is now so thinly inhabited that half the lands lie unmanured. The present inhabitants are Turks, Jews, Greeks, Armenians, and some few Latins. The Turks have the government, but the Greeks are most numerous. This island was dedicated to Venus; and her votaries, it is said, prostituted themselves to foreigners. It has been successively governed by the Egyptians, Phoenicians, Persians, Greeks, Romans, Saracens, Venetians, and Turks. Richard I. King of England, meeting with an inhospitable reception here, subdued the island, and transferred his right to it to Guy Lusignan, titular King of Jerusalem, whose descendants transferred it to the State of Venice; from whom the Turks took it anno 1570, and have remained in possession of it ever since.

(w) Ispahan, or Spahawn, east longitude 50. latitude 32. 30. the capital city of Eyrac Agem, and of all the kingdom of Persia, is situate in a fine plain, almost surrounded with mountains, which lie two or three leagues distant from it. The city is of an oval form, twelve miles in circumference, and stands two hundred miles north of the gulph of Persia, or Boffora, three hundred miles south of the Caspian Sea, one thousand four hundred miles south-east of Constantinople, and one thousand six hundred miles north west of Delly, the capital of the Hither India. The streets of Ispahan are, several of them, arched over, with openings to let in light. The English East-India company had a factory here, and their factors lived like Princes, in the greatest splendor, till the civil war; but the court, and consequently the trade, seems to be removing from this city to Meshed, in the province of Chorassan, near the Caspian Sea, the usual residence of the Sha Nadir and his court.

(n) Holland, see p. 76. n. n.

F f

C H A P.



1703

1703

## C H A P. XV.

*The Author departs from (a) Moscow. The Course of the (b) Wolga.  
A Description of the several Towns and other Villages on that River.  
The Author arrives at (c) Astracan.*

Kolomennskoe.

AS I went to the ship, I passed by the town of Kolomennskoe, on the right-hand, and on a rising ground: it makes a good appearance enough; has a curious convent, a church, and two towers. In order to enter each side of it, you must cross a raft of timbers, which are so fastened together, as that one part of them is with ease removed, when the passage of any vessel requires it, and with equal ease joined together again after it has past. I went by several villages, likewise, which were delightfully situated on a rising ground, and on the right-hand side of the river. By that time evening came on, I got into a wood, where the trees were very low; and as I was some hours travelling through it, the night was far spent before I reached Matko, where I was informed, that the Armenian barks were not as yet arrived. Notwithstanding there were two houses here; yet I lay the remainder of the night in a barn, which was partly open and exposed to the weather, and what was still worse, upon the hard floor. On the twenty-third, in the morning, my fellow-traveller came down with four barks, accompanied by three other Armenians, who were likewise bound for (d) Isfahan, and assured me, that the ship on board of which we were to embark, and wherein he had a large quantity of cloths, was fallen down still threescore weests lower: upon this information, we followed her by water, and reached her by about ten o'clock that night. As it was late, however, and nothing in proper order, we thought it most expedient, not to go directly on board till the next morning. Whereupon, we went into a house by

the water-side; where we made a very good fire, and had a parcel of fine pike and perch, which we had purchased before of some fishermen for three-pence only, dressed for our supper. There I embraced the opportunity of writing a few letters to some particular friends at Moscow, and in (e) Holland; and on the twenty-fourth, about ten in the morning we got on board. In these parts, they have several small, flat-bottomed vessels (called by the Russians Strooks) which will carry about three hundred bales of silk, or about fifteen lasts. They are very capacious, and have only one mast, and one sail that is very wide, and principally made use of when the wind is aft; but when the wind is not either directly astern, or well upon their quarters, they ply their oars, of which the number for the most part is about sixteen or eighteen. They make use of no rudder, but a long sort of paddle, broad at that end which lies in the water; as to the other end, it is supported by a sort of crutch, made proper for the purpose, and this either the proprietor, or master, manages by some tackle, reeved on each side, which keeps the vessel steady, and is so contrived, that it can be put on, or taken off as occasion requires. There were on board twenty-three mariners, and above fifty passengers, some Russians, and others Armenians, servants included. Hitherto the river winds very much, and is about forty fathom in breadth all ways. We had not been on board above two hours, before we came to the convent of Smolenski, which, at a considerable distance, makes a good figure enough; it has a fine steeple, and is situate on the side of a wood

The form of the Russian vessels, called Strooks.

The convent of Smolenski.



1703

Kolomna.

See plate  
XVIII.

The Oka.

a wood, about an hundred wersts from Moscow. It was near four o'clock before we perfectly lost sight of it. After this, we saw on each hand of us, a more campaign country, and full of villages; and afterwards a more lofty spot of land. When night came upon us, we dropped anchor. About nine the next morning, we reached (*f*) Kolomna, which is situate on the south-west of the river of (*g*) Moskva. It is an episcopal see, in the southern parts of (*h*) Russia, tho' to the eastward of Moscow. I took a draught of this city on the north side, where I had no sight of the river, and the prospect of it is hereto annexed in Number XVIII. This city, of which I have taken some notice before in the account of my journey to (*i*) Veronis, is one hundred and eighty wersts from Moscow by water, on account of the prodigious sweeps of the river, whereon it has a bridge, or rather such a raft of timber as we mentioned some time since. Here we tarried at least seven hours, in order to give our people time enough to make their necessary preparations for sailing. Before night came on, we reached the river of (*k*) Oka, which flows from the south, where the waters of the Moskva fall into it. This, as well as the Moskva, is very broad, which, 'till that time, we looked upon but as a small river; and its fountain-head is not far distant from the (*l*) Crim Tartary. It traverses the southern parts of (*m*) Moscovy, and flows to the eastward of the city of Moscow, through the dutchy of the same denomination; and empties its waters into the Wolga at (*n*) Nisi-Novogorod. This part of the country is very delightful, and on the right-hand stands the town of Kiekiena Serophof, where there are two stately structures, in one of which the governor of the place himself resides; and on the left, there stands a village, where there is another stately structure, about ten wersts distant from Kolomna. The course of the river now running more direct than it had done hitherto, we sailed at a much greater rate, and never came to, during the whole night. On the twenty-sixth, in the morning, we passed by the

village, called Dedenawa, which lies on the left-hand, where there is a very handsome church upon the river, about thirty wersts from the town of Kiekiena before-mentioned. And here on both sides you behold a wood full of low trees; and the river is of the same breadth all along. The same day we passed by several other villages, and after that met with lands higher up which were very agreeable; but there the river began to wind once more. As we steered our course east-north-east, the land and the trees appeared to us clothed in a very lively verdure; and at the last turn of the mountain, I took the draught of the view annexed in Number XIX. When we were got beyond these mountains, which we had to the right only, we found the river greatly contracted, and towards the evening, we had several hills covered with small trees, both on the right and the left of us. On the twenty-seventh in the morning we saw, to the right, a lofty mountain, and on the left, several villages, with cows and sheep feeding in the adjacent meadows. In the mean time, we had fishermen, who came a long-side of us every day in small boats somewhat like canoes, hollowed out of the trunks of trees, of whom we frequently purchased more pike or perch for three-pence or four-pence, than were sufficient to satisfy eight or ten persons of moderate stomachs. As we still advanced eastwards, on the left-hand of us, we met with an island, which abounded with trees, and was of a considerable length; and after that, with divers villages, situate at the feet of mountains, and the fine convent of Bogoslova, which is all built with stone, and situated amidst a great number of trees, in the most rural manner, and upon an eminence; and on one side of it there is a spacious, verdant plain, with great numbers of flocks and herds grazing upon it, quite down to the river-side. This convent lies north-west, about twenty wersts from Pereslaw; whereof I have given the reader a prospect in Number XX. Here are abundance of villages round about, and the soil is exceedingly fertile. About three o'clock

1703

See plate  
XIX.The fine  
convent of  
Bogoslova.

Particular

See plate  
XX.

We



1703

we got into a low country, and by four came in with a gulph of the river Pro-rater, which is fifteen wersts from Pere-flaw. Soon after that, we came in with another, which was as large as a river, and ran up a great way into the land. By five, we got into a third gulph, on the right, which extended itself to-wards the mountains, and spread far and wide on both sides. For my own part, I take it to have been a flood; and here the river begins again to take its sweeps. In an hour's time, we had sight of the village called Fabrenewa, which stands on an eminence; but the country all beneath was so overflowed, even above the tops of the trees, that it looked perfectly like a sea. The soil here appeared to us to be very sandy. There we frequently met with vessels coming from (a) Casan, and other places, which were towed along with a rope, with abundance of toil and fatigue, by their respective crews. They have some relief, however, in sailing, when the wind blows brisk, and sits fair for them. Here we saw great numbers of ducks, snipes, and other game, and in the evening we reached the convent of Boroske, which is built with stone, and on a hill, not far distant from the river, and near a village, which is about three wersts only from Pereflaw, where we stay'd all night. On the twenty-eighth, we passed by the place last mentioned, in thick, hazy weather, which prevented us from having that prospect of it that I could have wish'd. It stands on an eminence, not far distant from the river, in the lat. of 45 degrees 42 minutes, and is commonly called Pereflaw-Refanske, which name it assumes from the province of (p) Refan, of which it is the capital. Afterwards we passed by several villages, situate upon hills, where we saw lands that were overflowed, and some, which seemed, to all outward appearance, like our combustible soil in (q) Holland, of which we make turf, in the passage between (r) Leyden and the (s) Hague. When we were got eight wersts from Pereflaw, we had a sight of a large village, which belonged to one Tismaffe

The con-  
vent of Bo-  
roske.

Pereflaw-  
Refanske.

Ivanitz, Erfoskie, governor of Astracan, and several Russians, under tents, taking their diversion all along the river side. But as we passed farther on, we had a prospect of divers villages, and all a flat country both on one side of us and the other, which was overflowed even above the tops of the trees. In this place, the river is very broad; and in the evening, we found ourselves surrounded with trees; but the waters had covered the banks to such a degree, that it was a very difficult matter to walk with safety upon them. Tho' it was exceedingly hot, the weather was very fine. I went on shore with the boat, which did so every day, in order to take in wood, to see if I could possibly meet with any game; and towards the evening, a large bark from Moscow rowed by us. On the 29th in the morning, being got about ten wersts beyond Refan, we met, upon the left, with an opening of several fathoms within the land, where the river, which had made its way, formed a large lake, which was so deep as to be navigable at least for small craft; but we could discern no village, as the weather proved dark and hazy. A league from thence we saw another gulph, where the last-mentioned lake terminated in a circular form. The meadows all round about were full of flocks and herds, and beyond them were lofty mountains. About nine, we had a sight of more lands that lay under water; but as we came to a point, where the river formed a small gulph, we could discern dry ground again, and a small place, called Kiestius, in which were nothing but a few miserable houses, and several vessels. It was here that we hoisted sail for the first time, tho' the gale was but easy. To the right of us, we had a sight of the convent of Terigho, and a small village; and soon afterwards of a place, called Solofade, where there was a tolerable good church, all built with stone. From thence we came again to several lands that were overflowed, and had a sight of several trees, which, tho' very lofty ones, were covered up with water to their topmost branches; and these inundations annually continue till the month of July, at which

1703

The con-  
vent of Te-  
righo.  
Solofade.



1703

See plate  
North. &c.

Kasimof.

time, the waters begin to abate. On the thirtieth, we came to a very agreeable place, about a hundred wersts from the city of Kasimof: I drew the prospect of it, as it is annexed in Number 21.

Once more we hoisted our sails indeed, with the wind at north-east, but we were soon reduced to the necessity of taking them down again, and of standing to our oars; and after we had passed by several villages, we proceeded to a country so deeply overflowed, that nothing could be discerned but the sky, the water, and the tops of some few trees that were more lofty than the rest. Towards sun-set, we met with a vessel which belonged to his Czarian majesty, laden with anchors, and bound for (t) Afoph, in company with another, not near so large. We saluted each other, however, in form, with what fire-arms we had. When we were arrived within thirty wersts of Kasimof, we made use of but half our oars, that the crew might relieve each other by turns. On the first of May, about one in the afternoon, we were a long-side of the city of Kasimof above-mentioned, which is situate on the left side of the river, and on the summit of a hill. This city, tho' very extensive, has no walls; and not only its houses, but all its four churches likewise are built with timber. Here is a tower to a mosch, which belongs to the Turks and Tartars, who reside here, where I landed, as did several Armenians, with an intent to purchase provisions and liquors; but we lost our labour. Thus disappointed, we rowed after the bark, which, as she kept on her passage, we were above an hour, and passed by several villages in our way, before we could overhaul her. Some of our passengers, however, who went ashore during our absence, met with a parcel of asparagus, and brought a considerable part of it away with them. Tho' they were long and slender; yet they were well tasted, and fit to stew; I got therefore some of the largest of them, and dressed them after the Dutch manner. After we had passed by several villages, there arose such a brisk gale directly against us, that it was with

the utmost difficulty that we escaped *floundering* on the star-board shore. The wind was at south-east, and we struck a little once; but soon got a-float again; and I observed, that these barks, on such an occasion, are not ready in their answering at the helm. At night we drew near to a village which spreads itself all down the declivity of a hill, towards the river; and there the next morning I took the prospect of it, which is annexed in Number 22. On the second, in the morning, we arrived at the aforesaid village, (called Alsetma) which is threescore wersts beyond the city of Kasimof. It is situate on the top of a hill, and lies in some measure inwards; so that the whole is not to be viewed from the river. It is a pretty large place; has no less than eight churches in it, and several houses upon the river-side. It is surrounded with several villages; and on each side there are woods that are extremely pleasant. Some short time afterwards, we had a sight of several other villages, and a large meadow full of cattle and sheep; and beyond that, another gulph of the river, which appeared to us, to wind amongst the meadows and their trees to a village that stood at the foot of a mountain. The river here is very broad, and the banks, on each side, abound with trees. Here we saw a prodigious flock of geese in the air. On the third, we passed by Moruma, a town, situate on the declivity of a hill, which is considerably large; with seven several stone-churches, which are magnificent enough; besides divers others, not equally stately, built with timber. Here, as I have been informed, the inhabitants make the best bread that is to be met with throughout all his Czarian majesty's dominions. It is inhabited partly by Russians, and partly by Tartars; and here the Tartars of Mordua begin. As we proceeded, we had a sight of more villages and more lands, that lay under water. The river here is very broad, and one of the villages was situate at the foot of a mountain, which runs away several leagues farther. The soil is so sandy, and so full of stones, that it is

G g

no

1703

Plate 22.

Alsetma.

Moruma.



1703  
no easy matter to go ashore. Here we saw a poor fellow, that was perpetually crossing himself, and every now and then bowing down his head to the very ground; which the Russians we had on board taking particular notice of, they went in their boat to him, and having first made a collection for him, gave him what they had got, and among the rest, some loaves of bread; for he was a poor beggar, it seems; and soon after we perceived three women, with their children, in the like-manner, on whom they likewise bestowed their voluntary benefactions. These mendicants live, for the generality, in the mountains, and as soon as ever they espy a vessel at a distance, they run down to the river-side, in hopes of some charitable relief. After this, we came among a parcel of lofty hills, which, tho' there were very few trees upon them, were covered with a lively verdure: at last, arriving at a place where there was a Kabak, we landed, with a view of getting some liquors of one kind or another; but what we found proved very bad, and 'twas once more with abundance of difficulty that we recovered our bark. After that, a gale sprang up, that was directly against us, and so very strong, that we were under an indispensable necessity to lay still for several hours. After this, we traversed the mouths of two rivers, the first to the starboard, called Molsua Raka, and on the larboard side about eight wersts farther, the Clesma, which rises at Volodimer. On the fourth, we got into the center of a lofty country, and from thence descended to a village, called Ibuletz, which is about forty wersts from (u) Nisen. Here we met with a bark that had ten oars, and made good way, tho' against the stream of the river, the banks whereof were perfectly level on each side, and abounded with trees; and there were several hills within sight, tho' at some considerable distance. About three o'clock we arrived within sight of the convent of Dudina, which is delightfully situated amidst a profusion of verdant trees, on the declivity of a hill, on the top whereof there stands a village, of which, nothing more is to

The Con-  
vent of  
Dudina.

bee seen than the spires of their churches. At night the wind blew with that violence, and the waves swelled so high, that we were glad to shelter ourselves from it, as much as possible, on the larboard side of the river. On the fifth, the wind was greatly abated, and we began to make way again, by break of day; and having passed by several villages, we reached at last the ship-yards, which lie along the river, and extend themselves as far as the very suburbs of Nisen, where there is a magnificent monastery, which is walled all round; in the bottom there is a handsome church, built with stone, with abundance of wooden houses near it, down to the river-side. There is another church, built likewise with stone, and pretty large, which stands against a hill, on the summit whereof is a little village. This city is commonly called by the Russians, Nisen, or Niesna, otherwise Nisi-Novogorod, or the little Novogorod; and by others again, Nisen Nieugarten. It is the capital of the small dutchy, which is distinguished by that title, and has a fort or citadel on a rock, or the conflux of the two rivers before-mentioned; namely, the Occa and the Volga. This city is surrounded with a curious stone-wall, and passengers must go thro' what they call a Bazar, or spacious market-place, before they come to the gate, called Iwanoffskie, which is situate near the river. This gate is built with vast blocks of stone, and is extremely deep. From hence they ascend by a great street, which abounds with bridges, built with timber, till they come to another gate, called Diawietrofskie, near which stands the grand stone-church, with five domes to it, all varnished over with green, and decorated with curious crosses. On one side of this church, stands the archiepiscopal palace, all stonework, and within its enclosure, there is a pretty little church with a steeple, and two other churches without; the one built with timber, and the other with stone. The Priaks, or the chancery offices, which are situate near this gate, are all built with timber; and so likewise is the governor's house. There is nothing

very

1703

Nisen and  
its situa-  
tion.



1703

very material, however, to be seen in this city, whose circumference is but small, and whose houses are all built with timber. It has no other gates than the two above-mentioned. The adjacent country strikes the eye in a very agreeable manner, as there are in a multitude of green trees, and several houses, not far distant from each other. The walls thereof are flanked with towers, some circular, and others square; and one of them in particular is more conspicuous, and to be discerned at a greater distance than the rest. There were four pieces of cannon in the passage to the guard-room, under that gate which lies on the land-side. The suburbs of this city, however, are very spacious, especially in those parts towards the river, where there are divers stone-churches, and where the hill, which is divided into several parts, and whereon are erected not only several houses, but churches likewise, has a very good effect; there is no such thing as seeing the circumference of it, on account of the heights and depths which interrupt the prospect. The river here is perpetually thronged with embarkations of one kind or another, which are for ever passing and repassing from different parts. On one side of it, there is a large village, which is the sole property of Mr. Gregory Demitri Strogenof, where there is a curious church built all with stone, and a large stone-house, where that rich merchant frequently resides.

About eight o'clock, there went away no less than forty eight several barks, with ten oars, and forty hands on board each of them, in order to take in wood; and all these belonged to, and were agents for that gentleman, who is reputed to be one of the most substantial merchants in all his Czarian majesty's dominions. To each of these hands, who thus set out to bring in his timber, he allowed three rix-dollars. When night came on, the bells began to ring, on account of the grand festival of the Ascension, which was to be solemnized the ensuing day. Here we supplied ourselves with plenty of provisions, and more particularly with brandy, which is not only very good at this place, but cheap e-

nough in reason; for we had no less than eight bottles of it for forty pence; nor did the Armenians fail of taking in for themselves a sufficient stock of the same liquor. Eatables, however, were cheap likewise, in proportion; for here we could purchase a lamb, or a moderate sheep, for thirteen or fourteen pence; two Ducks, not over large, indeed, for a penny; a fine pullet for three-pence; forty eggs for two-pence; two white loaves, moderately big, for a penny; a brown loaf, of seven or eight pound weight, for the same sum; and their beer tho' very cheap, is very good. This city, according to the nearest computation that can be made, is about 800 wersts from Moscow; that is to say, about 160 German leagues, notwithstanding the distance is very little more than 100 of those leagues, suppose you travel by land. It stands upon the river Occa, which we entered at Kolomna, as we have before observed; and here this river empties its waters into the Volga; which was formerly called the Rha. These two rivers, on their first union, are about 4000 feet broad, according to the computation of those who have been so curious as to take their exact dimensions in the winter, when their waters were frozen over. At present, the inhabitants of this city are all Russians, and not a Tartar amongst them: it lies in the latitude of 56 deg. 28 minutes, and is very populous. I should have been extremely pleased to have taken a view of it in front, from the river; but they would not indulge me so far on any account, by reason of their grand festival; nay, a fee in money was not powerful enough to accomplish what I aimed at; and the only reason as I could find, for their refusal was this; that the Russians will suffer nothing in the world to go forward on a solemn festival, but drinking of bumpers; and I saw several of them, wallowing, like swines, in the dirty streets, out of their fantastic zeal for the day. It is somewhat odd and particular to observe, how the refuse of the people, at such times, will swarm round one of their Kabaks, or public-houses, where the landlords expose their brandy to sale. I tarried several hours in that where I purchased

1704



1703 chafed my cargo, with no other view, than to be an eye-witness of the various pranks, and whimsical conceits of these Russian Bacchanals, as soon as the liquor begins to take effect; they are obliged to stand in the street, however; for none of their frolics or gambols are allowed of within-doors. There is a table, planted some few yards from the house, where the money is deposited, and the quantity of liquor demanded is accordingly brought. This is taken out of a large kettle that stands hard by, with a proper ladle in it, composed of wood, and poured into a little wooden-bowl. The smallest measure is charged a half-penny only. And in this manner are the populace served by a waiter, who makes it his whole business; but there is another who gives equal attendance to receive the money. This practice of intemperance on holidays is as frequent amongst their women as the men. In short, I saw the same farce played over again at another Kabak, where beer only was sold, and where the customers had admittance into the house.

On the sixth, we embarked, in order to get our people on board, and spent the night upon the river. Early in the morning we pursued our voyage; and as we passed but slowly by the city and suburbs, I took such a liking to the place, that the Reader will find a prospect thereof annexed hereto in plate No. XXIV.

PL. XXIV. As we advanced on our way, we came in sight of two villages, which lay on the larboard-side; one whereof was much larger than the other, and called Waefna; on the starboard-side we saw the convent of Bessjerske, which is a spacious edifice, all built with stone, the roofs only excepted, and several houses besides on each side of it, and is not more than one werst beyond the city. We saw, moreover, one small church, called Jassooni, situate on a hill, and some hundreds of people flocking up to it, from divers parts, in order to solemnize the festival before-mentioned; some of whom were busy in spreading their tents, in order for their amusement, in those kind of booths, after divine service. We continued at about

three wersts from the city, till the seventh, and till seven in the morning; at which time, we advanced forwards, and by about twelve we came up with an island, which was two wersts at least in length, and abounded with trees. After that, we passed by several hills, and another island, whereon there was not a tree to be seen; and left the river called Kerfimia, and the convent of Macariu, to the larboard of us. This convent is a large stone edifice, and bears the resemblance of a fort or a castle; for it is surrounded with a lofty square stone-wall, which has a tower in every corner of it. Had not the day been too far spent, I should have had a great inclination to have drawn a prospect of it. On one side of it stood a village, and a chan, or a caravan-sarai, built with timber, where the merchants deposit their respective wares. Here there is kept a very considerable annual fast in the month of July, to which almost all the Russian merchants in general resort, notwithstanding it is kept no longer than a fortnight. Some of our Russians going thither, in order to purchase a parcel of fish, were informed that not long before, a certain governor, in his passage from Moscow, had been attacked there by three barks, each of them manned with eighteen Russian pirates; that an engagement ensued, and the Governor, was so well furnished with fire-arms, and behaved with so much courage and intrepidity, that he killed three of the pirates upon the spot, and obliged the rest to retreat like a set of cowardly villains; that this skirmish, however, had obliged the governor to return to Moscow, after he had left one of his retinue in the town under proper care, to be cured of the wounds he had received in his defence.

This information put us more on our guard than otherwise we should have been; and we prepared our arms accordingly, in order to be ready, if occasion should require it. We were furnished with about forty muskets and pistols for the reception of such a casual crew of villains, and, during the night, we had a Russian and an Armenian always on the watch.

1703

The Convent of Macariu.



1703

Bormino.

Goekina.

Wassiel and Wassielgorod.

Kusmademianski.

Sabalzar.

Kokshaga.

On the eighth, about break of day, we arrived at Bormino, which is no less than a hundred wersts from the last town we passed by; and here, on each side of the shore, the banks were full of trees; and by seven or eight in the morning we reached Goekina, a town that belongs to count Golowin. This place extends itself a considerable way along the river, and contains (as we were informed) no less than seven-thousand houses; and here the country-people brought us their bread to sell; in case we had been disposed to purchase any. In the pursuit of our course, we came in sight of several floating islands, upon the river, which in this place is considerably broad; and between ten and eleven we crossed the mouth of the Soera, which flows from the south, where the high mountains commence; at the foot whereof stands a large village, called Wassiel, and on the summit, the town Wassielgorod, of which there is no view from the river. I was informed, however, that the place was but small; that it had no walls, and that all the houses were built with timber; that the town was about one-hundred and twenty wersts from Nisen; and that these parts are principally inhabited by Czeremissian Tartars, who extend themselves as far as Casan. About four in the afternoon, we reached the town of Kusmademianski, which is about forty wersts from Wassielgorod. This place is tolerably large, and extends itself all along the river, and partly up the hill, but it has no wall for its defence. As the wind happened to prove southerly, we hoisted up our sail, and as we advanced, we observed, that both shores were full of linen-trees. We saw likewise several islands, but no hills. In the night, we passed by a place, called Sabalzar, which is forty wersts at least from the Town last mentioned, and stands on a rising ground. To me it appeared to be very compact, and when we had proceeded thirty wersts farther, we came in sight of a town called Kokshaga, which lay on our larboard side. On the ninth, we saw several high hills, and overtook a large bark, in company with several others, which were bound for Casan. At this time,

the weather was calm, moist and hot. By noon we reached Blowolska, a town but about four-score wersts from Casan, on the starboard-side; and from thence we came to a place called Bellawalska, where our people went a shore, in order to purchase some fresh provisions. At three in the afternoon, we steered our course by a town, called Swyatski, and the wind stood directly for us. This place is situate on a rising ground, has a Citadel, and several stone-convents as well as churches; but the walls and houses are all timber-work. The whole is formed into an island by the river Swyage, which flows from the south-east, and here empties its waters into the Wolga. On one side of the last mentioned river, and directly opposite to the town, is seen, at the point of a hill, the village called Saldactke-slabode, between which and this town, this Swyage falls into the Wolga, as we hinted before, and as evidently appears by the plate No. XXV. annexed; where the reader may observe there is an island before the Swyage, otherwise called Swyatski. We coasted all along this hill, or mountain, and steered our course south-half east, and by six we saw on the larboard-side, the city of Casan, at the distance of about four wersts. It makes a very grand appearance here on account of the several churches and convents with which it abounds, and its fort or citadel which is surrounded with a stone-wall. Some small time before this, we had passed by the several ship-yards, which lie about six or seven wersts only from the town, in a reach, where the river is broad; and there we had a sight of near forty vessels of divers kinds upon the stocks, and several that were nearly compleated, and almost ready for launching. We were informed by some of the workmen, that they had orders for the building of three hundred and eighty, the greater part whereof were to sail to Astracan, for the service and protection of the (w) Caspian sea, and the rest were bound for other places. As we passed by, I took a prospect of Casan, in the best manner so short a time would permit me, and the reader may see it in the plate No. XXVI. hereto annexed.

1703

Blowolska.

Bellawalska.

Swyatski.

The Swyage.

Saldactke-slabode.

Pl. XXV.

Casan.

Pl. XXVI.

H h

It



1703

1703

The River  
Kama.

Tetus.

The River  
at Tetus.

It is situated in (x) Asia, and in the southern parts of the Moscovite (y) Tatars, on a river which bears the same denomination, called by the inhabitants, Casanka, and empties its waters into the Wolga. It is the capital of the kingdom so called, between that of (x) Bulgar and the Cheremissians. This city has a wall, indeed, but then it is a wooden one. As we advanced farther, we had a sight of several islands, which appeared to us like so many forests in the river; and we observed likewise a kiln upon the hills, where several were at work; and on our left, we saw several lands which were overflowed. On the tenth we arrived at the mouth of the Kama, which fell on our left-hand-side, into the Wolga, at the distance of about threescore wersts from the city of Casan. It is very broad, and flows from the north-east, and disembogues it self with that impetuosity into the Wolga, that it hurries on vessels, without any other assistance, for several leagues together. Tho' some persons assert, that the waters thereof are of a brown colour; yet I confess, I could not perceive it. It is, however, very sweet, and in regard to drinking, far preferable to that of the Wolga. About noon we reached the small town called Tetoetie, or Tetus, which is situate on a high hill, about ninety wersts from Casan. It is surrounded with a wooden wall; and its churches and houses are all timber-work, and but very small. There was only one part of the wall to be seen as we passed by. There is likewise a small village on the river-side, where some of our passengers went a shore in order to purchase some provisions, and procure a small quantity of ice to cool our liquor. After that we passed by a large island called Stariso, which is forty wersts from Tetus; and in the night by several others full of trees. Here the river is at least a league broad, and on the left-hand-side of it has several mountains. Here we rode at anchor for some hours in the night, the wind blowing very hard, and directly against us. On the eleventh, I went a-shore with my Armenians and some few Russians, in order to purchase some provisions at a small distance from the town called Simbierka, which

stands on the right, upon a rising ground, about three wersts from the river. We were informed, that in former days it was a spacious city, but destroyed by Tamerlane the Great; tho' there are no remains of it, as I can understand, at present; neither, indeed, had I any opportunity or time to spare in searching after them. Some insist, that, higher up, there were divers other cities and islands, the ruins whereof were still very conspicuous; but I much question the veracity of their assertions, notwithstanding they say, that there are the traces of an old castle, and the walls that once surrounded it, near the town of Zariets. They maintain, upon the whole, that there are several very ancient cities, and very populous ones likewise, between Casan and Astracan, and more particularly that of Acktoeba, situate on the river Oessa; but even of this I could never procure any true satisfactory account. It must be acknowledged thus far indeed, that the waters of the Oessa flow between Saratof and Zaritha, which are situate on the other side of the Wolga, and empty themselves into that river, and even washes one part of (aa) Siberia. It must be admitted likewise, that the city of Acktoeba stood once upon this river, notwithstanding there are no footsteps of it at present remaining, all the stones thereof in general having been removed from thence, in order to build the city of Astracan, and some other adjacent towns. When I went a-shore, I perceived that the village of Simbierka and its parlious were of large extent; partly, on the river, and partly again on the hill which we were to go up, before we could reach the Bazar. No sooner had we reached it, but we perceived a fire had just broke out, among some houses that stood upon the hill, and had then destroyed five or six at least of them; but within the compass of half an hour more, there were twenty of them reduced to ashes; for the wind was so high, that they burst out into flames before they could possibly be pull'd down, which (as we have before observed) is their method of extinguishing fires.

All

1703

Astracan,  
on the river  
Volga.



1703

All provisions here, we found, as cheap, in all respects, as at Niesna. I had a great inclination to have gone up to the place it self, which is 180 wersts from Casan, but it was impracticable, as our vessel was on her way. However, I heard that it was considerably large, and surrounded with a wooden-wall; that there were 8 stone-churches in it, three or four convents, and no less than 10,000 houses, all inhabited by Russians only, the Tartars residing in the adjacent villages. It was above two hours before we could overtake our bark, and our rowing after her was attended with no small danger, as well as difficulty; for the river here whirls about with great violence, in some particular places, and being extremely deep, swells to that degree, that a small boat can scarcely withstand the surges. In our passage, we met again with several places covered with trees, whose verdure struck the eye agreeably enough, and had a full view of several hills that stood between them: When we had advanced thirty wersts from this place, we arrived at the village, called Siengiela, and divers others, all inhabited by Russians only; and not long afterwards at another town, called Nove Devitzke Salo, which is of large extent, very compact, and abounds with churches, some of whose steeples are very high. That night we met with a vessel, that was towing along, and manned with Russians, who asked us from whence we came, to what port we were bound, and what countrymen we were? We made answer, that we belonged to his Czarian majesty, and cautioned them to keep at a proper distance, lest they should repent it; for we were apprehensive that they were pirates. On the twelfth in the morning, we saw several hills on each side of us; some whereof were covered with fir-trees, which was a novelty, as we had never observed the like before. The river here was not above a werst broad at most; to make amends, however, it was extremely deep, and had risen so high this year, that it had laid all the land, which we have spoken of, under water to that degree, that there were rivers themselves at that

time which could not be distinguished. In such occurrences, the Russians are perfectly ignorant, and could give me no satisfactory account of the cause from whence they arose; neither could I procure any information on shore; because our vessel made no stay there. By nine we reached the village called Siera Barak, which is 40 wersts on this side Samara. There several of our passengers went on shore, in order to furnish themselves with fresh provisions; there the river began to widen; and we had not advanced far on our way before we had the sight of an island that was overflowed; and on the left side of us, stood a round high hill, almost without a tree upon it, called Sariol Klergen. We were informed by the Russians, that the spot was remarkable for being the monument, or sepulchre, of a certain king or emperor of Tartary, whose name was Mammon; and who sailed up the Wolga, accompanied by 70 white Tartarian princes, in order to invade the Russian territories; and forasmuch as he died there, his soldiers, whom he had brought along with him, for that intended expedition, (who were very numerous) each of them contributed towards raising that eminence, or tomb, by filling their respective helmets with the adjacent earth. Scarce a league from this hill, we had sight of another, called Kabia Gora, which abounds with trees, and extends as far as Samara, such of them in particular as grow on the left side, being principally alders and willows, stand so thick, that there is no possibility of seeing through them. Here, we were informed, that the best sulphur that was ever discovered is to be met with in plenty; which was an impenetrable secret but two or three years before. Here we found no less than 1000 persons hard at work; some Russians; others Czeremissians, and others again Mordwatians, over whom his Czarian majesty had proper guards, as well as surveyors. These hills lie on the west of the river; and by two in the afternoon we reached Samara, which lies on the east, on a rising ground, though not very high, and almost without a tree, and terminating with the town itself, which is situate

1704

The hill called Sariol Klergen.

The hill called Kabia Gora.

The hill called Kabia Gora.

The hill called Kabia Gora.

Samara.

(18



1703

Plate 25.

The river.

Wassiele.

Kaskur.

(as appears by plate No. XXVII) on the river-side, and, not (as some historians too peremptorily insist) at the full distance of two wersts from it. At the end of this town runs the river Samara, from whence it derives its name, and at about five or six wersts distance from thence, empties its waters into the Wolga. The town is moderately large, but the houses are all poor and inelegant, and built with wood. It is surrounded likewise with a wretched wooden wall, which is flanked on the land-side indeed, with a large tower. The city covers very nearly the whole hill; and the suburbs extend themselves all along the river-side. According to the nearest computation, it is about 350 wersts from Casan, and as we passed by it, we saw a large gate, several small churches, and a few convents. About five and twenty wersts from this place, we saw, on our starboard-side, the river Askula, which empties its waters, as well as the Samara into the Wolga. Here we lost sight of all the mountains and hills; and here the river was very broad; but soon we recovered sight of them again, when they stood very near us on our right hand. That day we met with several barks, and saw a large number of ducks of a very extraordinary size; some of a very dark, brown colour, and others perfectly white. We crossed the river called Wassiele on our larboard-side, which is but a small one, and not far distant from it, but in the Wolga, we could discern a narrow slip of an island, full of trees, yet laid under water, which was looked upon as somewhat very remarkable. After that, we met with another bark from Astracan, the master whereof assured us, that there were fourteen more but a small matter behind him, all bound for Makaria-Fair, of which we have made mention in another place; and part of them, indeed, passed us in the night. On the thirteenth, we had sight of the town of Kaskur, which tho' but small, has a wooden enclosure flanked with wooden towers, and several churches built with timber. Its suburbs, or out-parts, lies on one side

of it, as may be plainly perceived, by the plate annexed, No. XXVIII. When we had advanced a league farther, we came to the town of Sieseron, which is moderately large, and has several churches in it, built with stone. Here indeed, the mountains are both dry and naked, but a little farther on, they made a better appearance.

The Calmuc Tartars infest these places, and carry off, by violence and rapine, not only man and beast, but every thing else of the least value that falls in their way. As we advanced still farther on, we perceived the river to wind very much, amongst large islands, full of trees; but as the country was covered with water to a very high degree, it was with difficulty that we could discern the bed of the Wolga. After that, we had a sight of the hills once more, on our right side; but they were perfectly parched up with the drought, and piercing heat of the sun; whereas, at other times they are all covered over with a lively verdure. The country-people, indeed, prayed very devoutly for rain, being greatly at a loss for fresh-water for their cattle. Not long after this, we advanced to a place called Sela, which is situate at the foot of the mountains, about sixty wersts distance from Kaskur. There we met with three large Stroecks, one whereof belonged to his Czarian Majesty. All of them were full of Cossack-women, whom their crews were transporting to Casan, and whose husbands had been executed the year before for their mal-practices, on which we shall take occasion to expatiate in a more proper place. From this place we traversed the mouth of the Wassiele, over against which stands the Nove Derevene, or the new village, which belongs to Count Golowin. As our sailors had been fatigued by a spell, (as they call it) of threescore wersts, in order to ease them, we rode at anchor the best part of the night. On the fourteenth, as the wind blew briskly abaft, we went down the river at a great rate. A vessel freighted principally with earthen ware, passed by us, bound for Astracan; and by eleven

1703

Plate 26.

Calmuc Tartars.



1703

Wednesday  
14.

ven we reached a place called Woskessniska, which is threescore and five miles from Saratof; where the hills were very steep, covered with a kind of grey sand, and full of stones. In this place we met with several fishermen, who exchanged their fish with our people for but a small quantity of their brandy, that being a commodity they are not allowed to sell: This spot abounds with lofty oaks. Soon afterwards we were terrified with a very impetuous storm of wind, thunder, and rain, which made the river swell with surges as high as some in the sea; which reduced us to the necessity of riding at anchor for some time, under shelter of the larboard-shore; where our bark struck with that violence against the trunks of some trees, that we were in danger of being lost ourselves, as well as of losing our boats; for such vessels have but a small anchor, which they durst not venture to let go in the open current, when the wind is any ways tempestuous; because it would not prove of strength sufficient to secure them from driving. This tempest, however, proved happily but of short duration. When night came on, we went ashore, about 20 wersts from Saratof, where we kindled a good fire, and met with several oaks, wild roses, and other flowers. Having pretty well recovered our selves from the panic we had been in, and the fatigue we had been at, we returned to our bark; but no sooner were we all got on board; but one of our Armenian passengers was taken so violently ill, that his life was almost despaired of; the fit held him above three hours, during which time he lay motionless; afterwards, indeed, he shewed some tokens of life, but continued speechless. During our concern and confusion on account of this disaster, we arrived at Saratof. There we brought him upon deck; where we perceived some blood that was clotted come out of his mouth; from whence we conjectured, that his misfortune was an imposthume in his throat, and that he could never survive it. In the mean time, however, we sent a special messenger for a physician, or surgeon, but to no purpose; there was no such experienced

person to be found. As I was incapable myself of being any ways assistant to the unhappy patient, I went and took a survey of the place; which is situate in the south-east of Russia, but on the north-east of the Wolga, partly against, and partly upon a hill, and its suburbs, or out-parts, extend along the river. I perceived, that tho' there were no walls in the higher parts of it; yet there were several wooden-towers, at some considerable distance one from another. At about a quarter of a league from the river, there is a gate; and on the left-hand, another, separate from the town; and on the side of Moscow by land, a third, with palisades between them. When I went on that side, which is on the right-hand of the river, there was a descent with several gardens; and beyond the last-mentioned gate, there is a campaign country and a high-road, that is much frequented by all such as travel from Astracan to Moscow by land; and here there is little or nothing worthy of observation but a few wooden churches. 'Tis proper, however, to inform the reader, that the inhabitants are not only all Russians, but almost all of them military men, and under the command of a governor. Not above eight-years since, the whole place was reduced to ashes by an unhappy fire; but at present, it is all new-built. In these parts the Tartars are perpetually committing outrages and devastations, extending themselves even as far as the Caspian, and the river Jaika. It is computed to lie 350 wersts from Samara; and in the latitude of 52 degrees 12 minutes. There we saw several barks, full of soldiers, bound for Asoph, and elsewhere; and departed from thence before noon. From the river there is no prospect of any thing but the towers and tops of churches; because the suburbs lie between the city and the river.

When we returned to our vessel, we found our unhappy fellow-traveller in the very same piteous condition in which we left him; and about three he took his last gasp, which surprized us so much the more, as he had been before on shore, and then seemed as active and sprightly

1703

This Friday  
15th of Dec-  
1703.Tartarian  
Rogues.The sudden  
death of an  
Armenian.



1703

It is accounted  
by his country-  
men.

This date  
is estimated  
from the  
sun.

as any of his associates, who expressed a general concern for him, and covered him over decently enough with a cotton cloth, which they tied fast about his legs; then they placed a book upon his head, a cross on his breast, and an incense-pot at his head. Two of them, after these preliminary good offices, read out of some proper book of devotion, for two hours successively, and during that interval, his other friends took care to provide for him a winding-sheet, a shirt, and a pair of drawers of new cloth. When this was done, his servants went on shore, in order to procure a decent place for his interment; but before they removed the corpse, they read a second time over him, and concluded with a funeral dirge. As soon as the corpse was landed on shore, they stripped it; washed his head first, and then his whole body, which they placed upon a plank, and then put on his new shirt and drawers; when they had so done, they furnished him with a cross, which hung down upon his breast; and put a chaplet, or string of beads, after that, in his right-hand, and in his left a taper. In the next place, they clapt plaisters, or small wads of linen, over his eyes, mouth, and ears, and laid his arms a-cross; this done, they wrapped him up in the sheet before-mentioned, and put him on a bier, which was covered with a carpet. From thence they carried his remains in procession to the summit of the hill, where a decent grave had been before dug for his reception, and there they began to sing and read once more; and when his associates had, one after another, saluted his forehead, they committed his body to the earth; and each of them flung a handful of sand into his grave; making use at the same time of the sign of the cross, and some other petty ceremonies, according to the custom of their country. At length they filled up the grave with earth and stones, and erected a large wooden cross at his head, and three small ones a-cross, one over the other. After that they threw large stones upon his grave, and strewed a small quantity of gun-powder all around it; not forgetting to place a taper likewise at the head. When these

friendly offices were over, they each of them kissed the highest stone, as they advanced in due form, and then burnt incense upon it, and setting fire to the gun-powder, they presented to all the company then present a small glass of brandy. Every passenger in our vessel, without exception, attended this funeral, nor could some of the other merchants refrain from shedding a tear as a testimony of their respect for one, who had so lately appeared amongst them in his full bloom. The name of this gentleman was Peter Archangel, and his usual place of abode was at Ispahan, where his wife and children had lived for some considerable time, impatient to see him, and in hopes of his safe return. This hill, which is parted from the rest, and surrounded with oaks, willows, and alder-trees, had here and there a rose-tree in the bud; and had the soil proved somewhat moister, in all probability, we had met with divers plants, as well as flowers: we could not, however, go down to the village, because the waters were out. The name of this mountain is Gorosoponofkie, and is computed to be about 26 wersts distant from Saratof. As we advanced farther, we had several prospects as agreeable as the most lively imagination can possibly devise. On the sixteenth, we saw once more several steep mountains, which were crumbled away in divers places, extremely sandy, and full of swallows nests, from whence we saw a great number of them fly in and out. Here likewise the river abounds with islands; and at some considerable distance we espied the golden mountain, called Solostogori, and several others, which were covered with verdure, and abounded with trees; and between two of them, we could perceive the small river called Doeziinke, whose waters flow to the north-west, and which is computed to be about 25 wersts from Sarogamis. Advancing still farther on our way, we met with a wood, which stood between us and the hills, and partly in the water, where two vessels had been cast away, when the waters of the river were at their highest, but not broken to pieces. Here likewise we had a sight of some fishermen's huts;

1703

The hill of  
Gorosoponofkie.

The golden  
mountain  
called Solostogori.

River of  
Doeziinke

Sarogamis

huts; and when night came  
by longinus, a boy  
four years old, who was  
dressed in white. The  
candle large, and furnished  
with, in the completion  
number of workmen were  
played. There were  
families, who came from  
order to visit them. The  
the town is called, in  
the river, and on  
On the hill, and  
near the river called the  
waters flow westerly, and  
are distant from the  
which falls into the (M)  
waters empty themselves in  
Mooris, and divide (M)  
Asia. According to  
are told, that the Colossus  
the banks of the Don,  
preserved it even in hours  
and would very great  
distant parts, notwithstanding  
number of men, well  
affairs, were frequently  
to be chosen there  
by means: As all the  
however, great inefficiency  
could be people  
There were several  
very busy in the castle  
with a small wall round  
of the river Kama  
lowest, was not carried  
river is a shallow bay,  
were capable of with  
many of the wonders  
the valley and an  
Caucasus might be  
of digging a canal by  
(M) Black Sea. I was  
his work, when I  
original intention was  
town, where the first  
this was wholly laid  
the memory of the  
we think there is  
not mention in the  
interrupt the work of  
and prevent the  
into the Volga; the



1703

Saroegamis.

The river  
Kamuschinka.

huts; and when night came on, we passed by Saroegamis, a town which had been four years erecting, and was then considerably advanced. The place was moderately large, and surrounded with a mud wall, in the completion whereof a great number of workmen were at that time employed. There were then near 400 families, who came from Moscow, in order to reside there. The hill, whereon the town is erected, is very lofty towards the river, steep and exceedingly rocky. On the left-hand, and below the town, runs the river called Kamuschinka, whose waters flow westerly; and springs, as we are informed, from the canal of Hoba, which falls into the (bb) Don, whose waters empty themselves into the lake (cc) Mocotis, and divide (dd) Europe from Asia. According to some accounts, we are told, that the Cossacs, who resided on the banks of the Don, made it a constant practice to come in boats upon the Wolga, and commit very great depredations in those parts, notwithstanding a considerable number of men, well skilled in military affairs, were frequently dispatched in order to chastize them for their insolent deportment: As all these precautions, however, proved ineffectual, this town was erected on purpose to restrain them. There were several workmen, moreover, very busy in the erection of a kind of fort, with a mud wall round it, on the other side of the river Kamuschinka. This building, however, was not carried on with that vigour as it should be; as the workmen were incapable of withstanding the inclemency of the weather. And it was for that reason, and no other, that his Czarian majesty declined his intention of digging a canal from this place into the (ee) Black-sea. I went to take a survey of this work; where I was informed, the original intention was to have erected this town, where the first was begun; but that it was wholly laid aside on account of the inclemency of the air. A resolution was likewise taken to make a dike from one mountain to the other, in order to intercept the course of the last-mentioned river, and prevent its waters from falling into the Wolga; that project, however,

was likewise laid aside, because the gates of the sluices were incapable of bearing up against the weight and violent pressure of the waters, which from time to time descended from the mountains. Besides this, the soil which lay beneath the stream, was so stony, and so much of it was solid rock, that there was no possibility of accomplishing a penetration through it. The consideration of all these difficulties were such a check upon the spirits of the projector, that he lay under an indispensable obligation to desist from his undertaking; lest, after all his toil and fatigue, his endeavours should prove altogether vain and ineffectual.

We had reached thus far, not so much through the assistance of our sails, as by the rapidity of the current, and the dint of our oars; by virtue whereof, we advanced on our way after the rate of 120 wersts in a day, that is to say, in four and twenty hours. On the seventeenth in the morning, we traversed the river, called Boblolea, which is 90 wersts from the last town we passed by, where we met with a stout vessel that belonged to his Czarian majesty, and was on its passage from Astracan. In this place I drew the prospect which the reader will find in the plate No. XXX.

About eleven we had such a violent squall of wind from the hills, that we were obliged to double-man our oars; and notwithstanding all their united strength, it was with the utmost difficulty that we kept clear of the larboard-shore: And after all our efforts, we were reduced to the necessity of making ourselves fast to some trees that were covered with water, at the foot of the mountains. Fair weather, however, coming on again, we quitted our hold, and advanced still forwards on our way as far as the island, which lay on the left of us, and was called Alinda Loeka. The mountain runs out to such a degree in a point towards this island, that the passage between them is extremely narrow; this place is computed to be three-score wersts from Zaritfa. Soon after this, we were blown on the shore by a sudden squall of wind; we were not long, however, before we got afloat again; but

1703

The river  
Boblolea.

Pl. XXX.

The island  
of Alinda  
Loeka.



1703

but the wind gathering still farther strength, rather than abating, and the rain falling heavy likewise upon us, we deemed it most advisable to shelter ourselves under the lee of the hills, and once more make ourselves fast to the trees. Having taken this precaution, we went ashore in our boat, which it was impossible to do in our vessel, and there made a good fire, in order to cook us some victuals. Whilst that necessary business was going forwards, I went up the hill in quest of flowers and plants; but every thing there was perfectly burnt up and decayed; but besides, the wind blew so hard, that I could scarce stand against it. Thereupon I made the best of my way back again; but on my return, I perceived a great number of butterflies, that had settled themselves on the withered herbs and plants, some whereof were of a purple without, and a speckled grey within; and others of so many various, and such beautiful colours, that I took the pains to catch them, and brought them (as curiosities) away with me.

The town of Zaritsa.

Pl. XXXI.

The island of Serpinski.

The weather continued still stormy, and extremely cold, till about eight at night; at which time the wind in some measure abated, and shifted its quarter in our favour. Whereupon, we immediately hoisted our sail, and by two in the morning we were advanced as far as the town of Zaritsa, where we tarried till break of day on the eighteenth; but moved forwards as soon as we saw the rising-sun. This town is situate on a rising ground, but not very high, is very small, and erected in a square, with a wall that is flanked with towers. The suburbs indeed extend along the shore, and run partly about the town; its principal church is built with stone; but it was not finished when we saw it, the rest are all wooden-ones, and can hardly be discerned. I took a prospect, however, of the place, as we passed by, which is hereto annexed in plate XXXI. It lies in the lat. of 48 deg. 23 minutes. The woods from this place all along to Astracan abound with liquorice, which has a stalk that rises three or four feet high; and the island of Serpinski, which is 12 wersts in length, is not

far distant from Zaritsa. There is a canal of communication between the Don and the Wolga, which lies behind this island, and is not navigable, as I am informed, but called by the Russians Serpinski as well as the island. Soon after this, we began to lose sight of the mountains, and by ten o'clock we had advanced threescore wersts from Zaritsa, having passed by several islands in our way. In the mean time the hills extended themselves still farther and farther from us, up the country called Tzenogar, to which we had 40 wersts as yet to sail, the river being here three or four wersts in breadth. After this, the wind blew directly abast, but so very brisk, that it was with no small difficulty that we kept our vessel from yawing either to one side or the other, and from running aground. One of our boats struck with such violence against our rudder, that we were obliged to cut her away, and let her sink. However, we might have prevented that loss, had we been so inclined; for I had scarce been out of her above a minute or two, on account of a favourite sporting dog of mine that lay in her, which I removed into the other, on my observing that she took water, which was found and much better. Nay some of our passengers had lain in her the night before, as there was no commodious reception for them in the vessel itself. On the evening we were advanced as far as the town of Tzenogar, which is 200 wersts distant from Zaritsa; having sailed at a great rate, as the wind stood perfectly fair for us all the preceding day. This town is about 300 wersts from Astracan, and situate on a hill upon the starboard-shore. The first thing we had a sight of, was a Corps de Garde, and of that but a very imperfect one, as we could discern no more of it than the roof, or top of it; and on the other side, there was another built with wood, in the form of a lantern. The town itself is very small, and surrounded with a wooden-wall only, but defended, indeed, with towers; it has nothing, however, remarkable within, and nothing but a few petty, insignificant houses, or hutches without. The Russians amongst us seemed very de-

1703

Tzenogar.



1703

desirous of going a-shore, in order to distribute, as well as I could perceive, their voluntary benefactions amongst the poor people of the place; but the wind blowing excessively hard, and the current running with such a prodigious rapidity, the vessel, before they were aware, shot, like an arrow from a bow, some considerable way beyond the town; and we were obliged to come to anchor; our cable, however, proving too weak to withstand the squall and the effort of the stream together, it broke, and we ran a-drift. This misfortune I very plainly foresaw, and advised our hands on board, accordingly to take down their sails some time before we arrived at the town, and to ply only their oars; but as they would not hearken to my advice, and as the shore was very steep, they were under an absolute necessity of getting into the water, and with hawfers to hale the vessel on shore: at which time, they took the boat, and went back to the town, whilst we tarried under the lee of the hills. I made one amongst the number, but as it was somewhat late before we got thither; the soldiers and inhabitants of the place would not admit us, but shut the gates for safety-sake upon us. However, they were so humane as to offer us beer, bread, milk and eggs, in case we were inclined to purchase such provisions. When we were all returned to the vessels, strict search was made for our anchor, but all to no purpose; in the morning, indeed, upon a repeated search we happily found it. This town is inhabited principally by soldiers, who are planted there, in order to withstand the too frequent insults and outrages of the Calmuc Tartars, who sometimes come clandestinely, and not only carry off what cattle they find in their way, but scour the country as far as Samara itself. On the nineteenth, as the wind sat directly against us, we plied our oars; and whilst we were rowing along, we had sight of several steep hills, which were green at top, but sandy about the sides; and in this place the river was about a werst broad. From thence we steered our course to a grand wear, or fishery, which was about

four-score wersts from Tzenogar. This wear, which the Russians call Kassarckie, abounds with fine fish of diverse kinds; here likewise we perceived a gulph, which the river Wolga had formed by its infringement on the adjacent lands. When we had advanced 125 wersts on our way, we came at night to an anchor; at break of day, however, we weighed her again, and on the twentieth proceeded on our voyage: As the wind stood very fair for us, we reached within a hundred wersts of Astracan, by twelve o'clock. There we doubled a point, in which place the river winds round with such a rapid course, that vessels are frequently lost in the whirl-pool; the water there being forty fathom deep. As we advanced still farther on, we saw a great number of ducks, and an island likewise, which was ten wersts in length, in a kind of reach, where the river is very wide. There was a guard of about thirty soldiers, at the point of this little island, who had three or four cabbins to sit in, and shelter them from the inclemencies of the weather, where they stop all vessels that offer to pass by them without their permission. Whilst we were here, we saw on the opposite-side, two barks that came from Astracan, but the soldiers, observing that they were making off, got directly into a boat and sailed after them. There were two vessels riding at anchor here, bound for Casan, besides ours; however, we were detained no longer than an hour; and when we were got at a small distance forwards, we saw several hills, that extend themselves as far as Astracan. By seven o'clock, we were advanced within twenty-two wersts of that city; and in about an hour after that, we saw a stout vessel on shore, which had been partly broke in pieces, notwithstanding there were several persons still on board. Not long after the sight of that vessel in distress, we discerned at some distance the church of Sahoor, which is a very large one; and by about eleven that same night we arrived at Astracan, which is 2000 wersts, or 400 German leagues from Moscow. Casan stands much about the mid-way.

1703

THE GREAT  
GULF OF  
TARSKA.



1703

*Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.*

- (a) Moscow, see p. 23. n. c.  
 (b) Wolga, see p. 28. n. f.  
 (c) Astracan, see p. 62. n. i.  
 (d) Isfahan, see p. 109.  
 (e) Holland, see p. 76. n. c.  
 (f) Kolomna, see p. 61. n. c.  
 (g) Moskwa River, see p. 47. n. a.  
 (h) Russia, or Moscovy, see p. 7. n. c.  
 (i) Veronis, see the author's description of it, in p. 92. and seq.  
 (k) Occa-river, see p. 61. n. d.  
 (l) Crim Tartary, see p. 68. n. dd.  
 (m) Moscovy, or Russia, see p. 7. n. c.  
 (n) Nili Novogorod, see p. 61. n. f.  
 (o) Casan, see p. 62. n. b.  
 (p) Refan, or Rezan, see p. 70. n. ss.  
 (q) Holland, see p. 76. n. c.  
 (r) Leyden, east longitude 4. latitude 52. 12. a city of the United Provinces, in the province of Holland, situate on the old channel of the Rhine, near the south end of the lake, called Harlem-meer, 4 miles east of the Ocean, and 20 miles south of Amsterdam. It is one of the most elegant cities in Holland, and the largest next to Amsterdam and Rotterdam; but the air is bad, occasioned by the stagnation of the waters of the Rhine, part whereof form Harlem-meer, and the rest have found new channels, which go under the names of the Waal and the Lech. Those that have viewed this city nicely, have observed, that there are in it thirty islands, twenty-four canals, one hundred and eighty streets, and ninety-five bridges. There are several great hospitals, and an university, consisting of two thousand students; but there are only two colleges, most of the lads boarding in the town, and wear-

ing no distinguishing habits; and as they have no exhibitions, whilst they are scholars, so neither do they expect any fellowships, when they have taken their degrees. The schools consist of a large pile of brick building, three stories high; in the uppermost whereof the ingenious Elzevir had his printing-room. Adjoining to this school is a physic-garden, where the professors of botany read lectures. Their professors never wear gowns but at lectures, and when they preside at public disputations. Their library is in great esteem for its manuscripts; and their anatomy-theatre is said to exceed that of Padua, and Surgeons-Hall in London, having a greater variety of skeletons and mummies of all kinds. There is a considerable woollen manufacture in Leyden.

(s) Hague, or Graven Hague, i. e. the Earl's-Grove, east longitude 4. latitude 52. 10. a town of the United Provinces, in the province of Holland, situate two miles east of the sea, 14 miles north-west of Rotterdam, and 9 miles south-west of Leyden, encompassed with fine meadows and groves, but no walls, and therefore esteemed a village, but one of the largest and most elegant in Europe, and enjoys all the privileges of a city of Holland, except that of sending representatives to the states. But here the states of the province of Holland, and the states-general assemble, as well as the council of state, and their supreme courts of justice; and here foreign ministers are admitted to audience, and all public affairs transacted; and here is a palace, in which there was an apartment for the princes of Orange, when stadtholders; the chambers of the states general, and provincial, and of the council of state. On the west of the palace is a large area, surrounded by good houses, and planted with fine walks of trees, which make it sometimes to be compared to St. James Park; and here every city of the United Provinces has a house for their respective deputies. But notwithstanding the place is very populous, and there is so great a resort of people of figure here, they have but two churches in it. On the north-side of the Hague is a walk, planted with lime-trees, two miles long, extending to the village of Scheveling, by the sea-side.

(t) A-



1703

(1) Aſoph, ſee p. 51. n. b.

(2) Niſen, Niſna, Niſi Novogorod, ſee p. 61. n. f.

(w) Caſpian Sea, ſee p. 66. n. g.

(x) Aſia, is ſituate between 25 and 148 degrees of eaſtern longitude, and between the Equator and 72 degrees of north latitude, and bounded by the Frozen Ocean on the north; by the Pacific Ocean on the eaſt; by the Indian Ocean on the ſouth; and ſeparated from Africa by the Red-Sea on the ſouth-weſt, and by the Archipelago, the Euxine-ſea, &c. which ſeparate it from Europe on the north-weſt. This quarter alſo is thrown into three diviſions, viz. I. The empire of China, Chineſian Tartary, and the Oriental iſlands on the eaſt. II. India, Uſbec Tartary, Calmuc Tartary, and Siberia in the middle. III. Perſia, Arabia, Afracan, and Circuſian Tartary, and Turkey in Aſia on the weſt; the whole being 4,800 miles in length from eaſt to weſt, and 4300 in breadth from north to ſouth.

(y) Tartary, ſee p. 18. n. i.

(z) Bulgar, ſee p. 70. n. pp.

(aa) Siberia, ſee p. 17. n. b.

(bb) The Don, or Tanais, ſee p. 62. n. l.

(cc) The Meotis, ſee p. 102. n. f.

(dd) Europe, is ſituate between 36 and 72 degrees of north latitude, and between 10 degrees weſt; and 65 degrees of eaſtern longitude, being about 3000 miles long from north to ſouth, and 2500 miles broad from eaſt to weſt; bounded by the frozen ocean part of the Atlantic on the north, and by Aſia on the eaſt, by the Mediterranean ſea, which ſeparates it from Africa, on the ſouth, and by another part of the Atlantic ocean on the

weſt. — It is thrown into three grand diviſions, viz. I. The north, or upper diviſion, conſiſting of 1. Ruſſia or Moſcovy, 2. Sweden, 3. Denmark and Norway, and 4. the iſlands of Britain, Iceland, Greenland, and thoſe of the Baltic. — II. The middle diviſion which conſiſts of, 1. Poland, 2. Germany, and the hereditary dominions of the houſe of Auſtria contiguous to it, 3. the Low Countries, or Netherlands, 4. France with its late conqueſt and acquiſitions on the Rhine. — III. The ſouthern diviſion, which comprehends, 1. Turkey in Europe (the ancient Greece chiefly) the tributary provinces of Moldavia, Walachia, the Crim and leſſer Tartary, 2. Switzerland, with the garrifons and the reſt of their allies and ſubjects, 3. Italy, Spain, and Portugal, and 4. the iſlands of the Mediterranean, conſiſting of thoſe in the Archipelago, Sicily, Sardinia, Corſica, Majorca and Ivica.

(ee) Black-ſea or Euxine-ſea, which lies between Europe and Aſia, being bounded by Tartary on the north; by Circuſia, Mingrelia, and Georgia towards the eaſt; by Natolia, or the leſſer Aſia on the ſouth; and by Romania, Bulgaria and Beſſarabia towards the weſt; extending from the 29th degree of eaſt longitude to the 44th, and from the 42d to the 46th degree of north latitude, entirely ſurrounded by the Grand Signior's dominions, who enjoys the ſole navigation of it, but diſturbed ſometimes by the excuſions of the Coſſacs, who iſſue out of the mouth of the Borſibenes, and commit great ravages on the coaſts of Turkey. The Ruſſians did attempt to eſtabliſh a navigation on this ſea, but have been obliged by late treaties to deliver up all the fortrefſes they had erected on the coaſts of the Euxine, and abandon this navigation. It is reckoned a tempeſtuous ſea by the Turks, from whence it is ſaid to have obtained the name of the Black-ſea; and there are not many good harbours in it.

1703



## C H A P. XVI.

*A Description of (a) Astracan. The Situation of the Gardens there. A profusion of Fish. The manner of Living among the Tartars.*

The  
city's  
arrival  
at  
Astracan.

It  
was  
nearly  
re-  
covered  
by  
the  
gov-  
ernor.

NO sooner were we landed, but every thing we had was immediately searched, my baggage only excepted. The first step I took was to wait on the governor of the place, whose name was Timafe Joanowitz Ursofskie, into whose hands I delivered my two passports, with a letter from the Knez Boris Alexewitz, who received me in the most courteous manner. No sooner had he perused my credentials, but he gave me an invitation to reside in his house, and wait for nothing there during my intended stay in the place. I returned him many thanks for those unexpected testimonies of his respect; but intimated to him the obligations I lay under to my Armenian fellow-travellers; whose language I perfectly understood, and in whose company, I proposed to pursue my intended journey into (b) Persia; with this reasonable excuse he appeared very well satisfied, and sent my baggage, without the least search, or examination, and gave orders for its being carried directly to the Caravaniseraï belonging to the Armenians, where I lodged, as I have hinted before, with one Mr. Jacob Daviedof. In less than an hour after we had dined, the governor very obligingly sent eight or ten of his domestics to us with a present of the following refreshments; namely, a cag of choice brandy, a large copper-vase, neatly tinned, full of red-wine, and two others much of the same size and form, full of mead and strong beer; four large loaves, two geese, and about ten or a dozen pullets. No sooner were these attendants of the governor dismissed, with a small present in return, according to my con-

stant custom on the like occasions, but two soldiers came to keep guard at my door, who were to be relieved once a week. A Russian ensign was, moreover, sent to me, who understood the German language tolerably well, to attend me wherever I pleased to go, and act for me in the capacity of an interpreter. Much about that time, the governor had received advice, that the fort of Neyen had been taken by his Czarian majesty on the second of May then last past; and that he found, after the assault, fourscore pieces of cannon, eight mortars, and a garrison of Swedish soldiers amounting to between three and four thousand men, to whom, like a generous victor, he had given their freedom, instead of making them captives.

I took a tour about the city, which is situate on the east of the Wolga, in the ancient Scythia; notwithstanding at present the whole tract of land between the Wolga, the Jaika, and the Caspian-Sea, is called Nojaija, and the country in general, the kingdom of Astracan, from the metropolitan city of that name; which lies in the Asiatic Tartary, on the frontiers of Russia, and on the principal branch of the river Wolga, which, at a few leagues distance from thence, discharges its waters, into the Caspian-Sea; of which we shall treat more largely in its proper place.

This city stands in 46 degrees 22 min. of northern latitude, in a small island, commonly called Dolgoi, which is formed by a little narrow river that may be plainly discerned from one of the towers. The most fertile soil in the parts adjacent lies eastward leading to and proceeding as far

The fort of  
Neyen taken  
by the  
Czary, and  
his gen-  
eral's treat-  
ment of the  
Swedish  
garrison  
which he  
found there.

The situa-  
tion of As-  
tracan.



1703

as the Jaika before-mentioned: There is a large heath to the westward, which we were informed was no less than 70 leagues in length, and extended itself towards the Black-Sea, and several leagues, tho' not so many, towards the Caspian. The salt here is extremely fine, and is conveyed from hence all over his Czarian majesty's dominions.

The city gate.

This city has a strong stone-wall, at least a league in circumference, and ten several gates for its security and defence. I went out through that called St. Nicholas, or the Nikoolske-Warate, and followed the river upwards in order to walk round it. From thence I went to the Red-Gate, or that called Krasnie Warate, in the highest, and most elevated part of the town. From thence I steered my course into the country, till I came to the Granary-Gate, or that called Gietne-Warate, which was shut up indeed, but then there was another leading into the citadel, through which there is a free passage. This last-mentioned Warate is likewise surrounded with a stone-wall, notwithstanding it stands without the enclosure of the city. From thence I proceeded to the Motlagotskie Warate, near which, at some considerable distance from the town, there is a wooden gate, which is not reckoned as one of the city Warates. This is the gate of the Tartars, who have their residence on that side; and a Russian guard is always set there. After this I came to the gate called Refoltiline and soon afterwards to another called Witnesenske, between which there are two towers in the walls, which stand 300 paces at least distant from each other. From thence we turned down towards the river, in order to go to the gate called Spaskia, and from that to another called Isadnie, without which are several different markets for fish, bread, herbs, &c. At some distance from these two last-mentioned gates stands another tower, and at some small distance from that the gate called Garenskie, and without that, but not far from it, is the wood-market, and a particular spot of ground allotted for the bakers, who are not permitted to follow their occupations within the town. From

this last gate we went to that called Rabatskie, and passed by another tower which stands in the Mid-way between this gate and the former. Six of the ten gates are situate on the river, two whereof appertain to the citadel, which constitutes one part of the town-wall, and it has a third likewise, which they call Priestmiskinske, or the Clean-gate, which leads into the city over against the Bazar, or High-street, called Bolsjanlitz, where the Russians and Armenians have very large and commodious shops.

As we went through this gate, in order to go into the citadel, we had on the left-hand of us, the church of Saboor, which had been begun five years before we saw it, and was erected at the sole expence of the archbishop, or metropolitan, whose name was Samson. This right reverend prelate has his peculiar privileges over the inferior clergy, and a spiritual-court, or office under his own jurisdiction: he is also the metropolitan of Tirk, a city, under his Czarian majesty's power and authority, on this side the Caspian-Sea, situate on the mountains of Circassia, and distant from Astracan about 700 wersts.

Whilst the workmen were employed in the erection of the dome of this church, one part of it, through a casual defect in the foundation, fell down to the ground; and whilst we were there, they were busy in building five small steeples, each with a dome, and on each they proposed to have a cross. The church is square, and in circumference about 200 paces. The front is 67 in breadth, and the sides 47 in length. As to the back part of it, it stands partly upon the wall belonging to the metropolitan palace, which is the most magnificent structure in the whole town, as well as of the largest extent; and the whole is built with stone. At some small distance from thence, and in the finest part of the space within the citadel, stands the governor's palace: this, however, is a wooden structure, and surrounded with a wooden-wall of its own. It has two gates likewise, one forwards, and the other backwards; and the court-chapel stands without the enceint, or inclosure of this palace. Between the Fore-gate, where

L. I

stands

1703

The metro-  
politan  
church



1703

stands always a guard, and the governor's palace, there is a fine, spacious yard, and the inclosure of the court is called Iwan Bogasloof. In this palace, there are several very commodious apartments, very light, and perfectly pleasant; but more particularly a very large and lofty salon, with delightful prospects on every side. At the Citadel-gate, which is well-mounted with artillery, there is a constant guard. At the entrance into it, on the right-hand, stands their chancery, which is built with stone, and has several apartments in it, and in the chamber belonging to the governor there is a table covered with a scarlet carpet.

The church  
of Ildwiefinje.

The most remarkable church next to that of the Saboor, is the Ildwiefinje, which is a brick-building, but plaistered all over. Its dome is gilt, and so is its cross, which is three fathom long; that below it is painted green; and so are the others belonging to the steeple. All the rest of the churches are wooden structures; so likewise are the two convents, called the Troyts, and the Petenskie, which is peculiarly appropriated to the service of the fair sex.

The Tartar-  
bazaar.

In the morning, you may be supplied with all manner of necessaries at the Tartar-market, or Bazar; where the Armenians as well as the Russians have the privilege of exposing their respective merchandizes to open sale; this market, however, is over by noon: in the afternoon, the Russians have their market, to which the Armenians likewise are admitted. As to the Indians; they are obliged to transact their affairs in their Caravan-serai.

Their streets.

As to the streets of the city, they are but narrow; and though they are well enough to walk in, when the weather is fair and dry, yet they are almost impassable when it is wet and dirty; and the reason is, because the soil is extremely fat, and abounds with salt; and the ground for the same reason is whitish, when it is dry.

The governor's  
house.

The city is under the direction of the governor and three Burgo-masters; the first of whom is principal of the town-house; the second has the Kabbaes, or

public-houses, where they sell wines, mead, and beer, under his inspection; and the third has his majesty's fishery under his peculiar care.

Beyond the river, and without the city-walls, stands the convent of Ivan, which is a curious stone structure, besides two other cloysters, and divers slabodes, or suburbs, the principal whereof is that for the peculiar residence of the soldiers, which lies to the eastward of the city, and runs all along the river called Koetoe-me, which discharges its waters into the Wolga.

His majesty's ships lie all along that called the Balda, over-against the city. Those, however, which are called the Casanse and the Stepielewe, are for any people whomsoever without distinction. The slabode for the Tartars is separated from all the others, and built for the generality with earth only, and clay hardened by the sun; where they reside during the Winter-season, but when it is Summer-time, they live in the open country. It was not above twelve months before we came there; that one half of the city was unhappily reduced to ashes; and a great many ruins were then subsisting; there were, however, when we saw them, a great number of hands employed in rebuilding, and restoring that part to its pristine state.

Having thus gratified my curiosity in a great measure, I made my applications to the governor for his licence to take what draughts of the place I thought proper, who granted my request without the least hesitation. Whereupon I went upon the water, in a small bark with oars; but I found the stream too rapid for answering the end proposed, upon which the governor was so indulgent as to furnish me with a larger vessel, that could ride at anchor; but as it happened at that time to be dark and rainy weather, I was obliged to postpone my design to a more favourable opportunity. The city, to my thinking, made the handsomest appearance from that side where the ships lay; and I took the prospect thereof from thence accordingly, as the reader may see by the Plate No. XXXII annex; where each par-

1703



1703

particular is distinguished by their proper figures; as for instance. (1) The convent of Iwan or St. John. (2) That of the Ascension of our Lord, called the Wicnissenskie. (3) The gate thereof, called the Wicnissenskie Warate. (4) The church of Smolenskie. (5) The convent or cloyster of Jesus Christ in swadling clothes, called the Spask Monastir. (6) The church of Arisjetwa. (7) The Town-hall, called the Amosna. (8) The church of the Annunciation, called the Dwiesi-ins jet-firko. (9) The gate of the Kabbac. (10) The citadel, the enclosure whereof commences in the town, called the Kreml. (11) The steeple, or Klocknitse. (12) The Clock-tower, or the Siasloeni. (13) The Metropolitan Church, or the Saboor. (14) The convent of Troyts. (15) St. Nicholas's Gate. (16) The governor's palace. (17) The church called Iwan Bagasloef, in commemoration of a favourite Saint. (18) The church of Christ in swadling clothes, called Woskrisinie Sirko. (19) The Red Gate, which was the farthest advanced towards the river on the side of the Caspian-sea. (20) The river Wolga, on the other side whereof rode the ships that were over against the city; two whereof were a-ground, and all the rest perfectly rotten, and of no service, through the mismanagement of one captain Meyer, a native of Hamburg. There were fifteen other ships that lay a little higher, and came there that year from (c) Casan.

where.

In this part, there are abundance of gibbets erected, as there are numbers likewise on the other side of the town, on each of which hung no less than six Coffins, perfectly naked, whose clothes had been sold at market by the Russians, who had stript them: each of their carcases had been so long broiled by the heat of the sun, that they were as black as pitch, and very shocking to behold. Those, however, who had been hung up nearer the city had been secretly conveyed away by their respective friends. These last, who had been joined by some rebels and deserters from Astracan, had posted themselves at a certain place called Gargan, on a river from whence it derives its name,

with three pieces of cannon, and two colours. Here they were besieged, and obliged to surrender at discretion, after a very vigorous defence for about fourteen days. The day of this surrender was on the 10th of August 1702. The greater part of them were hanged on the frontiers of Russia, where they had been most guilty of their invasions; there were others, that underwent the same execution at Astracan; besides 30 of the principals, or ring-leaders, who were conveyed to Moscow, and all of them either hanged or beheaded. As to their wives and children, they were all sent to Casan.

1703

The prince, or Knez Aldrige Chan Bolatowitz, who was a Circassian, was present upon this expedition, with 400 of his Tartars; and one Mr. Wigne, a native of Swedeland, was there likewise with a thousand Russians, of whom he was commander in chief; and 500 Strelles were joined to them. Mr. Wigne's regiment had four pieces of cannon, and two mortars; and the Strelles had indeed eight pieces of cannon, but then they came too late to be of any service. Mr. Wigne protested, in my company, that during the whole course of the siege, he heard in the dead of the night, the howling of 4 or 500 jackalls, or wild dogs, which made the most hideous noise that could possibly be conceived; and yet after the place was surrendered, there was not a single dog to be seen or heard.

Retreat was  
ordered.

Hideous  
howling of  
wild dogs.

The troops that were then in garrison at Astracan, were Mr. Wigne's regiment of 1000 men, exclusive of the officers; namely, the colonel, 2 majors, 5 captains, 10 lieutenants, and ten ensigns; the serjeants and corporals being included in the number of the common soldiers: 600 Moscovite Strelles, who were commanded by 6 captains and 12 serjeants; three other regiments of Strelles, who were natives of the country, and consisted of 300 men each, under the command of a colonel and three captains, or stolnies; two regiments of horse, each consisting of 500 Russians and natives of this city; amounting in the whole to 3500 men. Mr. Wigne's regiment had 13 pieces of cannon, and the rest more or less in proportion.

AN



1703

Trocheta  
very plentiful.

All sorts of provisions, except wheat, are very plentiful in this country, and brought here from Casan, and other places; but more particularly fish, of which the Baloege, as it is here called, is in greatest esteem; and some of them are two fathoms at least in length.

The Strelat  
a fish in  
great esteem.

The Strelat is about an ell long, and notwithstanding you may purchase one here for two-pence or three-pence; yet in Moscow, a single one will sell for 6 or 7 rubles; and, in short, it is the best fish that Russia can boast of. It is generally dressed much after the same manner as the Germans do salmon, and it must be allowed to be a delicious dish. There are two sorts of them; one has a much longer beak than the other; but for the generality, it bears the resemblance of a sturgeon, as the reader may see in the Plate annexed No. XXXIII.

Pl. XXXIII

I purchased two of them that had been dried in order to keep. The Severocks differ very little from a Sturgeon, which they call an Affetrine; and Cavaer is composed of the Beloege, the Affetrines and the Sevroefmes, and from hence are exported to all parts of the world. They have likewise another very fine fish, called by them the Soedak, which is generally dressed as the Melwell or Stock-fish. They have, moreover, great quantities of Pike and Perch, a fish not unlike a Herring, and divers others. The largest of those that are the least valuable are the Modienes, with large heads.

The Soedak  
another fine  
fish.

The fish-market is full twice every day, that is to say, in the morning, and again at night: and the Wolga yields such a profusion of them, that what they have not a sale for is given to the hogs. Tho' bread is not an excessive dear commodity, they will give the common-people three or four fish, a foot in length, for a single slice of it. As to Bream and Carp, they have plenty of them likewise. In a word, one may purchase of some of the fishermen who live in the suburbs, a Severock, which is as large as a cod, for five-pence or six-pence; and from thence the reader may form a tolerable idea of the price of fish in general. Besides these, they have

a small round fish, of the breadth of about four inches only, and long in proportion, which they call a Viaenie. These are for the generality to be met with in pits, near the mouth of a small river; numbers whereof, I have taken myself in a sieve, and of various sorts; some of them I preserved in spirits, together with several small Soedaks, and there were divers others that I would have preserved likewise had they been smaller.

There are no less than 40 or 50 Armenian families in and about this city, who keep large shops, as I have observed before. The Indians reside in their Caravanferai, where they carry on their respective avocations; and are as numerous as the Armenians, but what is very remarkable they have no women amongst them.

This Caravanferai of theirs is moderately large, and surrounded by a square stone-wall which has several gates, at the two principal whereof there are always guards, and all of them in general are shut up at a stated hour of the night. The Armenian merchants, who only go backwards and forwards, take up their quarters here likewise; and here it was that I resided with them: and there are some of them, indeed, who live and keep open shop there for a constancy, where they have chans, or separate apartments for themselves.

That Caravanferai that is set apart for the service of passengers and travellers, is two stories high, and built with galleries; on the one side; and that for the Indians on the other is all composed of wood; but they have lately erected for themselves a stone-ware-house for fear of fire. This structure is about forty foot square. And the Armenians are following their example; for when I was there the foundation of theirs was raised about six foot.

I had not been long resident in this city before the deputy-governor, or his majesty's lieutenant, whose name was Mekiete Ivanowitz Apocchtemo sent a special messenger to inform me, that he wanted to have some conversation with me.

1703

A particular  
place  
for Indians  
and Armenians.

The author  
views the  
deputy go-  
vernment.



1703

me. Accordingly I paid him a visit the very next day, and I was so fortunate as to meet there with the governor and all his family, with several ladies all dressed in German habits, who were just taking their leave, and their coaches were waiting for them in the court-yard. I was received in a courteous manner; and after I had been entertained with brandy and beer, the governor was pleased to say, that I had not only been recommended to him by the Knez Borjes, but by the Czar himself; and then addressing himself to me; Sir, said he, "I shall be glad to see you every day, and let me know wherein I can oblige you." I returned him many thanks, and in a few minutes after he took his leave. As soon as he was gone, the deputy-governor carried me and my fellow-traveller Mr. Jacob Davidof, into another room, and entertained us with some Persian refreshments, and departed himself in such a courteous and complaisant manner, as is quite natural to him.

These gardens.

Most of the gardens which lie round about the city abound with vines and fruit-trees; but more particularly, they have plenty of apples, pears, plums, and apricots; which are none of the best indeed that I have ever tasted.

Water-melons.

The Water-Melons, however, which they have here are more delicious than even those in Persia.

These vines.

They seldom or never let their vines grow above six feet high; for then they prune them to prevent their growth, and fasten them to proper poles. Their Grapes are moderately large, and either perfectly black, or of a purple colour, as I was informed; for I was not there at the season; when they are ripe, such as grow in the gardens of private persons, whether Armenians or others, of which there are no great numbers, are frequently exposed to public sale; but wine is made of all such grapes as grow in the vineyards, which principally belong to his Czarian majesty, who receives all the profits arising from them.

These wines when made, are red, and very palatable; the soil is very sandy; and as they have springs there in plenty,

they frequently sink pits in their gardens, and furnish them with water by subterraneous pipes. And from these pits they draw up what water is from time to time wanted, with a large wheel, whereto proper buckets are fastened, which throw it into wooden-gutters, or spouts, from whence it is distributed, just as they think most proper, throughout the garden; and one single camel is strong enough to turn all the wheels. These vineyards, or gardens, are at the distance of two or three wersts from the city; and the number of them daily encreases; and as they are open, they have what they call Guerits, or watch-houses, at proper distances, where centries are placed, to take care that no passengers shall make too free with the grapes, when they are ripe, and fit for use. It is above a century ago, since they were first cultivated, and as I am credibly informed, they were brought to perfection by several Persian merchants, who had brought some choice slips from their own country for that important purpose.

I had not been many days resident in this city, before I went, in person, to pay my respects to Mr. Serochen Beck, who was intended by the king of Persia to be sent in the capacity of his ambassador to the Swedish court; but as his Czarian majesty happened at that very juncture to be engaged in an open war with the king of Sweden, he was not only refused a passage through the Czar's dominions; but by his orders was put under an arrest; inasmuch that he had resided in (d) Muscovy for near three years successively. He had about threescore persons in his retinue, and left (e) Moscow, not above a week before my own departure from that city.

I found him sitting, according to the custom of the Persians, on a sofa, and met with a very courteous reception. He treated me with a dish or two of coffee, and some kullabnabat, a very pleasant liquor so called, composed principally of fine sugar and rose-water.

He was a gentleman of a very graceful deportment and of a very affable disposition. His mustachoes extended themselves to his very ears; and his beard hung

M in down

1703

The author pays a visit to the Persian ambassador.

His character.



1703

down above a quarter of a yard below his chin, which was shaved. His turban was as white as snow; and his Kaftan, or upper vestment, was girt about him with a sash of gold-cloth. He had a fine Ganjar, as they call it, by his side, and smoked with a pipe, called a Kaljan, according to the Persian mode. He had two attendants, one on each side of him; his right-hand man was armed with a large Sabre, the hilt whereof was visible though in some measure concealed in a red bag. After we had conversed on several topics for some time; he put the question to me whether I was willing to accompany him to (f) Isfahan, or not. As I did not intend it, I made the most plausible excuse I possibly could for not accepting of that intended honour.

After that, I paid my respects to Mr. Wigne, a gentleman of great probity and honour, and captain Wagenaer, who was so complaisant as to pay me a friendly visit on my first arrival. The former took me with him upon the river, in a bark of 24 oars, and manned with 44 soldiers; besides a band of instrumental music, consisting of flutes, haut-boys, and drums, who beat their marches after the German manner. We went at least seven wersts from Astracan, to the very spot of ground where the old city had stood about 120 years before; notwithstanding at that time there were not the least footsteps of it to be discerned, except some few bones that had been interred there; some whereof I saw myself.

Salt-petre discovered.

About seven years since, some workmen made a discovery of Salt-petre in the mountains, and proceeded in the undertaking with a great prospect of success. The spot where it was found was situate to the eastward part of the city on the left-hand of the river as we went down. We amused our selves, in our return, with shooting some wild pigeons; and passed by the ships which rode at anchor on the opposite shore.

On the fourth of June 1703, there happened a violent hurricane, by which, a vessel, laden with timber, though in sight of the city, was perfectly wrecked, and twenty-nine persons who were then

on board (out of seventy-one) were buried in the waves. 1703.

On the sixth of the same month, eight barks arrived there from Persia; four whereof belonged to the Russians, and the rest to the Turks; they had likewise some Armenian merchants on board of them.

During the whole time that I resided in this city, the governor was continually indulging me with the testimonies of his regard for me, by making me one present or another, and by entertaining me at his palace with all kinds of Persian refreshments, and would frequently press me to let him know wherein he could be of service to me: But of all his proffered acts of indulgence, I accepted of nothing but his beer, which was such liquor as could not be purchased for money; and as he found it was so acceptable, I never wanted for a sufficient stock of it. As he knew very well that I proposed to reside in the city for some considerable time, he begged the favour of me to draw, not only his own picture, but his son's likewise; and as he made it his study to oblige me in every thing, I could not, in point of gratitude, refuse complying with so modest a request. Among other things, he made me a present of a bird that had been shot, indeed, upon the plain, but not killed. As to its body and feet, it bore a near resemblance to a heron; the head, however, as well as the bill were extremely beautiful, and of a quite different form from those of the bird last-mentioned. He had a white tuft on his head, and his bill was as black as ebony, at least ten inches in length, and an inch and an half in breadth; the tip of it was spotted with yellow, and resembled a pair of spoons. The name of this extraordinary bird in the Russian language is Lepnary, and Colpetje, which first term signifies a spoon. There are several of them in Persia, where they are known and distinguished by the name of Goli. I preserved the head of one of them, as the reader may see in the Plate No. XXXIV. hereto annexed. There are herons likewise frequently to be met with in this country, which are named 't-Sepoere. They

An extraordinary bird.

Pl. XXXIV



1703

Pl. No.  
XXXV.

They are of variegated colours, white and an azure blue (like peacocks) grey and black. One of them is drawn, the reader will perceive with his neck shortened in Plate XXXV. hereto likewise annexed.

I frequently took a tour with captain Wagenaer, to the place where the Tartars reside, which is but three or four wersts from the city. They incamp in companies; each family apart, and at some considerable distance from each other. Their tents are erected in the form of parrot-cages; with this difference only, that they are not, in proportion near so lofty. They are composed of lathis, which are three or four inches in breadth, and are covered over with nothing but a felt or a hair-cloth. Some of them hang down but within a foot or two of the ground; and are surrounded only with either thatch or stubble. Those that are the most commodious are covered with cloth, and have an aperture at the top, in order to let out the smoke; they have likewise a pole in the middle, which sticks out four or five feet, to the end whereof they affix a sort of sail, painted with a variety of colours, which falls down to the ground, and is fastened there with a kind of strap, without one of the sides of the tent, and by virtue of that, they turn this painted sail which way they please, in order to keep out either the wind or the sun, whenever they find it necessary. When there is no smoke in any of these tents, and they are inclined to keep themselves warm, they cover their openings up, and then they are like so many stoves. The floors of them are covered with either particoloured stuffs or fine carpets; and such amongst them in particular who are of the higher class, have a sofa some small matter raised from the ground, after the manner of the Mahometans, which takes up at least one third of the tent; others are furnished with trunks and chests, in which they deposit their most valuable effects; and for the generality, these are very fine, and their other furniture perfectly neat and clean, and ranged in proper order. When they change their situation, they

throw their tents into waggons, and when the covering is taken off, the women and children sit in them; whilst the men attend them on horseback. They looked upon me, at my first coming amongst them, with a jealous eye; but when they perceived, that I had no other view, but the innocent gratification of my curiosity, they voluntarily shewed me almost every thing I requested to see. Tho' they very seldom suffer strangers to come near those tents where their women are; yet even that favour at last they granted me. In one of them accordingly, I saw a very pretty Brunette, and exceedingly well dressed: her head-clothes were peculiarly remarkable, consisting of silver-gilt, or copper, and all covered with gold ducats, pearls, and precious stones; I was, in short, perfectly charmed with her, and I determined to draw her picture, for which she afterwards sat. In the interim, I made a draught of several of their tents, as I found them pitched at but a small distance from each other; as the reader may observe in Plate Numb. XXXVI. and one in particular at letter A; Plate Numb. XXXVII. thereto annexed. At letter B. in the same plate, the reader will have a perfect idea of the form of one of their waggons, which is drawn upon two large wheels. This vehicle is composed of wood which is painted, and covered with stuff, which is supported by two cross sticks before, and rests upon beams. When they deposit their tents in them, then the wheels are covered. Their chappel is placed on one side, and distinguished in the plate by letter C. Their common tents are only covered with felt, and the sail above is of the same; and they are as ordinary within as without. As their principal subsistence depends on the cattle they are possessed of, they always make choice of the best pasture-grounds they can meet with. Their women are principally employed in making up cloaths, and other things of the like nature; and when finished, they carry them into the city, and there dispose of them in open market. They observe the same Method, in their sewing, as the Russians do, but spin like the Germans, with

1703

Pl. No.  
XXXVI.

Pl. No.  
XXXVII.



1703

with a spindle that turns round, and card wool for the felts which they make use of in the covering of their tents, and for other ordinary stuffs. They make use of cow-dung for their firing, which they dry much after the same manner as the Germans do their turf, and lay it up in heaps on one side of their tents. Whilst I was employed in drawing them, they hovered about me, and seemed highly delighted. They looked likewise as wishfully at my dress, as I did at theirs; which I found was of no small service to me. Their manner of living bears a near affinity to that of the Arabians; and they seem to be as well contented with their portable habitations, as those amongst the Europeans, who are settled in palaces, and the finest structures: and this brings to my remembrance the antient way of living amongst the eastern nations: and 'tis highly reasonable, to conjecture that the patriarch Abraham and his descendants sojourned much after the same manner; and 'tis highly probable, that in case we were accustomed to such a wandering way of life, we should be as well satisfied with it as they are.

*Described the female Tartars.*

As to the dress of their women, I drew the picture of a young lady of their nation at the governor's palace, where I had an opportunity of doing it in a much more commodious manner than I had in their tents. Her upper vestment was peculiarly fine, and her face was covered with a white veil, that was thrown over her vest, which, at my request, she laid aside, and appeared with her head covered with another very fine white linnen, which was tied round her neck in a perfectly genteel taste, and through which I could see her head-dress. I begged of her likewise to lay that aside, because it concealed the finest ornament that I wanted to express, and she appeared dressed as they are in their Kaftan and in their tents. This head-dress was all covered with gold ducats, as I observed before, and pointed at the top, somewhat in the form of a mitre, bordered with a great number of pearls; some whereof were strung, and hung before her like plaited tresses. A sort of coloured scarf, which was fastened to the back part of her mitre, came round her neck, and partly fell down before. Besides this, she had several silver chains over her shoulders, and around her waist; by one of which hung divers little silver boxes, in which she carried her toys and her prayer-book. Her hair was tied up with a broad black ribbon, which had two large silk tufts, or tassels, at the end, as appears by the plate annexed. This lady was one of the most considerable families amongst the Tartars, and had three female attendants. She was introduced to the governor by a Tartar of his acquaintance.

The Russians distinguish the Tartars who reside in these parts by the appellation of Jurtsge, because they are natives of that place; neither, in fact, do they pay any tribute to his Czarian majesty. All the obligation they lie under to him is this; namely, that they must send a certain number of their men into the field of battle, in case the Czar should require it. Notwithstanding this, in time of war, they can raise 20,000 able and experienced soldiers upon occasion.

The Tartars, who, at Astracan, are distinguished by the name of Indians, shave their heads in a very peculiar manner at one certain season of the year; for they tear the hair up by the roots with the point of a penknife, till their blood runs down upon their cheeks. The priest, or the person whom they dignify with that venerable title, takes the first stroke, and in case he does not execute his task in a manner to their entire satisfaction, they all begin afresh, crying out, Suksemakse, Suksemakse, or Bassou Bakfou, and skipping and dancing about at the same time, in a variety of antic postures. This they look upon as a sort of a free-will oblation to their grand idol Suksemakse. This annual, religious rite was performed with abundance of solemnity, near the granary, which stood in the suburbs, some short time before my arrival: and such as practise it are Indians, some of whom have their residence in the slabode of the Tartars. Those who belong to Nojay, reside in tents all round about the city of Firck. The Crim-

Tartars

1703

*The old manner in which the Tartars shaved their heads.*

*Two of their dresses in 1703.*



1703

Tartary, however, never settle there; and only bring their cattle to market from time to time as occasion offers.

The governor's grand entertainment.

On the 20th instant the governor gave a grand entertainment, to which I was invited; as were likewise some of the principal Russian officers, and the most considerable amongst the Armenian merchants. In the first place, we were conducted into an apartment, where were the governor's lady and his daughter-in-law, with several of their female retinue; and on the right-hand stood a table, which was covered with a variety of dainties, and such liquors as was most agreeable for the morning. These two ladies presented each of us with a small cup of brandy, a customary compliment in this country, and from thence we went into the grand hall, where the dinner was set on the table. And after a great variety of fine dishes, and rich liquors, and the entertainment perfectly over, we were all sent home in coaches, provided for that particular purpose.

A second grand entertainment on the Czar's name-day.

The next day, being St. Peter's, was the Czar's name-day, when the governor gave a second entertainment, at which, not only the patriarch, but all the chiefs of the city were present; but as I happened at that juncture to be very greatly indisposed, I could not be there myself, neither could I attend them to their Metropolitan-church, in order to assist at the solemnity, to which I had received an invitation in form some few days before. On this occasion there were great rejoicings, and all the cannon upon the ramparts as well as those before the palace were discharged over and over. According to custom, the ladies were in another apartment, and the subaltern officers were handsomely treated the next day, and dismissed betimes.

July 9.

On the second of July, news was brought that his Czarian majesty was got within fifteen wersts of Nerva, with his victorious army, which swept off every thing that fell in their way.

July 12.

The day following I took a tour in a chaise towards the heath, by way of amusement, with the governor's son, and some officers, who had a Hawk with

them. When we were got about twenty wersts from the city, we saw, indeed, abundance of game, but could get no part of it, on account of the lands being at that time laid all under water. I happened, however, to bring down a duck that took her flight directly over my head. As we were disappointed in our diversion of shooting, we determined to amuse ourselves with fishing in a small adjacent river; where we caught plenty of pike and perch, which we took care to have elegantly dressed, and made a hearty meal of them. The same day, we saw a great number of Tartars encamped in some rich pasture-lands, which were full of such horses as belonged to the inhabitants of Astracan. Some of them were beautiful enough, and we had a great inclination to try their mettle in our Chaises; but they were too wanton and unruly, as they had been at grass there all the Summer-season, in fine meadows, which are frequently to be met with in these parts. There is scarce a carman throughout the whole city, but is master of a fine horse; there is not a bad, or lean one, to be met with, which is an incident which I never observed in any place before.

As the time of my departure from this city drew near, I not only desired, but very readily procured all the room that I had occasion for, in such of the barks as seemed most fitting for my purpose; and accordingly I made choice of some of the largest. Most of the Armenian merchants likewise were making all due preparations for their removal, as well as some Persians, who were returning from Moscow to Samachi, otherwise called Samossii. Among the rest, was the Cham's Falconer, with five or six hawks, which he was carrying with him into Persia; from whence he had brought an elephant, as a present to his Czarian majesty, which he had delivered to the governor of Astracan for his majesty's use, who sent it forthwith to Moscow under the direction and care of some Russians and a Georgian; but it happened to dye in its passage at Zaritza. This falconer came, in the name of the governor, to desire me to indulge him with a place in my bark; and I went

N n

on



1703 on board of her the very next morning, in order to oblige him; but I found the Armenians had crowded her to that degree, that there was no room left. Upon that, I went directly to the governor, in order to make my complaints, and to beg of him to give directions that some of the bales might be taken out forthwith, that we might have some little room to stir ourselves. To this he answered, that, as there were still several other vessels ready for passengers to go on board, if they thought fit, I had no other measures to take but to remove whatever I pleased at once, and make my self easy. I returned him many thanks, and embraced the favour granted me; and accordingly, accommodated my self to my entire satisfaction; and took rather more room than what I really wanted; being conscious to myself how much I suffered upon the Wolga before I arrived at Astracan.

At that time Mr. Wigne had intelligence brought him, that his Czarian majesty had been pleased to advance him to the dignity of a colonel, and on the eleventh, he gave the governor and the principal officers of the garrison an entertainment on that unexpected promotion. I was one amongst the number of his guests; and he treated us, indeed, in a very elegant and splendid manner; with the discharge of several cannon, as well as with the martial sound of drums and trumpets. Having taken my leave of him, I went with some Armenians to refresh our selves with the sweet country air to a little house that stood delightfully on the river. The

1703 grapes were then tolerably large; and in good condition; but the other fruits had been casually destroyed by a swarm of infectious insects.

When I was upon the point of my departure, and had got all my implements in order, not forgetting a convenient fence against the flies, which in these parts are exceedingly troublesome, the governor sent me two small casks of brandy; one of them was of the best he had; the other, indeed, of an inferior sort; one small cask of vinegar; four of his most excellent beer; one of wine; three fitches of bacon; a large quantity of dried fish, a bag of biscuits, and some other provisions. He, moreover, favoured me with a small bark to go before, and unlade the large one of a considerable part of her cargo, as we drew near the (g) Caspian-Sea, an article absolutely requisite, on account of the excessive droughts that frequently happen in those parts.

About four in the afternoon, I took my leave of the governor, and returned him thanks for the many favours I had received. When I had got back again to my own apartment, he sent after me three large bottles, well sealed, full of distilled liquors. At length I embarked in a small vessel, attended by five soldiers, who were ordered to carry my cargo on board the ship. The three Armenians, who were my friends, and fellow-travellers, had hired, in like manner, each of them a small vessel, with the self same view.

2

### *Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.*

(a) Astracan, see p. 62. n. i.

(b) Persia, see p. 64. n. c.

(c) Casan, see p. 62. n. b.

(d) Moskovy, or Russia, see p. 7. n. c.

(e) Moscow, see p. 23. n. c.

(f) Ispahan, see p. 109. n. w.

(g) Caspian Sea, see p. 66. n. g.

### CHAP.



C H A P. XVII.

*Certain Reasons produced for inserting, in this Place, the particular Route which Mr. Isbrants Ides took, in order to travel across (a) Moscovy in his Passage to (b) China. His Departure from (c) Moscow. The Spring, or Fountain-head of the river (d) Dwina. The Arrival of that Minister into the Country of the Syrenes. A particular Description of the Natives of that Province, &c. He embarks on the Kama, and crosses over from (e) Europe into (f) Asia.*

March 14.  
Reasons for  
inserting  
here the  
route of  
Mr. Is-  
brants Ides.

AS Moscovy is, at this present time, become very considerable in the eye of the world, and has for a long while since been a very grand topic for discourse; and as the prince, who now fills the throne, has made himself famous by his extraordinary conduct, and wise administration of all his public affairs, his victories over his enemies, and the unwearied pains he takes in the cultivation and improvement of the manners and morals of his once almost savage subjects, by introducing all the arts and sciences into his own dominions, and every other article that can any ways contribute towards their future felicity and advantage; as this Solomon of his age has done such wonders, all Europe in general are attentive to what particularly relates to this rising empire, and fond of knowing the important affairs that are transacted therein. It would be a difficult undertaking to produce a more circumstantial, more honest and impartial, or in short, a more interesting and instructive account of it, than that of Mr. Le Brun, which is comprised in this voyage; but as he travelled only through one part of it, upon mature deliberation, it has been deemed an acceptable service to the public, to add, in this particular place, the route that Mr. Isbrants Ides took from Moscovy, to the court of China, by the way of (g) Tartary (a way but little known, as the country is a kind of wild and barren waste) in the capacity of

envoy extraordinary from their Czarian majesties John and Peter Alexowitz, in 1692. And we insert it here, with all the pleasure imaginable, as that minister has embellished this account of his journey thither, not only with several very entertaining, but very judicious and instructive reflections.

He departed from Moscow in a sledge on the fourteenth day of March, but before he had made any considerable progress, it began to rain in such a violent manner, that he was in apparent danger of losing his life by reason of the inundations that he met with in his passage to (b) Wologda, where he tarried three days, in order to recover himself from the fatigue he had gone through in that dangerous passage, and to wait for the return of more favourable weather. On the second day, the frost came on again, and continued so excessively hard, that, within the compass of four and twenty hours only, all the roads were passable with ease; whereupon he set out in pursuit of his journey on the twenty second, for Suchina, at which place he arrived the next day; and from thence he proceeded, with all the expedition possible, to the city, called Ustiga the great, where the rivers Suchina and Irga meet, and form the noted river Dwina, a term, that signifies a double river.

The Suchina flows almost direct north in a very fertile soil; on the borders whereof

This depicts  
the route  
from  
Moscow.

The spring  
or fountain-head  
of the Dwina.



1692

whereof there are several very populous villages; and on the left no inconsiderable town, called Totma. Abundance of travellers fall down this river annually in their passage from Wologda to (i) Archangel, with their various merchandizes at such times as the waters are free and open; as the bottom, however, is very rocky, peculiar care is generally taken for securing their stem and stern-post, as well as their rudder; and that for the two reasons following; viz. in the first place, there are rocks in abundance all along the river; and then in the next, its current is so rapid, that the vessel would otherwise be in apparent danger of being lost.

The city of  
Ustiga, the  
great.

Ustiga the great is situate on the mouth of this river; where this minister was under an obligation to put up for four and twenty hours, not only to refresh himself, but to have some short converse with the Waivods, who were his particular friends, and who entertained him in a very courteous manner.

March 24-

On the twenty-fourth, he arrived at Solowitz Jogda, a large town, in which there are resident, not only a great number of substantial merchants, but an abundance of curious mechanicks, or artificers in silver, copper, and ivory. Here likewise are divers salt-pits, that are very valuable, and produce a prodigious quantity of that mineral, which is transported from this place to Wologda, and the parts adjacent.

April 1-

On the first day of April, he set out from Solowitzjogda, and arrived in the evening of the same day at the country of the Syrenes, otherwise called Wollost-Uggy. The natives of this place speak a language of their own; which bears no affinity to that spoken by the Russians; however, it seems, there is some resemblance between theirs, and that of the Livonians, as he was informed by some of his retinue who were natives of that country. They observe the Grecian ceremonies in regard to their religion, and are subject to the Czar, to whom they pay the customary tributes, but have neither governor nor waivode. They elect their own judges, and at any time, in case a dispute should happen to arise

which proved to knotty for those judges to decide, they go directly to Moscow, and make their applications to the Prikaes of Pofolske, or proper office for the administration of foreign affairs. They vary very little from the Russians, either in point of stature or apparel; and are looked upon as natives originally of the frontiers of Livonia, or Courland, tho' they themselves can give no other satisfactory account of their extraction, than that they speak a widely different language from the Russians; but whether they may have been heretofore forced to fly from his Czarian majesty's dominions, thro' the calamities of any destructive war, or thro' any other accident, they neither remember, nor can any ways account for. Their principal subsistence is agriculture; notwithstanding there is one part of them, who reside on the banks of Zifol, where they have considerable dealings in grey furs. As to the length of this country, it is above 70 German leagues, and extends itself as far as Kaigorod. These people have no such place as deserves the denomination of a town; but reside in little villages and hamlets, dispersed up and down amongst the woods. This country is bounded on a spacious forest, where this minister was once more encumbered by a violent thaw, and as heavy a rain as the former, by which unhappy accident, in one night's time, the whole forest was laid under water; insomuch that for four days successively he durst not venture either backwards or forwards, the ice being scarce able to bear even on the rivers. At last, however, tho' not without some danger and difficulty, he proceeded on his journey, by throwing bridges over the rivers, and some other assistance which he casually procured.

On the sixteenth of April, being thoroughly wet, and prodigiously harrassed and fatigued, he arrived safe at Kaigorod, which is no inconsiderable fortress on the Kama.

He was greatly inclined to pursue his journey as far as Solikamiskoi, the metropolitan city of the great (h) Permia, in order to go to (i) Siberia by land, over the mountains of Wergotur; the thaw, how-

1692

April 26-

Kaigorod.



1692

however, still continuing, that thought was entirely laid aside as altogether impracticable; and as the winter season was now near over, he tarried in this city for several weeks successively, in expectation that the river Kama would soon become navigable. In the mean time, he supplied himself here with every thing that he found either convenient or necessary for the prosecution of his intended journey; as also, with fire-arms and other weapons of defence against the free-booters, who swarm in those parts, and go sometimes in such numerous gangs, that they will plunder whole towns, as they pass through them, as Kaigarod itself had experienced not long before, to the great mortification of its inhabitants.

Visited by  
Kurians.

Our author was informed by the governor of this city, that on a certain day, about noon, they discovered a considerable number of barks, crowded with men under arms, falling down the river, with colours flying, drums beating, and other instruments of music, making the best of their way directly to the city. No sooner were they arrived, but they leaped on shore; that the inhabitants of the city, thoughtless of any hostile outrages in the middle of the day, and in a time of peace likewise, had no idea of their evil intentions, and permitted them to approach without the least opposition; taking it for granted, that they were some distant neighbours and friends, who were come to pay them a visit purely for their amusement; that these friends, however, as they conceived them to be, to their no small surprize, set the south end of their city on fire; and at the other end, put every soul to the sword, that presumed to obstruct them; that they marched up to the Waiwode's, where they committed various outrages and acts of hostility; and used their domestics in the most savage and inhuman manner; that, in short, they carried off an immense booty, without the least controul; that soon after this plunder was made, they were credibly informed, that these piratical free-booters were all vassals to some certain lords; from whose jurisdiction they had unanimously revolted, in order to make themselves a

formidable band of pirates; and that some of them, however, had been detected and secured, and instantly executed, as rebels, and examples of terror to all such evil doers. This made it absolutely necessary, as we observed before, for our prudent minister to be on his guard, and furnish himself and his retinue with sufficient arms, in case of any such vigorous and unexpected attack.

From hence he departed on the twenty third of April; at which time the Kama was free from all ice, and perfectly navigable, and providentially arrived safe on the twenty-seventh at Solikamskoi.

From this last city, he purposed to pursue his journey over the mountains of Wergotur before-mentioned; but as such an attempt in the Summer is altogether impracticable, by reason of the country's abounding with fens and marshes, all passengers and merchants are obliged to reside in this city during the season, till winter, and the hard frosts come on again, to enable them to cross those mountains. There is a possibility it is true, of going round about to the eastward by water; but then that passage is absolutely prohibited; the governor, however, of the city being before-hand apprized of the important affairs that minister had to transact, and the expedition they required; furnished him directly with the embarkations that were requisite, for his commodious passage down the Sufawaya.

Solikamskoi is a very fine, large city, and inhabited by great numbers of very substantial merchants; where there are very fine salt-works, and fifty boilers, or more, of twenty five, or thirty five ells in breadth. Great quantities of salt are manufactur'd here, which are annually transported to parts remote on all sides, in large vessels built for that particular purpose; each of which are freighted with no less than 120,000 weight of salt, or eight hundred or a thousand lasts, exclusive of seven or eight hundred hands, for whose use they have kitchens, furnaces, and other conveniences requisite for their transportation. These vessels which are about five and thirty ells in length, and sometimes forty, have no more than one mast, and one

O o

fall,

1692

April 15.

Arrived safe  
at Solikamskoi.  
26th.

A description  
of Solikamskoi,  
and its salt-  
works.



1692 fail, which is thirty fathom in length, and made use of when they only go up the river, and the wind stands fair; whereas, they always ply their oars, and have no sail up, when they go downwards, in order to keep their vessels steady in their steerage, which cannot possibly be done by the helm only. They are all flat-bottomed barks, and have neither bolts nor nails in them; and this is the method observed, when they fall down the Kama, in order to get into the (l) Wolga. They have tow-lines, in order to help them along, when they go against the stream, and make use of their sails, in case the wind fits fair. Thus they convey their salt to

(m) Casan and (n) Nisna, and other places situate on the banks of that river.

On the fourteenth of May, that minister embarked at Solikamskoi, and having traversed the rivulet called Ufolkat, which lies about half a league from this city, he got into the Kama once again, and crossed that river, whereby he left Europe, and arrived in Asia. On Whit-sunday he went on shore, and up a very pleasant hill, where he refreshed himself before he took his farewell of Europe, and then returned to his vessel, in order to proceed as expeditiously as possible on his intended journey.

1692

The east side  
of the Kama  
crosses over  
from Europe  
to Asia.

*Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.*

(a) Moscow, or Russia, see p. 7. n. c.

(b) Wologda, see p. 28. n. d.

(c) China, see p. 66. n. i.

(r) Archangel, see p. 8. n. d.

(e) Moscow, see p. 23. n. c.

(k) Permian, a province in the north east part of European Moscow, separated from Asia, by the river Oby.

(d) Dwina, see p. 23. n. b.

(l) Wolga, or Volga, see p. 28. n. f.

(e) Europe, see p. 127. n. dd.

(m) Casan, see p. 62. n. b.

(f) Asia, see p. 127. n. x.

(n) Nisna, see p. 61. n. f.

(g) Tartary, see p. 18. n. i.

XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

C H A P. XVIII.

*His Arrival in (a) Asia; a Description of the Country of the Tartars of (b) Siberia. Their Religion, and Course of Life.*

May 14.  
That minist.  
Arrived in Asia.

THE minister before mentioned, being arrived in Asia, on the Sufawaia, observed, that the Kama was far more pleasant, as it was a much finer river, and abounded with all sorts of fish; besides it had several much larger, and more populous villages, situated on its banks; it had, moreover, fine salt-works, fine arable lands, fine woods, fine mea-

dow-lands, embellished with a thousand parti-coloured flowers, and every thing else that is calculated to strike the eye in the most agreeable manner, all the way from Solikamskoi hither. It must be allowed, indeed, that the country, watered by the Sufawaia, which empties its waters into the Kama, is very fine and fertile; but then 'tis very fatiguing in going against



1692

May 25.  
A descrip-  
tion of the  
country of  
the Tartars  
of Siberia.

gainst the stream: a vessel can make no riddance, especially when the waters are in the least swelled, and the crew is obliged to make use of their tow-lines.

On the twenty-fifth of May he arrived in the country of the first Tartars of Siberia; commonly known and distinguished by the name of the Wogulki. This country is not only very beautiful, but is very populous all along the banks of the river. At the ingress and egress of the hills, they have not only all sorts of flowers in plenty, and of variegated colours, but they have herbs of the most fragrant smell; they have likewise a prodigious number of deer, and game of all sorts. As the Tartars of Wogul, upon this river are all Pagans, our minister had the curiosity to go on shore, and have a little converse with the natives, in regard to the religion they professed, and the manner in which they led their lives.

As to their persons, they are able bodied men, with remarkable large heads; and, as to their religion, it principally consists in an annual oblation. In order to accomplish this one religious ceremony, they assemble in the adjacent woods, and there kill some one beast, that they approve of most, of each species; though their favourite victims are horses, and a peculiar sort of goats. When they have slain them, they hang them up on some substantial branch of a tree, and then standing before them, pay them the tribute of their adoration. When this act of devotion is over, which is the whole sum and substance of their religion, they dress the flesh of these their Gods, and make a solemn entertainment of them. After this grand festival is over, they return to their respective habitations, and never concern themselves with any farther acts of devotion, till that year is expired; and they imagine, that a repetition would prove altogether needless and superfluous. As they can assign no manner of reason for that one religious ceremony; they content themselves with the reflection, that their fathers observed that custom before them.

Their reli-  
gion, and  
manner of  
life.

Their an-  
nual obla-  
tion.

He asked them, if they had no idea of a supreme Being, who inhabited the heavens above, and created all things here below; and who governed the whole universe by his over-ruling providence, and gave the inhabitants thereof sun-shine and rain in their due seasons? To this they innocently enough replied, that it was highly probable, that there was such a person as a God, since the sun and moon, those bright luminaries of the heavens, which they themselves worshipped, as well as those lesser lights, the stars, which are numberless in the firmament; and it was their firm belief, that there was some power but what they could not tell, that did superintend and direct their motions. As to the notion of a Devil, they had no conception of any such Being; since he had never made himself known amongst them. They don't absolutely, indeed, deny a resurrection; but they ingeniously acknowledge, that they know nothing of what shall be their lot after their decease, or what shall become of their lifeless carcases. When any of the natives die, their bodies are deposited in the ground, and covered with the best ornaments they were possessed of at their decease. Tho' they erect no monuments, indeed, for the commemoration of their friends, they deposit a sum of money in their coffins, in proportion to their circumstances when living; in order that they might be furnished with common necessities, in case there should be a day of resurrection. They make hideous lamentations over the deceased, when in their coffins; neither will they permit any man to marry a second wife, till his first has been interred a whole year at least. When by accident a favourite dog dies, that has contributed toward their diversion, or has otherwise been truly serviceable, in commemoration of his past good deeds, they erect a small wooden hut for his reception, about six feet high, upon four posts, in which they deposit his remains, and there let them lie, as long as their little building subsists. A man here is allowed as many wives as he can comfortably maintain; and when their women draw near the time

1693

Acknow-  
ledge a God  
and an over-  
ruling  
providence,  
but deny  
the exist-  
ence of a  
Devil.  
Are doubt-  
ful in re-  
gard to a  
resurrection.

Their bur-  
ials.

Their in-  
dulgence  
towards  
their de-  
ceased dogs.

Allow of  
polygamy.

of



1692

Their by-  
size is.Their man-  
nages.Have no  
priests.

of their travel, they retire to some adjacent wood, where a decent hut is prepared for their reception; nor are their husbands permitted to embrace them again till two months after their delivery.

When they are disposed to marry, they purchase their wives of their parents; and have very little if any ceremony, at their weddings. They invite, indeed, some of their nearest relations to a kind of entertainment, and when that is over, the man goes to bed to his spouse without any more bustle or stir.

They have no priests; and cannot marry any nearer relation than one so far distant as the fourth degree of consanguinity. This minister, by way of conversation, exhorted them, in a very zealous and devout manner to acknowledge Christ, as the saviour and redeemer of all mankind; and assured them, that in case they would become profelytes, and put their whole trust and confidence in him, that he would pardon all their sins, and they would thereby not only be happy in this world, but forever happy in that which was to come. To this exhortation they paid but very little regard, and by way of cool answer, told him, they saw hundreds of poor Russians every day, though they were christians as they called themselves, who, with all their industry, were scarce able to earn their bread. That as to a future state, they did not much concern themselves about it; and in a word that they should content themselves with living and dying as their fathers did before them, let the articles of their belief be grounded well or ill.

Their dress.

As to their dress the reader may form an adequate idea of it by the Plate annexed.

Their habit.

They dwell in square wooden huts, in the same manner as the peasants do in (d) Russia; but with this difference, they make use of hearths instead of stoves, and burn wood. The openings of their roofs where the smoke goes out, are covered with a large cake of ice, as soon as the wood is reduced to ashes, and thereby retain all the heat in their room, without

stopping out the light, which darts through the transparent ice. They make no use of chairs; but of benches, which are near three ells in breadth, and about one from the ground, on which they sit cross-legg'd after the manner of the Persians; and the self same benches are made use of as their beds at night. Their principal subsistence is on the food which they procure by hunting their elks; they being their chief and most substantial game, of which there are abundance in this country. Their manner of taking them is by the artful exercise of their bows and arrows; most of them being strong fellows and exceeding good marks-men. When their game is brought home, they flea them, and dry their flesh first, and afterwards cut it into proper slices, and then hang them up in the air all round about their huts. After it is thoroughly wet, and perfectly putrified, it is deemed a most delicious repast. For the rest, they never taste either of their poultry or their swine-flesh. They have another manner of destroying their game without any toil or fatigue; and that is, they plant large cross-bows in the woods, to which they fasten a bridle and a proper bait, leaving the mouth of it open; and when an elk or any other deer casually comes to seize upon it, the bow instantly unbends, and the creature at once is shot thorough the heart, and drops down dead on the spot. They, moreover, dig pits in the ground, and cover them over with brambles, or any other materials that are light, into which those creatures fall as they run over them; and when they are once ensnared, there is no possibility of recovering their freedom.

To conclude; these Tartars reside in villages all along the river Sufawaia, as far as the castle of Utki; and under the shelter and protection of his Czarian majesty, to whom they pay a customary tribute, lead a life of indolence and ease. Their habitations, in a word, extend no less than 300 German leagues, to the northward of Siberia, and even to the northward of the country of the (c) Samoëds.

1692

Subsist by  
hunting,  
and their  
practice of  
drying cross-  
legs.Live under  
the pro-  
tection of  
his Czarian  
majesty.

Occa-



1692

1692

*Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.*

(a) Asia, see p. 127. n. 8.

(d) Russia, see p. 7. n. c.

(b) Siberia, see p. 17. n. b.

(e) Samoeds, or natives of Samoida, see p. 17. n. d.

(c) Solikamskoi, see the author's description of it in the preceding chapter.

XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

## C H A P. XIX.

*Mr Ilbrant's Arrival at the Fort of Utkā, and at Neujanskoi; his farther Progress to Tumēn, and (a) Tobol, otherwise called Tobolski. A Description of that City, with a succinct Account of the manner in which it became subject to his Czarian Majesty; and indeed the whole Country of (b) Siberia.*

His arrival  
at the fort  
of Utkā.

June 1.

MR. Ilbrants, having quitted the country of those savages the (c) Samoeds last mentioned on the first of June, in the year 1692. arrived at the fort of Utkā, which is situate on the frontiers of those Tartars, who are natives of Baskir, and Uffimi. During his stay at the fort, a Tartar-gentleman of Uffimi, which lies within his Czarian majesty's dominions, came thither, in search after his spouse, who had absconded from him, though married but a very short time, without the least provocation on his side; but hearing no tidings of her there; he consoled himself with the following extraordinary reflection; that she had absented herself from no less than six husbands before him; and was fond, as he too plainly perceived, of having more strings to her bow than one.

June 22.

On the tenth, he departed from this place by land; and having passed by the castle of Ajada, he crossed the river Neujā, and travelled all along by the shore-side of another river, called Arfamas; and from thence, he came to the fort of Neujanskoi, which is situate on the river Neujā afore-said. There is not a finer country in the world to be seen, than that which lies be-

At Neujā.  
June.

tween Utkā and this place; for it abounds with delightful meadows, woods, and lakes; and with fertile lands well-cultivated, and well-peopled by the Russians. On the twenty first, this minister set out from Neujanskoi by water, and found all the banks of the river inhabited by Russian Christians. As he passed along, his eye was agreeably entertained with a variety of fine villages and castles, which extended as far as the river Tura, which, flowing from the west, empties its waters into the Tobol.

June 31.

On the 25th, he arrived at Tumēn, which is a very populous place; by situation strong, and principally inhabited by Russians. Three fourths of the town at least are Christians; but the remainder are Mahomedan Tartars. These carry on a very considerable trade with the Calmuc Tartars, Bugarians, &c. And those who reside in the country support themselves and families principally by agriculture and fishing: as to furs, they have few or none to dispose of, except it be the skins either of bears, or red foxes. There is a wood, however, situate at some few leagues distance from thence, known by the name of Heetkoj Wollock, where there is plenty

June 25.  
At Tumēn.

Pp

of



1692

Tartars  
very few.

of the best grey furs that can be procured anywhere, and such as even in the winter never change their colour: they have likewise the additional good quality of being exceedingly strong. These are not to be procured in any other part but that of (d) Moscow; for whoever presumes to transport them clandestinely to any foreign part whatever, is liable to the severest penalties, and the Czar's resentments; for they are all peculiarly appropriated to the service of the Russian court. These animals will not permit any of their fellow-creatures, if of another species, to reside amongst them; and, in short, destroy them all wherever they find them.

The town  
of Tobolsk  
situated by  
the Tobol  
river.

No sooner was this minister arrived at Tumén, but he found, not only the inhabitants, but those of the adjacent parts in the utmost hurry and confusion; for the Cossacs and Calmuc Tartars had just at that juncture invaded Siberia, where they had plundered several villages, and killed the inhabitants, as they made their progress, and menaced hard this town, which was within the distance of 15 German leagues.

The govern-  
ment makes  
proper pro-  
visions for  
the city,  
and the  
garrison of  
the Tobolsk.

The governor, however, sent for some auxiliary troops from Tobol, and other adjacent places, by whose timely assistance, he pursued those invaders, and cut off a considerable number of such as could not preserve themselves by flight.

The envoy  
embarked  
on the To-  
bol.

June 26.

The envoy, seeing the town in such a consternation, thought it most advisable to pursue his journey without delay; and accordingly embarked on the 26th on the river Tobol, having provided for that purpose a new set of rowers, and a guard of soldiers. Notwithstanding the banks of this river are very low, and consequently too liable to be laid under water in the spring; yet they are inhabited partly by Mahomedan Tartars, and partly by Russians. There is great plenty of exceedingly fine fish to be met with in this river.

July 1.  
Arrived  
Tobol or  
Tobolsk.

On the first of July, the envoy arrived safe at Tobol or Tobolski, which is a very strong place, where there is a spacious stone-monastery, embellished with such a variety of high towers, that it might easily be mistaken for a strong fort. This city

is situate on a hill at the conflux of the (e) Irtysh and the Tobol. Not only the foot of this hill, but the shore of the Irtysh is inhabited by Tartars, and Mahomedan Bucharians, who carry on a very considerable trade with the Calmucs upon the river, and with others, beyond it, even with some of the natives of (f) China. It is the shortest way to China, by the lake Jamschow, in case you are travelling thither at a time, when it is safe for you to go through the country of the Calmucs.

Tobol, or Tobolski, is the capital city of Siberia, and the jurisdiction thereof extends on the southern part beyond Baraba; from Wergotur to the river (g) Oby, eastward of the Sameeds; to the northern part, as far as the country of the (h) Ostiachs, and as far as Ussa, and the river of Sufawaia to the westward. The country all round about is very populous, and not only inhabited by Russian farmers, but by divers other people, both Tartars, and Heathens, who are all however, tributary to, and under the jurisdiction of his Czarian majesty.

All sorts of grain is so plenty there, that any one may purchase a hundred weight of barley-flower, for about sixteen-pence, which they call ceps. An ox is not worth above six or seven florins; and one may buy a good hog for thirty or five and thirty-pence; and in the Irtysh there is such a profusion of fine fish of all sorts; that a Sturgeon, of 40 or 50 pound weight is frequently sold for six-pence, and sometimes for less: and these sturgeons are so rich and fat likewise, that sometimes the surface of the water wherein they are boiled, shall be an inch or two thick in grease. Moreover, in this country, there are vast numbers of elks, stags, deer, &c. to be met with; hares, pheasants, partridges, swans, wild-geese, ducks, storks, and, in short, all sorts of game, and any of them much cheaper than butchers meat. Besides this plenty of all kinds of provisions, this city is supplied with a strong garrison of well regulated troops; and upon any emergency, in case the Czar at any time requires it, can send 9 or 10,000 men into the field of battle. Here are, more-  
over,

1692

A descrip-  
tion of To-  
bolsk.



1692

Depredations of the Calmucs on the Russian frontiers.

The great whorly Siberia became tributary to the Czar.

over, several thousands of Tartars, who, when his majesty demands it, are obliged to attend him, all on horse-back.

The hords, or gangs, of the Calmucs and Cossacs, who have their dependance on the Testicham, or principal of the Bugarian-Tartars, commit frequent outrages and depredations on the frontiers of his Czarian majesty, as well as those of Ufimir and Baskir; the garrison of Tobol, however, are always on the watch, and give them no quarter, if they catch them. There is a metropolitan in this city, who comes from Moscow, by order of the Czar, and has the whole clergy of Siberia and Dauria entirely under his jurisdiction.

This city, and all Siberia, has been tributary to the Czar for at least these hundred years last past; and both were reduced to the obedience of that prince in manner following. A certain pyrate, one Jeremak Timofeiewitz by name, having made divers flagrant inroads and devastations on certain lands belonging to the Czar Ivan Wasilewitz, to the utter ruin and destruction of his subjects; and being apprehensive that the troops of that prince were advancing towards him to avenge his insults; he hurried back again up the Kama with his crew, and then entered the river Sufawaia, which empties its water into the Kama, and withdrew, with all the precipitation imaginable, to the jurisdiction of the lord of Strogino, a lord immensely rich, and possessed of all the lands on the banks of that river, for the compass of twenty German leagues round about. This pyrate made his applications to the grandfather of this great lord for shelter and protection; and promised, in case he would grant his request, to put all Siberia under subjection to the Czar, in compensation for the many insults and depredations on his subjects. Accordingly he succeeded, and that rich lord, not only furnished him with all the vessels, arms, and artificers, that he required for his intended expedition; but promised, moreover, to procure his pardon. Flushed with this good success, he embarked with his comrades, and went directly up the river Serebrenskoi, which flows from the north-east of the mountains of Wergotur, and emp-

ties its waters into the Sufawaia. Here he caused his crew to land, and march to the river Tagin, which flowed down to the Tura, where he took possession of the fort of Tuméen, which is situate on that river, where he slew every one that fell in his way. After that, he returned up the Tobol, as far as the very city which bears that name; where he met with a Tartar-prince, of twelve years of age only, whose name was Altanas Kutzjumowitz, the grandson of whom is at this present juncture in Moscow, and honoured with the title of Czarowitz of Siberia. Having thus secured this post, he fortified it directly, and sent the young prince captive to Moscow.

After this grand pyrate had proved thus successful, he went down the Irty, and was attacked in the night, not far distant from Tobol, by a party of Tartars. In this encounter, he lost the greatest part of his comrades; and attempting to jump, in a hurry and confusion, out of one vessel into another, he dropt down into the river, and was soon drowned; his body, however, being drove along by the rapidity of the stream, was never heard of more. In the interim, the lord of Strogino had sent to court, and, according to his promise, procured a pardon for Jeremak; he sent troops likewise to the several places which that pyrate had subdued, and fortified them out of hand. And this was the manner in which Siberia fell into the possession of the Moscovites, who are masters of that fine country at this very day.

The Tartars, who are the inhabitants of Tobol, and the adjacent parts, are all Mohammedans in general. The envoy, being desirous of seeing their religious rites and ceremonies, went with the Waywod into one of their moschs; for without his being there he could never have procured admission. These moschs of theirs have large windows all round about, which are left always open; and the pavements of them are covered with no other decoration than a carpet. Upon their entrance, they leave their shoes at the door, and sit regularly enough, but all cross-legged. The musti appears in a robe of white cotton, and wears a white turban on his head. Having

whit-

1692

Direct service of the Tartars.



1692

This is the  
invocation.

whispered to one of his attendants, he immediately made his proclamation, on which they all instantly fell down on their knees. The mufti then repeated a few words in a very low and unintelligible voice; and after that, cried out, Alla, Alla, Mohammed; the rest did the same after him, bowing their heads down thrice successively to the ground. This ceremony over, the mufti fixed his eyes upon his hands, as if he proposed to read something; and then cried out a second time, Alla, Alla, Mohammed. In the next place, he turned back his face over his right shoulder, and then over his left, but uttered not a single word:

and when all the people present had observed the same ceremony, their divine service was immediately over.

The mufti was an Arabian by birth, and held by the people in great veneration; and as a testimony thereof, every one who could either read, or understand the Arabian language, was highly valued on his account. As his house was very near the mosque, he invited the envoy in, and entertained him with a dish of tea. There are great numbers of Calmuc slaves in these parts; and even the descendants of several princes, who were prisoners in former times.

1692

*Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.*

(a) Tobolski, or Tobol, east long. 63 lat. 57. 30. the capital of Siberia, or Asiatic Russia, situate at the confluence of the rivers Tobol and Irtysh, whose united stream divides Europe from Asia, lies 800 miles east of Moscow, and 1000 miles east of Petersburg. This city stands upon a hill, and is surrounded by a wall, and other modern works. To this place, or near it, the Russians usually banish their state-prisoners. Hither the princes Menzikoff, Dolgorucki, and the duke of Courland, were sent, as well as the Swedish Prisoners, taken at the battle of Pultowa.

(b) Siberia, or Asiatic Russia, see p. 17. n. b.

(c) Samoeds, or natives of Samoida, see p. 17. n. a.

(d) Moscow, or Russia, see p. 7. n. c.

(e) Irtysh a great river, which runs from

south to north through Russia, falls into the river Oby, and makes part of the boundary between Asia and Europe.

(f) China, see p. 66. n. 1.

(g) Oby, the river, see p. 18. n. 2.

(h) Ostiachs, or Oustsachs, this country is a part of Asiatic Russia. These people extend along the river Irtysh to its confluence with the river Oby; from thence they extend themselves northward along the banks of the Oby and Jenisa, till they fall into the gulph of Mangas, or the frozen ocean; inhabiting the banks of several rivers, which fall into the Oby and Jenisa abovementioned. They have no towns; but live in huts, that are easily moved, or new-built, whenever they go to hunt, or fish, which seems to be the employment of these people at the proper seasons; since they have no corn in their country, nor follow any kind of husbandry.



## C H A P. XX.

*Mr. Ilbrants departs from (a) Tobol, or Tobolski. A Description of the (b) Irtysh. Sledges drawn by Dogs, and how. That Minister's departure from Samorokoi-jam, and his Arrival at Surgut.*

The departure from Tobolski, July 22.

THE envoy departed from Tobolski on the 22d of July, having furnished himself with proper vessels, and all other things requisite for his purpose; and more particularly with a strong guard for the security of himself and his attendants. Thus provided, he fell down the Irtysh, on the shores whereof are divers villages, inhabited both by Tartars and Ostiaks and amongst the rest, those of Demianskoi, Jamin, &c. where the small river of Penouka empties its waters into the Irtysh. On the 28th, the envoy arrived at Samorokoi-jam, where he changed his rowers, and put up masts in his larger vessels, in order to his sailing up the river Oby, whenever he had a favourable wind; the Irtysh falling into this river by several openings at but a small distance from Samorokoi-jam.

A Description of the river Irtysh.

The water of the river Irtysh is clear and light, and falls from the mountains in the country of the Calmucs. This river flows from the south to the north-east, and runs through the two lakes called Kebac and Suzan. It is bordered on the south-east by some lofty mountains, which abound with cedars; and the land on the other side to the north-west is low, and full of pasture-grounds, or meadows, wherein several black bears, wolves, and foxes, both red and grey, are frequently to be met with; and on the banks of the river Kafinka, which empties its waters into the (c) Oby, not far distant from Samorokoi-jam are the finest grey furs throughout all (d) Siberia, those in the woods of Hetkoi-Wollock before-mentioned only excepted.

The inhabitants informed the envoy, that, one day in the autumn before his arrival, there came a bear into a stable which fronted a meadow, from whence he took a cow, holding her fast in his fore-paws, whilst he walked on those behind; that the people of the house and some of the farmer, neighbours hearing the unusual noise which the cow made, ran out to her assistance; and fell foul upon Bruin with all their might. All their blows availed but little; the bear obstinately kept his hold; neither did the fray cease, till they shot him and killed the cow.

Adventures of a bear.

Most of the inhabitants of these parts are Russians in his Czarian majesty's pay, and who are indispensibly obliged to furnish all such Waivods as are sent thither, and all such as travel into Siberia on that prince's account, with proper carriages and guides, as well to go by water in the summer-season, as on the ice in winter, as far as the city Surgut, which is situate on the Oby, at very reasonable rates.

Inhabitants of the bank of the Irtysh.

It is very remarkable, that the inhabitants keep a great number of dogs, to draw their sledges in the winter; for they cannot make use of horses for those occasions on account of the depth of the snow, which, upon the Oby is sometimes at least a fathom deep.

Two of those dogs are put to a very light sledge; and notwithstanding two or three hundred weight may be commodiously laid thereon; yet neither the dogs, nor the sledge make the least impression on the snow. There are some of these inhabitants so idle, as to imagine, that these dogs have some fore-knowledge of

Sledges drawn by dogs.

Q q 1 the



1692

~~~~~

the time when they are to be employed on these expeditions, and in the night before have their assemblies, and make a hideous howling on those occasions; from whence their masters conclude, that they have strangers coming to visit them. This, however, is by no means probable, and downright superstition. The guides, when they travel, carry a gun upon their shoulder, and put on certain long shoes, which are fit to run with upon the snow. Sometimes the inhabitants will take their dogs out with them, in order to hunt for game in the woods; where they frequently meet with fine black foxes, whose skins they make use of themselves, but give their flesh to the dogs; so that a double advantage arises from their diversion. These dogs are but of a moderate size; but have sharp noses, and pointed ears, which prick up, and curling tails like those of wolves and foxes; and as there is such a manifest resemblance between them, they may very easily be mistaken for such when running in the woods. It is certain, that they frequently mingle together, and make their appearance in the neighbourhood of villages, when there are any preparations making for the diversions of hunting.

A description
of these
dogs.

The envoy
departs
from Sam-
raoikoi-jam,
July 29.

On the 29th of July, the envoy set out from Samraoikoi-jam, and having furnished himself with two vessels, went down the principal branches of the Irtyz, towards the Oby, where he arrived the very next day. On the eastern side of this river there are several high mountains, and a great number of pasture-grounds, which extend beyond the reach of the eye, on the western side; and the river in this place is half a league at least in breadth.

August 2.

On the 6th of August, this minister arrived safely at Surgut, which lies on the eastern side of this river. In these parts, as you go up the country to the eastward, and up the Oby from Surgut, as far as the city of Narum, there are very fine fables, both black and brown; as also the finest ermins of all Syberia, and even of all Russia; and black-foxes which are beautiful to the last degree; the finest of which are reserved for the use of his Czarian majesty, and are sometimes valued at no less than two or three hundred rubles a piece; some of

these black ones exceed the finest fables that are to be met with throughout all Dauria. They are taken by dogs; and the following story was related to our author by one of the inhabitants of the place.

A black-fox, of the most beautiful sort, appearing in the spring of the preceding year, in open day-light, near Surgut, was pursued by a country-man, who had dogs of the same colour with his game. The fox, finding that there was no possibility of making his escape, all on a sudden turned directly towards the dogs, with an air of intimacy and complaisance, and laid himself flat on his back, and began to lick their chops; after which, he ran about and played with them, during all which time the dogs, as complaisant seemingly as himself, never offered to hurt or secure him: at length, slyly watching for a favourable opportunity, he flunk at once into the woods. As the country-man had no fire-arms to shoot him directly, he soon lost sight of him, and all hopes of being ever possessed of the rich booty of which he thought himself at first almost secure.

Two days afterwards, this self-same fox returned to the same place, when the country-man, contrary to his expectations, had a second sight of his wished-for booty, and pursued him, not only with the same black dogs, but with a white one likewise, which (as he had observed) was somewhat more sagacious than the others. The black dogs having allured him once more into their company, the white one, who kept a steady eye upon him, and knew him better than the rest, made towards him as imperceptibly and safely as he could, thinking to jump upon him unawares; but the fox, by a sudden spring, made his escape a second time with safety into the woods.

Upon this second disappointment, the country-man determined to blacken his white dog, that the fox might not be able to distinguish him from the rest; and going back to the woods again with his dog in masquerade, he soon found his game a third time. At length, the fox thus deceived, and looking upon him as one of his footy companions, attempted to play with him as he had done with the others successfully before; but by that means, he

1692

~~~~~

Adventures  
and success  
of a fox.

fell



1692 fell into the snare which was too artfully prepared for him; for the dog instantly seized on him, to the high glee of his master, who sold his skin for one hundred rubles.

A description  
of the  
otter.

There are here likewise a great number of foxes that are particoloured, half black, half grey, but those that are perfectly black are but seldom to be met with: There are still greater numbers of those that are red. This country, moreover, abounds with otters and beavers: as the former live wholly upon prey, they are very dangerous creatures; they will frequently climb up trees, and there stand upon the watch, till some elk, stag, or deer, or a hare happens to pass by; at which time, they will spring at once upon their prey, which they for the generality secure, and seldom leave till they have absolutely devoured them. A wayvod, who was possessed of one of these amphibious creatures alive, threw him into the river, and sent two dogs directly after him; but finding himself too closely pursued, he flew at the head of the first dog, and held him under water till he had perfectly drowned him; and after that conquest, offered to attack the second, which in all probability, had not his master came timely to his assistance, had met with the same fate.

Of beavers,  
inhabiting  
the  
river.

Strange stories, and such as are almost incredible, are told of the beavers, which have their caverns and boroughs all along the bank of this river, in such places, however, as are less frequented, but where there is most fish, which is their principal subsistence. The inhabitants assert, that they assemble together by couples in the spring, and form a kind of clan or society; that after this, they make several of their own society prisoners, and drag them to their lurking-holes, or secret recesses, and there oblige them to act as their slaves or vassals; that they will bring down substantial trees to the ground, by snapping their foundations with their teeth; that afterwards, they will carry them off the

premises to their respective cells, or habitations, where they will lop off branches of a certain length, which they make use of to secure those provisions which they lay up in the summer, when their females bring forth their young. They meet a second time after this, if we are rightly informed; and when they have felled a tree, after their own manner, sometimes of an ell in circumference, they will reduce it to the length of two fathom, and then float it along to their secret places of abode, before which they raise it up to the depth of an ell, without touching the bottom, and plant it in such an exact equilibrium, that it shall stand the shock of the most violent blast of wind, or the most impetuous torrent, without the least discomposure. Notwithstanding this assertion may seem incredible and supernatural, yet this envoy assures us, that the fact was confirmed to him by persons of undoubted veracity all over Syberia, and in other places; he has endeavoured, 'tis true, to suppress the account, because, in his opinion, such artifices and proceedings seemed more the effects of human reason, than the instinct of any brute creature whatsoever.

He adds, indeed, that there are abundance of people in that country, who ascribe the erection of such trees, in such a mathematical balance, to the magic of the (*r*) Oshachs, and other magi, who reside in those parts; but be that as it may, it is certain, that the country people know perfectly well how to distinguish the master from the slaves that are to be met with amongst these creatures; for the latter are much thinner, and their coats are worn perfectly thread-bare, through the extraordinary toil and fatigue that they are obliged to undergo.

The Russians and Oshachs, who frequently hunt them, never destroy a whole brood; but always take care to leave behind them a male and female for the procreation of their species.

Of-



*Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.*

(a) Tobol, or Tubolsk, see p. 148. n. d.

(d) Siberia, or Asiatic Russia, see p. 17. n. d.

(b) Irtyz, the river, see p. 148. n. e.

(e) Ostiachs, or Ostiachi, see p. 148. n. e.

(c) Oby, the river, see p. 18. n. e.

## C H A P. XXI.

*Mr. Isbrant's Arrival at Narum. A Description of the (a) Ostiachs; &c. tho' the River (b) Oby abounds with fish, yet its shores lie all unmanured.*

August 13.

August 14.

Narum.

A description  
of the  
Ostiachs, and  
a general  
account of  
their religion, &c.

MR. Isbrant, having been for some considerable time labouring up the river Oby, one while by the assistance of their sail, and another, by the slower measures of the tow-line; crossed the mouth of the Wagga, (whose waters fall down from the mountains of Trugan, from whence that river has its source) on the 13th of August. The Wagga is a large river, and the waters of it are bordering on black, which discharge themselves into the Oby, to the north-north-west, a little below Narum, which is but a small city, where he arrived, however, safe on the twenty-fourth. It is situate on the side of the river, in a fine country; and moreover, is defended by a citadel, or fortress, which is well garrisoned by the (c) Cossacks. In the parts adjacent, there are prodigious numbers of trees of various colours, black, red, and grey, to be met with; as also of beavers, ermines, fables, &c. The banks of the Oby, as far as this city extends, are inhabited by a people called the Ostiachs, who are worshippers of idols, and acknowledge, indeed, that there is a God in Heaven, as well as theirs on earth, but they pay no tribute of divine homage to him. Some of their idols are composed of wood; others of clay, in human forms, which they mould with their own hands,

in as beautiful a manner as they can; and such as are persons of substance, and of a superior rank from the populace, clothe them in rich silk, after the Russian mode. These idols are, for the most part, planted in their cabbins, which are composed of the bark of their trees, and sewed together with the guts of deer, instead of thread. On one side of them are placed large bundles of hair; and on the other, stands a little bucket, which is kept constantly full of a kind of broth, of which divine food, they administer divers spoonfuls every day, at least as much of it as they deem sufficient for their comfortable subsistence. And as this spoon-meat is continually running down at the corners of their mouths, it has a very disagreeable effect, and is enough to turn one's stomach. When they make their supplications to these gods of their own making, or pay them any other kind of divine adoration, they stand erect before them, and make a thousand different motions with their heads, but never bow down before them; and during these devotional exercises, they make a hideous hooping and hollowing, not much unlike those vociferations which are made by our European huntmen, when they are exercising their dogs.

These idols are called Saitans, which name



1692 name seems to derive its origin from Satan the arch-fiend of Hell. As some of these Ostiachs happened to be on board this minister's vessels, he indulged them so far as to shew them an odd curiosity, and that was the form of a bear, which was first invented by a native of (d) Nuremberg, and by internal springs of clock-work, would beat a drum, and move his head and eyes about with the same freedom, as if actually alive. When they observed the dexterity and various motions of this extraordinary machine, they presently began to sing and dance before it, and pay it all the very same testimonies of divine adoration, as they would to their most favourite Saitan; nay, they seemed to carry their veneration higher; for they acknowledged this to be a Saitan indeed, and one of a much superior sort to their own; and were they masters of it, they would cloath it in the finest fables, and the best skin of one of their blackest foxes. They would fain have purchased it; but our minister ordered it forthwith to be removed out of their sight, in order to put a stop to their religious deportment towards it.

It is customary for these Ostiachs to marry as many young women as they think fit, or at least, as many as their circumstances will with convenience admit of; and consanguinity itself is no bar to their nuptial enjoyments. The nearest relation, in short, with them is as acceptable a bed-fellow, as the remotest stranger.

Upon the decease of any of their friends, they make incessant lamentations round the corpse for several days successively; having their heads close covered up, without seeing any one person whomsoever, and being constantly on their knees. When this testimony of their respect is fully paid, they carry the deceased away upon poles, and deposit him in his grave. Most of them, however, are very poor, and during the summer-season reside in mean, despicable huts; but, were they industriously inclined, they might with ease improve their little stock; since all the country round about the Oby yields furs in abundance, and the river itself affords great plenty of fish, but abounds more

particularly with sturgeon; insomuch that for three-penny-worth of tobacco, one may purchase a score of them. They are naturally, however, most shamefully indolent; and but very few of them are very solicitous after any thing more than what will afford them a bare subsistence during the winter-season.

When they travel, and when they employ themselves in fishing, which is but seldom, they live entirely on a fish diet. As to their stature, they are neither remarkably tall or short; their hair, for the generality, is either fair or red; but their faces and noses are very broad: they are not in the least addicted to any warlike achievements, and are perfect strangers to the use of arms. They have by them, indeed, both bows and arrows, in order to kill their prey, when they go out a-hunting; but even with them they do but little execution, as they are but miserable marksmen.

As to their dress, tho' they cover their nakedness, it is true, with the skins of fishes, but particularly that of the sturgeon above-mentioned; yet they wear no manner of linnen underneath them. Their stockings and shoes are composed of the same materials, and over their fish-skin covering, they wear a kind of waistcoat, as a loose mantle, to which a sort of cap is affixed, which is pulled over their heads when it happens to rain. As their shoes in particular are made of fish-skin only, they are never water-proof; so that their feet are very seldom free from being wet. They undergo all the inclemency of the weather, without any seeming concern, notwithstanding they are so thinly clad as is above-described; and in case the frost happens to be more intense, or the winds more bleak than ordinary, they only wear two waistcoats instead of one. As this happens, however, but very seldom, and once as it were in an age; they will ask one another, sometimes, do you remember the time, pray, when you were reduced to the necessity of wearing a double waistcoat? When they go a-hunting, in the winter, be it ever so cold, they wear but one; and never cover their breasts at all, taking it for granted, that they shall be hot enough

R r

in



1692

They bury  
themselves  
in the  
snow

How the  
Ostiachs  
demonstrate  
upon their  
hunting  
down a  
bear.

in conscience with running backwards and forwards on the snow with their sledge-shoes. But when they accidentally meet with a severer winter than usual, and such a hard frost as proves too insupportable, they then strip themselves stark-naked, and bury their bodies as deep as possible in the snow, in order to prevent both a lingering and painful death.

There is very little difference in the dress of their women from that of the men's; and their principal amusement is that of hunting the bear. When they are on this expedition, they set out in bands, or companies; but armed with no other weapon of defence, than a kind of sharp knife, fastened to the end of a staff about six feet in length. When they have killed their game, they cut off his head, in the first place; then they hang it upon the branch of a tree, and run round it, hand in hand, as a testimony of their high veneration for it. When this ceremony is performed, they then dance round the body of it, in much the same manner, each of them asking the dead carcase, who it was that killed him? Then they return the answer themselves for the dead bear: "It was a Russian that murdered me." Who was it cut off thy head? "The ax of a Russian." Who was it that cut open thy entrails? "A Russian." In short, whatever injury is done to this particular animal, the barbarous treatment is ascribed immediately to the Russians.

These petty  
princes.

Poor as they are, for the most part (as has already been hinted) they have some petty princes amongst them, who bear the title of Knezzes; and one of these illustrious personages came on board Mr. Isbrant's vessel, in order to pay his excellency a visit. This Knez was superintendant of some hundreds of their huts, or cabins; and his principal business was to collect the tribute which those Ostiachs under his jurisdiction were obliged to pay to the Waiwodes, or officers, of his Czarian majesty. When he came, he brought with him a numerous train of attendants; together with a present of some fine fresh fish; and on his departure, the compliment was returned by an exchange

of brandy and tobacco, with which he went away, to all outward appearance, highly delighted. Some short time after this first interview, he paid this minister a second visit, and before he took his leave, gave him a friendly invitation to his palace; and Mr. Isbrant's curiosity inducing him to accept of his highness's offer, he waited on him according to appointment, and was received by the Knez himself, who personally did the honours of his house, and introduced him, without the formal ceremony of a master, as is customary with other princes. This magnificent structure was composed, like the cabins of his subjects, of the barks of trees, and those likewise sewed together after a very inelegant and artless manner.

At this interview, Mr. Isbrant was favoured with the sight of four of this prince's wives: the youngest was dressed in a scarlet cloth petticoat; with a great variety of glass trinkets; some composed of coral, and others of glass, which were disposed of round her waist, her neck, and in the tresses of her hair, which hung down in ringlets on each side, and over her shoulders; in her ears she wore rings, or more properly speaking, buckles, from whence hung down strings of coral beads. Three of these consorts of his highness presented this minister with a kind of small tub, made of the same materials as their habitation, filled up to the brim with dried fish; but the youngest, before particularly described, gave him a little tub full of sturgeon, which was as yellow as gold itself; and in return for all their favours, he regaled them very plentifully with brandy and tobacco, which with them is esteemed a very delicious and grand repast.

This royal cabin could boast of no other furniture than a few cradles, and trunks, composed of the barks of trees, in which were their beds and bedding, full of wood-dust, but as soft as down itself. The cradles were placed at one end of the cabin, and full of little children, all stark naked; but then there was a good fire in the center. There were no culinary implements that he could perceive, one copper kettle only excepted, and a few others

1692

Mr. Isbrant  
receives the  
visit of one  
of these  
Knezzes.

A Sarcelle  
accounts of  
his palace,  
and his  
family of  
fourteen.

The furniture  
of the  
palace.

When made of bark  
they are not  
very warm  
When they have  
killed a bear  
they bury it  
as well as the  
dead of water, and  
the carcass along  
with it in a  
hole in the snow  
sometimes as  
deep as the  
eye, and the  
corpse is  
buried in the  
snow. The  
European  
travellers  
have seen  
some of  
these  
corpses upon the  
ice, they are  
also affected  
the first, it  
may be  
buried into the  
snow. Some  
of the  
travellers  
with  
in a small  
hole in the  
ice. If any  
traveller be  
killed, they  
are buried  
in a hole in  
the ice, with  
very large  
stones upon  
the mouth of  
the hole, for  
many  
perfect strangers  
to all  
the world  
will dig  
out the  
corpses, and  
bury them  
in the snow.  
They have  
never seen  
the bones  
of the dead  
of the back of  
the ice, and  
very light. The  
bones are  
very light, but  
more than  
bones, and  
above on the  
ground, they  
will be  
found.  
During the  
winter, the  
bones are  
very much  
exposed to the  
frost, and  
it is necessary  
to bury them  
in the snow.



1692 others made of bark, which could not possibly be used, in case the fire was any ways intense.

Their mis-  
ery of  
smoking.

When they smook, which is one of their favourite amusements, both the women, as well as the men, take a mouthful of water, and swallow the smook of the tobacco along with it. This habit has such an influence over them, that they sometimes are perfectly intoxicated thereby, and fall down upon the ground, entirely deprived of their senses, with their eyes wide open, like persons amongst the Europeans afflicted with the falling-sickness; some of them swallow this smook down with such excess, that they expire upon the spot. Sometimes, when they are thus affected, they will fall into the river, if they happen to be near it, and sometimes into the fire, if within their cabbins. Some of them again are perfectly suffocated with it, and end their days in a most miserable manner.

Their man-  
ners.

If any mention be but made of their relations, they are highly offended, and look on it as a gross affront; nor can they bear, with any degree of patience, to hear the names only of such of them as have been dead for many years. They are perfect strangers to all transactions abroad, and are so illiterate, for the generality, that they can neither write nor read; and notwithstanding they are remarkably fond of bread, they are too indolent to cultivate their lands.

Their em-  
barcation.

They have neither temples, nor priests. Their boats, like their habitations, are composed of the bark of trees; and what little timber and frame-work there is within, is very slight. Tho' these vessels of theirs are so inelegantly built, and are seldom more than three fathom in length, and about an ell broad; yet it is very surprising, they will live in the worst of weather.

Their wife-  
ly manner.

During the winter-season, these Ostiachs have their residence under ground; with a large opening at the top of their caverns for the smoke of them to evaporate. As it is customary with them to lie naked

round a fire; in case it happens to be snowy weather, they find themselves, upon their waking, half covered with it; whereupon they only turn themselves, and feel no other inconvenience on an occasion that so frequently occurs.

1692

Their pro-  
pensity to  
jealousy.

If an Ostiach happens to prove jealous of his wife, he cuts off part of the fur that grows on the belly of a bear, and carries it to the person suspected. In case the party is innocent, he accepts readily of it, but if he be conscious of his guilt, he frankly acknowledges the illicit freedom he has taken, and enters directly into an amicable treaty with the party injured, and pays a premium accordingly. Nor dare they, indeed, prevaricate on this important occasion; since they are all firmly persuaded, that, if any one should accept of the hair, and at the same time be guilty of the crime laid to his charge, the bear, from whose belly the hair was cut, would avenge the wrongs of the party injured, and devour the delinquent before the week was at an end.

On the same jealous account, there are other presents frequently made to the person suspected. Some present bows and arrows; some hatchets, and others again sharp, large knives; no ways doubting, but that the party who accepts them, and at the same time, is actually guilty of the injury done to the donor, will within a few days, inevitably come to some untimely end. This all of them unanimously assert, and the Russians, who reside in the parts adjacent as unanimously confirm. Tho' we have now no more to add in regard to the Ostiachs themselves; yet we cannot drop the subject wholly without making the following remark on the banks of the Oby, where they pitch their cabbins; and that is this, that they lie entirely uncultivated from the sea quite up to the river Tun, on account of the inclemency of the weather, and the excessive frosts, for which reason, they produce no manner either of corn or fruit; and, in a word, nothing at all but the cones of cedars.

Occa-



(a) Ostiachs, or Oustachs, see p. 148. n. b.

(b) Oby, the river, see p. 18. n. c.

(c) Coliacks, people inhabiting the banks of the rivers Nieper and Don, near the Black-sea, and the frontiers of Turkey. Their country usually called the Ukraïn, and for the most part subject to Russia.

(d) Nuremberg, a city in Germany, in the circle of Franconia, capital of the territory of Nuremberg. East long. 11. lat. 49. 30. situate near the confluence of the rivers Regnitz and Pegnitz, 50 miles north-west of Ratisbon, and 40 miles south of Bamberg. It is 7 miles in circumference defended by a wall, a castle, and other works, but of no great strength. It is very populous, and has the best inland trade of any town in Europe: their clock-work, and manufactures in iron, steel, ivory, wood, and alabaster are much admired, and afforded exceedingly cheap; and from hence come most of those toys we call Dutch

toys. It is nothing but the genius and industry of this people that procure them the flourish-trade and plenty they live in; for it is a barren country, and produces scarce any thing to traffic with, but what receives the greatest part of the value from their labour and art. It is an imperial city, or independant state. The governors and magistrates are elected out of the nobility; and the burgher-master, or chief magistrate is changed every month; the legislative authority being lodged in a council, or dier, of 400 of the principal burghers. In this city are kept the Regalia used at the emperor's coronation. The established religion is the lutheran; the calvinists are forced to go three miles out of town to church; and the papists are allowed to perform divine service only in one church, when the lutherans have done with it. The territories of Nuremberg are about 30 miles in length, and 20 broad, in which they have a great many good towns and villages.

## C H A P. XXII.

*His Arrival at Makoffkoi, upon the Keta. The Inconveniencies that attended him thereon, for want of Provisions. His Departure from Makoffkoi. A Description of the Keta. He proceeds on his Journey by Land, and arrives at Jenizetskoi. A Description of that City.*

MR. Isbrants having spent some weeks on the river (a) Oby, and some small time amongst the (b) Ostiachs in the last chapter particularly described, arrived, on the first of September, at the town of Keetskoi, situate on the Keta, which empties its waters north-west into the Oby; from thence he came, on the twenty-eighth, to the convent of Saint Sergius; and on the third of October then next following, to the village called Worozoikin, where one of his domestics, by name John George Wetfel, of Sleswick, painter, died on that day of a very high fever.

On the seventh of the month last-mentioned, he arrived with safety at Makoff-

koi, where he interred the said Wetfel, on a rising ground, near the bank of the river. During his navigation of the Oby, he was more harrassed and fatigued than in any other part of his long and tedious journey; for he spent five weeks successively in his passage up that river, without the sight of any conversable creature, except a few indolent illiterate Ostiachs, who, upon his approach towards them, flew from him with a kind of terror into the adjacent woods. These Ostiachs were a different clan, indeed, from those which we have just described, but as equally addicted to idol-worship.

In his passage up the Keta, he found him-

Mr. Isbrants  
travels the  
Oby.

Death of  
one of his  
domestics.

His arrival  
at Makoff-  
koi, on the  
Keta.



1692 himself greatly embarrassed through want of proper provisions, especially through the scarcity of flour, or bread, which is man's principal support; for, from the time that he departed from (c) Tobol, he had received no manner of supply, excepting that of a few fresh fish. It must be acknowledged, indeed, that he would not have been drove to so high a degree of distress, had he with-held his beneficence to the poor Ostiaks, who were on board his vessel, and sometimes tow'd her, tho' with no small reluctance, as having a natural aversion, as we have before hinted, to hard labour; and more of them would willingly have deserted the vessel than there actually did, had they not been very narrowly over-look'd, and compelled to lend a helping hand. At last, indeed, they became perfectly spent, and had, doubtless, sunk under the weight of their toil and fatigue, had not an immediate assistance been sent them from the governor of Jenizeiskoi, who upon application made to him by this minister, took his distress into consideration, and sent him immediate relief; for had he look'd on him with an evil eye, and had been so inhuman as to deny him the assistance he requested, that minister must have stopped at least thirty leagues short of Makofskoi, and in all probability would have perished in the ice, and the deep snows which he must have inevitably met with in that melancholy passage, there being no inhabitants on the banks of the Keta to be met with in all that vast extent of ground.

The departure from Makofskoi.

No sooner had he departed from Makofskoi, but the river Keta, which is by no means navigable in the winter-season, began to be blocked up with ice, through an excessive and sudden frost. Its waters run through a country which abounds with woods, and thickets, and winds about to that degree, that the traveller, after a tedious passage for twelve hours successively, stands astonished at night to find how little ground he has gained since the dawn of day. This country abounds with heath-game, such as pheasants, and partridges; and it is no disagreeable diversion to see them morning

and evening upon the banks of the river regaling themselves in whole flocks; where you may kill almost what number you please as you pass along. And this proved no trivial assistance to them at a time when they were reduced to short commons. The soil here affords great plenty of gooseberries both red and black; as also large quantities of strawberries, and raspberries; but as to the river itself, it can boast of no plenty of fish, that are worth the fatigue of catching.

Not far distant from hence, in the mountains which rear their heads towards the north-east, several passengers have met with the teeth and bones of a creature, which is there called a Mammot, but more particularly on the banks of the several rivers distinguished by the respective names of (d) Jenisia, Trugon, Mongansea, and (e) Lena, not far distant from Jabutskoi, and quite as far as the Icy Ocean. And this discovery is principally made, when there happens to be a great thaw which has flooded the last mentioned river; and the ice has carried a large quantity of earth from off the sides of the mountains. It is at such times as these, that the carcasses of those creatures are found lock'd up in the earth, which is frozen almost from the top to the bottom; but more particularly, when the thaw has proved excessively great. One of Mr. Ibrant's attendants, who had been several years employed in making his strictest researches after these particular animals, assured him, that he once found an entire head of one of these Mammots in some of those thaw'd grounds, that when he had split it, and laid it perfectly open, he found almost all the fleshy part of it absolutely putrified; and that the teeth of it stuck out in much the same manner as those of the elephant, and were so fast riveted in, that it was with no small difficulty, that he drew them: — That some short time after, meeting with a fore-quarter of one of these creatures, he carried away one bone only of it to the city of Trugon, which was as thick as the waist of a moderate man, and, in short, that he perceived something that bore a resemblance of blood towards the neck.

S f

There

1692

The teeth and bones of a Mammot.



1692

Various  
experiences  
in regard to  
the Mam-  
mots.

There are various conjectures in regard to this remarkable animal. The Jakutes, the Tunguses, and the Osiacs, peremptorily assert, that he never rises out of the earth, but removes from place to place, mole-like, entirely under-ground: To this they add, that they can visibly discern the earth both rise and fall as he is making his progress; inasmuch that he leaves some considerable trench behind him. They add, moreover, that he instantaneously expires, if he has the least perception of any light, and never appears, but by meer accident, above the surface; from whence it is, that he is never seen alive, and never discovered when dead, but upon hilly ground.

The no-  
tion of the  
Russians in  
regard to  
these crea-  
tures.

The (f) Russians, however, who have now for many years past been inhabitants of (g) Siberia, are of opinion, that these Mammutts are a species of the elephant, and that there is no material difference between them, the teeth of the former only being somewhat closer, and more hooked. They will tell you, that there were numbers of these animals in this country before the general deluge; the climate in those antediluvian days being more warm and temperate than at present; and that their dead carcases being washed away by the flood, were buried deep in the earth; and that the frost, which has ever since affected them more or less, has preserved them to this time from absolute decay; and, in a word, that it is wholly owing to the thaws, which occasionally happen, that they are ever discovered at all; and it must be allowed, that, in case this be not actually matter of fact, yet the conjecture is natural, and plausible enough. Neither is it any ways requisite, in order to clear up this affair, for us to imagine, that there has been any variation in the climate of these parts, since the bodies of these extraordinary animals may have been drove down thither by the waters, which at that time covered the whole face of the earth.

When the teeth of these creatures have been exposed to the open air for a whole summer, they are found split, and are very black; and when that is the case,

they are of no use or value at all; whereas such as are found whole and perfectly clean, are as white as ivory. Those who make it their business to make researches after them, carry them in large quantities all over (h) Muscovy, where they are manufactured into combs, and other little utensils of the like nature.

The envoy's attendant last mentioned assured him, that he once found two teeth in one and the same head, which weighed 1200 pounds, or thereabouts (Russia weight) that is to say, 400 pounds of German weight; from whence it is evident beyond contradiction, that the creature, when living, must be of a monstrous size. This is all the account we can give of the creature; for Mr. Ibrant acknowledges, that he never met with any one who had seen the animal whole, either alive or dead; nor any one that could give a satisfactory description of its particular form.

When this envoy had once happily landed at the village of Makofskoi, he was determined not to expose either himself, or any of his retinue, to the perils and dangers that attend the navigation of the Keta any farther; and for that reason performed the remainder of his journey on dry land. Having travelled in this manner for about sixteen leagues, on the 14th of October he arrived safe at Jenizefskoi; where he tarried for some considerable time, not only in order to refresh both himself and his retinue after their long fatigue, but to wait till the winter season was perfectly settled, that he might pursue his destin'd journey more agreeably in a sledge. In the interim he took care to furnish himself with every convenience that was requisite for that purpose; and had, moreover, leisure-hours enow to make his researches after every thing in the city, that was worthy the attention of the curious traveller.

It derives its name from the river of Jenifia, which, having its source in the south, traverses the Kalmuc mountains, and rolls its waters on, almost in a straight line, to the northward, till it discharges itself into the icy sea of (i) Tartary, but not in the same manner as the Oby does, which

1692

The Mam-  
mots's teeth  
of various  
sizes & shapes.

He never  
saw this  
journey  
by land.

Arrived at  
Jenizefskoi.

A descrip-  
tion of the  
city.



1692

which disembogues itself into the bosom of its own waters, and from them rolls into the sea. At this town the river is at least a full quarter of a league broad: Its water is both clear and light; but affords no great quantity of fish. The inhabitants of this city, about seven years since, fitted out a substantial vessel, in order to go upon the whale-fishery; but she never returned, neither did they ever hear any tidings of her afterwards. The inhabitants of Tiguma, a town that lies considerably farther down the river, send ships annually on the same expedition; but then they act with more precaution than the former; they watch their proper seasons, and consider when the winds blow

the ice from off the shore, and by that means fish without danger. The city of Jenizefskoi is moderately large, is very populous and well fortified. They have plenty of corn, and all sorts of poultry, as well as butchers meat. Its jurisdiction extends over a prodigious number of Tungusians, who inhabit the banks of the Tenuia and the Tunguska, and all the parts adjacent. They pay their whole tribute to the Czar in various kinds of furs. The cold is so intense here, that their trees yield no manner of fruit. All that they can boast of, which can properly be termed fruit, is a small quantity of gooseberries, both black and red; and a few wood-strawberries.

1692

*Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.*

(a) Oby, the river, see p. 18. n. c.

(b) Ostiachs, or Oustiachs, see p. 148. n. b.

(c) Tobol, or Tobolski, see p. 148. n. a.

(d) Jenisa, see p. 18. n. f.

(e) Lena, the river, see p. 18. n. g.

(f) Russians, see p. 7. n. c.

(g) Siberia, or Asiatic Russia, see p. 17. n. b.

(h) Moscow, or Russia, see p. 7. n. c.

(i) Tartary, see p. 18. n. i.

C H A P. XXIII.

*The envoy's departure from Jenizefskoi. His arrival at the Island, called Ribnoi; or the Isle of Fish. His arrival, in the prosecution of his journey, at Ilinskoi; and from thence at the Cataract, or Fall of Shamanskoi, or the Torrent of the Magician: Concluding with an accurate, tho' compendious Description, of the natives of Tungus.*

Jan. 20.  
He departs  
from Jeni-  
zefskoi, and  
arrives at  
the Island  
of Ribnoi.  
He stays  
there.

MR. Isbrants set out from Jenizefskoi in a sledge; and on the 20th of January 1693, he arrived at the Island called Ribnoi, or the Isle of Fish.

This island is situate in the center of the river Tunguska; and affords great plenty of fish of various kinds; but more particularly, it abounds with sturgeon and pike, of the largest size: It is principally inhabited by the natives of (a) Moscow.

On the 25th of the same month, he arrived at Ilinskoi, situate on the river Il-ni, which has its rise towards the south-

south-west, and discharges its water, on the north-north-west, into the Tunguska. The banks of this river, however, are inhabited by the natives of Tungus, as well as by the Moscovites.

After the envoy had proceeded on his journey from hence for some few days, he arrived at the Cataract, or Fall of the Torrent of Shamanskoi, otherwise called the Magician; from a celebrated Shaman, or Magician, who formerly made that particular spot his favourite place of abode. The Fall of this Torrent, or Cataract, in regard to its extent, is no less than half a league

The Cata-  
ract of  
Shaman-  
skoi, or the  
Torrent  
called the  
Magician.

Jan. 25.  
He arrives  
at Ilinskoi.



1692

a league; the sides of which, as well as its bottom, are high rocks, and the prospect thereof perfectly shocking to the eye, as must plainly appear so even to the reader, by his view of the plate annexed. This Fall makes a most hideous noise, as it rolls down with great rapidity among the rocks; some whereof shew their heads above the water, whilst others lie concealed beneath them. The noise of these waters, when there is little or no wind stirring, may be heard at the distance of three German leagues all round about.

The great dangers to which all such vessels as venture up this Torrent, are unavoidably exposed.

The vessels that venture up this Torrent are frequently six or seven days in the accomplishment of their passage; notwithstanding they are very slightly built, and dragged up by a great variety of machines, peculiarly adapted for that purpose, as well as by the art and industry of the several crews thereto belonging. Sometimes it happens, that all hands shall be employed for twelve hours successively, in such places particularly, where the rocks are high, and the waters low, and scarce gain any visible ground, tho' they themselves, as well as their vessel, are in imminent danger all the time.

These vessels whether they are making their passage down or up, are always unloaded, and their freight, or cargo, conveyed by land so far as is deemed necessary, and till all the dangers to which they are exposed, are perfectly past.

As to the Fall of the Torrent, such is the rapidity of it, that they are down, for the generality, in less than a quarter of an hour.—In short, there are but very few, either of the Moscovites or Tongusians, that are remarkably dextrous at this particular branch of their navigation, notwithstanding they are plentifully furnished with proper materials for their assistance in that dangerous passage; namely rudders, both fore and aft, and a sufficient number of oars, on each side. Those who are at the helm give their directions to their rowers, by a proper wave of their handkerchief; for as the Torrent is so impetuous and noisy, it is impossible for any human voice, how sonorous soever, to be distinctly understood. But besides, it is customary, during this difficult and dan-

gerous passage, to cover up the vessel, as close as possibly it can be, to prevent them from taking in any quantity of the water that rolls over them.

There is scarce a year, however, passes, without some fatal accident, and the loss of many lives, through the want of able and experienced pilots; who frequently run headlong upon the rocks; and whenever that proves their unhappy case, they are lost, beyond all redemption, and are either instantaneously swallowed up by the impetuous Torrent, or, in a very short time dashed to pieces against the rocks. Neither is it an easy matter ever to recover the lifeless carcases of those who are thus unhappily buried in the waves; notwithstanding there are divers crosses erected on the shore, at such places where such fatal accidents have occurred, and where the unhappy hands that have perished, have been interred. The waters that flow to this particular spot from the northern ocean swell this torrent to such a degree, in the winter-season, that the Fall was formerly so imperceptible, that passengers would venture to cross it in sledges; in the summer-season, however, the waters are excessively low.

At some leagues distance from this Cataract, great numbers of Tungusians, as well as their celebrated Shaman, or magician, are to be met with. The great reputation of that pretender to necromancy, excited Mr. Isbrant's curiosity so far, as to pay him a visit at his cell, or place of abode.

He assures us, that he was a well-set man; though in the decline of life had twelve wives; and did not seem to be in the least ashamed of his profession. This Shaman obliged him at once with a sight of his magical vestment, and every other implement besides that he made use of in the exercise of his art. In the first place the vestment which he put on, was decorated with irons, which represented the figures of a great variety of animals, such as night birds, owls and ravens, fishes, and griffins; besides these, there were other pieces of iron in the form of hatchets, saws, cutlasses, knives, &c. which when shook, made an odd sort of tinkling. His feet

1692

Great numbers annually lost for want of able pilots.

The residence of the Tungusians, and their famous Shaman, or Magician.

A description of their Shaman.



1693

and legs, were covered with trinkets of the same nature, and his hands with a pair of iron-gloves, in the form of bears-paws. His cap was likewise decorated with various pieces of iron, in as various shapes, as those on his gown: and on his forehead, he wore a large pair of horns, like those of the rein-deer, but composed of iron, as well as the rest.

When he exercises his diabolical art, he holds a drum in his left-hand, and a flat-kind of a stick in his right, which is covered with the skin of a mountain-mouse; then he hops awhile upon one foot; and after that upon the other; and during this kind of dance to his drum, the pieces of iron, which hang all about him, make a hideous clatter. Besides, at almost every step, he rolls his eyes, and imitates the grunting, or grumbling of a bear. After this exordium, he insists on his fee before he will proceed one single step farther, towards the discovery of what the poor, credulous Tungusians want to extort from him, whether it be to recover any thing of value that has been stolen; or to hear from him any important news, of which they are solicitous to be informed. The fee being deposited, he begins to dance again, and to repeat the grumbling as before; till he observes a black-bird, perching upon his cell, or hut, at that particular spot where the smoke goes out; and then, in the last place, he falls prostrate on the ground, and there lies, for a short time, like one that is totally deprived of his senses, till the bird of omen is flown again out of sight. In about a quarter of an hour's time, he recovers his lost senses, and then makes his declaration of what is the request of his client; and what he pronounces is deemed as sure as fate. The dress of this magician, with its additional trinkets, is so heavy, that it must be a strong man who can lift it fairly with one hand. This impostor was possessed of abundance of cattle; and those who were so weak as to consult him on such occasions, never denied him the gratuity he demanded, were it ever so exorbitant, in case they had it to deposit.

These natives of Nisovier, who are all Pagans, are, for the most part, robust

fellows, and well-set. Their hair, for the generality, is remarkably long, and perfectly black. It is a custom amongst them to have it knotted behind, and to let it hang down their back, like a horse's tail. Tho' their faces, indeed, are broader than most of our Europeans their noses, are not flat; as to their eyes, they are remarkably small, like those of the (e) Calmucs.

The women, as well as the men, go almost naked, during the summer-season; for they have nothing about them but a kind of leathern girdle, much like our fringed sashes, which they wear out of modesty to conceal their nakedness.

The women, by way of distinction, dress up their hair with coral, to which they affix divers little iron trinkets, by way of decoration. In order to preserve themselves from being stung by their flies, they generally wear on their left arm a little light vessel, or pot, full of a smoking-wood. These insects swarm to that degree on the river of Tunguska, that the men, for the most part, cover their faces, as well as their hands, whilst upon the water, for the same purpose; but as they are so much accustomed to them, they scarce feel them when they bite. Tho' they are ambitious of being thought handsome, yet they entertain but very odd ideas of what is generally called beauty; for, in order to render themselves as graceful as possible, they quilt their foreheads, cheeks, and chins, with a kind of thread, steeped in a black grease, which, when taken off, leaves such a mark behind it, as is deemed highly ornamental. And, indeed, the custom is so universal, that there are very few amongst them but make it their daily practice. The reader, however, will have a more adequate idea of this imaginary additional beauty by having recourse to the plate annexed.

During the winter-season, they generally dress themselves in the skins of their rein-deers, with the addition of a proper quantity of horse-hair to the fore-part of their vestments, and dogs-skin to the bottoms. They make no use either of linnen or woollen, but adorn themselves with a sort of ribbands, and a thread made of fish-skin. They wear, likewise, upon their

T t

heads

1693

Their dress during the summer-season.

Their ornamental headdress.

Their winter dress.

This impostor's dress.

A description of the Tungusians.



1693

heads a kind of cap, made of the skin of their rein-deers, with their wide-spreading horns on; but more particularly, when they set out, in order, to hunt down that creature, by which artful deception, and gliding gently along the grafs, they get within bow-shot of them; and most of them are such dexterous marksmen, that their arrows seldom fail of doing the execution proposed.

Their di-  
votions.

When they are inclined to amuse themselves, they form a ring, whilst one of their companions stands in the center, with a kind of wand in his hand, with which he endeavours to lick the legs of those who pass round about him; most of them, however, so dexterously avoid the blow, that all his endeavours prove, for some time, fruitless and ineffectual; but when he happens to take his aim aright, the person on whom the blow falls is immediately ducked in the river.

Their old  
builds.

As to their burials, they strip their dead, in the first place, stark naked, and then deposit their lifeless carcase under some distant tree, where it lies till it is perfectly rotten. After that, they collect the bones, and bury them in the adjacent ground.

Their idols.

Tho' they have no priest but their Shaman, or magician; yet all of them have their wooden idols in their tents or huts. Each of these images, or idols, are made in a human form; and, for the most part, are about an ell in stature; and these, to testify their veneration for them, are

fed by their devotees, or pretended at least so to be, with the best viands they can possibly procure for them, much after the manner of the (e) Osiachs, and with equal neatness.

Their tents, or huts, which are for the most part composed of the bark of their birch-trees, are decorated, on the out-side, with the tails and mains of their horses, as also with their several bows and arrows, and here and there a dead puppy, by way of additional embellishment.

During the summer-season, they principally live upon a variety of lish, of which they have plenty.

Their boats, which are generally large enough for the reception of seven or eight persons, are composed of the barks of trees, sew'd strong together. They are long and narrow, and have no benches in them, or any other convenience for their sitting down. They fall, however, on their knees in them, and make use of a double paddle or oar, which they hold by the middle, and are very dexterous in the management of it. This they dip in the water all at once, in large rivers, as well as small.

Their subsistence, as we observed before in the summer, is principally on fish; and as to their diet in winter, they live upon deer of divers sorts, which they hunt down daily, and secure by the dexterous use of their bows and arrows.

1693

Their tents  
or huts.Their sum-  
mer diet.

Their boats

### Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

(a) Moscow, or Russia, see p. 7. n. c.

(b) Calmucs, wandering tribes, or hords of Tartars, who inhabit the country north of the Caspian-sea, and sometimes put themselves under the protection of Russia, visiting the city

Astracan, and the adjacent country once or twice a year.

(c) Osiachs, or Ousliachs, see p. 142. n. b.



1693

1693

## C H A P. XXIV.

*The Envoy's Arrival at Buratskoi, and from thence at Bulaganiskoi. A succinct Account of the Burates, their Manner of Hunting, &c. His Arrival at Jekutskoi. A short Description of that Place, and of the burning Cavern over against it. His Departure from Jekutskoi, and Arrival at the Lake, called Bakal, or Baikal; with a Description of the Parts adjacent, &c.*

Feb. 1.  
The en-  
voy's ar-  
rival at Bu-  
ratskoi.

Feb. 21.  
His arrival  
at Bu-  
laganskoi.

The in-  
struction  
of hunting  
observed by  
the Burates.

MR. Librants, on the first day of February, arrived at the fortress of Buratskoi, situate on the river of Angora, which empties its waters into the lake, called (a) Bakal, or Baikal, and is a very populous place, but inhabited by the Burates, who are very illiterate, and almost all of them heathens.

On the eleventh, the envoy arrived at Bulaganiskoi; the vales and lower part whereof are inhabited likewise by the above-mentioned Burates, who are most of them rich in cattle. Their beeves abound with hair, and their huts, or tents, are low, composed of wood, and covered with clay. Their fire-place is in the center, and the smoke is conveyed away through an aperture in the top of the structure. They have no idea of agriculture, of orchards, or garden-grounds, and their villages are, for the generality, situate on the banks of their rivers; from whence they are not so much accustomed to shift their quarters, as the Tungusians, or some others amongst those Pagan people. They drive stakes or posts into the ground before the doors of their tents, which they decorate with the skins of goats, sheep, and horses.

As soon as the spring is somewhat advanced, they assemble together in large bodies on horse-back, in order to hunt down their stags, rein-deer, and other wild beasts, which they distinguish by the name of Ablavo. Upon the first sight of their game, they divide themselves into distinct companies, or bands, and surround them; when they have so done, they jointly drive great numbers of them

gradually into some narrow avenue; and when they have got within reach of them, (as they are plentifully provided with arrows) they exercise their bows, and but very few of those wild animals escape the fury of the chase.

No sooner is their diversion over, in which they frequently wound either one another, or the horses they ride on, each looks out, as narrowly as possible, for his own particular arrows, which are all properly marked; and, when in possession of his game, he first fleas off the skin, and dries the flesh, which he separates as clean as possible from the bones, in the warm rays of the sun.

When their stock of provisions is pretty nearly exhausted, they renew their attack, and are morally assured of a sufficient supply, as the country abounds, not only with fallow-deer, but with wild sheep, which are to be met with by thousands, in a manner, upon the mountains. For five or six leagues about, however, there are very few (if any) creatures that furnish them with furs, except, by chance, a bear, or wolf, should fall in their way.

When strangers have occasion to apply to these natives either for oxen or camels, in order to pursue their travels into (b) China, they are under an indispensable obligation to come to an agreement with them for other commodities in exchange; for they have no notion of any current coin. They are very ready, however, to traffic with any foreigners, for whitish fables, copper, or pewter basons, red-scarlet (c) Hamburgh cloths, the skins of otters, the silks of (d) Persia, of any colour

Calligraphy  
upon these  
public re-  
corders.

Their man-  
ner of travel-  
ling.



1693

The price  
of their  
cattle.The figure  
and consti-  
tution of  
the natives.Their dress  
in regard  
to the men.The dress  
of their wo-  
men in  
years.  
The dress  
of their  
maiden.Their di-  
vine wor-  
ship.

colour whatsoever, and for any quantity of gold or silver, if it be in ingots. In this way of trade and commerce, a stranger may purchase an ox, which, when dressed, would weigh 800, or near 1000 weight, for about four or five rubles; and a camel for ten or a dozen at most, the ruble being estimated amongst those people, at five livres as they are in (r) Russia.

The natives of this country, the women as well as men, are for the most part very hearty, robust, and tall. As to their faces, they are handsome enough in their way, and resemble in some measure the (f) Chinese Tartars. Both the one and the other, during the winter-season, wear a kind of mantle, made of sheep-skins, which they buckle round them close with a girdle, and a cap, which covers their ears, and, in their language, is called a Malachaven. In the summer-season, however, they wear gowns of a coarse scarlet-cloth. In all other respects, as they are washed but once in their lives, and that on the day of their nativity, and never pare their nails, which grow like eagles claws, they look, if we may be indulged the expression, like human devils.

The men wear a beard under their chins, but pluck off all the superfluous hairs. The skirts of their cloaths are adorned with furs; their caps are made of fox-skins; their vestments of a blue cotton-stuff, which are plaited in the middle; and their sandals, or boots, of the skins of beasts, with the hairy part only exposed to view.

Their women adorn themselves with coral, rings, and small pieces of money, fastened in their hair; and their lasses, or maidens, plait their hair in ringlets, like so many snakes, which make them look like little furies.

The hair of their women in years, falls down on each side of their faces, and is decorated with a great variety of little figures, composed of copper, or brass; and whenever any of them die, they are interred in their best cloaths; to which are added, a bow and arrow.

Their divine worship, if it may be so called, consists wholly in making some particular fantastic motions with their

heads, at certain seasons of the year, to the several goats or sheep, which they have fastened to the door-posts of their cabbins, or tents.

The same act of devotion is, at certain times likewise, paid both to the sun and moon, but that in a kneeling posture, with their hands joined together in a solemn manner, but in a profound silence; for they don't so much as whisper, or use the least verbal invocation whatsoever. They have their priests, 'tis true; but they put them to death, whenever they see convenient, which is somewhat very peculiar. They inter them, however, with some solemnity, and furnish them both with money and cloaths, that they may go before them into the unknown world, and make intercession for them.

When they are indispensably obliged to take their solemn oath on any particular occasion amongst themselves, they repair to the lake, called Bakal, or Bakal, before mentioned, upon a high mountain, within the distance of two days journey, which they look upon as sacred. They are firmly persuaded, it seems, that should they take a false oath upon that most holy ground, they should never more return alive to their habitations. This mountain has for a long course of years been held by them in the utmost veneration; and they frequently make free-will oblations thereupon, of the choicest of their cattle.

In the parts adjacent, they have a particular animal that affords a valuable musk, not unlike that in the plate annexed, which bears some resemblance to a dark-coloured deer, that has no horns, and a head, not altogether unlike that of a wolf. The valuable musk abovementioned lies concealed in a small bladder near its navel, and is covered with a kind of down. This animal is called by the natives of China, the Yehiam, or Musk-deer, notwithstanding its head is no ways like one; and its teeth bear some resemblance to the tusks of a wild-bear.

Signior Martini, in his Chinese Atlas, assures us, that this creature is to be met within the country of (g) Xanxi, or Xanfi, near the city of Leao; but more frequent-

1693

Their  
priests  
put to  
death.The give-  
ing of their  
solemn oath  
and the  
place to  
which they  
repair for  
this purpose.Some  
Siam's  
description  
of the musk  
deer.



1693

ly in that of Hanchungfu, in the country of (b) Suchurn; as also, in that of Pao-ningfa; in some parts of Kiating; and near the fortress of Fiencevin; in divers parts of the territory of Junan; and, in short, some other places to the westward.

The description, which that author has given of it, is well worthy the attention of the curious reader, and is as follows. "Tho' the musk-animal, says he, bears some small resemblance to a deer, yet it is of a darker colour, and so indolent and inactive, that the sportsmen there can scarcely rouse him; in-  
"somuch, that he suffers them to cut his throat, without the least struggle, or resistance. As his blood is looked upon  
"as valuable, tho' not equal to its musk, they are careful to preserve it. Under  
"his navel, he has not only a small bladder full of blood; but another, contain-  
"ing a certain coagulated, and odoriferous liquid, which they take from him, in  
"the first place; and after that they flea  
"him and cut him into pieces.

"In order to make the best musk, the natives of China take the hind-quarters of this animal from the kidneys, which they pound in a stone-mortar, with a small quantity of blood, till the whole is of the consistency of a jelly, and when dried, deposit it in little  
"cords, composed of the skin of the same creature.

"When they are disposed to have their musk of an inferior sort, tho' good and genuine at the same time, they pound all the parts of this animal together, without distinction, and reduce them to a jelly, and observe the same method as above-mentioned.

"They have, moreover, a third sort of this valuable commodity, which, tho' not so perfectly good and pure as the two former, is highly esteemed.

"This is composed of the fore quarters of this same animal, that is to say, from the head to the kidneys; which, together with the remainder, serve to make a common musk, inasmuch, that  
"all is good, and no part lost."

Mr. Isbrants, however, seems at a loss to determine, whether the Burates, or any of their savage neighbours, take the same measures as the Chinese do, in making this same musk of different degrees of goodness.

The envoy after making some short stay amongst these savage natives, proceeded on his journey to Jekutskoi, situate on the river of Angara, which rises from the lake of Bakal, or Baikal aforesaid, at the distance of eight leagues, or thereabouts. This town, which had not at that time been long built, was flanked with good substantial towers. Its suburbs are very large; and not only corn and salt, but butchers meat, and all kinds of fish are remarkably cheap there: And as to barley in particular, a whole German hundred weight of it may be purchased for about seven pence, or eight pence at farthest.

The soil all round about is very fertile, and as 'tis well cultivated, it abounds in all sorts of grain as far as Wergolenskoï, which is but at a few leagues distance. The Russians, who reside in these parts, have some hundreds of villages all round about, and are very industrious in the cultivation of their lands.

Over against this town, towards the east, there is a cavern for ever burning, which for some considerable time past, had cast forth flames with an astonishing degree of violence; but at present, indeed, nothing shocking appears from it; since it only smokes. Those flames, it seems, burst forth from a large aperture, which still continues to be burning; as, by thrusting a long stick into the said fissure, may be plainly experienced by the curious traveller.

On one side of this town, likewise, there stands a fine monastery, or convent, on that particular spot, where the river Jakut, from whence it derives its name, empties its waters into the Angara. Tho' the natives of these parts are accustomed to feel great earthquakes during the latter part of the summer, yet as no fatal consequences ever attend them, those shocks never terrify, or disconcert them.

U n

Whilst

1693

The  
voyage  
of the  
Angara  
river  
from  
the  
lake  
of  
Bakal  
to  
the  
place.

A burning  
cavern  
there.

A fine  
monastery  
there.

The  
musk  
of the  
best  
sort.

The  
third  
sort.



1693

A Taldia,  
or Mongolian  
lord.

Whilst the envoy resided in this place, he met with a Taldia, that is to say, a (1) Mongolian, or Mogolian lord, who had thrown himself under the shelter and protection of the Czar of (2) Moscow, and had been for some time a profelyte to the christian faith, and received a member of the Greek church.

His sister, a  
Mongolian  
nun.

This young nobleman had a sister, who was a Mongolian nun, and was greatly inclined to become a christian convert, as well as her brother. In conversation upon that serious and important topic, she would ingeniously acknowledge, that the God in whom the christians put their trust and confidence, must of necessity, in her opinion, be an omnipotent God indeed; since he had expelled their Mongolian deity out of Paradise; but she was firmly persuaded, that a time would come, when he should be restored, and never be subject to the like disgrace again.

Her belief,

Her particu-  
lar de-  
partment in  
conversion.

When any of these nuns, or Mongolian devotees enter into a room, they never salute any person present whomsoever, tho' 'tis a customary thing with their ladies, who live under no restraint; since their order is too strict to approve of such formal acts of complaisance. In her hand, she held a string of beads, which she counted over and over with her fingers; and was attended by a Mongolian priest, whom they call a Lama, who held in his hand likewise a string of beads, which he kept constantly counting with her, and at the same time visibly moved his lips, like one deeply engaged in private contemplation, as is customary amongst the Mongolians, as well as the (3) Calmucs. This priest, by the incessant practice of this branch of devotion, had wore his thumb, his nail, and the joints of his fingers to that degree, that he had perfectly lost the sense of all feeling in them.

A Lama, or  
Mongolian  
priest.May 1.  
The envoy's  
departure  
from Je-  
kutskoi.

Mr. Hbrants, having rested himself for some considerable time at Jekutskoi, departed from thence in a sledge, on the first day of May, and crossed the country as far as the lake Bakal, or Baikal aforesaid, where he arrived on the tenth of the same month, and found it frozen, notwith-

standing the spring was so far advanced.

When he had crossed it, he got into the country of (4) Catania. The lake abovementioned, is in breadth, about six German leagues, and in length about forty; and the ice, he found at that time, was no less than a Dutch ell in point of thickness.

It is a very dangerous passage, however, if it happens to snow, and the wind proves high, at the same time; and as the ice is very slippery, and the snow driven off by that means, great care must be taken, that the horses are all properly shod for that purpose. When the winds are violent, and the horses improperly shod, the traveller too often meets with holes in the ice, into which he is too often plunged unawares. The ice there frequently cracks, thro' the impetuosity of the winds, with a noise almost as loud as thunder; but it soon knits, and joins together again.

As the camel and oxen, which are accustomed to travel into China must unavoidably cross this lake, as they go thither from Jekutskoi, the former, in order to enable them to proceed on their journey with safety, are provided with a sort of boots well shod for the purpose; and very sharp irons are fastened on the hoofs of the latter; for without such care and precaution, they would never be able to stand on the smooth slippery surface. The water, however, of this lake is perfectly sweet, notwithstanding, at a distance, it appears as clear and as green as the ocean itself. Numbers of seals are to be met with in the fissures of the ice, which are perfectly black; whereas those in the (5) white sea are, for the most part, of divers colours.

This lake abounds with all sorts of fish, but more particularly with pike and sturgeon; and some of the latter are of such an enormous size, that they will weigh little less than two hundred German pounds. The only river that flows from this lake is the Angara, which runs to the north-west; there are several, however, that empty their waters into it, the principal whereof, is the Silinga, which

169

The lake of  
Bakal, as  
Bakal de-  
scribed.Its passage  
dangerous.Faint can-  
neling oc-  
casioned by  
violent  
winds.The man-  
ner of con-  
veying this lake  
with camels  
and oxen.



1693

rises to the southward in the Mongolian country. There are some brooks, indeed and rivulets that fall into it from the rocks, and there are some little islands in it likewise. Its borders, and the adjacent lands all round about it are inhabited by the Burates, Mongulians and the Onkotes, and produce a large quantity of fine black fables. Besides, the inhabitants frequently catch an animal, called the Kaberdiner, which is very advantageous.

The superstitions that are imputed by the natives about this particular lake.

In regard to the above-mentioned lake, it is very remarkable, that when travellers draw near it, on the side of the convent or monastery of St. Nicholas, which stands on the spot, where the river Angara flows out of the lake, the inhabitants with abundance of warmth and superstition, give them warning never to call the lake, whilst they are crossing it, by the name of Ofer, or Still-water, but a lake; for fear they should be overtaken by tempestuous

weather, and perish in the storm, as too many had done before them, who had been so rash and presumptuous as to give it the ill-omen'd appellation above-mentioned.

This superstitious precaution, however, of these natives appeared so idle and so groundless, to Mr. Isbrant's, that he never scrupled to call it the Still-water, during his passage over it; and notwithstanding their predictions, he arrived safe at the castle of Catania, which is the first fort in the province of Dauria, in the midst of very fine weather, sincerely commiserating the ignorance and enthusiasm of those poor deluded heathens, who stand in awe of, and tremble at the fury of the elements, instead of putting their trust and confidence in the Almighty, who is the great creator, and lord of the universe, and holds the winds in the hollow of his hands.

1693

The castle of Catania.

### Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

(a) Baikal, or Baikal, a great lake in the middle of Siberia, in the road from Moscow to China.

(b) China, see p. 66. n. 1.

(c) Hamburg, east long. 9. 40. lat. 54. a great city and port-town in Germany, in the circle of lower Saxony, and duchy of Holstein, situate on the river Elbe, 70 miles south-east of the German ocean, 40 miles south-west of Lubeck, and 55 north-east of Bremen. It stands on the north-side of the river Elbe, partly on islands, and partly on the continent; the territory subject to it is small, but there are several large villages and noblemens seats in it. The tide flows through the channels, which separate the islands; and the town lies so low, that in some spring-tides they receive great damage in their houses. They have spacious streets, and their houses are built of brick, very high, and make a grand figure. As the town is naturally strong, it is as well fortified by art also, as a town of that magnitude can well be; and it is exceedingly populous, merchants from all parts of Europe resorting to it, from whence their goods are sent into the middle of the empire by the Elbe. All provisions are plentiful here, and their beer has such a reputation, that they export a great deal of it. They have ve-

ry elegant gardens, and summer-houses for several miles about the town, on the land side; and on the water, ships come up to their doors, to deliver, and take in their lading; the tide flowing sixteen miles above the town. It is an imperial city, or sovereign state, governed by its own magistrates, subject only to the general laws of the empire, as other princes and states are; but the people have sometimes disputed the authority of the senate, of late years, and the empire has interposed, and compelled them to put an end to their dissensions by force. And the king of Denmark, as duke of Holstein, sometimes lays claim to the dominion of this city, and extorts money from them; for as he is possessed of the fortress of Gluckstat, towards the mouth of the river, it lies in his power to distress them pretty much. Their liberties also are sometimes endangered by religious disputes with the Roman catholics, in whose behalf the emperor sometimes interposes, as he did in the year 1708, commanding a body of troops to march into the city, and they were forced to buy their peace. They are at variance also with other denominations of Protestants; for the Lutheran persuasion, is established in this city; and they will tolerate no others, whether Popish or Protestant, except in the chappels of foreign ministers, and will suffer none of their subjects to resort to these.



1693

(d) Persia, see p. 64. n. c.

(e) Russia, or Moscovy, see p. 7. n. a.

(f) Tartary (Chinese) see p. 18. n. l.

(g) Xanxi, or Xanfi, a province of China in Asia, bounded by the province of Peking on the east; by the great wall on the north; by the province of Honan on the south; and by the river Croci, which divides it from the province of Xenfi on the west.

(h) Suchoen, a province of China, is bounded on the north, by the province of Xenfi; by Honan and Hugnam on the east; by Quecheu and Yunam on the south; and by the moun-

tains of India on the west, its chief town is Chintu.

(i) Mongulians, or Mogulians, the natives of a part of Tartary, which lies north of India and Persia. Tamerlane, one of the Mogul princes, conquered India and Persia, and from him the present Great Mogul, or emperor of India, is descended. Samercand, in Ulbre Tartary was the ancient seat of their empire.

(b) Moscovy, or Russia, see p. 7. n. c.

(l) Calmucs, see p. 162. n. b.

(m) White-sea, see p. 7. n. b.

1693

## C H A P. XXV.

*Mr. Isbrants departs from Katania, and arrives at Udinskoi. A Description of the latter, and the Parts adjacent. He sets out again from Udinskoi, and arrives at the Fort of Jeranna. A Description of the Natives. He arrives afterwards at Nerzinskoi. A Description of that Place, and of the People who reside therein, and in the Country on each side. He arrives at last at Argunskoi, the very last Fort belonging to his Czarian Majesty. The situation of it described.*

Feb. 11.  
The party  
departs  
from Kat-  
nia.

ON the eleventh of February, Mr. Isbrants departed from the castle of Catania, and on the next day arrived at the large town, called Ilniskoi, or Bolsi Saimka, the principal inhabitants whereof are (a) Russians, whose occupation, for the most part, during the winter-season, is hunting for fables; since they can scarcely subsist on the products of their soil; as the whole country abounds with barren hills.

Feb. 14.  
Arrives at  
Tanzin-  
skoi castle.

On the fourteenth he arrived at Tanzinskoi castle, where there was a considerable garrison of (b) Cossacs, in order to oppose the outrages and depredations of the (c) Mungulians, who reside upon the frontiers.

Feb. 19.  
Arrives at  
Udinskoi.

On the nineteenth he arrived at Udinskoi, situate on a high hill at the foot whereof the greater part of the inhabitants pitch their tents, under the cannon of that

fort, all along the banks of the Uda, which empties its waters into the Salanga, about the fourth part of a league below the town, in which there is likewise a strong garrison of Russian Cossacs, in order to observe the motions of the Mungulians.

This town, which is the quay to the province of Dauria, lies, even in the summer-season, greatly exposed to the insults and incursions of the Mungulians, who frequently drive off what cattle they find grazing in the meadows. Tho' the land there, which is for the most part mountainous, is so barren, as scarce to be worth their manuring; yet they have plenty enough of cabbages, carrots, and turnips, and other vegetable food of the like kind; but there is not a tree of any sort whatever planted in those parts at this very day.

About nine at night, whilst the envoy

A descrip-  
tion of their  
town.

was



1693

An earth-quake.

was here, there was a violent shock of an earthquake, which greatly surprized him; for in the space only of one hour, it shook all the houses no less than three times successively; but as providence ordered it, no fatal consequences attended it.

Though the river Uda produces but a very small quantity of fish; (pike and roach only excepted) yet, in the month of July in particular, there are surprizing shoals of one species of fish, which are there called the Omuli, and which swim up the river from the lake of (d) Baikal. These Omuli, in point of size, are about the bigness of our herrings. It is observable, that very few of them are ever seen above the town, but seem to rest themselves at the foot of a decayed hill, for two or three days only at farthest, and then return to their native lake. Great quantities of them, however, are caught by only throwing a large sack into the water, instead of a net; and those sacks are frequently dragged up with as many as they can hold. Here Mr. Isbrants was indispensibly obliged to tarry till the sixth of April, in order to furnish himself with a sufficient number of camels and horses for the prosecution of his journey.

April 26.  
Crossed by land to the river Ona.

On the 26th he went to the river Ona by land, which flows from the north-north-west, and empties its waters into the Uda.

On the next day he travelled to the river Kurba, the spring, or fountain-head whereof lies to the north-north-west, and empties its waters, in the same manner as the Ona, into the Uda.

He kept as close as possibly he could to the banks of this river, till he arrived at about the middle of its source; and notwithstanding, he was several times obliged to leave it, indeed, at some distance; yet he always took care to keep it within view.

April 29.  
Arrives at Jerauna.

On the 29th he arrived at the fort of Jerauna, and was highly delighted with meeting with some towns again in his way, after he had traversed a long, tedious desert, full of rocks, during which, he met not with one single passenger from the hour he departed from Udinskoi.

This fort is supplied with a very considerable garrison of Cossacs; and in this place there are resident great numbers of Russians, whose principal subsistence consists in the sale of fables.

The Konni Tungusians, who are all Heathens, and inhabitants of the banks of those two rivers, Tunguski and Angara, disperse themselves all over this country, and speak a language, understood by no one but themselves.

The inhabitants of this country.

When any of these natives dye, they are buried in their cloaths, with their bows and arrows deposited by their sides; and when the ground is filled up, it is covered with large stones. When this ceremony is over, they drive a stake into the ground hard by, to which the best horse that the deceased was possessed of is fastened, and soon after killed, with some kind of solemnity, as an oblation. Their principal subsistence depends on the sale of their fable furs, which in this country are extremely fine, and of a very beautiful black. Here likewise, great numbers of what they call Luxes are to be met with, and a kind of dark-grey Squirrels, which the (e) Chinese, in former times were accustomed to hunt down, and carry away with them.

The manner of burying their dead.

To the northward of this fort, there are three small lakes to be seen, which are situate but at a small distance from each other, and are about two leagues in circumference, computing all together; in each of which there is great plenty of pike, carp, perch, and other fish of the like kind. From this place there are two roads leading to Zitinskoi, otherwise called Plabistcha. Mr. Isbrants sent part of his retinue by the one, and his caravan proceeded to the southward; keeping along the banks of the lake, called Schakze Ofer, and then crossed the hills of Jablufnoi, that is to say, of Apples. There are none grow there, however; and those hills produce only a red sort of a fruit, which has, indeed, somewhat of the flavour and taste of an apple. The other road he took himself, with fourteen of his attendants notwithstanding the way was very moorish; and besides he had several high rocks to pass over

X x

be-



1693

before he could reach Telimta; at which fort there are great numbers of Russians, who, during the winter-season, catch fables of a beautiful black, that are fat and well fed, and no ways inferior to the very finest that are to be met with throughout (f) Siberia, and the whole province of Dauria.

A Knez, or  
prince of  
Tungus,  
visits the  
envoy.

Here the envoy spent one night, and a Knez, or prince of the Tungusians, whose name was Liliulka, came to visit him. This lord wore his hair, twisted up with leather, which was so excessively long, that it went three times round his shoulders.

As Mr. Isbrants told him he should take it as a favour if he would gratify his curiosity so far as to let it flow loose; and as the Knez was in high spirits, having drank a little too freely of brandy, he very readily complied with his request; and upon an exact admeasurement it proved to be no less than four German ells in length; and the hair of his little son, who was but about six years of age, and was present with his father, which hung down upon his back, was at least an ell long. These natives of Tungus, are very populous, and dwell upon the hills and mountains of this country; and most of them are in good circumstances, thro' their advantageous traffic in fables.

The envoy and his retinue past for two days together over stony hills, which were very high, especially to the north-west and the south-east. The river of Konela, which afterwards is distinguished by the name of Wittim, rises there towards the north; runs to the north-east, and proceeding onwards empties its waters into the (g) Lena, and from thence into the Icy or Northern-sea. The Zitta commences about half a league from thence, on the other side of the mountains, and discharges itself into the Ingodda, or Amur, and from that river into the eastern ocean.

May 15.  
The envoy  
arrives at  
Plodbitscha.

On the 15th of May, Mr. Isbrants arrived at Plodbitscha, but the caravan on the day before, which had been greatly incommoded in its passage from the Tungusians, as they had set fire to the grass, which was extremely dry; insomuch that, the

cattle standing in want of forage, they were obliged to go as far as the mountains for it, which lay at least a league out of their way.

Mr. Isbrants was obliged to stop for two or three days at Plodbitscha, which is situated on the river Zitta, not only in order to refresh himself after his fatigue, but to procure some rafts, by the help of which he might fall down the rivers of Amur aforesaid and Schilka, and get to Nerzinskoi; for the waters were so very low, that there was no possibility of going in boats; neither was it, indeed, perfectly safe to go upon those rafts where the places were rocky, and two of them in particular were broken and decayed, which were laden with some part of the envoy's equipage; however, with some difficulty the whole was preserved.

When all matters were in readiness, Mr. Isbrants sent his camels, and other beasts of burden before him towards Nerzinskoi, by the way of the mountains, and followed them in person on the eighteenth of May. On the nineteenth, he proceeded on his journey as far as the Onon, which rises from the Mungalian fens, and empties its waters towards the north-east into the Amur, where, upon the union of their streams, they roll down together by the name of Schilka.

Their waters are perfectly white, and their banks are inhabited by a great number of hords, or clans of the Mungalians, who are frequently committing insults on those who reside on the other side of the Schilka, and as far as Nerzinskoi. They are not always, however, successful in those outrages and invasions of their neighbours; for they frequently meet with strong repulses, and whenever they happen to be overpowered, they are executed immediately, without the least hopes of a reprieve, as audacious free-booters. The Russian Cossacs likewise set out in bands, and steer their course all along the banks of the Onon, in order to chastize those invaders wherever they can find them. They give, in short, no quarter; and carry death and desolation with them wherever they go.

On

1693



1693

On the twentieth of May, the envoy arrived safe at Nerzinskoi, situate on the river Nerza, which flows from the north-north-east, and empties its waters into the Schilka, at about a quarter of a league distance from the town; the fort whereof is well defended by strong out-works, and furnished, not only with a great number of brass artillery, but well guarded by Daurian Cossacks, who serve in both capacities, as horse and foot. Notwithstanding this place is encompassed round with high hills; yet there are meadow-grounds in the parts adjacent, sufficient for the plentiful provision of grafs for their camels, horses, and all their other kinds of cattle. And moreover, at about a league or two distance from the hills, there are several parcels of low-lands fit for tillage to be met with, which are capable of producing all such conveniences of life as the inhabitants can reasonably desire. At the distance of about four or five leagues above the town, and ten below it, on the banks of the Schilka, there are several substantial Russians as well as Cossacks to be met with, whose principal subsistence depends on tillage, grazing, and their large dealings in fish. In the parts adjacent to the town, and at the feet of their hills there is plenty of all sorts of flowers, as well as plants; and amongst others the bastard Rhubarb, otherwise called Rapontica, of an extraordinary growth; exceedingly fine yellow as well as white lillies; white and red piones, that are peculiarly fragrant, and of divers species; add to these, thyme, rosemary, lavender, sweet Marjoram, and a great variety of other odoriferous plants, which are unknown in our European countries. As for fruit, indeed, they have none to boast of but their gooseberries.

Two kinds of the Indians are heathens.

Their idols.

The heathens, who have for many years past resided in this part of the country, and are under the jurisdiction of his Czarian majesty, are of two kinds; and distinguished by the names of the Konni Tungusians, and the Olenni. The former are obliged to appear on horseback, whenever the Waiwode of Nerzinskoi thinks fit to issue out orders for that pur-

pose; or when the borders of that place are in the least invaded by the (d) Tartars; the latter, on the other hand, are obliged to serve on foot, and to stand to their arms in the town, upon all emergent occasions.

The head, or principal of the Konni, is a knez, or lord, by name Paul Petromitz Gantimur; one, pretty far advanced in years, and a native of Nienheu, where he had acted in the capacity, or high post, of a Taifka, under the power and jurisdiction of the king of China; but having casually given some disgust to that prince, he was deposed, and removed into Dauria, with his hords, or vassals. This knez, having embraced the Christian faith, and been admitted a member of the Greek church, sheltered himself under the protection of his Czarian majesty. In four and twenty hours time, this lord, or knez, has it in his power to bring no less than 3000 men into the field of battle, if occasion requires, all well mounted, all able and experienced foldiers, and all accoutred with their bows and arrows. A small band, or body of these men, not above forty in number, will frequently put to flight three or four hundred of the Mungalian Tartars, if they attempt to attack them. Such of them as reside either in this town or the parts adjacent, subsist principally on their traffic in cattle; but those who live on the banks of the Schilka and the Amur, trade chiefly in fables, which are exceedingly fine there, and of a most beautiful black.

The head or chief of the Konni.

They live in tents, or huts, which they call Jurtas, the inside whereof consists of poles, which are joined, or framed in such a manner together, that they can be removed with all the ease imaginable; as they are frequently obliged to shift their habitations. As soon as these poles are erected, they are covered over with skins, that part where the smoke of their chimneys is to have its proper vent only excepted. Their fire-places are for the generality in the center of their huts; and they have seats of turf all round about them.

Their place of shade.

Their method of devotion, or form of divine worship, is much the same with that

Their worship.



1693

The Aeffs  
and was like  
no other  
ments of  
their ing-  
nity.

Their lives  
collided.

Thief sea.

Their water  
stalled  
from rain's  
rule.

The more  
certain why  
they might  
use of  
more's  
will.

that of the inhabitants of Dauria, from whom they pretend to derive their pedigree, and differs in no one essential article from that of the Tartars, quite to the frontiers of the Mungulians.

The women here are as robust, and have as broad faces as the men; and when on horseback, appear with their bows and arrows, in the use of which they are remarkably dexterous, as they are accustomed to them even from their infancy: neither is there any material difference in their habits from those of their men, as the reader will plainly perceive by the plate annexed.

Water is their drink for the generality among the poorer sort; those, however, who are in more easy circumstances, indulge themselves in drinking tea, which by them is termed Kara'tza, that is to say, black tea; because it changes the water in which it is infused to a blackish colour instead of green. This tea they boil in mare's-milk, mingled with a proper quantity of water, to which they add some grease, if they are unprovided with butter.

They have, moreover, a sort of liquor, which, when distilled, they call Kunnen, or Arak, which is an extract from mare's-milk, and deposited into a vessel, whilst hot. To this they add a small quantity of sour milk, and then stir it once or twice perhaps within the compass of an hour. When it has continued in this condition for about twelve hours, they pour it into an earthen vessel, which is covered up close, and pasted over, and then distilled, in the same manner as is customary amongst us Europeans. This is required to be twice repeated before it is fit to drink; and after that, it becomes as clear and strong to the full as any malt-spirit, and will have the same intoxicating effect.

It is very observable, that the cows in Siberia, Dauria, and in short, in any part of Tartary, will never stand still to be milked, whilst they have any calves at their dugs, and as soon almost as they are out of their sight, their milk is lost. This is the true reason why they make use of

mare's milk instead of that of the cow; but besides, the milk of the former is not only fatter, but much more soft.

These savages employ themselves in hunting, during the spring-season, and lay in their stock of venison much after the same manner as the Burates, and dry it afterwards, as they do, in the beams of the sun.

Their bread, which they call Surana, and which they apply to various uses, is composed of the dried roots of the yellow lilly.

These natives are very dexterous in shooting fish in the waters with their arrows, and seldom miss their mark, tho' they stand sometimes at the distance of fifteen or sixteen fathom. As their arrows are for the most part very heavy, they are fit only for the killing of pike, or trout, which swim pretty close to the bank side in clear water, and there lie on the gravel. These when they are shot, are split asunder, like a lamb by a butcher's cleaver, the points of their arrows being no less than three or four fingers in breadth.

These people, when they are under an indispensable obligation to take a solemn oath, put the following abominable and shocking custom into practice. In order to prove their innocence, and acquit themselves of the crime laid to their charge, they take a dog, and open one of his veins on the left-side, from whence the person accused sucks his blood, till the poor, harmless creature drops down dead at his feet. Mr. Ibrants was an eye-witness of an operation of this kind whilst he was at Nerzinskoi, in respect to two Tungusians, who were then in custody as hostages, to be accountable for the integrity and innocent deportment of their country-men, who were dispersed up and down in Siberia, and go thither in order to shelter themselves under the protection of the Czar: One of these Tungusians had charged the other with having bewitched several of his companions, and who lost their lives by his illicit and clandestine incantations; but the party acquitted himself of the crime laid to his charge, by taking the oath in the manner above related, and the infor-

1693

Their employment during the freezing season.

## Their Bread

Their manner of  
rolling.

An almost-  
rude cul-  
ture prac-  
ticed fre-  
quently by  
the Tunga-  
nans.



1693

mer was punished accordingly in his stead.

The envoy tarried at Nerzenskoi for a month or more, in order to furnish him with camels, horses, oxen, and a great variety of other things requisite for the prosecution of his journey; and on the 18th of July departed from Nerzenskoi, and on the third of August then next en-

July 18.  
The envoy  
departs  
from Ner-  
zenskoi.

suing, he arrived at Arganskoi, which is the last fort on that side which belongs to the Czar.

That fort is situate on the river Argun, which rises towards the south-east, and empties its waters into the Amur, and serves as a boundary between the dominion of his Czarian majesty, and those of the king of China.

1693

August 3.  
Arrives at  
Arganskoi.

### Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

(a) Russians, or Moscovites, see p. 7.

n. c.

(e) Chinese, see p. 66. n. 1.

(b) Cossacs, see p. 156. n. a.

(f) Siberia, or Asiatic Russia, see p. 17.

n. b.

(c) Mongulians, or Mogulians, see p. 158.

n. d.

(g) Lena, (the river of) see p. 18. n. b.

(d) Baikal or Bakal (the lake of) see p. 167.

n. a.

(h) Tartars, see p. 18. n. i.

## C H A P. XXVI.

### The Envoy returns through the Dominions of the Czar to Tartary.

AS Mr. Isbrants journey beyond (a) Tartary, and his embassy to (b) China bears no affinity with our author's travels to the East-Indies, by the way of (c) Moscovy and (d) Persia, it has not been deemed any ways requisite to follow that envoy beyond the boundaries of those countries which belong to the Czar's dominions. However, as there are divers interesting and important articles in his return from Tartary, and which are consistent with our plan, we flatter ourselves that the curious reader will be by no means disgusted at our inserting them in this place.

Mr. Isbrants then departed from (e) Pekin on the nineteenth of February 1694. and on the 25th of the same month arrived at Galgan, near the much talked of wall, which parts the empire of China from Tartary. From thence he proceeded towards the river Naun, and arrived on the frontiers of Tartary, to the edge of the large desert of which

Feb. 19.  
Mr. Isbrants  
arrives at  
the frontiers  
of Tartary.

we have before taken sufficient notice.

There he tarried for some few days in order to furnish himself with necessaries for the prosecution of his journey; having hitherto had all his disbursements duly discharged by the king of China; but as that expence is no longer defrayed by his Chinese majesty when any ambassador gets once into the territories of Argun, which is the border of his Czarian majesty's dominions; the envoy I say conscious of so essential an article, had taken all due care whilst at Pekin, to furnish himself with camels, horses, and other cattle, proper for his purpose, where he could purchase them at a cheap market.

This prudent precaution answered in all respects the ends proposed; for he would have met with a sore disappointment, had he put his trust and dependance on the several horses and camels which he had left behind him at Nana, most of which died during his absence for want of

Y y

proper



1694

proper subsistence.

On the 22d of the same month the envoy made a very elegant entertainment for the Mandarin, who, by express order of the king his master, had waited on him so far, and took his farewell both of him and his retinue.

Feb. 26.  
Mr. Isbrants entered the  
desert.

On the 26th instant Mr. Isbrants entered the extensive but tremendous desert; and after two days travel, arrived at Targashia, situate on the little river called Jalo, where there was no grass comparatively speaking throughout the country, as the season was so backward. There he rested for some time after his fatigue, and was, in a friendly manner, forewarned to be upon his guard, during his passage over that frightful desert, and whilst he was approaching the banks of those two rivers Sadun and Kallar; for that no less than three thousand (1) Mungulians lay in wait for his coming, at that passage. He took accordingly all the prudent steps he could think of to prevent their intended attack, and gave orders directly for three score men well provided with arms, and on horseback, to patrol every night about the caravan; neither did he meet with any opposition, tho' expected, and advanced forwards on his journey the next morning. When he had got so far as the mountains of Jalisch, there was little or no forage to be procured; and the very next day he past over them notwithstanding it was excessively cold, and the snow lay deep, which happened very unfortunately for his poor camels and horses, which had nothing to subsist on but a small quantity of dried and withered grass. Whilst he was here he consulted with his attendants, whether he should pursue the usual route, or take a tour round to avoid any casual skirmish with the Tartars, who were in waiting, as he imagined, at the passage. Tho' the last was a very difficult task to carry into execution, and more especially as all their cattle were heavy laden; yet that resolution was unanimously approved of.

In their taking this by-road, they were obliged to pass over several very high hills,

and to traverse divers fens, which were excessively deep, for about fourteen or fifteen days successively. At his first setting out he lost no less than twelve camels and fifteen horses, and afterwards a proportionable number, which sunk under the weight of their burthens, being weak and spiritless for want of necessary subsistence and support; for this hideous desert affords no forage whatever, as we have before hinted, but a little dry and withered grass; and they were afterwards deprived even of that poor pittance; for the Tartars set fire thereto; insomuch that he was indispensibly obliged to take a double journey, in order to find out some place or another where forage was to be procured.

The greatest part of the merchants who made a part of his retinue, having lost their horses, were reduced to the necessity of pursuing their journey on foot; and as those cattle that survived were perfectly spent and their strength exhausted, they must inevitably have been constrained to leave a considerable part of their effects behind them in the deserts, had not the envoy taken that precaution of furnishing himself with a sufficient number of camels and other cattle, which were led by the bridle.

In fine, having with inexpressible difficulty, and after a thousand hardships and turmoils, reached in safety the river of Sadun, he there found the climate much more moderate, and a tolerable quantity of grass growing fresh upon the ground. Here he rested for two days and nights in order to refresh his camels and horses, which were perfectly tired and scarce able to stir.

Here a Chinese envoy who came from Masgeen, and was sent by the emperor to the Waiwode of Nerzinskoi, overtook him, and joined him with a retinue of no less than a hundred persons; and by that reinforcement, enabled him to withstand the opposition he was menaced with from the Mungulians, having at that time with him a body of six-hundred to defend him.

1694

The arrival  
of a Chinese  
envoy.

On



1694

On the fifteenth of March Mr. Iibrants arrived at the river called Kailan, which he forded at a proper place, where the water was but low; and from thence proceeded to a vale at about a league's distance, and there pitched his camp, notwithstanding there was little or no forage near the place. In this valley he tarried all the next night, and at the dawn of day he plainly discerned a considerable smoke, that arose from the north-west; which occurrence created him no small uneasiness, as he had too just grounds to suspect that the Tartars had set the withered grass on fire, in order to make their intended attack upon him, as the wind and smoke were in their favour. And as his welfare first depended on the protection of providence, and after that on the safety of his camels, mules, and other cattle in his train, he ordered them to be led behind an adjacent hill, where there was forage, and where the flames could never reach or affect them. At the same time he gave orders for an hundred men in his retinue to advance with felts towards the smoke; as it was a customary practice to cover the camels, &c. in order to extinguish the flames, and prevent its spreading too near their caravan.

A dreadful fire.

However, notwithstanding all these prudent precautions, the fire gained ground space through the impetuosity of the wind, instantaneously destroyed the withered grass that was near half a foot high, and gave him no time to convey his tents to a farther distance, by which means no less than twelve of them were in a moment, as it were, reduced to ashes, and the flames flew like a flash of lightening over their caravan. The flames likewise caught hold of several pieces of valuable goods, and scorched fourteen persons belonging to the train in a dangerous manner, tho' but one indeed, who was a Persian, actually perished in the flames. In the mean time, Mr. Iibrants had withdrawn himself to the summit of a hill, where there was no grass upon the ground, and attended only by two of his domestic servants who covered him over with a felt.

From this place, the flames, in the

twinkling of an eye, as it were, flew away to that particular spot to which the Chinese envoy had retired at some considerable distance upon the hills; but as they were perfectly spent before they reached him, he was in no great concern about the affair.

In a word, tho' this fire spread in an instant all along as far as the river Kailan, yet it spent itself there, which was at a league distance, however, from the caravan.

This fire having thus consumed all the grass that was standing near Mr. Iibrants, he sent his guide to search out for some commodious place in which the caravan might spend the night; but he did not return till the next morning, at which time he brought the melancholy news, that there was no manner of forage to be found within two days journey of the spot whereon they then stood, the flames having destroyed every thing in their way; and that even in some of those particular places, where the grass had escaped their fury, there was not a quantity remaining any ways sufficient for the provision of such a number of camels and horses that were in his train. This was a melancholy article, indeed, for the whole caravan.

Whereupon the envoy proposed to re-pass the Kailan, at that place where the flames had stooped, and beyond which, he had just grounds to hope that a stock of grass might be met with to answer their purpose; but that proposition was overruled, as it was thought a too dangerous attempt, being apprehensive of falling in with the Tartars on that side; and for that reason, it was deemed more advisable to venture upon a march for two days, tho' destitute of every convenience, than to run the risque of falling a sacrifice into the hands of those merciless barbarians.

At dawn of day, the caravan began their progress, and soon after sun-set, they halted on one side of a large fen, having gone through an inexpressible fatigue; besides the misfortune of losing no less than eighteen camels and twenty horses in those mar-

1694

The caravan in great distress.



1694 marshy grounds. And that misfortune was still aggrandized, as the cattle that survived were ready to sink under the weight of the loads and harnesses of those that were actually dead; the merchants dreading the fatal consequences of leaving them behind.

The caravan  
is in great  
danger.

The day following they traversed once more several marshy vales, and lofty hills, and at length advanced as far as the river called Margeen, where no disaster had befallen the gads. When they had forded that river, they proceeded with the utmost hazard as well as fatigue, as their camels, which were perfectly spent, and decreased gradually as they advanced on their journey, were unable to keep pace with the caravan. And what was still a more afflicting circumstance than all the rest, was this, viz. their stock of provisions began to fall short, and consisted now of nothing but a parcel of such lean, raw-boned cattle, as scarce had strength to follow them; and were by no means a sufficient stock for such a numerous train: and the rather, because it is not customary on these occasions, to make any great provision of bread or other refreshments; since the merchants want their cattle to carry their loads of goods; and moreover, since they could not well bear the additional expence of purchasing camels for no other use than carrying provender for the rest.

Are obliged  
to come to  
short allow-  
ance.

As all this was duely weighed; and as they had still near a fortnight's journey before they could reach to Argun, they began to think of coming to short allowance, and to take a survey of the remainder

of their stock in general, that each man might have his just dividend without favour or affection.

On the eighteenth instant, after numberless apparent dangers, and almost unsurmountable difficulties, they reached the river, called Gan, which they forded, as the waters happened at that time to be very low, and, as fortune favoured them, they met with plenty of grass on the other side.

Mr. Isbrants determined to rest here for three days successively to refresh himself a little, after such an almost inexpressible fatigue; and here, indeed, he would have tarried, it is very probable, some considerable time longer, had not the merchants, the (g) Cossacs, and the guides belonging to the caravan, represented to him in very affecting terms, the deplorable state and condition to which they were reduced; namely, that they were forced to eat the very blood of the cattle which they killed; that they preserved it till it came to the consistency of a piece of liver, and then made shift with it instead of bread; that some even fed upon the very skins, after the hair was stript off, which they cut into small portions, and broiled them for their subsistence: in short, that others fed upon the entrails; and that they much feared it would not be long before they should be drove to the dreadful necessity of living after the manner of the Cafres and Hottentots, on raw flesh, and of devouring every morsel, the very excrements themselves not excepted.

1694

And almost  
starved.

### Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

(a) Tartary, see p. 18. n. i.

(b) China, see p. 66. n. i.

(c) Moscovy, or Russia, see p. 7. n. c.

(d) Persia, see p. 64. n. a.

(e) Pekin, see p. 66. n. n.

(f) Mongulians, or Mogulians, see p. 158. n. i.

(g) Cossacs, see p. 156. n. c.

### CHAP.



1694

1694

## C H A P. XXVII.

*The Envoy arrives at Nerzinskoi. He departs from thence. Arrives at (a) Tobol, and from thence at (b) Moscow.*

MR. Ibrants being informed, that the banks of the river Gan, and the parts adjacent, abounded with rein-deer, and stags, selected several of his retinue, who were excellent marks-men, and well-accustomed to the bow, in order to give them chase. They set out accordingly, and proved so successful, as to return with no less than 50 of the former. These by the envoy's directions, were distributed amongst the train belonging to the caravan, whose appetites were so keen, that they could scarcely have patience to stay till they were dressed: there is nothing, doubtless more shocking, than to be in a famishing condition; and nothing so transporting, as to have it in one's power to appease that excessive hunger; the quenching of one's thirst only excepted.

Mr. Ibrants, however, dispatched one of his retinue, attended by eight (c) Cossacs to the governor of (d) Argun, in order to inform him of their deplorable state and condition, and to request of him to furnish them with such provisions as their uncommon distress required.

The governor, indeed, lent an attentive ear to their petition, and readily consented to take their melancholy case into his serious consideration; but it required some time to send them the proper succours; and every minute seemed, as it were, an age, to such persons as were reduced to the lowest ebb of distress, and just upon the point of starving.

In the depth of this dreadful calamity, they unanimously resolved to remove from the banks of the Gan, and pursue their journey with vigour. At the expiration, however, of three days, they were plunged into deeper distress than ever; insomuch that famine actually stared them in the

face; the rein deer above-mentioned, being but a trivial refreshment for such a number of persons for three hungry days successively, in a long, lonely desert, that afforded no manner of subsistence. Their business, however, at this critical conjuncture, was to make a virtue of necessity, and to exert their patience to the utmost, under a calamity that could by no means possibly be remedied, or relieved. At last, tho' tired and fatigued to the last degree, they happily arrived at the banks of a small river, in which there was great plenty of trouts and pike; which, in that country, the natives, as has been before hinted, shoot with arrows.

Such of the Tungusians and Cossacs, therefore, as made a part of Mr. Ibrants train, secured a great number of them, which, together with the several rein-deer, they had successfully hunted down in the evening, contributed greatly towards the refreshment of the half-famished caravan.

The persons who were selected from the train, to scout the mountains for provisions, met in their way with a Shaman, or Magician, who happened to prove the uncle of the envoy's guide, who was a Tungusian by birth; and there are a considerable number of those Shamans in that country. The envoy (about midnight) was waked out of a sound sleep, by an unexpected out-cry which alarmed him so far, as that he hurried out of his tent, with precipitation, and enquired of the watch, from whence that disturbance arose? He was presently informed, that it was nothing but the result of his guide diverting himself with his relation; which excited his curiosity so far, that he determined to go to his cell, or hut, with one of the watch only for his attendant. No sooner had he reach-

A tentmate  
filling and  
boiling  
boils.



1694

reached the hut-door, but he perceived his guide and his uncle deeply engaged in their magical incantations; and notwithstanding the much greater part of their diabolical ceremonies were over, Mr. Isbrants perceived, at his first arrival, that the Shaman held an arrow, with the blunt end fixed upon the ground, and that the point of it touched the tip of his nose. About a minute afterwards, the Shaman starting from that position, made a most hideous out-cry, and after jumping round the hut three times, sank down into a profound sleep. The next day, those Cossacs, whom Mr. Isbrants had dispatched, in order to make a narrow search for provisions, returned, and informed him, that the said Shaman, or Magician, had accidentally met with his nephew, and, in their fight, had carried him off the premises; an action, that might very easily occur, without the aid or assistance of any magical operation, in the dead of the night, and amongst a parcel of unfrequented mountains. The envoy, however, at the very same juncture, received the agreeable news, that he should be furnished, within three days time, with all such necessities as he had requested, from the governor of Argun; an article of that importance, that it gave fresh vigour to the whole caravan, who at that time stood in need of all the common necessities of life.

Proper provisions arrived from the governor of Argun.

This timely relief, accordingly, with the blessing of the Almighty, came safe to hand on the third day, which consisted, not only of five and twenty oxen, with some additional cows; but a large quantity both of bread and oat-meal. The officers, however, that brought the caravan this seasonable relief from Argun, embraced that favourable opportunity of making their market of the train; for they obliged the merchants to deposit a crown for every loaf, and to pay in proportion for every article that they were thus so humanely supplied with: the purchasers, however, considering the half-starved condition they were in, never murmured in the least at their exorbitant demands.

Having at length, very comfortably refreshed themselves, they pursued their journey with some alacrity; and arriving at last at the end of that long, tedious desert, where they had met with so many repeated mortifications, they came in their progress to several meadow-grounds, which gave a double relish to their late refreshments.

On the 27th of March, they reached, to their infinite satisfaction, the banks of the river Argun, which they crossed the very next day, and on the 31st arrived in safety at Nerzinskoi, where they returned their solemn and unfeigned thanks-givings to the Almighty, who had delivered them from the jaws of death.

There they rested for some considerable time; but on the fifth of August, departed from thence by land, coasting it all along the banks of the river, and in three days time arrived at Udinskoi; where they met with proper vessels, in which they embarked, fell down with a fair wind, and by the dawn of the next day advanced as far as the frontiers of (e) Siberia.

On the 12th, they arrived at Jakutskoi; from whence they departed on the 17th for Jenizeskoi, which they reached with safety, notwithstanding the imminent dangers to which they were exposed, from the floods that had poured down upon them for several days.

Mr. Isbrants, on the 26th, proceeded on his journey by land, and passed through a thick wood, which was near 20 leagues long, and abounded with game not only of the fur-kind but the feather; but both of them proved too cautious to be caught.

After that, he arrived at the town called Makoskoi, where he met with as many vessels as he wanted to transport both him and all his train down the Keta; and on the 28th of September following, he arrived at Ketskoi-castle situate on the (f) Oby.

He met with no obstructions in his passage down that river; and on the 16th of October then next ensuing, he arrived safe at the town of Samorosskoi-jam, which

1694

March 31.  
The envoy arrives safe at Nerzinskoi.

Arrives at Jakutskoi, and at Jenizeskoi.

which a letter on the  
his  
the he arrived here  
of being made  
the prisoners  
and on the 29th  
arrived at Tobolsk  
for three weeks  
only to mind himself  
each month as he judged  
for the protection of  
and in which he was  
No.

August  
(1) Tobolsk, Sept. 1st  
(2) Moscow, Sept. 22nd  
(3) Orel, Oct. 7th  
(4) Argun, Oct. 14th

SEPTEMBER

Of (a) Siberia in  
Kind of them  
Weyl's Service  
Jacinth Account

THE envoy, who  
from Jakutskoi  
account of his travels  
properly declared, for  
him, that he applied  
and made of his, was  
very of showing the  
remains here for the  
his return, as a token  
of travellers, who  
with what they had  
then by their only  
necessities of the  
winter, and with  
some regard whether  
to make it good. I  
legally where  
flourish them for



1694

Oct. 29.  
Arrives at  
Tobol.

which is situate on the mouth of the Irtysh.

Here he tarried some few days, in expectation of being enabled to make use of sledges in the prosecution of his journey by land; and on the 29th of the same month arrived at Tobol, where he resided for three weeks successively, in order, not only to refresh himself, but to secure all such materials as he judged most requisite for the prosecution of his journey, an end to which he most sincerely wished for.

On the 24th of November, he passed through the city of Wergotur, without any casualty attending him on the road, and on the 1st of January 1695 he arrived in safety at Moscow, where he paid his compliments to the Czar, and gave him a particular account of his negotiation, after a tedious journey of three years or thereabouts, during which time, he had laboured under a thousand hardships and fatigues.

1694

Nov. 24.  
Reaches  
Wergotur.

Jan. 1.  
Arrives at  
Moscow.

*Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.*

(a) Tobol, see p. 148. n. a.

(b) Moscow, see p. 23. n. c.

(c) Cossacs, see p. 156. n. e.

(d) Argun, see p. 66. n. s.

(e) Siberia, or Asiatic Russia, see p. 17. n. b.

(f) Oby, the river, see p. 18. n. e.

(g) Irtysh, the river, see p. 148. n. s.

C H A P. XXVIII.

*Of (a) Siberia in general. Of the (b) Samoëds, and the various Kinds of them. An accurate though compendious Description of Weyat's Straits; with the Burgo-master Witsen's Illustrations. A succinct Account of the Mountain, called Pojas, &c.*

THE envoy, who has made the several subsequent additions to the account of his travels into (c) China, peremptorily declares, for the reader's satisfaction, that he applied himself wholly to real matters of fact, without any sinister views of advancing the least marvellous or romantic story for the embellishment of his relation, as is the too frequent practice of travellers, who frequently assert for truths what they have communicated to them by hear-say only, without taking the circumstances of the narrative into due consideration, and without the least concern or regard whether they are grounded on truth or falsehood. In other respects, he ingenuously acknowledges, that he has strictly observed the exact order of events

as they actually occurred, and that he has omitted divers incidents, that might be well-worthy of being introduced, and expatiated upon to advantage; for which act of remissness, he begs the candid reader's pardon, and his permission to revise and correct those little imperfections, and touch them up with more accuracy and exactness.

Mr. Isbrants then (as we have hinted before) traversed Siberia and Dauria, and gave a full and satisfactory account of the several countries, cities, towns, and rivers, from north to east, that is to say, from Weygat's Straits to the river called (d) Amur, and from the west of the Uffa, as far as the country of the (e) Mongulians, and after that, from the west even to the

A recapitulation of his journey.



1695

A descrip-  
tion of Si-  
beria in  
general.

the south.

The frontiers of Siberia, according to Mr. Isbrants, are plentifully supplied in all places with (f) Russian troops, who entertain no thoughts of, nor make any attempts towards the oppression of those (g) Tartars who reside in the southern parts of that country, or towards making them tributary to his Czarian majesty; especially, since it is evident, that prince would reap no benefit or advantage from such rash proceedings. The kingdom of Siberia, and the country all round about it, is of a vast extent, as is apparent from the map, which was inserted in the very beginning of these travels; in respect to which, the reader must have recourse to the degrees, without being over-curious as to the exact distance of places, whether towns or rivers within the boundaries of this country, which may sometimes prove, perhaps, a little defective in point of a league or two, little more or less and; the reason he urges for requesting that indulgence is this; namely, that even those geographers and historians, who have given us an account of that country, never crossed it themselves; neither has there ever been published an accurate and actual admeasurement thereof. However, he assures us, that, upon the whole, no pains had been spared in him to attain the best knowledge of it he possibly could; and that, in order thereto, he made use of all the instruments which he thought requisite for answering that end, and that afterwards, he ranged and fixed all the parts and places according to the best of his judgment. And modestly concludes, that he submits with pleasure the honour of making more interesting and important discoveries to others, who may make the same tour after him; and thinks it credit and reputation enough for him to have paved the way, and been the first German, who ever ventured to traverse those dangerous and lonely deserts, quite as far as China, both forwards and backwards.

Mr. Isbrants, moreover, modestly declares, that he was indebted, for his first instructions towards planning a general map of this country, to one Mr. Witsen, a

burgo-master of Amsterdam; for whom, as well as for the whole body of literati, he shall ever retain the utmost veneration and respect.

He farther declares, that the aforesaid Mr. Witsen, was the first gentleman, that ever obliged the Europeans with a general map of Siberia, and of the countries of the (b) Calmucs and Mongulians, and divers other nations, quite as far as to the celebrated Chinese wall; and, in a word, that the said map was so accurately laid down, that he made it his principal guide and direction when he travelled into those parts, and that he made use of it as the ground-work and foundation of that new map, which is here offered (by way of embellishment) and prefixed to these entertaining travels.

He commences at the northward, that is to say, at the country of the Samoëds and Wangulians, who are under the jurisdiction of Siberia, and the Waiwodes of Pelun quite as far as to the sea.

There are divers kinds of these Samoëds, who talk a distinct language from each other; such as those of Berezofsky and Purstorse, who are generally looked upon as one and the same nation; those that reside on the sea-coast to the east of the (i) Oby, as far as Truchamskoy, or Mangazetskoy; and those who inhabit the parts adjacent to (k) Archangel, upon the (l) Dwina, during the summer-season, but dwell in tents or huts, and in the woods, during the winter.

These last are the absolute aversion of those who dwell along the sea-coast; which they have abandoned on purpose to reside in those parts.

As to those Samoëds, who inhabit the coast of the northern sea, they have but little more of the human species to boast of than barely the form; they are savages, for the most part, of little or no understanding, and, upon the whole, look more like unpolished bears than men.

They live (as wild beasts do) on the dead carcases of horses, asses, cats, and dogs; as also, on such whales and seals as are driven on shore by large mountains of ice; and so very indolent and slothful are these hu-

1695

Divers kind  
of Samoëds.

CO  
My hunter lives, the  
country which they the  
with this food, and  
the animal down with  
the animal, which  
it is improving it by  
the  
There are, however, a  
kind, distinguished by  
certain characteristics  
which are by them to  
be known of first, as we  
shall see of the Coss.  
One, who had related  
to me at Peking  
I have information of  
others when they travel  
by river, which which  
not only the animal  
of which here.  
In the great animal,  
representations of the  
are killed, as the  
themselves who drive  
animals to the coast of  
rivers, and their  
to the sea coast.  
Their chief, indeed,  
and here their design  
by air, and sometimes  
they travel. The  
own a company of  
caravans, in the year.  
With respect to the  
with which he said, the  
country, and they said  
the work can be more  
visible to the light,  
they are first, and very  
and shouldest not be  
and their lips thick,  
hanging down, their  
their eyes more than  
their other features.  
Wander-bears, their  
long, and some over  
of some pale, but the  
also, notwithstanding  
but, this beast is by  
flowing black and brown  
creatures, however, it  
is a little, and very large.



1695

human brutes, that notwithstanding the country which they thus inhabit abounds with fish, fowl, and cattle, they will still sit contented down with such carrion as above-mentioned, without the trouble of improving it by any art of dressing.

There are, however, certain chiefs, or heads, amongst them, to whom they make certain acknowledgements, which are afterwards sent by them to the governors of such cities or forts, as are under the jurisdiction of the Czar.

One, who had resided for some considerable time at Postoi-Ofer, gave Mr. Isbrants information of the method they observe when they travel in sledges, drawn by rein-deer, which with incredible swiftness cross the mountains that are covered with snow.

In the plate annexed, the reader has the representation of a sledge, to which the deer are harnessed; as likewise of the Samoeds themselves who drive them; and are clothed in rein-deer skins, with the fur outwards; and their bow and quiver thrown over their shoulders.

Their chiefs, indeed, are dressed in scarlet, and have their sledges drawn, sometimes by six, and sometimes eight rein-deer properly harnessed. The point of their arrows is composed of the tooth of the narwhale, in the room of iron or steel.

With respect to their persons, it may with truth be said, that they are frightful creatures; and that nothing on the face of the earth can be more shocking, or disagreeable to the sight. As to their stature, they are short, and corpulent; their faces and shoulders are broad; their noses flat, and their lips thick, blubbered, and hanging down; their mouths are wide, and their eyes more disagreeable than any of their other features. They look perfectly weather-beaten; their hair is excessively long, and flows over their shoulders; some red, some pale; but black is the prevailing colour: notwithstanding this profusion of hair, their beards are but short, and their skins are thick and swarthy. These ugly creatures, however, are very active and nimble; and very dexterous in their art of

driving. The rein-deer, which they thus harness to their sledges, bear a very near resemblance to our European stags; their antlers, or horns, are much alike, tho' their necks, indeed, are more like those of the dromedary; but what is peculiarly remarkable in them is this, that though they are grey in the summer, they are perfectly white in the winter. Their usual food is a sort of moss, which they meet with in the woods upon the ground in plenty.

As to all other respects, these savages are all heathens; and every morning and evening pay their adoration to the sun and moon, and bow down their heads, tho' not quite so low as the (m) Persians. They have idols likewise, which they hang up in the trees that grow round their huts, or tents; some composed of wood in a human form, and others dressed up in irons, to which they pay some particular acts of devotion. Their cabins, or huts, are covered with the bark of several birch-trees, sewed together. When they remove them from one spot of ground to another, which is a common custom amongst them every winter and summer, they fix the poles to each other, and then cover them with the barks of trees, leaving a hole, however, at the top of them for the passage of their smoke. Their fire-place is usually planted in the center, and they lie round about it in the night, as naked as they were born, both men and women; and as to their children, they put them into boxes, or rather cradles, made of the bark of trees in the same manner as their cabins, and fill them with the raspings of the said timber, which is as soft as down, and then cover them up with the skins of the rein-deer.

As to their marriages, they pay no regard to consanguinity; and purchase their wives, for whom they give in exchange either rein-deer or furs. Neither do they confine themselves to one, or any particular number, but inter-marry with as many as they see convenient to maintain. At their leisure-hours of amusement, they plant themselves two and two, one before the other, and making particular motions

A a a

with

1695



1695 with their legs, they give each other pretty smart flaps with their hands upon the soles of their feet. They grunt in their diversions for all the world like bears, and their singing bears some resemblance to the neighing of their horses.

They have, moreover, divers magicians amongst them, who perform a great variety of diabolical pranks, or rather delusions. But it is time now to drop our discourse of these savage Samoëds.

All the four-footed beasts, whether wolves, bears, foxes, or rein-deer, that are to be met with upon this coast, as far as Weygat's Straits; nay, quite to Meseen, are as white as the snow itself during the winter-season: and the same observation may be truly made of their birds, ducks, partridges, and other feathered fowl. 'Tis farther remarkable, that the cold there is so very intense, that the crows, and some other birds are frequently frozen as they fly, and drop down dead upon the spot; to an instance whereof our author solemnly asserts, that he was once an eye-witness.

As to Weygat's Straits, not only the English, but the Danes and the Dutch have given us divers accounts of them. After several attempts to pass through the frozen channel thereof, which they were never able to accomplish above once or twice at most, on account of the obstructions they meet with from the ice in those seas, no historian has ever obliged the public with so copious a description of it, or treated of it in so accurate a manner, as Mr. Witſen, the Burgo-master of (n) Amsterdam, above-mentioned. And he, indeed, spared no pains to procure a thorough information of that particular place, having conversed for that purpose with several travellers who had been actually upon the spot. And the curious map that he has exhibited of those Straits, and its shores as far as the Oby, is a demonstration of his indefatigable industry in that particular. By that map of his, it is evident, that the sea there is no ways navigable, from those Straits as far as the Icy Cape, notwithstanding as enterprising a man as Christopher Columbus formerly was, should undertake the bold attempt; since it is alto-

gether impracticable to penetrate those mountains of ice that block up the passage, and notwithstanding the stars continue to point out the course he was to steer. The great Author of Nature has surrounded, and fortified the Siberian coasts with such a profusion of ice, that there is no ship whatever can reach so much as the river Jenisa, much less be able to double the Icy Cape, and go down to Jedso or Japan.

Mr. Ibrants had been informed by several Russians who had often passed through the Weygate-straits, as far as the mouth of the Oby, in proper vessels for the catching of seals and the narwhale, that, at the time when the wind blows from the offing, that whole coast is so incumbered with ice, that those who happen to be then there, are indispensibly obliged to fly for shelter into some small gulphs, or little rivers, in order to escape the danger, and to ride there contentedly till such time as a wind from the shore blows the ice off again to sea, which it does so effectually, and to all intents and purposes, that not the least signs of it are to be discerned in those straits, for the distance of several leagues: that as soon as the ice is so removed by that means, they put to sea again with the utmost expedition; but take care, however, at the same time, how they leave the coast, till another brisk gale from the sea reduces them to the necessity of making a second retreat into some rivulet, or other place of safety, that their vessel may not be crushed to pieces, or otherwise lost through the ice that should fall down upon them.

Mr. Isbrants adds to this relation, that, about fifty years before, some particular Russians who resided in Siberia, procured a public license for furnishing themselves, in proper places situated on the coast, with such provisions as they might have occasion for; such as corn, flower, &c. and in exchange for them to transport the natural products of Siberia by Weygate's-straits, without the least molestation or restraint, to the same places, upon the payment of such duties as should be imposed upon them by the Czar: that these people, how-

ever,

W 2221  
0513

1695



1695 ever, having abused that important privilege by clandestinely conveying of divers other kinds of merchandize by other rivers in Russia, to the great detriment of his Czarian majesty's revenues, they were restrained from trading any longer in those Straits; and an order was issued out for the said commodities to be brought by Berefove, and the Kamenkoi, or the rocks of Pojas.

This, however, is not only very difficult to be accomplished, but very incommodious, because, in their passage from Berefove, they lie under an indispensable obligation to cut their canoes, or little barks, which are hollowed out of the trunk of a tree, directly into two equal parts; and in that manner to drag them over the mountains for several days together; and as soon as they have reached the most northern part of the country, they join them artfully together again, and proceed on their voyage to Archangel, or to some other places situate on the river Oby.

Mr. Isbrants likewise went to the Pojas, which is a rock, or more properly speaking a chain of stone-mountains, which begins at Petzerkai, and extends a-cross the country of Wergotur, and Wolock, without the least discontinuance; and from thence proceeds to the south, on one side of the Ueka castle, quite as far as the country of Uffian Tartars, from whence springs the river, distinguished by the name of Uffi, and to the eastward of those two rivers called Nitra and Tuna; the last of which empties its waters to the north-west into the Kama.

This chain of mountains after that extends southwards towards the frontiers of the Calmucs, and the spacious river of Jaika, in which there is great plenty of fish, flows out of it to the westward, and then proceeds, till it empties its waters into the (o) Caspian-sea. The (p) Tobol likewise issues from it to the northward. They proceed afterwards to the eastward along the country of the Calmucs, and the frontiers of Siberia, on one side of those two lakes, distinguished by the names of Saifan and Kalkulan; from the first whereof flows the Oby, and from the last, the (q) Irty. From the Kalkulan, the Pojas again extends itself to the southward, from whence flows the (r) Jenifia, the mouth whereof is in the icy sea of Tartary.

These mountains, in the next place, form an elbow, and divide themselves after that into the north-east and south; to the northward all along the river Jenifia; and to the southward, on one side of the lake, called Kofogol, from whence proceeds the river Silinga, which empties its waters into the lake, called (s) Baikal. From thence this Pojas stretches away still farther to the sandy desert of the country of the Mongulians; and having penetrated into it some considerable way, it divides again, and extends to the southward as far as the famous wall of China before-mentioned, and then stretches out eastward quite as far as the sea, as the curious reader may plainly perceive by consulting only the map of the travels of this envoy.

*Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.*

- (a) Siberia, or Asiatic Russia, see p. 17. n. b.  
(b) Samoëts, see p. 17. n. c.  
(c) China, see p. 66. n. 1.  
(d) Amur, or Amour, see p. 18. n. b.  
(e) Mongulians, or Mogulians, see p. 158. n. i.

- (f) Russians, or natives of Moscow, see p. 7. n. c.  
(g) Tartars, or natives of Tartary, see p. 18. n. i.  
(h) Calmucs, see p. 162. n. b.  
(i) Oby, the river, see p. 18. n. e.  
(k) Archangel, see p. 8. n. d.

(l) Dwi-

A description of the Pojas.



1695

(d) Dwina, river, see p. 23. n. b.

(m) Persia, see p. 64. n. e.

(n) Amsterdam, see p. 108. n. f.

(o) Caspian-sea, see p. 66. n. g.

(p) Tobol, see p. 148. n. a.

(q) Irtyz, see p. 148. n. r.

(r) Jenifia, or Jenisa, see p. 18. n. f.

(s) Baikal, or Bakal (the lake of) see p. 167. n. a.

1695



## C H A P. XXIX.

*A Description of the Tartars of Uffi and Baskir and of divers other Hords, or Clans. A succinct Account of the Towns of Tora Tomskoi, and the Parts adjacent. Of the Inhabitants of Tungus, and the people, called the Burates, &c. A short Description of the Natives of Dauria, Koreifi, and other Nations. A short Account of the Icy-Cape, of the Town of Jakutskoi, &c.*

THE natives of that country which is very extensive, and lies between Pelin and Wergotur, along the river, called Zufawaya, and as far as the country of Uffi, are all heathens.

Kungur.

The river, called Kungur, on the banks of which reside the Tartars of Uffi, has its source or spring in the country of Uffi, between the Zufawaya and the Uffi, and proceeds till it empties its waters into the Kama, on which the town of Kungur stands, where there is a garrison belonging to the Czar.

The natives of Uffi and Baskir.

These natives of Uffi and Baskir reside in the parts adjacent to the town of Ossa, and are dispersed up and down, in little hamlets, or villages, (built much after the manner of those in (a) Russia) to the westward, as far as the Kama, and all along the (b) Wolga, or Volga, and extend almost to the cities of Saratof and Sarapul, which are situate on the Wolga, where his Czarian majesty has likewise strong garrisons for keeping the Tartars in subjection, and for collecting his duties there, which are principally paid in furs and honey. The governors, however, of these places are obliged to deport themselves with some degree of courtesy and complaisance towards the inhabitants all round about; lest they should murmur, or rise up in rebellion, and disclaim his Czarian

majesty's dominion over them.

There are likewise divers other hords, or clans of these same Tartars, who reside in the south-west part of the country, and in the kingdom of (c) Astracan, who are under no subjection whatsoever, and unite with those (d) Calmucs who are their neighbours, in order to make their occasional excursions into the country of (e) Siberia. These Tartars, however, cultivate the lands about them, and sow divers sorts of grain there, which they carry home to their cabbins, or huts, when they have reaped it, and threshed it in the field. These people have, moreover, not only the finest honey the world can produce, but a prodigious quantity of it.

Other Tartars.

Their usual dress is a strong cloth, of a light grey colour, and much like that which is worn by the peasants of Moscow.

The dress of their men.

Their women appear for the most part in their shifts, from their girdles upwards, except the weather proves intensely cold indeed; which shifts are not only striped, but worked with silk of divers sort of colours. In other respects, they wear petticoats, much after the German mode, and slippers, which cover only the end of their feet, and are fastened about their ankles. As to their heads, they dress them

Of their women.

com-



1695

commonly with a long ribbon about the breadth of four fingers, which they tie behind, and work with silk of various colours, in the same manner as they do their shifts. These, likewise, they embellish with coral, and glass beads, which hang dangling about their eyes. Some of them, indeed, wear them higher upon their foreheads. When they go a-visiting, they cover this head-dress of theirs with a handkerchief, not only wrought with silk, but adorned likewise all round with a fringe.

These natives of Ussî and Baskir, are brave soldiers, and excellent horsemen. They wear no other arms, indeed, than their bows and their quivers; but those they use with great dexterity and address. They are strong and sturdy, for the most part, and moderately tall; their shoulders are broad; and as to their beards, they let them sometimes grow to a great length. Their eye-brows are so thick, that they cover, not only their eyes, but their foreheads likewise. They have a language, it is true, peculiar to themselves; but can understand and converse with the Tartars of Astracan, though different from their own.

As to their religion, most of them are heathens; but there are some amongst them who are Mahomedans, through the persuasions of the (f) Crim Tartars, with whom they correspond in a very friendly manner.

The Calmucs reside chiefly between the springs, or fountain-heads of those two rivers the (g) Tobol and the (b) Oby, and extend themselves as far as the lake called Jemusowa, which abounds with a kind of rock-salt. To this lake about twenty or five and twenty Docheniques, that is to say, Russian small vessels, come from the town called Tobol, and up the (a) Irtysh constantly once every year with a strong guard of no less than 2500 men; and as Jamusowa lies at some considerable distance from the Irtysh, they travel the remainder of the way by land. When they arrive at the lake, they cut the salt, as they would cakes of ice, upon the banks, and convey it afterwards to their respective ves-

sels, notwithstanding all the obstructions that they meet with from the Calmucs; with whom, upon these occasions, they have frequently several smart engagements.

As you pass down the Irtysh, a little below the above-mentioned lake, and enter upon the little river Tor, you come to the little river, called Tora, which is the last frontier-place belonging to his Czarian majesty, and borders upon the dominions of a Calmuc prince, called Bostu-chan.

The natives of this country, (which extends from the city of Tora, situate on the Tor, from whence it derives its name, towards the east, as far as to the Oby, over against the river Tom, and the city situate thereon, called from thence Tomskoi) are distinguished by the name of the Barabinsky.

These traverse the country of Barnabui in the summer as well as the winter, tho' more particularly during the cold months; because the Oby, at that season of the year, is by no means navigable, by Sargut and Narum; for which reason, all travellers are then indispensably obliged to go into Siberia by Tomskoy and Jemusiskoy.

These Barabinsky, who are a kind of Calmucs, pay their acknowledgements, by way of tribute, not only to the Czar, but to the prince Bostu-chan likewise above-named. They have three heads, or chieftains, whom they distinguish by the name of Taisi, who are collectors of all the duties that are imposed upon them, and account, at proper times and places, with his Czarian majesty for his peculiar dues, or demands upon them: the first place, appointed for that purpose, is the town of Tora; the second the castle, or fort, called Telgwa, and the last, the fortress, or castle of Kulenba: their whole tribute, however, is paid in furs.

They are a turbulent, warm sort of people, and addicted to warlike exploits, notwithstanding they live in huts, or cabins, erected in the woods, much after the manner of the Siberian Tartars. In these, they admit of no stoves, but of little chimneys, which may more properly be termed tubes, or pipes only, for the discharge of their smoke; which said tubes or pipes,

B b b

when

1695

Are here  
called and  
excellence  
them.

The Barabinsky

Are a kind  
of Calmucs

Have three  
chieftains

Their  
clothes

The Jemusowa  
lake, full of  
rock-salt.



1695

when their wood is burnt down to a coal, are stopt up close, in order to keep in as much heat as possibly they can; and, when the fire is out, they open them again.

Their habi-  
tations.

In the summer-time, these people reside in little villages, or hamlets, under huts, or tents, erected in a very slight manner; but during the winter-season, indeed, they take care to have their cabbins more firm and substantial: they cultivate the lands that lie all round about them; and they sow barley, oats, and french-wheat, &c. but no rye. However, when any bread is offered them, made of that last kind of grain, they seldom, if ever, refuse to accept of it; but chew it, indeed, with some seeming tokens of disgust, as unpalatable, and for the most part throw it away, or spit it out, as if it went against their stomachs.

Their bread  
and other  
food.

Instead, therefore, of rye, they make use of clean barley, which, after it has been duly parched in a hot iron-kettle, grows as hard almost as any stone; and this they take care to eat the very next day that it is so parched as aforesaid. They make likewise a kind of flour, of their Sarana, as they call it, which is the root of their yellow lilly; and with a proper quantity of it make a kind of soup.

Their drink.

As to their drink, it is for the most part a liquor distilled from a proper quantity of mare's-milk, which they call Kumis; or else they drink what they call Karaza, that is to say, a black sort of tea, with which commodity, they are principally supplied by the Bolgares.

Their arms.

They make no use of any other warlike weapons than bows and arrows, in which they follow the example of the other Tartars. They have cattle of almost all sorts amongst them; but no hogs; they have plenty likewise of furs, in their country; that is to say, fables, the skins of squirrels, ermins, foxes, and other creatures of the like kind. This country of theirs extends to the Tor aquite to the Oby; and tho' there are no mountains to be met with there, yet there is a great plenty of lofty cedars, birch, alders, and woods, which are standing in rows on the banks of several small streams, or rivulets, whose

Their furs.

waters are as clear and transparent as chrystal. 1695

These natives, as well the women as men, dress much after the manner of the Calmucs; and they are indulged with as many wives as they please, as far as their circumstances will admit.

Their dress.

Their wives

Their idols.

When they traverse the woods, in order to hunt down their game, they take their Saitan, as they call it, along with them; which is an image, made of wood, inelegantly carved with a knife only, and covered with a parti-coloured stuff, not unlike that which is frequently worn by the female Russians. This idol, or Saitan, of theirs is inclosed in a box, which is carried upon a particular sledge; and to this their god, they offer up the first-fruits of their chase, be it what it will, without any exception.

When they prove more successful than they could reasonably expect, and when safely arrived at their respective cabbins, this Saitan, or idol, is deposited in the most conspicuous part of their tent, or hut, in its proper box, and covered over with the finest furs they are masters of, by way of grateful acknowledgement of the great success they have met with thro' their means; and there they are left untouched till they are grown rotten and worthless in process of time; for they are firmly convinced, that they should be guilty of the most heinous sin of sacrilege, should they strip them of those robes, or apply them to any other purpose whatsoever.

Their usual  
present to  
their Saitan,  
when suc-  
cessful in  
the chase.

When you are got beyond the Oby, you come to Tomskoi, which is a frontier-place belonging to the Czar; this Tomskoi is a fine, spacious city, well fortified, and well furnished with a numerous garrison both of Russians and Cossacs, in order to oppose the incursions and outrages of the Siberian Tartars. In the suburbs likewise beyond the river, there are planted a large body of Buchar Tartars, who pay homage, and certain duties to his Czarian majesty. This beautiful place is situate on the river Tom, from whence it derives its name, the spring, or fountain-head whereof lies in the country of the Calmucs.

An account  
of Tomskoi.

Here



1695 Here they carry on a large trade with (k) China, which is principally conducted by the Chan of Bafuchtu, and by the Buchars, amongst whom we may reckon several Russian merchants. They perform their journey to China, it is true, in about three months, and return in the same compass of time, but it is attended, both backwards and forwards, with incredible difficulties and fatigues; for in some particular places, these traders are indispensibly obliged to load their camels both with wood and water. In the prosecution of this journey, you must cross the country of the Calmucs, and so proceed to a place called Kokoton, a city which belongs to China without the wall.

It is not practicable, however, for the Russians, and other strange nations to undertake this journey: because the country is over-run with free-booters, who plunder all travellers in general, without distinction, except they are provided with sufficient guards to withstand their attacks.

As you fall down the river from Tomskoi, the country all round about is a perfect wilderness, even as far as the town Jenifelskoi, an absolute plain, but full of copses. And it is much the same, or very little better, between the two rivers called Kia and Zulim, even as far as to the two towns, called Kusnenskoi and Krasnagar, where the country is inhabited on the borders only, which adjoin to those of the Kirgises, and are under the dominion of the Chan of Bafuchtu.

The last-mentioned city is a fort, with a strong garrison in it, who are principally Cossacs, and subject to the Czar, in order to withstand the outrages and devastations of the Kirgises. In the market-place, accordingly, there are always no less than 20 troopers, well accoutred, planted before the governor's palace, and their horses stand ready saddled both night and day. For notwithstanding, it is true, that the Kirgises are at peace with the Siberians; yet there is no manner of dependance, no trust or confidence to be put in that pacific alliance; for they frequently carry off clandestinely the inhabitants of the out-

parts of the town, and of the villages round about it; and their cattle likewise when opportunity admits. The Cossacs, however, make them often pay very severely for the depredations they are guilty of in so fraudulent and illicit a manner.

These Kirgises extend themselves towards the south-east, even as far as the country of the (l) Mongulians, who are a robust, and warlike people, tall, broad-faced, and bear a manifest resemblance to the Calmucs.

Tho' bows and arrows are their principal arms; yet they seldom or never enter upon any expedition, without being furnished with fine coats of mail, and long spears, or lances, whose points almost trail along the ground as they ride on horseback. They reside for the most part in the mountains; where they are in no manner of danger of being taken by surprise.

Their language bears a very near affinity to that of the Calmucs; and most of them can talk that made use of by the Crim-Tartars likewise, to which the Turks are no strangers.

From Krasnagar, as you pass down the river (m) Jenisa, or Jenisa, even as far as Jenifelskoi, the country is inhabited by the Tungusians and Burates. The castle, or fort of Ilinskoi is situate on the frontiers of the Mongulians, opposite the Pojas before-mentioned, between the two towns, called Jenifelskoi and Selinginskoi. Though this place, thus situated, is not very spacious; yet it is furnished with a very good garrison, chiefly consisting of horsemen, in order to guard and protect the western part of the country of the Mongulians, and to withstand the frequent ravages and incursions of the Mirotti, Mily, and Burates, who are all Tartars, dependent thereupon.

In the parts adjacent to this town, there is great plenty of sandal-wood to be met with, which is remarkable for its peculiar hardness. The Burates, who live at present under the shelter and protection of the Czar, resided formerly in the country adjacent to Selinginskoi; but ever since they have been found guilty of uniting with

1695  
Their trade  
with China.

1695

Their arms.

Their language.

Their language.

The Tungusians and Burates.

A desert country.

The country of the Kirgises.



1695

with the Mongulians, through the instigation of the Chinese, they have been removed into the country round about the lake of (n) Baikal, in the mountains, and there they pay their tribute to his Czarian majesty all in furs.

There is a mountain, which stretches out from this town to the northward, even as far as the last-mentioned lake of Baikal, where there are the finest sort of fables as well as furs. The country of the Mongulians contains the whole extent between Kologol lake to the eastward, even as far as the great desert; from thence to the Mongulian lake, called Dway, and to the country of (o) Argun; and after that, towards the north-west, even as far as those two rivers, called Onon and Sikoi. They live under the government of three heads, or chieftains, who are brethren, the first of whom is named Kuttugt, who is high-priest likewise of his nation: the name of the second is Aziroi-Sain-Chan, who lives in peace and perfect friendship with Kuttugt; but the third, whose name is Elict, and whose frontiers abound on the territories of the western Tartars, is committing daily outrages and depredations, and is guilty of robbing and plundering all he meets with, even as far as the Chinese wall; without paying the least regard to those presents which the emperor of China annually sends to the Tartars all round about, in order to tempt them to be inviolably attached to his interest, as their rightful sovereign. The two others have thrown themselves under the shelter and protection of his Czarian majesty; because they are under apprehensions of being insulted by the Calmucs, and particularly those who are dependent on the prince Bafuchtu-Chan, by whom they were very sorely injured and oppressed in the years 1688 and 1689.

The castle of Argun.

Let us now return, however, to the frontiers belonging to his Czarian majesty; and in the first place, to the fort, or castle of Argun, which is situate on the western part of the river of that name. That castle is defended by a Russian garrison, and the inhabitants round about are all

Konni Tungusians, and tributary to the Czar. 1695

The strength of the Tungusians.

These Tungusians are a very warlike people, and in this place, are capable of bringing into the field 4000 men, who are well armed with their bows and quivers, and very expert and dexterous in the use of those hostile weapons. So formidable, in short, are they, that the Mongulians durst not venture to face them, or any ways injure or oppress them, but by clandestine robberies in the dead of the night.

Their dress.

During the winter-season, they dress themselves in some skins or another, or rather in the fleeces of their sheep; and they wear sandals, or boots, in the same manner as the natives of China. There is a broad rim, or border of fur to each of their caps, which they wear either up or down, according to the inclemency, or mildness of the weather. As to their girdles, they are armed with iron, about four fingers broad, and an arrow, that serves them on occasion for a flute. In the summer, they shave their heads, and wear no caps. They reserve, however, one lock behind, as is customary amongst the Chinese. As to their dress, they wear a blue Chinese cloth, which is quilted with cotton, but have no linnen underneath it. In a word, they are almost beardless by nature; their faces are, for the most part, rather broad than thin; and take them all together, they bear a near resemblance to the Calmucs.

Their chase.

When their stock of provisions begins to grow low, they go in hords, or clans, to hunt the rein-deer and the stag, which they first drive before them together, and then they surround them. When they have shot a sufficient number of them, and they very seldom miss of their aim, they fairly divide the spoil between them; as to their women, they dress much after the same manner as the men do; and the only difference that is any ways perceptible, is that they have two tresses of hair, which fall down on each side upon their breasts.

Poligamy is a constant practice amongst them; and every man may indulge himself,

the women control  
as to circumstances  
them. They are  
more in their choice  
than without making  
a copy, whether  
the position of my  
for them.  
Though they remain  
there as I said in the H  
they pay him so tri  
we make the best for  
by way of prayer.  
closed to consider this  
in order to be able  
shall ever with friend  
by having much, as  
upon their neighbors,  
the negligence by her  
had when they pr  
them. They make a  
more milk, which  
termed, and then dis  
one, between two ca  
they say, which is a  
egg. This makes  
the both the men and  
the lower is such place  
country will be made  
connected with their  
Their women will do  
their houses, with ex  
men, and make af  
room will equal the  
men.  
filled of bread, the  
yellow tiles tiled, and  
doubt in a form, they  
of soap. They scold  
yellow dye in oil of  
however, as well as  
who are in the best co  
vined and curled;  
though there, who  
the period of seven  
my observations made  
out in ten, who are  
position of the re  
which with a com  
the is an exchange  
clash, and other such



1695

self, without controul, with as many wives as his circumstances will permit him to maintain. They are not, it seems, over curious in their choice; for they purchase them without making the least scruple, or enquiry, whether they have been in the possession of any stranger or not, before them.

Their religion.

Though they entertain the notion, that there is a God in the Heavens above; yet they pay him no tribute of adoration; nor make the least formal addresses to him by way of prayers. When they are inclined to consult their Saitan, or Magician, in order to be informed whether they shall meet with success in their approaching hunting-match, or in any incursions upon their neighbours, they visit him in the night-time by beat of drum.

Their amusements.

And when they propose to regale themselves, they make a kind of arrack of mare's-milk, which they let stand till it is turned, and then distil it twice or thrice over, between two earthen vessels, closely stopp'd up, to which is affixed a small wooden pipe. This makes a strong spirit; and this both the men and the women will tipple down in such plenty, that the whole company will sometimes be downright intoxicated with their liquor.

Their married women and maidens.

Their wives and daughters will mount their horses, with as much activity as the men, and make use of their bows and arrows with equal dexterity and judgment.

Their bread.

Instead of bread, they eat the roots of yellow lillies dried, and when they are reduced to a flour, they make with it a kind of soup. They neither understand, nor practise the art of agriculture. There, however, as well as in other places, those who are in the best circumstances are most valued and carested; and there are some amongst them, who may properly be said to be persons of fortune; who carry on a very advantageous trade with the Targafi and the Xixi, who are people under the jurisdiction of the emperor of China: which trade or commerce principally consists in an exchange of furs for blue cotton cloth, and other cloths, and large quanti-

ties of tobacco. They pretend to be descendants of those Targafi, or the Aorfi, with whom they contract alliances, and live in a perfect state of love and friendship.

When you have gone about half a days journey from the fort of Argun into the mountains, you will find, that a silver mine has fallen in there, and to this very day plainly discern several melting-places, which the inhabitants of Nienchen and Dauria formerly made use of. From this place to Nerzinskoi, which is the principal city of Dauria, it is a ten days journey by land, in case you ride upon camels.

It is a very fine country, and divided into several parcels by brooks or rivulets, upon the margins whereof, you will meet with abundance of the finest plants, and the most beautiful flowers that nature ever produced. In the mountains, and on the tops of the hills, you will find grass of at least three feet in height. The country, however, all round about lies perfectly unmanured, as it is in the possession of such Tartars as are tributaries to the Czar of Moscow.

Having travelled through the country of Argun, and traversed the large river called (p) Amur, towards that other of Gorbisa, which is deemed the common boundary of his Czarian majesty's dominions, and those of the emperor of China, whose territories extend eastward from that last-mentioned river, quite as far as to the sea; and those of his Czarian majesty westward and northward: to the eastward of the Gorbisa, we came to the rivers, called Tugur and Uda; which lie to the northward of the Amur, and flow down till they empty their waters into the Chinese ocean, or the sea of Amur.

Between these two rivers, the borders whereof are inhabited by Tungusians Alemeuri and Kereisi, a vast number of fables are taken.

It is highly probable, that the Kereisi last-mentioned, came originally from the place called Coela, which does not lie at a great distance, and to which, in case one meets but with a fair wind, it is but a few days passage. It is the general opinion, that

1695

A description of Dauria.

The frontiers of Siberia and China.

A description of the Kereisi.



1695

that they came first and settled on the borders of the Amur, and that in process of time, they extended their limitations.

Those  
chiefly by  
fishing or  
hunting.

Those that reside on the sea-coast, get their principal subsistence by fishing; and those who live higher up in the country, by hunting; and frequently enrich themselves by those excursions; because there are no finer furs in the whole world than there are in these parts.

The islands  
of this part.

The inhabitants of the adjacent islands constantly visit the two last-mentioned rivers once a year. Their aspects and deportment are comely and graceful enough; they cloathe themselves in the finest furs, under which they wear a silk vest, after the mode of the (9) Persians. They are for the most part tall proper men, and their beards give them an air of majesty. They frequently deal with the Siberian Tartars for women and maidens; for they are very amorously inclined; and give fables and black fox skins, (of which according to their own account there is great plenty in those islands) by way of exchange. They even tempt the Tungusians of Siberia to come and visit them; and in order to induce them to become traders amongst them, they insinuate, that the country of Jakutskoi formerly belonged to them; and it must be acknowledged, indeed, that their language, in some measure, seems to confirm such a conjecture.

The river called Ogota runs to the northward of the two rivers last-mentioned; and between them and that of Uda, there are a great number of whales to be met with upon the coast, and even as far as to the frozen cape; where there are seals and narwhales in great plenty.

The Kaxi  
and Koeliki.

The town of Kamfatka, and the whole coast beyond it, is inhabited by other nations, who are distinguished by the names of, the Xaxi and the Koeliki, whose language is widely different from all the rest.

Those who

reside upon the coast cloathe themselves in the skins of seals, and dwell in caverns under the earth, and are for the

most part poor and indigent: those, however, who have their habitations farther up in the country are more substantial people, and regale themselves frequently with fat venison and raw fish, and when they wash themselves make use of their own wine.

In other respects, these are a people in whom no trust or confidence can well be put; since they have very little, if any notion either of, honesty or honour.

Their arms are nothing but slings, but then they are exceedingly expert and dextrous in the use of them. For seven months of the year successively the ground there is covered with snow; notwithstanding it is seldom very deep, and falls only at the commencement of the winter-season.

Near Kamfatka, there is a gulph, in which the inhabitants round about it, take a prodigious number of narwhales, and divers other animals that frequent the sea.

As to the frozen Cape, the farther it extends itself into the sea, the more it is cut and divided and formed into distinct islands. At some small distance above Kamfatka, there is a particular passage, where those who fish for the narwhale only find their expectations fully answered. One part of those, who reside in Anadiskoi, and Sabatsia, are Xuxians and Koelikiens; and the river, called there Salafia, abounds with herrings, sturgeon, and what they call Sterbeth and Nebna.

As you proceed higher up the country, you meet with divers houses, situate on the banks of the river Simaniko, which are inhabited by the Cossacs, who are under the dominion of his Czarian majesty, and who collect there the tributes which are paid by the Tartars in those parts to their sovereign lord and master. And as it is in that part of Siberia where they take the greatest number of fables and lynxes; all along the rivers; so the inhabitants of those parts are burthened with heavy duties in proportion.

The climate of this country, which the Moscovites call Sweetfoinos, or the sacred Cape,

1695

The diet of  
these people  
is.

Their arms.

A description  
of the  
frozen cape.

The climate  
exceedingly  
cold.



1695

Mountains  
of ice.The river  
Lena, and  
the town of  
Jakutsk.Their dress  
peculiar.Their reli-  
gion.

Cape, is excessively cold; and it freezes there in that surprizing degree, that the islands of ice there, when driven by the winds, form tremendous and lofty mountains, which have the appearance of solid ground. Sometimes, however, those hills are scattered and disposed, by the violence of the wind, into numberless pieces; but then they soon join with others that are floating on the waves, by which means they are converted into high mountains again. This sea, we are credibly informed, is sometimes perfectly frozen over for two or three years successively, without intermission; a memorable instance whereof was well known from the year 1694 to the year 1697.

The great river called (r) Lena, rises towards the south-west, near Baikal-lake, which parts Siberia from Dauria. On this river is situate the town called Jakutskoi; from whence there are several vessels that set sail, during the summer-season, for the sea-coast, and the openings of the cape of Sabatia to Anadieskoi, and to Kamlatka, in order to catch narwhales, and provide themselves with a sufficient quantity of whale-oil. For this purpose the Tartars in those parts make use of small barks, composed of leather, which they manage with surprizing dexterity and art. The natives of Jakutskoi, and those who reside on the banks of the river Amur, are distinguished by the names of the Jakutes whose dress is peculiar to themselves.

Their coats are cut in some degree after the German fashion, and made of furs of various kinds, and of various colours, sewed together, with a white border of hind-skin, about four fingers in breadth; these coats are open both behind, and on each side; but they wear no linnen underneath. As to their hair, most of them let it grow to a great length.

As to their religion, they acknowledge a supreme Being to be in Heaven, who blesses them with life, food and rayment; as also with wives and children. They have an annual festival, moreover, at which

they make their solemn oblations to him of Kunis and Arrack. During the time this grand festival lasts, they abstain from drinking, and kindle up great fires, in which they sprinkle their best liquors; and in this ceremony, their whole free-will offerings principally consist.

When any of them happens to dye, they bury his nearest relation along with him; a custom that bears some affinity to that barbarous one of the savage Indians, whose wives are indispensibly obliged to accompany their husbands to the fatal pile, and burn along with them under the ridiculous notion, that they may never be separated from them in the world to come.

As to their language, it bears a near affinity to that usually spoken by the Mahomedan Tartars, who reside within the jurisdiction of Tobol, and are originally natives of Bolgar. They indulge themselves likewise in polygamy. As to their method of travelling, they are sometimes drawn by stags in sledges; and sometimes again they ride upon them; and gain a vast compass of ground in a short time.

They are a sort of people, that are naturally brave and courageous, have some taste of honour, and look upon lying as an odious vice, and the certain mark of a mean spirit. Notwithstanding, however, these notions of generosity, they will sometimes be guilty of the most flagrant outrages and disorders, and shamefully invade their neighbours property, when ever it happens, that the governor of Jakutskoi, (under whose inspection and command they are) connives at their proceedings, and does not call them to account for their incursions. It is true, however, that when his eye is upon them, and he keeps them under due subjection, they are submissive and peaceable enough, and peculiarly cautious how they give offence. Nay, it must be allowed, in their favour, that they entertain a real affection for him, and would be extremely sorry for the loss of him. They pretend to be descendants from

1695

Their times.

Their language.

Their parties  
order discipline.



1695

from the Mongolians and the Calmucs, and to be transplanted to the northwards by the Russians.

Their  
manner of  
curing the  
scurvy.

The distemper to which they are most naturally subject, is the scurvy; but even that they cure themselves by eating of raw fish, and what they call Deughti, which is a kind of tar.

The cus-  
toms of  
the Juko-  
gates in  
respect to  
their dead.

There is another sort of heathens who reside in that country, who are distinguished by the name of the Jukogates. These people have a custom peculiar to themselves, in respect to their relations when they die. In the first place, they strip off all their flesh, and when they have dried the bones, they decorate them with coral and glass-beads, of all sorts of colours. Thus adorned, the skeleton is carried in funeral procession all round about to their several huts, or cabbins, and the very same honours are paid to it as they do to their idols.

The Lena.

The banks of the river Lena abound with the teeth, and other bones of the Mammut, which proceed from the mountains, and such grounds as are frozen, all along the banks of that river, which are frequently torn away by the ice. There are several fine rivers that empty their waters into this; namely, the Wittim, the Olekina, and the Maja; and in the parts adjacent, there are black fables, and other furs in plenty, and more particularly such as are grey, a thousand of which they will sometimes purchase, in the winter season, of the Tartars, at so reasonable a rate as three or four rubles.

The soil of the lands which are watered by the river Maja last mentioned, is very rich, and yields a profusion of all kinds of grain; and so likewise do those lands which are situate near the spring, or fountain-head of the Lena; but more particularly those of Wergolen, Skelfo, and Kirenga, which are remarkably fertile; and from hence it is that the inhabitants of Jakutskoi, and the country there all round about, furnish themselves in plenty with all the necessaries for their subsistence: And they have rye in such abundance, that a hundred weight of it may be purchased for ten pence, or twelve

pence. Cattle likewise there are as cheap in proportion; but then, indeed, money is a very scarce commodity amongst them.

The sea-coast between the two rivers of Lena and Jenifia is unnavigable quite as far as the river called Taraida, because 'tis constantly full of ice; the country, however, between the Taraida and the Jenifia is inhabited by the (x) Samoëds, and Tartar Tungusians, concerning whose manner of living, and religion, sufficient has been said already.

As to the banks of the river Jenifia, whose source is to the southward of Tartary, in the country of the Calmucs and Kirgises, they are all inhabited for the most part by the Russians. There are three fine rivers, namely the Wergnaja Tunguska, the Podkamenna Tunguska, and the Nishaja Tunguska, which flow down hither, and empty their waters into this river. The banks of those three last mentioned rivers are chiefly occupied by a kind of savage Tungusians, not much unlike the Samoëds; but then they are for the generality somewhat taller, and more robust. They are a turbulent and vexatious sort of people, and take delight in going to war with their neighbours.

When these Tartars set out, with their bow and arrow in their hands, which are the only arms they make use of, in order to hunt down the Elk, and when they have actually shot him, they pursue him by the tract, sometimes for eight or ten days successively, accompanied by their wives and children; and as they never take any provisions along with them upon these expeditions, relying wholly on their game, they wear a kind of girth, or bodice, which they take in an inch, and sometimes two, according as they find themselves oppressed with hunger. At length, when they have overtaken and secured the Elk, which they had been so long in pursuit after, they cut his throat; and spreading a light tent upon the ground, they never stir a step farther till they have eaten him fairly up, all but the bones. Sometimes, indeed, when they make these excursions, they take a few furs with them, which they sell in those

1695

The Jeni-  
fia.

Their  
manner of  
hunting the  
Elk.

Place where the Russians  
winter there are great  
and broad rivers and  
as wide, but no timber.  
The one river called  
Nishaja flows into the  
Jenifia and is but a  
mile from the Jenifia  
and largely by land to a

Geographical  
(1) Khat, or Khaty, is  
(2) Waga, or Waga, is  
(3) Adara, is p. 14  
(4) Calma, is p. 14  
(5) Samoëds, or Samoëds  
(6) Ota-Tungus, is p.  
(7) Waga, is p. 14  
(8) Ota, is p. 14  
(9) Sam, is p. 14  
(10) Ota, is p. 14

\*\*\*\*\*

The Travels of Mr.  
C. A. Cantin  
(1) Calqua-les  
Lester's Arrival

On the 10th of July  
at Adara, in  
the morning, and went to  
the mountain and saw the  
great river, where  
was prepared for our  
arrival. The  
men for about an hour or  
two were very kind and  
we had sufficiently well  
as we had heard of a  
welcome. In our possi-  
bilities, we saw some of a  
Tartar house, in which  
a considerable quantity of  
At night we returned to



1695

places where the Russians reside. In this country there are great numbers of white and brown foxes and squirrels to be met with; but no fables, or very few. The two towns called Tangviskoï and Mungafesja stand at but a very small distance from the Jenifia. There they deal largely by land in all sorts of furs,

nar-whales, and the teeth of the Mammat. From these two towns they even send out divers vessels to the mouth of the river, and upon the icy-coast to fish for nar-whales, and seals, which, if they meet with any success, prove a profitable commodity, and an ample recompence for all their labour.

1695

*Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.*

(a) Russia, or Moscovy see p. 7. n. c.

(f) Mongulians, or Mogulians, see p. 158. n. i.

(b) Wolga, or Volga, see p. 28. n. f.

(m) Jenifia, or Jenifa, see p. 18. n. f.

(c) Astracan, see p. 62. n. i.

(n) Baikal, or Bakal, the lake, see p. 167. n. a.

(d) Calmucs, see p. 62. n. b.

(o) Argun, see p. 66. n. i.

(e) Siberia, or Asiatic Russia, see p. 17. n. b.

(p) Amur, or Amour, see p. 18. n. b.

(f) Crim-Tartary, see p. 68. n. d.

(q) Persians, see p. 64. n. a.

(g) Tobol, see p. 148. n. a.

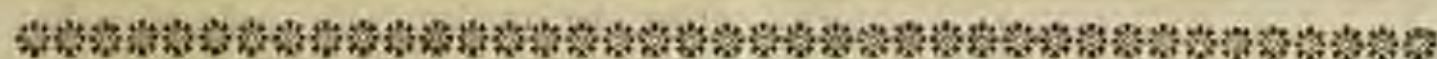
(r) Lena, the river, see p. 18. n. g.

(h) Oby, the river, see p. 18. n. e.

(s) Samoeds, see p. 17. n. a.

(i) Irty, the river, see p. 148. n. e.

(k) China, see p. 66. n. i.



C H A P. XXX.

*The Travels of Mr. Le Brun continued. His Departure from (a) Astracan. A Continuation of the Course of the River (b) Volga. The (c) Caspian-sea describ'd. The Situation of (d) Derbent, and the Author's Arrival in (e) Persia.*

1703

ON the 12th of July, we embarked at Astracan, in order to pursue our travels, and went from thence to a certain place not above three wersts distant from the town, where an elegant dinner was prepared for our reception, by the Armenian merchants. There we amused ourselves for about an hour or two, at the sound of a great variety of instrumental music. After we had sufficiently refreshed ourselves, we took our farewell of all our friends and acquaintance. In our passage down the river, we had a view of a great number of Tartarian huts, or tents, which extended a considerable way up into the country. At night we ventured to lay on shore, as

we were under the guard of two soldiers, who were sent, at my request, by the governor, for our greater security. There I slept for some time, without ever so much as once thinking of my net to secure me from the flies which are very troublesome in those parts; but to my cost, I found, that I stood in great need of it; for I was soon disturbed from my repose by their perplexing stings, and could rest no more all the night long. We continued our course at the first dawn of day; and found the shore not only level, but full of trees. About seven that morning, we came in sight of the convent called St. John's, which stood on our star-board

1703

The Author  
begins his  
voyage.



1703

A wear,  
or decoy  
for fish.

board side; and at some small distance from thence, we could perceive there was an island in the river, in which were abundance of birds of divers kinds. About eleven we passed by a wear, or place artfully contrived to detain the fish in, which bore the resemblance of a little island likewise, and directly over against that decoy, if we may use that expression, there was a body-guard, consisting of a considerable number of soldiers, who are planted there to observe what ships come up the river. This decoy, or wear, was farmed by some of the substantial inhabitants of (f) Niefna, or Nifna, who made it their business to salt the fish they caught, in order to carry it home, and were provided with a large vessel there, proper for that purpose. In some places thereabouts, the river runs but narrow, on account of the islands; for it divides itself into divers branches all around them. At about a league distance from thence we came to another wear, which we found encompassed with reeds; and after that to another body-guard, upon an island (on which there were four small hills) about three-score wersts distant from the town of Astracan. Here the river is purposely dammed, or stopped up, with an opening, in some measure, like one of our European sluices, in order to the passing and repassing of vessels. About two in the afternoon, we steered our course southward, notwithstanding we had sailed eastward all the time before. At about six in the evening, we had reached within four wersts of the Caspian-sea, which is about fourscore, or fourscore and ten wersts from Astracan, that is to say, about seventeen German leagues. Here I discharged both my vessel and my soldiers, to whom I delivered a letter which I had received from the governor. We lay, for the first time, all that night in the ship; but I took care to remember my net, with which I covered myself all over; for without it I must inevitably have had such another restless night as I had before, the flies being exceedingly troublesome in these parts, as I hinted above: Nay, their bites or stings are sometimes

This here  
exceedingly  
troublesome.

so very venomous, that they prove mortal. At this time I had a hound with me, that was so tortured by them, that he threw himself headlong into the river, to assuage the pain; and it was with no small difficulty I got him out again: Upon which I took compassion on him, and covered him all over with my net; and after that he slept very contentedly.

On the 14th in the morning, we held on our course, but very slowly, by the assistance of our oars; for here the river was not only very narrow, but full of reeds. At about one werst from the Caspian-sea, where we made a stop, we met with our lighter. However, the pilot went on before us, to sound upon the banks, where he found the water not above five palms deep; but as the wind stood at the south, they were well satisfied it would not be long before the water would rise. At five o'clock he repaired to the same place again, and found, according to his expectations, that the water had risen two palms, or thereabouts; so that as our vessel did not draw abundance of water, we were in hopes that, by waiting with patience only about two or three hours longer, we should be able to get over the sands. During this interval, we amused ourselves with throwing our nets into the river, where we caught a considerable number of perch, and a few lobsters. After our fishing, I went myself on shore, in quest of some game, with my gun on my shoulder, and took a walk towards the sea: But that scheme was soon frustrated; for I was obliged to return in a very short time, the way proving very marshy, and choaked up with reeds. I caught, however, in the mean time, several very beautiful butterflies, which were all like vermilion without, and parti-coloured within. About nine at night, the lightest part of the passengers baggage was carried on shore; and all the passengers themselves, indeed, went after, except three, who lay in the lighter. When we came to the mouth of the river, as the land, in divers places, ran into it on each side, we found it to be very

1703

strait



1703 strait and narrow; and moreover, that there were several sand-banks at the entrance into the sea; these, however, were distinguished, not by sea-marks, as usual, but by large branches of trees, which lay sufficiently conspicuous. We were obliged, however, at night to come too, for fear of casualties; but on the fifteenth, at the very dawn of day, we drew up our anchor, in order to get over the sands, on which notwithstanding we too hastily struck, yet by unlading part of our cargo into the lighter, we got a-float again, without any material damage.

We unhappily, indeed, after that, struck upon them a second time, and were under an indispensable necessity to make use of our tender, or lighter, in order to convey, not only the goods, but all the passengers, and other people a-shore: but as the wind fat fair for our progress, we were out at sea, in a short time, tho' encompassed by land on every side, and by mountains, that reared their heads high on the star-board of us.

On the sixteenth pretty early in the morning, our lighter came up with both our passengers and effects, notwithstanding we had a large bank of sand still to traverse, and notwithstanding there was a large island between us and the main sea on our larboard-side. After having coasted some-time along the said island, we reached the last mentioned sand-bank, and had the misfortune to strike once more; but soon got a-float again. The water being there near a fathom and a half deep, we took all our goods out of the tender, as well as our people who then were on board her; and sent her back directly to Astracan, with a letter, which I sent under my own hand to the governor of that place.

About noon, we could see very plainly on one side of us, those four mountains, which are distinguished by the (f) Russians, under the name of Krasna-sattier-boegre, that is to say, the four red Mountains, the most distant point whereof is about one-hundred wersts from Astracan afore-said. We soon lost sight, however, of that land; and as the wind had shifted

more southward, we steered our course directly south-west; and the weather at that time proved very serene; but the wind soon after chopping about to the eastward, we were obliged to cast anchor in a fathom and half water, or thereabouts.

On the seventeenth in the morning, we heaved our anchor, and proceeded on our voyage, and bore away to the southward, the wind at that time blowing brisk at north, and the weather being hazy; after that, however, as the sun had dispelled the clouds, and driven off the little rain that fell, a fresh gale sprang up, which continued all the night long, and occasioned a great swell in the sea. As our pilot was greatly fatigued, and wanted some rest and refreshment, he entrusted another hand with the helm, who, if I had not happened to prevent him, would have carried us directly back again to Astracan; for you must know, I always carried my own compass along with me, whether by sea or land. In the night, the wind shifting again, and falling all on a sudden, we were obliged to drop anchor again in eight fathom-water.

On the eighteenth, we weighed anchor in the morning, and got under sail again, notwithstanding it rained pretty fast, and a calm ensued; a breeze, however, soon after springing up towards the north-west, we steered our course towards the south. As a very brisk gale arose, not only the mariners, but the soldiers, who are obliged to help work the vessel whenever occasion absolutely requires it, were most grievously vexed. Amongst the number on board, there were about one and twenty of those last-mentioned occasional hands, and about fifty passengers, most of whom were natives of (g) Armenia. Our vessel carried two small brass cannons; and notwithstanding it might be loaded without any inconvenience with about two hundred and fifty bales; yet in order to have room sufficient and to spare, I reduced them to one hundred and four-score.

She had three rudders, one on each side, and



1703

and one a-stern; all which are made use of at proper times. These vessels have only a main-sail, which, when the wind blows fair, they take care to double, inasmuch that they are very improper to ply with to the windward; neither is there any contrivance in them for the convenience of rowing should an occasion offer. Our Pilot, however, returned that day in the afternoon to the post he had before quitted through fatigue as above-hinted; but bearing too close upon the wind, the vessel came all entire into it, as the sail happened to be trimmed; so that the crew were obliged to hand their sail, as the vessel never felt her helm; after that another helm was made use of to bring her about; and then the sail was all spread again; by which injudicious method of proceeding, I plainly perceived, that the hands on board were as artless mariners as the Greeks. As the wind continued blowing from the north, we steered the same course as before; and notwithstanding we were advanced a considerable way into the sea; yet I perceived, that the water was still perfectly sweet, and fit to drink; soon after, indeed, it began to be more brackish, and greener by far than before; and besides the waves became very short.

Having steered this course all night, which proved as light almost as day, we perceived, on the nineteenth in the morning, one of the mountains of Persia, called Samgael, to the westward of us; and coasting it along towards the south, at least a whole league from the shore, we doubled our sail about nine o'clock; having not only mountains constantly on one side of us, but several woods, and a sandy beach. After having been becalmed for some time, a brisk gale arose at the north-east, and we steered our course south-east, constantly coasting it along, in order to double the outermost point of the sharp mountain, distinguished by the letter (A) in the plate annexed.

The dangerous coast of the Samgaelians

This coast, even as far as Derbent, is a very dangerous one, on account of the Samgaelians, who reside in those mountains, and plunder on every side of them:

inasmuch that there is no such thing as landing in safety among them. They are Mahomedans by profession; and secure all goods whatever belonging to any ships, without favour or affection, that are so unfortunate as to strike upon their coast, and think themselves under no obligation to account for them to any other person than their legal prince.

At three, the wind veered about at east, at the very time, that we were upon the brink of the hill, in sight of, and within the distance of a league only from Derbent. There we cast anchor, and there it was, that I drew the prospect of the place, which the reader will perceive is distinguished by the letter (B.) in the last-mentioned plate annexed.

Before night came on we got under sail once more; the wind, however, proving slack, we made no great way; for by break of day we were advanced but to a small distance from the town, which is situate westward on the sea-shore, the circumference whereof (as it appeared at least to me) was but about a league and an half. On the sea-side, and at the foot of the hill, it is strongly fenced by a stone-wall. There are three gates to the town; one whereof is very seldom, if ever opened. The citadel stands contiguous, or adjoining to the town: on the right-hand of it there is a well, with a subterraneous spring, the waters whereof frequently rise to a considerable height. The town is well supplied with cannon and suitable ammunition; and as it is situated on an eminence, it makes, when viewed at a distance upon the sea, no inconsiderable figure. The much greater part of the stones whereof the citadel is composed are about seven palms and an half long, and five and an half broad, and artfully enough wrought, but in an antique manner. The Persians peremptorily insist, that this place was in being in the days even of Alexander the Great.

At some small distance from the town, there are no less than forty or fifty monuments, each in length about fifteen palms; but in breadth no more than between two and

1703

The town of Derbent.

The situation of Derbent.

Several monuments.



1703

and three; These, however, are not actually erected. There are several reservoirs likewise, a spacious table and several benches round about it, all of the same materials.

The hill, whereon the town is erected, is all one rock, and abounds (as well as the town) with springs of fresh water. Such passengers as were never here before, are obliged (by a custom, time immemorial) to compliment the sailors on their landing, with some small present to drink; which, if too obstinately refused, so tenacious are they of their ancient privilege, that the delinquent is pretty severely ducked for his non-compliance. This town, or city, is situate on the north-west of (b) Asia, and the kingdom of Persia, on the frontiers of (i) Georgia, and Zuiria, between the Caspian-sea, and mount (k) Caucasus; the passage whereof is extremely narrow.

The pirates, who are distinguished by the name of the Koeralocks, resided at about a day's journey from the city of Derbent; and the Russian (l) Cossacs frequently quit their own country, in order to accompany them in a cruise upon the Caspian-sea, where they plunder indiscriminately all they meet with.

This country borders upon (m) Dagestap, which is a small province of Georgia, and Zuiria on the Caspian-sea before-mentioned, and, in extent, not much above forty leagues. It is inhabited by the natives of (n) Tartary, who are under the jurisdiction of their own princes, between (o) Moscow and Persia, whose principal towns are (p) Tarku and Andres. Tho' this province is seldom taken notice of in our maps; yet it is well known, that it is under the government of the four several princes, herein-after particularly mentioned: the first and chief of these is distinguished by the title of Samgacl; the second is stiled Crim Samgacl; the third is called Beki; and the last Careboedagh Bek, that is to say, the prince of Careboedagh.

The town of Tarku has several names; sometimes it is called Tirak, or Tarki, and

again Targhor by the Persians. It lies open, and is situate against a mountain on the Caspian-sea, to the eastward of Georgia, under the dominion of the Czar, and at about three days journey from the town, or city, called Nisawacy.

About noon, as the wind was then north-east, we soon lost sight of Derbent, and steered our course to the south-east. Whilst we were on this coast, we could plainly discern both hills and trees at a great distance from the shore. As the wind, however, about an hour afterwards, chopped about to the south-east, we were obliged to cast anchor, at about half a league distance from the land, in a place where there were plenty of trees on the bank-side. On the twenty-first, we weighed anchor in the morning, and proceeded on our voyage, all along the coast, and the weather was very fine. About eight o'clock, we could discern Nisawacy-point; and at noon we cast anchor on that coast, in about three fathom and a half water; where we met with six several vessels that set sail from Astracan some considerable time before us.

About three in the afternoon, I landed with all my equipage; and I had never set foot on Persian ground before.

The Caspian-sea is, in length, about one hundred leagues from Astracan to Ferchabad, and in breadth, about ninety from Chowarasm to the coasts of (q) Circassia, or Shirwan. The passage from Astracan to Ferchabad afore said may be performed (without the aid or assistance of any wind whatever) with oars only, within the compass of about a fortnight. The waters of this sea neither rise nor fall; and if ever its banks are overflowed, it is wholly owing to the wind. Some will insist, that this sea is bottomless about the middle of it, and where it runs before Derbent; In the other parts, however, they frequently, by thirty or forty fathom of line, strike down upon the bottom. Its waters are salt, as we have elsewhere observed, and the freshness of those which roll along the coast is entirely owing to the several rivers that discharge themselves into it. As to all other

1703

Certain pirates called Koeralocks

Le Born lands in Persia.

Caspian sea, its situation

Tarku, its situation, and various names.

E e e

ther



1703

ther respects, it has not the least communication with any of the other seas; since it is encompassed all round about, not only with lands, but high mountains likewise.

The rivers  
that fall in-  
to it almost  
numberless.

It is almost impossible to conceive what a number of rivers empty their waters into this sea. Some peremptorily assert, that they amount to one hundred at least if not more; the principal whereof are the (q) Volga, the Cirus, and the (e) Araxes, or Arras; the two last whereof unite their streams, before they flow to the Caspian, and then empty themselves into it both together, bringing the waters of divers other rivers along with them; and those particularly of the Buftrow, the Akfay, the Koi-fu, the Kistlofein, the Laik, the Sems, the Nios, the (s) Oxus, the Arxantes, or Tanais, and divers others too tedious to mention.

In various  
names.

Formerly some people distinguished this sea by the name of Hyrcania; and others by that of Bachu. The Persians sometimes call it the sea of Koffum, and sometimes again that of Astracan; it is cal-

led, moreover, by the Russians, the sea of Gualenskoï, or that of Gevalienke; by the Georgians, Sgwa; and Soof by the natives of Armenia.

The Russians and the Mahomedans, are the principal persons that navigate this sea: notwithstanding his Czarian majesty has sent several vessels under the convoy of one captain Meyer to Astracan with no other view; yet the merchants for the generality prefer the ordinary Russian vessels, for the transportation of their respective effects from one place to another, because the latter are not near so liable to take water. The others, it is true, if that was not the objection, would be much more commodious for their purpose; and if due care was but taken, would perform the voyage as soon again.

There is another defect likewise that these labour under; and that is, they are not near so flat-bottomed as the common vessels, and therefore are incapable of reaching so near the coasts of Persia and Nisawacy, where the others are frequently obliged to lie all the winter-season.

1703

Ships sent  
from Astracan.

### Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

(a) Astracan, see p. 62. n. i.

(b) Volga, or Wolga, the river, see p. 28. n. f.

(c) Caspian-sea, see p. 66. n. q.

(d) Derbent, east long. 51. lat. 41. 15. a city of Daghestan, in Asia, situate on the western coast of the Caspian-sea, subject to Russia.

(e) Persia, see p. 64. n. o.

(f) Niesna, or Nisna, see p. 61. n. f.

(g) Armenia, consists of the modern Turcomania, and part of Persia, having Georgia on the north; Curdistan, the antient Assyria, on the south; and Natolia, or the lesser Asia, on the west.

(h) Asia, see p. 127. n. x.

(i) Georgia, see p. 107. n. d.

(k) Caucasus, a chain of mountains, which

run from the lesser Asia, through the north of Persia to East India, which obtain different names from the several countries they pass through.

(l) Collics, see p. 156. n. e.

(m) Daghestan, a country of Asia, bounded by Circassia on the north; by the Caspian-sea on the east; by Churvein, a province of Persia, on the south; and by Georgia on the west; of which the chief towns are Tarku and Derbent; but the generality of the natives live in tents, wandering from place to place; and tho' they are but a small state, the country being mountainous, and of difficult access, none of the neighbouring powers have been able to subdue them. When they find themselves hard pressed at any time by one power, they put themselves under the protection of another; as lately, when they were attacked on the side of Persia by Kouli Kan, they called in the Russians, and so well-defended themselves, with a little assistance given them under-hand, that Kouli Kan was obliged to retire, having lost great

THESE are not the  
1703, not to be  
to be on the coast of  
the low; inasmuch  
imagined that there  
after in which their  
consequently as they  
later up the country.  
common, and accord  
they propose to retire  
of (p) Arabia. I  
last time could not be  
more with strangers,  
Seydih; and as when  
appeared to be several  
there was a great number  
of their assistance.  
to be twenty thousand  
men, we there met  
about one thousand  
men, at the distance of  
from thence, by two



1703 part of his army in their mountains. The towns of Tarku and Darbent, on the Caspian sea, are usually in the possession of the Russians.

(\*) Tartary, see p. 18. n. i.

(e) Moscow, or Russia, see p. 7. n. e.

(p) Tarku, see p. 66. n. p.

(q) Circassia, is situate between 40 and 50 degrees of east longitude, and between 45 and 50 degrees of north latitude, bounded by Russia on the north; by Astracan and the Caspian sea on the east; by Daghestan on the south; and by the river Don, and the Palus Meotis, on the west. The Circassian Tartars are a kind of Republic, but sometimes put themselves under the protection of Persia, and sometimes of Russia, or the Turks. They live in tents most commonly, rambling from place to

place with their flocks and herds. Their country is now most taken notice of for its beautiful children, from whence, and the neighbouring country of Georgia, the seraghs of Turkey and Persia, are usually supplied with boys and young virgins.

(r) Arraxes, or Arras, a river which rises in Georgia, and running south-east, joins the river Kur, or Cyrus, the united stream discharging itself into the Caspian sea, between the province of Shirvan and Aderbeitzan in Persia.

(s) Oxus, a river, which rises in the mountains on the north of India, and running north-west through Usbec Tartary, afterwards separates Persia from Usbec Tartary, and falls into the Caspian sea, in 44 degrees of north latitude. Some late maps carry it to a lake, situate east of the Caspian sea.

# CHAP. XXXI.

*A short Account of the Situation of the Country, called Nisawaey. A violent Storm arises: as also, a shocking and tremendous Dust. The Author's Arrival at Samasbi.*

THERE is not one single village, nay, not so much as a house to be seen on the coast of Nisawaey, which lies low; insomuch, that whenever any foreigners land thereon, they are forced either to pitch their tents hard by, as commodiously as they can, or else travel farther up the country, as they see most convenient, and according to the time they propose to reside in those parts. The natives of (a) Arabia frequently bring here both camels and horses, in order to meet with strangers, and conduct them to Samasbi; and as when we arrived, there happened to be several vessels in the port, there was a great number of us that were glad of their assistance.

On the twenty second, early in the morning, we threw out our nets into a small river that empties its waters into the sea, at the distance of about half a league from thence, by two apertures; and notwithstanding it sometimes abounds with

fish of various kinds, at that time, it did not in the least answer our expectations; for what we caught proved very trifling. This river is distinguished by the name of Nisawaey, from whence the country derives its name. Its source, or fountain-head, arises in the mountains.

On the twenty third, five of the vessels there, as the wind blowed at south east, set sail for (b) Astracan. Several merchants, who were natives of (c) Armenia, embarked with their respective effects on board of those vessels; and for my own part, I embraced the favourable opportunity of paying my respects, by way of letters, to several of my most intimate and valued acquaintance, both there, and in the city of (d) Moscow.

The persons who are generally employed in the conveying away of all such wares and commodities as are brought by ship-



1703

Shipping to this coast, are either Arabians, or natives of (e) Turkey; who, during the summer-season, reside in tents upon the coasts; but when the winter is far advanced, they remove their station to some villages, which lie at some considerable distance from them.

Several camels which were heavily laden with effects, and several merchants, who were natives of (f) Russia, and gentlemen who had travelled with us from Moscow to Astracan, went away from hence on the twenty-fourth.

An Arabian robbed.

On the same day, an Arabian, had been robbed of his horse, and some rice that he was carrying to market, by three free-booters: upon his giving notice thereof they were immediately pursued indeed, by ten or a dozen persons, but their attempt to overtake them, proved altogether fruitless and ineffectual.

A violent storm arises and a terrible dust.

About noon, a violent storm arose, which drove such a terrible dust between the Beach and the Downs, that there was no such thing as having any place to fly to for shelter from their joint fury. Notwithstanding we had a tent, indeed, moderately large, which was supported by two very substantial poles, and drove deep into the ground; yet I quitted that post, and repaired to the sea-side, where the dust was not troublesome, on account of the sand there being somewhat wet. To confess ingenuously, I was under no small apprehensions, that the wind would blow our tent away; and as I feared, so the thing in reality happened; and instead of sheltering ourselves in it, we were glad to make use of it another way. We threw it therefore all over our goods and baggage, and fixed it down to the ground as fast as possible. And as the air was almost darkened by the thick cloud of sand that hovered over our heads, each of us used our best endeavours to find out the most commodious shelter we could, without respect of persons. Some of us crept behind a shattered vessel, that unhappily had suffered shipwreck not long before; and others got into her; which was a most melan-

cholly and deplorable sight. This violent storm never abated till night came on, at which time, we got up our tent once more; for as all our bales lay deep in the sand, it was with no small toil and trouble, that we recovered them.

On the twenty-fifth, some particular merchants, who had been resident on the coast for near a fortnight, set out from hence, for Samath, as the weather proved very fine and favourable; as for our parts, however, we were forced to tarry behind; for it was not in our power to stir a step, till we had been visited by a custom-house officer, to whom we were to pay the usual duties, which amounted to forty six pence per bale, each weighing about four hundred pounds, the customary load of one horse.

That very day, as violent a storm as the former rose on a sudden; and the wind blew with that impetuosity, that it was as much as we could do to stand upon our legs against it; it drove us no less than three hundred paces from the sea, to one side of the Downs, where we spent the night. Whilst we were here, we fell in with the crew of a vessel which belonged to his Czarian majesty, and had taken shelter from the tempest under some huts. Amongst these mariners there were two, who were natives of (g) Germany, and one a (h) Swedish prisoner, who made me a present of two birds, called by the Russians, Karawayekes, which bear some near resemblance to young Herons; with this difference only, that their plumage is either a very dark grey, or a deep purple.

As these gentlemen were so good as to visit me every day, they brought me, moreover, a white crane, which was very large and exceedingly beautiful.

The storm continued all that whole night long and the custom-house-officer who arrived on the twenty-sixth, and after he had made a satisfactory search, gave us leave to depart. The very next day, we set out with above an hundred camels, ten horses and three asses. As we kept

1703

A violent storm.

112-



1703 travelling along the sea-side, we plainly perceived, that the shores were in full as shattered a condition, as the place where we had laboured under the inconveniencies above-related. We traversed the four rivers, called Samoetia, Balballa, Buboelathia, and Mordwa, and so proceeded on our journey to the southward. On this shore, there are numbers of large animals, with small heads, which the inhabitants there call sea-dogs, or seals, some of which are as big as a moderate horse; and their skins are of considerable value, as they are an admirable covering for trunks or sea-chests. In the season for the copulation of these animals, there are thousands to be met with on the shores of Nisawaey. After we had travelled for about four leagues, we reposed ourselves in a plain, at some distance from the downs, and about half a league only distant from the village called Mordow, which is inhabited by the Arabs, whose cabins, or huts, are composed chiefly of mud, and make as poor a figure as those of the (i) Tartars, which we have already described. The term Mordow signifies a marsh, or fen; and this village, indeed, is exceedingly wet and dirty on account of the waters that roll down upon it from the mountains. It is owing, however, to those floods of water, that the village abounds in rice, and in a great variety of birds.

On the twenty-eighth, we pursued our journey all along the sea-side, and travelled no less than six leagues. When we had advanced thus far, we turned away from the sea, having the high mountains of (k) Persia at a small distance before us. There we met with a spring, or fountain of water, and some few petty villages, consisting of a small number of sorry mud-cabins, or huts, inhabited (as they call them here) by the Meors, or Turks.

As the weather was perfectly calm and serene, those mountains and plains struck the eye very agreeably, and had a fine effect. The (l) Caspian-sea, in these parts afford but very little, if any fish at all. They have here, however, a kind of carp, the goodness of which is not greatly to be

boasted of; as also, a kind of herring, which is as worthless as the former.

On the twenty-ninth, we moved onwards, and in about an hour's time, entered the mountains, which are very lofty indeed, but extremely naked, full of rocks, and scarce a tree to be seen. Even in the plains, there are an abundance of pebbles. When we had traversed the high and rocky mountains of Barma, about nine in the morning, we halted at a flat hill, which was surrounded by divers others much more lofty, and in a deep valley, we met with a brook of exceedingly fine water.

There I shot a bird, that was motley coloured, black, grey, and white, which from the tip of one wing to another was near a fathom in extent. It was, it seems, a bird of prey, there called by the name of a Tjallagan, and bears no small resemblance to a falcon. Though he was good for little else, I plucked some exceeding good quills for writing from both wings.

As the weather continued fair, though the wind, indeed, was somewhat of the highest, we proceeded on our journey towards the south, and passed by several cabins, or huts, that were erected at the foot, on the declivity, and even on the summits of some mountains, which were inhabited by the Arabs; great numbers of whom, together with their wives and cattle, are to be met with in these parts.

As the roads here are frequently infested by free-booters, all travellers are indispensably obliged to be upon their guard, and peculiarly cautious how they venture to repose themselves to rest. At proper distances of time, we fired off some small arms, in order to intimate to all intended invaders, that we were prepared to receive them: however, notwithstanding this testimony of our being upon the watch, one of these plunderers had the assurance to come, and act, as a spy, to reconnoitre our situation; but a sound drubbing-bout was the immediate consequence of his impudence and presumption.

At midnight we began to move again;  
Fif and

1703

A large bird.

The roads here very dangerous.



4793

and in less than an hour's time we got amongst a parcel of hills which were all covered with trees. By break of day, we came to a narrow passage, which was so deep, that we thought it most advisable to dismount, and each man to lead his horse by the bridle.

The river  
is called

As soon as we were got down upon the plain, we traversed, more than once, the river, called Atalafiaci, that is the paternal, or principal river, which empties its waters into the Caspian-sea. On the top of one of the mountains we met with a large pond, which was full of water, and round about it, we found a great variety of birds; some small and others of a considerable size. After that, we came to a spring, the water whereof was as clear as crystal, and rises from a hill, and from thence forms a little canal. This was one branch of that river which we had crossed twice the day before; as there had been a remarkable drought, however, for two years last past, we now forded it the third time.

About eight o'clock, we saw a spacious stone caravanferai, or place of publick reception, lie on the left of us all in ruins; with a burial-ground contiguous to it, where were several monuments, or tombs; some of Arabians, and others of Turks. When we had got at some small distance from these ruins, we halted by a brook-side, on a plain, about four leagues from a small village called Raffarat, where some of the Arabs had pitched their tents; but the place was so incapable of supplying us with even common necessaries, that we were obliged to send to another place, no less than at a league distance, for proper refreshments.

The dry  
river called  
Gusfa.

At about two in the morning, we advanced forwards once more; now ascending high hills, and then again descending them, and traversed a river, called by the Turks *Orotsa*, that is to say, the dry river; and it might very properly, indeed, be so called; for at that time, it was perfectly dry, and full of pebbles. It is the same, however, (as we were informed) during the winter-season, as well as in the summer. At about break of day, we heard

several pheasants whirring upon the hills ; which abound likewise with hares, as well as springs of water. We halted, on the last day of the month, in a large plain, full of stones, and encompassed with rocks, where we happily met with ten tents, or cabbins of the Arabs, who furnished us with a large quantity of milk, fresh butter, eggs, and some water that was moderately sweet. Here we killed one of the best sheep, which we had brought with us from Astracan, and regaled ourselves in a more plentiful manner than we had done before for some time.

At two in the morning, we set forwards again, in the midst of several very rocky mountains; and at dawn of day, we found ourselves at but a very small distance from the spring called Borbeelagh; and all around this water several Arabians had pitched their tents; but in a spot, that was perfectly burnt up by the intense heat of the sun, and the droughs consequent thereupon. This was upon the first day of August, and we got but three leagues forwards, though we travelled all the day long, it being impossible, in sultry weather, to drive camels above four or five leagues at most in the compass of four and twenty hours; besides, it is absolutely requisite, that the caravans should halt at such places, where there was any water to be procured. This spring of Borbeelagh is situate about three leagues from the town called Samachi; and as there is no wood to be met with on the mountains, the inhabitants are obliged to make use of camelsdung, like the (*m*) Egyptians for their fuel.

About two in the morning, we proceeded on our journey, and crossed the river, called Sahanthai, where, instead of water as we expected, we found nothing but pebbles. However, as we advanced nearer to Samachi, we passed by several gardens, that produced great store of fruit.

No sooner were we in sight of the town, but we were stopped by the custom-house-officers, in order to their counting the number of our camels, which was soon done, and then we were permitted to enter the town. This was on the second day

1703

The place  
called Sa-  
banchu.



1703 of August, and that night we took up our lodgings at the Caravanferai belonging to the Armenians, where we were very hand-

somely entertained by one of their merchants.

1703

*Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.*

(a) Arabia, a country of Asia, having Turkey on the north; and Persia and the gulph of Persia on the east; the Indian-ocean on the south; and the Red-sea and Isthmus of Suez on the west; a country of very great extent, divided amongst many Arabian princes and states, most of them living in tents, and wandering from place to place to find pasture and water for their cattle, most of the country being a barren desert, without water, or vegetables in many places.

The impostor Mahomet was a native of this country, and made the Arabs his first proselytes, who, within forty years after his death, subdued great part of Asia, Africa, and Europe, and established their religion wherever they came. Arabia is situate between thirty five and sixty degrees of east long. and between eleven and thirty degrees of north lat. the three grand divisions whereof are 1. Arabia Felix. 2. Arabia Deserta, and 3. Arabia Petrea.

(b) Astracan, see p. 62. n. i.

(c) Armenia, see p. 198. n. g.

(d) Moscow, see p. 23. n. c.

(e) Turkey is a very extensive empire, comprehending some of the richest countries in Europe, Asia, and Africa.

In Europe, the Turks are possessed of Romania, Bulgaria, Servia, and Bosnia, Ragusa, Wallachia, Moldavia, Bessarabia, Budzinc, and Oczakow Tartary, Crim and Little Tartary, with Albania, Epirus, Macedonia, Thessaly, and all the ancient Greece, with its numerous islands in the Archipelago.

In Asia they possess Chaldea, now Eyraca, Arabic Mesopotamia, now Diarbeck, part of Assyria, now Curdistan, Armenia, now Turcomania, part of Georgia, Mingrelia, and Circassia, part of Arabia, Syria, Palestine, Natolia, or Asia Minor.

In Africa they possess Egypt.

Thus happily situated in the center of our continent, and the most fruitful countries, they could not fail of acquiring the trade, as well as the empire of the whole world, if these glorious advantages were not lost by the indolence and activity of the Turks, and the destructive

maxims they are governed by. They seldom sail to distant countries, or visit nations of a different faith, but the merchandize of the rest of the world is carried to them in foreign bottoms; and in the same manner, the produce and manufactures of Turkey are exported.

They reap but little advantage by their commerce with Christendom, but what they get by the duties of import and export; and their home-trade is carried on chiefly by their Christian, or Jewish subjects.

The Turks are above applying themselves to any thing of this kind; traffic and mechanical employments are left to be managed by the despised Christians, who contribute much more, by their labour and industry, to the support of that empire, than the Turks themselves, which may be one reason why their government indulges them in the free exercise of their religion. And, indeed, there seems to be more Christians in the Turkish empire than Mahometans, especially in their European territories, who have this happiness, also, that they are never pressed, or forced into their armies, but left to follow their several occupations, while the Turkish gentlemen take the honour of defending their country, and making foreign conquests, entirely on themselves.

The goods imported from Turkey, are raw silks, carpets, goats-hair, mohair-yarn, goats-wool, cotton-wool, and yarn, dimities, burdets, chagrin-skins, cordovans, blue, red, and yellow, coffee, rhubarb, turpentine, opium, gum-senega, terra lemnia, china-root, and abundance of other drugs, wine, oil, figs, raisins, dates, almonds, pistachio-nuts, allum, vitriol, box-wood, bees-wax, and Saffron, &c.

The Grand Seignior, or emperor of the Turks, is absolute, and his throne hereditary; at least it is confined to one family; for though the Janizaries, who are his guards, frequently depose their sovereign, when he happens to prove unsuccessful, or his administration does not please them, they usually advance his nearest relation to the throne. And though the Grand Signior exercises an unlimited authority over the inhabitants of the Seraglio, and his bassas and officers, as well as over his Christian subjects; yet the Turkish gentlemen, who have no places, or dependance on the court, enjoy their liberties and properties as much, as if they lived



1703

lived under a limited monarchy, if not more; for they pay no taxes to the government: and should the Grand Signior attempt to tax them or change their customs, he would run the hazard of being deposed.

His Bassas, governors, and officers of state, and even the Janizaries, and other inhabitants of the Seraglio, are all the children of Christian parents, taken in war, or purchased, and who have probably been baptized, and educated by the Turks in the Mahometan religion; so that, in reality, the Turkish empire is governed (under the Grand Signior) by the children of Christians.

The Turks have always very numerous armies on foot; but their chief dependance is on their Janizaries, who have been bred in the Seraglio, and exercised in military discipline from their infancy, of whom there are 25,000 in actual pay. There may be, probably, in the empire one hundred thousand that bear the name of Janizaries, but these are not enrolled with the others; the Serdar in every province, who has the command of the Janizaries in it, frequently abuses his office, and will take any man into that body, who desires to purchase the privilege of committing outrages with impunity, and screen himself from justice; for a Janizary is accountable to none but his own officers, whatever violence he commits.

The Spahis, or best Turkish horsemen, are bred up in martial exercises, as the Janizaries are, and are a very formidable body; besides which, there are great bodies of forces in every province, which constitute their numerous armies. But their multitudes are frequently the occasion of their defeat, charging in too much confusion; though the Bassa Bonneval, it is said, has prevailed on some of their troops to submit to French discipline, of which they made great advantage in their last German war, recovering a great extent of country which they had lost, south of the Danube.

Their naval forces are not so considerable as might be expected in such extensive dominions, situate on several seas, and abounding in commodious harbours; but their neglect of navigation and foreign commerce is the true reason why they can never find sailors to man a great fleet, if they should ever build one.

The Grand Signior's revenues arise by customs and other duties on merchandize; by a capitation tax on the Christians in his dominions; by the sums paid by the tributary princes, and the presents made by all his officers, and ministers on their advancement, and in

their administration. Nothing, however, brings in more than the confiscation of the estates of all his Bassas, governors, officers, and great men, when they die, or displease him; when they have plundered provinces, and amassed vast heaps of treasure, the Grand Signior is heir to it all, and only allows the family a moderate maintenance out of it, tho' their ancestor has deserved never so well; the sons, or relations are very seldom advanced, or continued in any post under the government.

(f) Russia, or Moscovy, see p. 7. n. 2.

(g) Germany is situate between five and nineteen deg. of east long. and between forty-five and fifty-five degrees of north lat. bounded by the German ocean, Denmark and the Baltic-sea on the north; by Poland and Hungary (if we include Bohemia) on the east; by Switzerland and the Alps, which separate it from Italy, on the south; and by the dominions of France and the Netherlands on the west; from which it is separated by the three following rivers; viz. the Rhine, Moselle and Maas.

It is divided into ten circles, three whereof lie on the north; viz. (1) the circle of Upper Saxony, (2) the circle of Lower Saxony, and (3) the circle of Westphalia.

Three on the south; viz. (4) the circle of Austria, (5) the circle of Bavaria, and (6) the circle of Suabia.

Three about the middle; viz. (7) the circle of Franconia, (8) the circle of the Upper Rhine, (9) the circle of the lower Rhine.

(10) The circle of Burgundy, or Belgium, which consisted of the dutchy of Burgundy and the seventeen provinces of the Netherlands; but the last have long been detached from the empire.

There are in Germany upwards of 300 sovereign princes and states; most of them arbitrary in their respective territories. 1. The emperor. 2. the 9 electors. 3. The ecclesiastical princes, consisting of archbishops, bishops, abbots and abbeesses. 4. Secular princes consisting of dukes, marquisses, counts, landgraves, earls and barons. 5. Free cities, which are either imperial, or hans-towns. The imperial cities are sovereign states, and send their deputies, or representatives to the general diets, or parliaments of the empire. The hans-towns are also sovereign states, not different from the other imperial cities at present, but were about two hundred years ago, allied, or confederated for their mutual defence, and the protection of their trade, and at first consisted only of the

great

1703



1703 great sea-port towns on the German ocean, or the Baltic-sea, and near the mouths of their great rivers, but afterwards they took in many inland cities into their alliance, monopolized most of the trade of Europe, and were a most formidable maritime power.

Germany is generally a level country towards the north and east, consisting of a barren sand, or marsh; on the south, it is encumbered with the mountains of the Alps; but in the middle of the country there is a variety of hills, vallies, fruitful fields, and meadows; especially along the banks of their great rivers, the Danube, Rhine, &c. Abundance of fine cities, castles, and palaces, adorn it; and it is much more populous than France.

Charlemain, the son of Pepin, king of France, laid the foundation of the German empire, in the year 800, being then sovereign of Italy, and great part of Spain and the south of Germany as well as France; the empire being afterwards divided amongst the posterity of Charlemain, the sovereign of Germany and Italy, only retained the title of emperor, the princes of the empire being then his vassals.

The imperial crown was hereditary for three hundred years after Charlemain, when the pope, to lessen the imperial authority and advance his own, incited the German princes to alter the constitution, and render the imperial crown elective. And during the struggles between the emperor and the pope for superiority, several sovereign states and principalities were erected in Italy and Germany, which claimed an independency on either.

The emperors, after the hereditary line was broke, were at first elected by the body of the people, which occasioning some confusion, the nobility and great officers of state excluded the common-people from their share in the election, and chose the emperor themselves, and the number of electors was at length reduced to seven, viz. the archbishop of Mentz, Trier, and Cologne, the king of Bohemia, the duke of Saxony, the Palgrave, or prince palatine of the Rhine, and the Marquis of Brandenburg; to whom the dukes of Bavaria and Hanover have been since added.

But notwithstanding the imperial dignity was elective, the Austrian family found means to continue it in that house for 300 years, till, for want of male issue of the house of Austria, the elector of Bavaria was chosen emperor, in the year 1742; who, contending for the hereditary dominions of the house of Austria, brought himself into great difficulties, ruined his native

country of Bavaria, and after a short and troublesome reign, died in his own capital on the ninth day of January in the year 1745.

The emperor is now chosen by the nine electors on a denise, unless the king of the Romans hath been chosen in the preceding reign, and then he succeeds of course.

The emperor is the fountain of honour in Germany, and disposes of almost all places and honours, civil and military, except those that are hereditary; as the great chancellor, the treasurer, &c. which are rather honorary, than lucrative posts.

By the golden bull, the person elected emperor ought to be a Christian prince of German extraction, and 28 years of age, and is obliged to sign a capitulation, which the electors present him, before he is installed; by which he promises that he will maintain the rights and privileges of the electors, princes, and states of the empire; that he will not alienate the lands or revenues of the crown; and that he will not introduce foreign forces, or employ foreigners in his service.

The emperor's ordinary revenue arises from the crown-lands, fines, forfeitures, and confiscations, and he is heir-general to all the princes and nobility of the empire, that have no heirs male.

There is also a tax called Roman months, to which all the princes and states contribute a certain proportion for the support of the government; and all extraordinary taxes are raised, and forces for the defence of the empire maintained, by the several electors, princes, and states, at their own expence; or by taxes raised by the diet, or general assembly of the electors, princes, and states of the empire.

They are well able to raise and pay 500,000 men, and were they unanimous, would be an over-match for France by land; but this scarce ever happens. The French, when they enter into war with Germany, ever corrupt some of the princes of the empire, and bring them over to their party; or incite the Turk, or Swede, to make a diversion in their favour.

The diet, or parliament of the empire, consists of the emperor, the nine electors, the ecclesiastical and secular princes of the empire, and the deputies of the towns, who constitute the legislature, to whose laws all the princes and states are subject; but yet every elector, prince, and state, are sovereigns in their respective territories, where the diet, or the supreme courts of judicature do not interpose; for there are two such councils; one called, the Aulic council, the other, the Chamber of Trier; each consisting of fifty members of the first quality; some, appointed by the emperor; others,



1703

thers, by the electors; and the rest, by the several circles.

The emperor's revenues, as emperor, are not very great; but, then he is at no charge in the administration of the government, or maintaining forces. These are provided for by the empire. And the Austrian emperors had very considerable revenues, from their hereditary countries; which, with the disposal of all places of profit, gave them such an influence, that they were able to keep the possession of the imperial throne for three hundred years, and might have kept it much longer, if there had not been a defect of male issue.

The Germans are much divided in their opinions of religion; the principal sects are those of the Papists, the Lutherans, and Calvinists; there are also, Independents, Anabaptists, Quakers, and Christians of every other Denomination; and a multitude of Jews, in all their great Towns.

The emperor is always a Roman Catholic; Saxony, and Brandenburg, are most of them Lutherans, but some Calvinists; Bavaria and Austria are Catholics; the Palatinate, and the upper and lower Rhine, are a mixture of all denominations; the imperial cities are most of them Lutherans, and some Calvinists; the two last hate and persecute one another, more than they do the Papists. At the treaty of Munster, or Westphalia, in the year 1648, the protestants were not only tolerated, but put on the same footing with the papists, in their respective territories. But from the reformation, till that time, they were almost always at war, and some hundred thousands of Christians butchered in the quarrel.

When the Protestant religion was established by that treaty, several archbishopricks and abbeys were secularized, converted into duchies, or lay-lands, and applied to the support of the government, with the revenues of all church lands.

The protestant clergy of Germany, have neither glebe, or tythes, but depend on the bounty of their respective governments for their support. Instead of bishops, the Lu-

therans have superintendants; and the Calvinist churches are governed by their presbyters, or parish-priests, and elders, who are all equal, and claim no superiority over any of their brethren.

Germany produces corn, wine, oil, sheep; black cattle, and an excellent breed of horses, fit for the coach, or army, and with these the French usually remount their cavalry. The country also produces great quantities of flax and hemp, and they have abundance of good timber; nor should their bacon, beer, and mum, be forgot; they have also mines of iron, copper, and silver, lead, salt, coal, vitriol, quick-silver, nitre, ocre, and sulphur; and some of the best medicinal springs and baths in Europe; as at Pyrmont, Baden, Aix-la-Chapelle, &c. They have also plenty of deer, fish, and fowl; and their orchards are full of the best fruits.

The people are excellent mechanics, and chymists; the invention of printing, and gunpowder, is generally ascribed to them; clocks, watches, locks, swords, and fire-arms, they have also brought to great perfection; and they have, in a manner, monopolized the manufacture of tin-plates, or white iron. They are reckoned good artists at painting and engraving, and are excellent engineers.

They carry on their foreign trade, by the rivers Rhine, Elbe, Oder, Weser, and the Baltic-sea; particularly, from the ports of Hamburgh, Lubeck, Bremen, Stetin, &c. and by land, with Italy, Switzerland, France, and Holland; they export a good deal of linen, particularly to England; and what we call Dutch toys, come from hence; provisions, and consequently labour, is very cheap, or it could never turn to account, to employ their hands in such trifles.

(b) Sweden, see p. 68. n. 11.

(i) Tartary, see p. 18. n. 1.

(k) Persia, see p. 64. n. 5.

(l) Caspian Sea, see p. 66. n. 9.

(m) Egypt, see p. 33. n. 2.

1703

Public Buildings  
Description of  
Town of a  
Katharine

On the subject of  
the city, the  
most important  
of its history  
and public  
buildings

When we first  
enter the city  
we are struck  
by the grand  
architecture  
of the  
city hall  
and the  
cathedral  
which are  
the most  
important  
buildings  
of the city

At the end of  
the city, there  
is a large  
park, which  
is the most  
beautiful  
in the city  
and is the  
most  
important  
feature  
of the city



1703

1703

CHAP. XXXI.

*Public Rejoicings on Account of the Khan, or Governor of Samachi's Reception of a rich Royal Vestment from the King, his Master. A Description of the City of Samachi, and a particular Account of the Ruins of a spacious Fortrefs, formerly erected on the Mountain of Kata-Kuluftahan.*

A rhinoceros, as a present, to the Khan of Samachi, and the rejoicings thereupon.

Provisions excessively dear.

ON our arrival at Samachi, we were informed, that the Khan, or governor of that city, had just received a rich royal vestment, as a mark, or testimony, of his indulgent master's favour and esteem; upon which joyful occasion, he had ordered great public rejoicings to be made, and continued for four days successively.

When we first arrived at this place, the weather was so excessively hot, as no rain had happened to fall for the two or three years then last past, there was a kind of dearth, or a great scarcity at least of all manner of provisions. A single loaf, at that time sold for ten-pence, which, for near a hundred years before, had never been valued at above the price of two-pence. All the other necessities of life were as dear in proportion, and a fowl, which usually before was sold in market for three half-pence, could not then be purchased under six-pence, or five-pence at the lowest.

All goods, or commodities, of what nature or kind soever, that passed through this city were strictly opened and examined; and several custom-house-officers made it their constant practice to visit the caravanferai, where they have a commodious apartment for that purpose. They demand, it is true, no fee for their visitation; but the passenger pays fifty-pence for every camel's load; whereas formerly a florin only was demanded. This however, relates only to such merchandizes as are imported to (a) Persia; and as the carriage is for the most part by horses, the bales are obliged to be diminished one

half at least; a horse-load amounts to no more than four hundred weight at most; whereas that of a camel would sometimes be between eight and nine hundred.

On the fifth instant, the Khan, or governor, repaired, by eight in the morning, to a garden, at near a quarter of a league's distance from the city, in order to dress himself, and make his public appearance in the rich royal robes he had received as a mark of distinction from his master as above-mentioned. As there had been great preparations made for the carrying this public rejoicing into execution, I went with several others of my friends and acquaintance to have a sight of that solemn procession. In the first place, a great number of persons on horse-back moved forwards, with ten camels after them, each decorated with two little scarlet standards, one to the right, and the other to the left-side. On six of these last beasts were kettle-drums, that is, in the Persian language, Tambalpaes, four of which were of a larger size than common, and pointed at the bottom, which a drummer, who rode on one of the other camels, struck from time to time, as he saw most convenient. At proper intervals, four trumpeters stooped on the road-side to sound their Karamas, or what we call their trumpets, which are exceedingly long, and wide at the bottom; the music whereof, as they call it, was, at least in my ears, very disagreeable, and perfect discord. At some distance from these, marched four haut-boys, or as they call them, Karana-nafiers. The camels were likewise succeed-

A grand cavalcade of the Khans on the occasion before mentioned.

ed



1703

ed by twenty musqueteers, all in different dresses; some in green, some purple, and others grey; and after these appeared, six of the Khan's, or Governor's domestick servants; and after them, their master himself, mounted on a fine chestnut-horse, caparison'd in a very rich and elegant manner. This nobleman, who was dressed in a short kind of mantle, and with a large turban on his head, after the Persian fashion, was followed by four eunuchs; some tawny, and others, indeed, perfectly black; all richly dress'd, and well mounted. After these came several of the most considerable magistrates of the city, with divers others, on horse-back; after them appeared nine led sumpter-horses belonging to the Khan, all richly caparisoned; with each a small drum affixed to the right-side of the saddle. Most of these gentlemen, who were persons of distinction, had little drums likewise, which they struck occasionally with their fingers. The greatest part of them, like that of the Khan's, were made of silver. There were, moreover, besides all these, a great number of soldiers ranged in order all along the garden on the right-hand towards the mountains, each of whom had a feather in his cap; and, in short, two horses, on which were two men, who were covered all over from head to foot, with a kind of gown, which was quilted, and wrought in a great variety of colours, representing monkeys. And as they had been well broke, and made familiar with the antic tricks and vagaries of that particular creature, they attracted the eyes of all the numerous spectators upon them, and kept at the distance of twenty paces at least one from another, each with attendant musicians near them. As soon as they had reached the garden before-mentioned, the Khan, and the other illustrious personages who accompanied him, dismounted at the fore-gate; which was very spacious and built with stone. There he invested himself with the royal robe, and in about half an hour afterwards remounted, and returned to the town in the same order as he went out of it. This vestment was of a

considerable length, and of gold brocade; and his head was then adorned with a golden cap, in the form of a crown. This cavalcade was attended by a great number of menial servants likewise on horse-back, who rode and pranced about on each side of the procession; some with a smoking-bottle, or kaljan, as they call it, in their right hand, for the use of their master; which bottles are composed of glass, embellished with either gold or silver at top, and are exceedingly neat and pretty; others of them carried a small pot of fire, at the pommel of their saddles, for their master to light their pipes with; upon this solemn occasion, however, there was no tobacco smoked.

Several of these personages of distinction amused themselves on the road, with darting the ayner, as they call it, which is a kind of cane. Thousands had ran out of the city in order to be spectators of this grand cavalcade; some on horse-back, but more on foot; a sight, which struck the eye, indeed, agreeably enough, on account of the variety of objects: others again flocked to see the show, from the adjacent villages, with which the country here abounds, from the tents of the (6) Arabians, and from the gardens that lie on all sides. The Khan, before he invested himself with the royal robes, covered his head with the gold cap, or crown, just before-mentioned, which was decorated with a great number of jewels, or precious stones, closed at top, and carried at a small distance before him on horse-back. This cap, as they would insinuate, represents the arms of the prophet Ali, who, when living, wore much such another. When the Khan had put on his robes, he uncovered his head again, which was carried before him as he went back, as well as it was at the time of his coming. This procession took up at least two hours.

In the evening some rain fell, which continued falling, without intermission, till noon the next day. This accident made the road so exceedingly bad, that it was with some difficulty the horses got forward; it was fine weather, however, from the

1703

the next day



1703 the seventh to the tenth day of the month. In which time, there was an earthquake generally felt throughout the city; and tho' it did no greater damage, as it happened, yet it terrified several of the inhabitants to that degree, that they fled from their houses for fear of their falling, and lay out in the open fields.

The view of the city.

Fig. 38.

On the eleventh instant, I drew a view, or prospect of the city from a hill, which was situate to the southward, and from whence it makes the most advantageous figure, as the reader may perceive in the plate (No. 38.) annexed.

The city is considerably longer than it is broad; and as it has no moschs, towers, or pompous edifices to boast of, I have only distinguished the Khan's palace by the capital letter (A) the Caravanserai of (c) Circassia, which stands on the east side of the town, by the letter (B) and a hill, whereon are the ruins of an ancient fortress by the letter (C.) This hill lies to the north-west of the city, and we shall have occasion to speak more amply of it in another place; as also of another, which lies on one side of it, and is considerably higher. The city stands on the declivity of a hill; is a league, or thereabouts in circumference; and all open, the walls having unfortunately been thrown down by an earthquake about five and thirty years before we came to view it. Though there are no superb edifices to be met with in the city, yet there are several moschs; but then, as they are very small as well as low, they can make no conspicuous figure; nay, they are not seen at all at any considerable distance from the town. These moschs, they distinguish by the name of Mu-zejits. Two of them in particular have small domes into which they enter by a court. They have no decorations within, but a place erected in a circular form, and full of seats. The houses in this city are very irregularly built, part with stone, and part with earth; are flat at top, and make a poor, mean figure without; and so remarkably low, that a tall man may reach the roof of one of them by extending his arm to its full stretch. Most of them, notwithstanding this their contemptible out-side, are neat enough

within; and are adorned with carpets, and other things of the like nature. The walls are well plaistered, and exceedingly white, with some streaks of various colours. Some of them, indeed, are two stories high, and raised at top.

Tho' that of the Khan, or Governor, stands on a rising-ground; yet it makes no great figure on the out-side. In this city are likewise to be seen the ruins of a considerable spacious mosch, to which there were two or three domes belonging, and which seem to have formerly made a handsome appearance. This building is a stone one, and well compacted together, the most antient, and the most worthy of notice in the whole city, where are likewise divers other ruins to be met with here and there. At the foot of the hill, where the Khan keeps his court, there is a spacious market-place, where they sell all sorts of provisions; but fruits, in greater plenty than any other commodity whatsoever. Though this is the district, or quarter peculiarly appropriated to those who are professed braziers; yet still there are divers other shops, and more particularly cook-shops where all sorts of provisions are to be purchased ready drest. At one end of this market-place are the bazars, which are full of shops likewise; some for goldsmiths, some for saddlers; others for shoemakers, and the like. Some of these shops are covered with stone, and others with wood; and compose divers streets. There you have coffee-houses, and there are the caravanseras, but these have no prospect of the streets, and you enter into them through a great door. There are twenty or more of them, whereof those that belong to the natives of (d) India are the finest of all, and built with stone; and are, moreover, three or four and twenty feet in height. That which we resided in was quadrangular, and had forty rooms on the lower floor. These are the places where they sell the most valuable kinds of merchandise; for there are no great shops in the bazars for the sale of any commodity whatsoever. This city is known and distinguished by several names; some call it Samachi, some Sumathia, and the Persians themselves call it Schamachi. It stands in

H h

about

1703

The Khan's house.

The market place.

The bazars.



1703

about forty degrees and fifty minutes of northern latitude, and is the capital of the province of Shirwan, or Servan, which is part of the antient (*e*) Media, to the north-north-west of Persia; to the westward of the province of (*f*) Gilan, and to the northward of that of Irak, and extends full as far as to the frontiers of (*g*) Hyrcania. This city, which is about four and twenty leagues from the (*h*) Caspian sea, was first built by a certain king whose name was Shirwan Shah. The passage over the mountains has so many turnings and windings, that we spent no less than four and twenty hours in getting over them, and were six days in the performance of our whole journey with camels, notwithstanding it may be done in three with horses. From hence to (*i*) Derbent, if you go over the mountains called Lahati, is much about forty leagues.

The extent  
of the  
Khan's ju-  
risdiction.

The Khan acts as a sovereign in this city, and has only a kind of burgo-master under him, who is called there a Kalentaer, and is invested with no power or authority; for his whole business consists in preparing a list of such subsidies as the country are indispensibly obliged to supply the Khan with, who keeps in his palace, a kind of court of equity, and proper counsellors to attend it; as also an arsenal, which is provided with proper ammunition and divers pieces of cannon, two whereof are planted at the entrance to it, and are several times discharged on all solemn festivals, and other days of public rejoicings. He has, moreover, a body of horse consisting of no less than five hundred men, three hundred of whom serve him likewise in the capacity of foot-guards, and constantly attend him, whenever he makes his public appearance, or takes the royal diversion of hunting.

A descrip-  
tion of his per-  
son.

The Khan, who was in the sixth year of his reign (if we may be allowed to call it so) as to his person, is well set, a man of a graceful presence, though somewhat too slender, and his mustachoes rather too long. He is distinguished there by the name of Allerwedikhan, and bears the additional title of Beglerbeg, or the Khan of Khans. He is a native (*k*) of Georgia, and a

christian by profession; some years before he was invested with this high post, he acted in the capacity of a gentleman of the bed-chamber to the king of Persia, to whom his father made a present of him in his infancy, as is a customary practice amongst the Georgians. He is a descendant, as we were informed, of the antient family of the Borgodians, who flourished some years before the nativity of our blessed Saviour, and were at that time Jews by profession.

The government of Samachi is one of the most considerable throughout the whole kingdom of Persia, and its Khans, or governors, amass immense riches with more expedition, as well as more ease, than those who are possessed of any other public posts; and the principal reason is, because they levy such large subsidies on the country all round about them, and more particularly on Gilan, which abounds with silk, cotton, and saffron.

As to the soil of Samachi and the parts adjacent, it is exceedingly fertile, and produces excellent wine, both white and red; the former whereof is so prodigiously strong and heady, that there is no such thing as drinking it, till 'tis qualified with a small quantity of water. It abounds likewise with a great variety of fruits, such as apples and pears; and towards Georgia, they are plentifully supplied with a particular species of a chestnut, the flavour whereof is exceedingly delicious. In short, there is nothing wanting there but a greater number of inhabitants, to cultivate the lands.

Here are as fine horses as any country can boast of, and as fine cattle. All provisions likewise are to be procured here in plenty. Their meat in general is very fine, and they have abundance, not only of common poultry, but of all sorts of game, as well of the fur as of the feather; and all exceedingly cheap, especially during the winter season. And as to their bread, 'tis as good as any I ever tasted.

The town of Baku, (the port whereof is an exceeding fine one) has within these few years been strongly fortified by the Persians, who took the advantage of the

1703

His exten-  
sive power.

The soil of  
Samachi.

A fine port.

mis-



1703

misconduct of one captain Meyer, of whom mention has been made in the course of these travels more than once. That commander injudiciously thought fit to demand a free entrance into that port for all such ships and vessels as should belong to his Czarian majesty, which alarmed the Persians to that degree, and filled them with such a jealous notion of his future intentions, that they came to an immediate resolution to fortify the place, and be prepared for his reception, in case of a second visit.

As the natives of (1) Moscovy, or Russia, had (for time immemorial) been indulged with a free admission into that port, the captain was advised by his best friends to avoid taking such an unguarded step; but their wise admonitions, it seems, had not the least influence over him.

It had been an easy matter, long before this, had it not been for this act of imprudence in that obstinate and headstrong commander, to have seized it, and indeed the whole country, even as far as the Kur and the Araxes, and secured it by timely fortifications, with only a very small body of men, as, in the sequel of this narrative, shall more fully and at large appear; for the inhabitants at that time were altogether incapable of making the least opposition; and had such prudent measures been taken, they would have proved very advantageous to his Czarian majesty.

This city of Baku is situated in the western part of Persia, in the country called Shirwan, upon the Caspian sea; and its ancient walls are still standing. There is no better nut-oil to be met with throughout the whole world, than what the inhabitants have here and in the parts adjacent. There is two sorts of it, indeed; one brown, and the other white; the former is exported to Gilan, and a hundred leagues beyond it into Persia; and the latter is carried almost to every nation. I have been very credibly informed, that at the distance only of two or three leagues from this place, the land is incessantly hot, and ever burning, which is occasioned by the vast quantity of salt-petre with which it is impregnated; that at the distance of

fifty leagues from the city of Samachi, there is another called Ganfic, which is four times larger than that, and full of fine, stone-buildings, though for the most part, indeed, but two stories high; that the streets there are very handsome and spacious; that their bazars, and caravanseras are exceedingly large; and that the palace where the governor resides is very grand and magnificent; that a fine river runs quite through the heart of the city; and that they abound with fine gardens and orchards; that their wines are exceedingly well-flavoured; that they have fruits of all sorts, and fena, cypresses and pines in abundance: in short, that this city may, without the least partiality or injustice, be deemed one of the most considerable places throughout the whole Persian empire. This account I had confirmed to me not only by an ecclesiastic, a native of (m) France, who resides there; but by some Georgians likewise, who assured me, that in their country, now called Gurgistan, there are divers rivers, to which most foreigners are perfect strangers; such for instance, as the Allasan, which runs across the province Ghaget; the Legwie, whose waters roll along one side of the city called Cori, or Gorri; the Kifanni, which runs near a large mosch, called Schetta; the Simma, whose spring or fountain-head is in (n) Turcomania, near the city called Angheltuka; and the Iorri, that rises from the mountain, called Serikjes; the waters of all which empty themselves into the Kur; besides a considerable number of others, which are not distinguished by any particular name, or title whatsoever.

In a word, as I was very ambitious of gratifying my curiosity with respect to the antiquities of the once celebrated (o) Media, I repaired, on the thirteenth of August, to the mountain, called Kala-kulustahan, which stands about half a league to the north-west of this city. At the foot of this mountain I halted for a while, to take a survey, not only of the remains of the wall, but of the towers likewise of a very ancient fort there. Some of the round towers, indeed, are still in a tolerable condition, and entire enough. There are

1703

The city of Ganfic.

Unknown rivers.

The mountain of Kala-kulustahan.

The city of Baku.

some



1703

Page 23.

some foundations also at a considerable distance from the ruins of the wall, still to be seen on the declivity of the hill towards the right-hand, between very large stones, which appear, as one goes down, above the ground. Towards the top, there were others on the left-hand, near the tower, and one upon the very summit of the hill, larger than all the rest. In No. 39 on the plate hereto annexed, the reader will have a perfect view of it. After this, I scrambled, by degrees, up the hill, though not without some danger as well as difficulty: and was several times obliged to desist for a while. After I had reached the summit, I perceived a subterraneous cavern, or vault, where people descend about seven or eight paces to the south, by a large arcade of smooth, massy stones, and such as are well-jointed; but at present it is sunk, and full of rubbish. Over against this, towards the north-east, there is another arcade. This last is whole and entire; and the aperture, or mouth of it, strikes the heart with horror, when one looks down it; on account of its prodigious depth between the hills that encompass it; neither is there, on that side, which is inaccessible, the least wall, or fence. These two arcades, by which people go down into this subterraneous cavern, are distant from each other about four and forty paces, or somewhat better. When one has once got down into the vault, there is a passage on the right-hand which is both short and narrow, and in which there is a kind of window, which looks upon the rock of this mountain. Over against this passage, there is another, but shorter than that, because this last place, which lies to the east, is at the very extremity of the mountain. When we go to the western side, we turn to the left, under an arcade, much in the nature of a gate-way, but so very low, that the shortest man must stoop to get into a small apartment, from whence you move forwards to a second, much like the first, through a narrow alley, and from thence again into a third. All three of them, indeed, are well-vaulted. The wall, from whence these vaults, or caverns, sprang, is, at the entrance, only five feet thick, but then as one goes farther on, it is eight at least. And these three distinct apartments are di-

vided by small passages, one from the other. In the last it was so very dark, that I durst not venture to proceed any farther, especially as I had but one companion along with me, and as the way to the last, I found, was full of rubbish. However, I conjectured, and I believe not without just grounds, that most of these apartments, or caverns, ran through the mountain to the west and north-west, where it is of the greatest extent. I observed, moreover, that the walls of the vaults of those several passages, which are flat, were of the same breadth as the passages, and that at each end, they rested upon the walls; and that all the stones there were cemented, and joined well enough together; tho' not in so accurate and complete a manner, as those of the antient structures, especially those at Rome (*p*) who were remarkably curious in that important article; and this is very visible even in their public ways, and more remarkably so than ordinary, in what is at this day remaining of that at (*q*) Naples, distinguished by the name of the Appian way. (*r*) Egypt likewise affords us another instance of the delicacy of the antients in this particular, in the only one of the seven wonders of the world, which is now subsisting; I mean, the inner passages, by which people go up to the famous pyramids of that country; whereof I was the first who gave a particular description of them in my former travels. These stones, which are of a prodigious bulk, are so artfully cemented, or knit together, that the joints are not at all discernable, unless by a very curious eye; besides they are as finely polished as the most transparent looking-glasses. Those, however, of which I am at present speaking, are abundantly more inaccurate and artless.

When I came away from these subterraneous caverns, I took the exact dimensions of the breadth of the hill, at the top; and where it was narrowest, I found it fifty paces only, but exactly fourscore to the north-west. There is a great well towards the middle of the mountain; but, notwithstanding my innate fondness for novelties, I durst not approach near enough to look down the side on't, for fear of falling into it; for, to all outward appearance, the attempt might have proved of

1703

The delicacy of the Romans with regard to their street-work

A dangerous cave well.



1703 fatal consequence. There was no other aperture, or opening, as I could find, besides this. The towers, with which the walls of the building upon the hill are flanked, even in those places where they stand nearest, are between three-score and ten and four-score paces distant one from the other. This wall extends itself considerably lower, down about the mountain towards the east, where 'tis half a league at least in length, to the best of my knowledge and belief. We got down with much more ease than we climbed up; because, as we came back, we found out the right way. As we were going down, we saw the ruins of divers very spacious apartments between the wall below and the fortress above that was perfectly demolished, the stones whereof appeared only a small matter above the surface of the ground; there is no forming, however, any adequate idea of the bulk of the structure, but by the arcades above-mentioned. When, as we were returning, we arrived at the first wall, I drew the view (No. 40.) in the plate hereto annex-

ed, not far distant from a tower, that is tolerably whole, though near abundance of other ruins. Some historians have made the following remark, viz. that these ruins were a mixture of wood and stone; but I found no such thing there; and I am fully convinced, that the stones in those ruins are joined together with nothing more than cement. Tho' this fortress, according to tradition, was thus ruined and demolished by Tamerlane the Great; yet, by the best information that I could procure, I cannot find any just grounds for giving credit to the truth of so precarious a story. As we were on our return from the mountain to the town, we saw a Turk dancing upon a rope in an open field, who had a vast number of spectators round about him. Those who stood nearest to him gave what they thought proper to one of his companions, who was his collector in ordinary, whilst he amused the croud to the best of his abilities; but he appeared to us to be no great equilibrist, or an adept in his profession.

#### *Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.*

(a) Persia, see p. 64. n. e.

(b) Arabians, or Arabs, see p. 203. n. e.

(c) Circassia, see p. 199. n. g.

(d) India (proper) the country first so denominated is situate between 66 and 92 degrees of east long. and between 7 and 40 degrees of north lat. being bounded by Ussac Tartary, and Thibet on the north; by another part of Thibet, the kingdoms of Afem, Ava, and Pegu, on the east; the Bay of Bengal, and the Indian ocean on the south, and by the same ocean, and Persia on the west; being about 200 miles in length, from north to south, and 1500 miles in breadth from east to west, where broadest, though the southern part of the peninsula is not 500 miles broad; all the countries within these limits being now subject or tributary to the Great Mogul. It is frequently called Indostan, a name supposed to be derived from the river Indus, on its western frontiers. It is also called Mogulistan, from the imperial family now upon the throne, who derive their pedigree from Tamerlane, a Mogul, or Mogul Tartar. It

was the emperor Aurengzebe, who made a conquest of Golconda, Visapour, and all the southern kingdoms of India, about the year 1685.

The Europeans had very little intercourse with India, till the year 1498, when the Portuguese discovered the way thither by sea, round the Cape of Good Hope, and they enjoyed that traffic without a rival till the year 1600, when the English and Dutch put in for a share of it; and these three nations have had their forts and factories on the continent of India ever since; but the Dutch have driven both the other from the spice-islands, and monopolized that trade these hundred years past.

The produce of the continent of India, and what the Europeans import from thence, is chiefly chints, callicoets, muslins, some silk and pepper, and diamonds, which are purchased by most nations with silver; but the Dutch frequently barter spices for them, which makes the India trade doubly advantageous to them.

The northern part of India is a temperate, healthful climate; the southern countries are too hot, especially when the hot wind blows in April and May; but they are refreshed with breezes



1703

breezes from the sea constantly about noon; for in the night, and early in the morning, the wind sets off the shore, and blows on the shore the rest of the day. The periodical rains visit them in June, and continue till October, which is the season for planting and sowing their lands towards the south, where they have scarce any other grain but rice. In the northern countries, they have good wheat, and almost all manner of grain; and in one part or other of the Mogul's dominions, every thing is produced that can make life desirable, except liberty; for though the subjects that are at a distance from court live as easily as under most monarchies, yet the Mogul is an absolute prince, and can command their lives and fortunes at pleasure.

The Blacks inhabit the southern part of India, and are a people but lately conquered; the complexion of those in the northern provinces is either white, or an olive; these are the governing part of the nation, and of the Mahometan religion; the rest are Pagans, and worship idols of various shapes; some very monstrous, part human, and part beast or fish; and there is scarce any living animal but what they adore, particularly the ox and the monkey.

The Mogul's forces are computed to amount to 300,000 horse; some have called them a million; besides the forces of the Rajas, or tributary princes, who are obliged to attend the Mogul with their respective troops. In the fair season, the Mogul usually takes the field, and makes a tour about part of his dominions; and all manner of tradesmen, merchants and mechanics, follow the camp; inasmuch that there are scarce any persons left in the great towns: there are markets of all kinds in the camp, as in the best regulated towns; and when the time of the rains approaches, they return into the towns again.

The Mogul's annual revenue is computed to amount to between 40 and 50 millions sterling, arising by the produce of the soil, (of which he is proprietor, as well as sovereign, and every one is obliged to pay such a rent as is required by his commissaries) by duties and customs on merchandize; by forfeitures and escheats; being heir to all his great officers, and by presents, which are expected from all his governments, and those who have a dependance on him; and lastly, by the produce of the diamond mines of Golconda, which is not inconsiderable.

(e) Media, the north east part of the modern Persia, in which the province of Aderbeizan, and some of Gilan, and Eyrac Agem were comprehended; the capital city whereof was Ecbatana, the present Tauris.

(f) Gilan, east long. 48. lat. 47. a city of Persia in Asia, in the province of Gilan, situate 340 miles north of Isfahan, and 240 miles west of Asterabat.

(g) Hyrcania, the provinces of Persia, in Asia, which lie on the southern shore of the Caspian sea, formerly went under that name; and the Caspian was called the Hyrcanian sea.

(h) Caspian sea, see p. 66. n. 9.

(i) Derbent, see p. 198. n. d.

(k) Georgia, in Asia, see p. 107. n. d.

(l) Moscovy, or Russia, see p. 7. n. i.

(m) France, received its name from the Franks, a German people, who inhabited the banks of the rivers Maine and Sali, and made a conquest of this country, then called Gaul, in the fifth century.

Modern France is situate between 5 degrees west, and 7 degrees east lon. and between 43 degrees and 51 degrees north lat. being bounded by the English channel and the Austrian Netherlands on the north; by Germany, Switzerland, Savoy, and Piedmont in Italy on the east; by the Mediterranean sea and the Pyrenean mountains, which separate it from Spain, on the south; and by the bay of Biscay on the west; being almost a square of 540 miles on each side; except that Britany makes it something irregular, by extending farther to the westward than any other province.

It was an exceeding populous country, till the numbers were lessened by persecution, wars, and famine. Their numbers, which were formerly computed to amount to nineteen millions, scarce exceed fifteen millions at present.

The air is the most temperate of any country in Europe; and the soil produces corn, wine, oil, and flax, in great abundance.

It is extremely well situated for a foreign trade, as it lies on the ocean, the English channel, and the Mediterranean sea, and is watered by a great many large and navigable rivers, particularly the Seyne, the Loyre, the Garonne, the Rhone, the Soane, and of late the Rhine, which for some hundreds of years now separates their dominions from Germany.

The stature of the natives is not large; but they are generally men of bright parts, and the most active and enterprising of any people in Europe; but so restless and impatient of ease, that they are constantly engaged in wars abroad, and law-suits at home; extremely devoted to their

1703



1703

their prince, though he rules them with a rod of iron, and treats them as slaves; and so opinionated of themselves, that they look upon all other nations as barbarians. They value themselves much on their good-breeding, their complaisance, and unlimited professions of friendship to all they converse with, though they mean nothing by it, and may justly be looked upon as a parcel of genteel hypocrites. They have professed their cringes, and impertinent ceremonies so long, that now nobody regards them.

Their manufactures of linnen, woollen, silk, and lace, are vastly great, and their foreign trade to Spain, Italy, Turkey, and to the east and west Indies, is prodigiously encreased of late years; but no trade is more advantageous to them than that of Britain, from whence they receive chiefly treasure for the product of that country, viz. their wines, silks, linnen and lace.

The kingdom was formerly divided into twelve provinces, which had each of them their parliaments, whose consent was necessary to the making of laws, and raising money; but the cardinals Richieu and Mazarin made their masters absolute sovereigns, deprived their parliaments of their share in the government, and they are only assembled at this day, to pass the arrears, or laws, that the king is pleased to send them, which none durst refuse. But in civil causes, these parliaments are still the last resort where the court does not interpose. These parliaments consist of a certain number of presidents, and inferior judges; who purchase their places openly; and the crown makes a considerable revenue by such sales. The parliament of Paris is much the most considerable. Hither the king frequently comes in person, and sees his royal acts recorded. This parliament consists of the dukes and peers of France, besides the ordinary judges, and takes cognizance of all offences, committed by peers, where the king does not issue a special commission to try them. The other parliaments are excluded from taking cognizance of any causes which relate to the crown, or the peers of the realm.

As France is divided into 25 general governments at present, over every one of these an officer, called an intendant, is appointed by the king, who seems to have a power of controuling the governor, and all other officers of justice, and presides over the receiver-general of his generality.

The whole number of parishes, contained in all the generality, amounts to 38,502, in which is comprehended 1,585,112 families, liable to pay the taille, or land tax, which is

only paid by those who hold by base tenure, and tradesmen; the nobility, clergy, and gentry, are exempted from this tax. The burgesses of Paris, and some other free cities also, are exempted from the land-tax.

There is another tax, called the *taille*, payable by the same persons as the *taille*, which amounts to about a third part only of the former. There is another tax, called the *aids*, which arises from the customs and duties on all merchandise, except salt.

The *gabelles*, are the taxes arising by salt.

The other taxes are the capitation, or poll-tax; the tenths of all estates, offices, and employments, the *fiftieth penny*, from which neither the nobility nor clergy are exempted; and the tenths and free-gifts of the clergy, who are allowed to tax themselves; but it is expected that they should pay as much as the laity at least; and lastly, the crown-lands, rents, fines and forfeitures, bring in a considerable revenue. All which are computed at fifteen millions sterling per annum; besides which, vast sums are collected by raising and lowering the coin at pleasure, by compounding debentures, and government bills, and other oppressive means.

The kingdom is but one great farm to the crown. The whole produce of the country is in the king's power, if he thinks fit to demand it; though he chuses to take it in the accustomed way, that he may make no more malcontents than he cannot avoid; and were there never so many, he has always armies on foot, sufficient to suppress any insurrections. In time of peace, he has frequently 200,000 men in pay; and in time of war, sometimes 400,000. Many of whom are foreigners, viz. Swiss, Germans, Scotch, Irish, Swedes and Danes.

The religion of France is Roman catholic; but they seem less devoted to the pope, than any other nation of the communion; and have not as yet admitted the inquisition among them.

The protestants fought for their religion and liberty many years; and at length obtained a toleration, by a royal edict called the edict of Nantz; but this being repealed by Lewis XIV. Anno 1685, a cruel persecution ensued, which compelled some hundreds of thousands of them to quit the kingdom, who were entertained in protestant countries, to the unspeakable prejudice of this kingdom; for they did not only lose the most industrious part of the inhabitants, but the refugees set up the French manufactories in every country where they came, which very much lessened the demand for French merchandise.

The crown of France is hereditary; but by their

1703



1703

their salique law, no female is suffered to inherit; neither is their royal line of that duration as in England; for in the pedigree of their kings, we find, that there have been three families on the throne, viz. the Merovingian, the Carolinian, and the Capetian, which had no relation to one another; the second usurping on the first, and the third upon the second, which is the present reigning family.

The eldest son of France is always titled the Dauphin. The new conquests, or acquisitions, that France has made to her dominions the last hundred years, are those of Alsace and Lorraine, on the side of Germany; those of Artois, the Cambresis, part of Flanders, Hainault and Luxemburg, on the side of the Netherlands; and Roussillon, antiently a part of Catalonia, on the side of Spain.

(n) Turcomania, the ancient Armenia, is now a province of Asiatic Turkey, bounded by Persia on the east; by Diarbek and Curdestan (that is, the ancient Mesopotamia and Assyria) on the south; and by Natolia on the west and north. The capital city is Erzerum.

(c) Rome, loc. p. 108. n. 2.

(p) Naples, city, east long. 15. lat. 41. the capital of the kingdom of Naples, in Italy, situate 140 miles south east of Rome, and 15 degrees east of London; being seven miles in circumference within the walls, and as much more, if the suburbs are included, and contains about 300,000 inhabitants.

It stands on an eminence, rising gradually from the sea to a moderate height, on a fine bay of the sea of thirty miles diameter; and the islands that lie before it form a secure and commodious harbour.

On the east, there is a large plain, on the farther side whereof is mount Veluvius, and on the west a high hill, on which stands the castle of St. Elmo, and a Carthusian monastery, from whence we are entertained with the finest prospect in the world.

It is seldom cold here in winter; and in summer, the cool breezes from the mountains and the sea make the hottest part of it very tolerable; nor is the sea subject to storms; and they have so bold a shore, that large ships may lie close to the quays.

Corn, wine, and oil, are excellent here in their kind, and exceedingly plentiful; and the air is pure, serene and healthful.

The buildings are magnificent and elegant, and inhabited by people of distinction; nor

can there be, in all respects, a more desirable situation, did not the eruptions of Vesuvius, and earthquakes, sometimes disturb their quiet, as well as the frequent revolutions observed in this kingdom; for it being so desirable a country, the neighbouring powers are perpetually contending for it: Germany, France, Spain, have alternately had the dominion of it. It seldom has the same sovereignty for forty years successively.

The dignified clergy, and nobility of this kingdom are very numerous; there are, 'tis said, 25 archbishops, 125 bishops, 300 princes, dukes, marquises, and earls. The clergy possess one third of the kingdom; the crown, the nobility, and gentry the rest; the peasants have scarce any thing they can call their own; they are subjects and vassals to their respective lords, manure their lands, plant their vine-yards, and olive-yards, and are allowed only a subsistence, sufficient to enable them to perform their daily drudgery, and receive justice in their lords courts, in cases that are not capital; insomuch that, every lord, or gentleman, who is proprietor of the soil, is sovereign of the people, who live upon his estate.

Though they abound in silk; yet that manufacture is not great; they send most of it abroad unwrought; and all the merchandize and produce of this rich soil is carried abroad in foreign shipping, they having but few ships of their own; or, indeed, merchants, the proprietors of the lands selling the produce of their respective estates to foreigners.

Many of the natives being of Spanish extraction, follow the Spanish modes, and cloathe themselves in black, which makes the silk manufacture the less.

They have a numerous militia, the nobility and gentry holding their lands by military tenures; but these are little depended upon, and seldom called out, the king usually maintaining 15,000 regular troops in time of peace, and can raise twice that number in time of war. They had no men of war lately, but are beginning to build some, and they have a fleet of armed galleys.

The revenues of the crown are computed to amount to one million sterling per annum, which arise from a composition with the nobility and gentry for certain sums, in lieu of their personal services; from a duty on houses; and almost a general excise.

It was a tax upon fruits which the meaner people live on, that occasioned the memorable insurrection under Maffinello, and it seems fruit

1703



1703

has been exempted from taxes almost ever since; those who are most oppressed by taxes are the Genoese and other foreigners, whose estates lie in this country; and these are pretty numerous.

Naples had been governed by Spanish, or German vice-roys, till Don Carlos, the king of Spain's second son, was set upon the throne, by the united powers of France, Spain, and Sardinia, in the year 1734. And as that prince obtained the crown by force, by the like force he must defend his possession, unless he can obtain the affections of the people by a wise and gentle administration.

The crown claims a power of taxing the nobility and gentry, and raising what forces the court think necessary; but it is dangerous carrying these prerogatives too high, as long as the king has so powerful a competitor as the queen of Hungary.

The clergy are not taxed here; but grant a free-gift, which is proportionable to the taxes on the laity at least.

(r) Egypt, see p. 33. n. 4.

(s) Via Appia, the Romans have not left us any stronger instances of their consummate wisdom, grandeur, and magnificence, than the public roads, or high-ways which they made, and carried on to the very extremity of their extensive empire, some whereof remain almost entire to this very day. The Roman magistrates (sensible that the strength and power of the state absolutely depended upon maintaining a free intercourse and correspondence between the several parties who composed it) were the first, and after them the emperors, who with infinite labour and incredible expence, made great roads throughout all Italy and its dependent states; erected thereon, at convenient distances, buildings for lodging the post-masters horses, and public carriages, and thereby not only established a free communication between Rome and the provinces, but facilitated the march of their armies, and the transportation of their military train, whenever choice or necessity called upon them to take up arms.

In making these roads there was no difficulty too great for the Romans to surmount; they cut through, and levelled mountains, filled up vallies, drained morasses, raised cause-ways, and threw bridges over rivers. Nor was their attention merely confined to the making these ways; they considered the repair and maintenance of them as a matter of the last importance

to the state, and therefore appointed proper officers to superintend and manage them, whose titles and functions frequently occur in the ancient historians, and upon inscriptions.

The most considerable of these ways, called *Vie Regiæ*, *Militares*, & *Publicæ*, began at a gilded column, or pillar, called *Miliarium Aureum*, & *Columna Augusti*, which was erected at the Forum, in Rome, below the temple of Saturn.

The three most famous were the *Via Appia*, *Via Flaminia*, and *Via Æmilia*. The most noble, however, in all respects, was the *Via Appia*, which is generally thought to have derived its name from one Appius, who was the author of it, and the very same ingenious gentleman who invented their Cloacæ, or common sewers.

This *Via Appia* (for to this alone we shall confine our present remarks) which was at first carried only from Rome to Capua, and afterwards continued as far as Brundisium, situated upon the Adriatic Gulf, is described in the ancient itineraries, and mentioned by Horace, in the elegant description which he gives us of his journey from Rome to Brundisium; as also, by several other of the ancient writers, as Cicero, Livy, Strabo, Appian, Procopius, &c. Some moderns likewise have treated of it; but none of them have examined it so fully, and with that accuracy and exactness as one Signior Pratilli, who has taken an actual survey of it throughout its whole extent from Rome to Brundisium; and to his elaborate and judicious description of it, not long since published, we shall be entirely indebted for the following extracts; not doubting but that the generality of our readers, (short and imperfect as it may be) will look upon it with an eye of indulgence.

Our author then, in the first place, observes, that the whole extent of this high-way was not made all at once. Appian Claudius, says he, who was Censor in the year of Rome 443, made that part which lies between Rome and Capua; and so expensive was even that first attempt, that he thereby perfectly exhausted the public treasure.

The Romans, however, having some time after that defeated the Samnites, and extended their frontiers, continued this road (expensive as it had been) as far as Beneventum, where a Roman colony was planted in the consulship of Appian Claudius Crassus, son of the Censor,

K k k

and

1703



1703

and in the year of Rome 485.

The Messapians, Tarrentines, and other people of that part of Italy, being afterwards, about the year 490, brought under subjection to the Romans, the work was once more resumed, and carried on as far as Brundisium, which then became a celebrated port for the common passage out of Italy into Greece and Asia, and was made a Roman colony in the year 510, during the consulship of Torquatus and Blæsus.

Notwithstanding this high-way was originally fabricated with the utmost firmness and solidity; yet it was very considerably improved and beautified, in the year of Rome 631, by Caius Sempronius Gracchus, who repaired the military roads in Italy, and set up all along them military pillars, on which the distances from mile to mile were marked. Besides these ornaments, he placed several blocks of stone by the sides of the high-ways, for the repose of travellers, and to serve as steps to assist those who travelled on horse-back, in mounting and dismounting their horses.

Julius Cæsar was at great expence in maintaining this road, and actually undertook, and began to drain the marshes of Pomptina; which work was finished in the reign of Augustus. This prince considerably repaired that part of the road which lies near Capua.

The emperors Vespasian and Domitian were likewise at great pains upon the same account; and Nerva expended great sums in repairing it, as appears by inscriptions upon some of the military pillars, which have been found in the marshes of Pomptina.

The emperor Trajan completed the work, begun by his predecessors, continued this road as far as Brundisium, and repaved another public way, which lay between that place and Beneventum.

Caracalla repaired the Via Appia for the length of one and twenty miles towards Terracina and Fondi; another part of this way, lying between Liris and Sinuessa, was repaired in the reign of Maximianus Hercules.

And lastly, Theodoret, king of the Goths, caused nineteen miles in length of the canal (Decennomi) which ran along the Via Appia between Tré Ponti and Terracina, to be repaired, in order to drain off the waters from the marshes of Pomptina, as we learn from an

antient inscription, still preserved at Terracina.

That part of the Via Appia, says our author, which lies between Rome and Capua, appears to have been paved with large and flat stones, cut out, and jointed together, with amazing art and solidity. This pavement was raised in the middle, from whence it was sloped gradually to the sides; upon which were parapets of freestone for the convenience of foot-passengers.

Tho' the breadth of this high-way was not equal, indeed, in all places; yet it was every where sufficient for two chariots to drive abreast. As, on the one hand, it no where exceeded five and thirty palms; so on the other it was in no place less than twenty-five. And its whole length, reckoned from Rome to Brundisium aforesaid, was 364 Roman miles, according to the following computation.

| From Rome                     | Miles      |
|-------------------------------|------------|
| To Aricia                     | 16         |
| To Appii Forum                | 26         |
| Ad Medias                     | 9          |
| To Terracina                  | 10         |
| To Fundi                      | 14         |
| To Formiæ                     | 14         |
| To Minturnæ                   | 9          |
| To Sinuessa                   | 9          |
| Ad Pontem Campanum            | 9          |
| Ad Ostivum                    | 9          |
| To Capua                      | 8          |
| To Beneventum                 | 32         |
| To Rubi, now Ruvo             | 107        |
| To Bari                       | 21         |
| To Brundisium                 | 71         |
| Total from Rome to Brundisium | 364 miles. |

On this Appian way (besides the commodious structures above-mentioned for public service) there were several costly and magnificent tombs, or sepulchral monuments, and other superb decorations; such, as for instance, the Septizonium of Severus; the Dormitories or vaults of the family of Arria; the arch of Constantine the Great; the temples of Fortune and Mars; the tomb, or monument of Metella, the wife of Crassus; and those of Cecilia, Cornelia, Servilia, &c. &c. too tedious here to enumerate.



CHAP. XXXIII.

*A succinct Account of several antient Monuments, or remarkable Sepulchral Vaults, at Jediekobet, situate on the Mountains of Pjdrakoes; as also, of divers others at Pyrmaraes. An Account likewise of the barbarous and inhuman Murder of four Armenians by the Persians. And lastly a Review of the Persian Horse.*

ON the fourteenth I set out from Samachi on horse-back, with two attendants, besides runners, in order to visit a noted place, called Jediekobet, that is to say, the Seven Towers, where there are several very remarkable monuments, or sepulchral vaults to be met with, that are very antient, and well worthy the attention of the curious. We passed through several small villages in our passage thither, which were inhabited for the most part, by the natives of (a) Armenia, as we advanced westward towards the towers above-mentioned; and at about nine o'clock that evening, we came to a little village called Kirkins, situate on an eminence, or fertile spot of rising-ground, which abounds with vineyards, and are the principal maintenance and support of the inhabitants there, and the parts adjacent.

There we were shewed a small chapel, built with stone, in which was the sepulchral monument of a certain saint, named Sahac Wartapeet. He was, it seems, as we were credibly informed, by birth, a native of (b) Turkey, and by profession, a Mahomedan; but as he had for several years embraced their principles of religion, he applied himself so closely to his studies there amongst the Armenians, that he became one of their most favourite priests; we were told, moreover, that some time after his entrance into those holy orders, he had the misfortune to fall into the hands of some inhuman Mahomedan Turks, who burnt him alive, at Samachi; and that after his bones had been reduced to ashes, he rose again, and appeared amongst them.

There is another sepulchral vault upon the high-road, at about the distance of half a league from this hill, or mountain, whereon I found there were several characters inscribed; but as they were unintelligible to me, I begged the favour of having them explained. To which they replied, that I was mistaken, and that what I took for characters, were nothing more than different decorations. That monument of the last-mentioned saint, who lies interred upon the hill, is held there in high esteem. The inhabitants of the parts adjacent light up tapers there, on their solemn festivals, and regale themselves in as elegant a manner as they can, on one side, or at least within sight of his tomb. As I happened to arrive there on a Sunday, I found a multitude of people flocking round it, who, in a very courteous manner, gave me an invitation, to partake of what refreshments they had before them; but I begged to be excused, as I was very desirous of advancing forwards on my journey. This village, small as it is, contains about two hundred several families. In the center of the little chapel, wherein is the aforesaid monument, stands a small altar, which is encompassed by a small wall, on one side whereof there grows a spacious walnut-tree, where they seat themselves under its shade. Formerly there was a small mosch on the very same spot of ground, which was reduced to ruins, it seems, about five and thirty years since, through the violence of an earthquake; and so they substituted this little chapel in its room.

About half an hour after nine, we set out from this little village, and passed o-

Jediekobet, or the Seven Towers.

The monument of St. Sahac Wartapeet.

The monument of St. Sahac Wartapeet.



1703

over several fine hills in our way to Jediekombet, where we arrived between ten and eleven. There I met with the antient tombs that I have before-mentioned, which are built with hard stone, and in a very substantial manner, and not inelegantly cemented. Most of them remained entire, and terminated in a pyramidal form. That which I examined first, and stood nearest to the mountain, was more lofty than the rest. The tower-wall, in regard to its thickness, is five palms, or thereabouts; the entrance into it about three broad, and six high. It is about twelve feet in diameter, and round within.

A fine  
cave.

It is encompassed with a fine wall, the front gate whereof is no less than fourteen foot and an half in breadth, and ten deep through the wicket, at which you enter. It is five palms in thickness, and about sixteen paces from one corner to the other; that is to say, threescore and four paces in circumference. As to the thickness of the wall itself, it is three palms or thereabouts. And the coping of it at top is an half oval, and bears some resemblance to a camel's back. There are five fine sepulchral monuments in this tower; three on one side of it, and two on the other, which are embellished with foliages, and other ornaments of the like nature. These monuments are three palms, in point of height, two in breadth, and seven in length; some more, but others less. From this, I went to the second Tower. At the front gate, in the encient, or inclosure of the wall, I perceived there was an elevation of no less than three palms, an arcade of eight and an half in breadth at the bottom, of eleven and an half in depth, and in height about seven foot. Here there were three fine tombs only. This tower-wall is about forty four feet in length, and thirty three in breadth, and much about the same height, and, in all respects, indeed, similar to the former. The last of these structures, which is the lowest, and goes downward, is encompassed with a wall, which is no less than threescore and eleven foot in breadth, threescore and six feet in length, and nine

in height. The front gate is fourteen foot and an half without, and twenty two in breadth. The arcade is eleven in height, and in depth fourteen. In the middle there is a wicket, which is two foot and an half in breadth, and in height five and an half. We went down there by three steps, and at the distance of about twelve paces only, we came to a building about eight and thirty foot in breadth, and eighteen in length, at the end whereof stood another, on the left-hand, which is six foot long and of the same breadth, whereon there is a tower. We went into this structure by a little door, no more than four foot four inches in height, and two and an half in breadth, and is correspondent with that in the front. The wall of it is but three foot thick; and having gone down two steps, we came into a quadrangular apartment which was encompassed with stone-benches about a foot and an half only in height, and much about the same in breadth. That room, or apartment, was ten feet in length, and eleven in breadth, and the vault twelve in height. On the right-hand, there is a door-way made through the wall above the bench, through which, by going only one step up, we came into a gloomy place, the vault whereof was lower than the former, notwithstanding its other dimensions were larger; for it was thirteen foot in length, and ten in breadth. From thence through another door directly over against the first, tho' somewhat smaller, we went up two steps, and came into an apartment that was ten feet in length, and the same in breadth. On this it is that the tower stands; which is hollow, as far as to the very point of the spire; and on the right of us, there were four small windows, two and two, one above the other; there we found several tapers sticking against the wall, and stones that were tumbled down, but nothing like a sepulchral monument appeared. There we dined, and there mingled our wine with some fine spring-water, which ran at a very small distance from, and directly opposite to this building. That spring is very antient; its water is most delightful, and

1703



1703

as clear as crystal, and its source or head is from the mountains. Without the encinct of these tombs, concerning which the antients have been so very particular, there are a great number of other monuments all round about; some resembling these, and others consisting of large common stones, and all without any character or inscriptions whatsoever: having indeed some small decorations, but what to call them I am at a loss to determine, unless some of them may be properly said to be bases. And to deal ingenuously, and give you my opinion freely, I take them to be decorations only, and such as I have observed in divers other places, and even in those royal sepulchres which are to be seen without the walls of the city of Jerusalem.

In order to give a more clear and distinct idea of these monuments or sepulchral vaults, I have taken the pains to draw one of them in particular, which stands on one side of the building just before mentioned; near which there is one large, wide-spreading tree in particular, and several others, though much smaller, which proceed from the tower, notwithstanding the stones are still firm and whole, and notwithstanding there is not the least cranny or flaw to be discerned. I have here given the reader a sketch of the front-gate, some of the monuments, and the melon-garden in the plate (No. 41) hereto annexed; and the reader will farther find the whole, with a view of the mountain likewise, in plate XLII. where there are no less than nine towers to be seen, notwithstanding the term *Jedichombet*, as we hinted before, signifies seven towers only. Against the walls within there are planted a great number of young fig-trees, which cover the monuments with their leaves to that degree, that it is not an easy matter to discover where they stand. They look upon them here to be very antient; and, according to tradition, Alexander the Great spared them on that very account.

About four in the afternoon, having sufficiently gratified my curiosity, I returned from thence, and to the north-

ward of these monuments, I was surprized to see vast piles of stones upon a fertile hill, where the soil did not seem in the least naturally inclined to be stony. From this circumstance I concluded, and I imagine upon very just grounds, that some town, or fortress at least, had formerly been erected there; notwithstanding there were no other traces or footsteps of any such structures. I was afterwards, however, informed by some people, of whom for the gratification of my curiosity I made the enquiry, that there had been a small one erected there, not far distant from the tombs; and, in all probability, they told me the truth; for otherwise it would be no easy matter to give a substantial reason for their being erected in these mountains. At a small distance from hence we discovered a fine spring; and, a little beyond it, some more monuments; amongst which there was one in particular of uncommon dimensions, though very much disfigured from the injury it had received through a long series of years. About half a league from thence, we went back once more through the village called *Kirkins*, inhabited for the most part by Armenians and Turks, and we reached the town near an hour before sunset; notwithstanding the wind blew so excessively hard, and the dust flew to that degree, that we could scarce see the way before us. The next day, however, there fell such a hasty and impetuous shower of rain, accompanied with thunder, that they were both perfectly dispersed.

On the eighteenth, I went up to the mountain called *Pjedrakoes*, which is nearer the town, and higher than that of *Kala-kuluftahan*.

On the summit of this mountain there is an open monument, which is encompassed with large stones, and is in length full eighteen foot and a half, and in breadth sixteen; together with a great number of other common tombs, a large walnut-tree, and another large tree, the leaves whereof were remarkably small. About seven paces farther stood another monument or vault, consisting of a small circular chapel, which is, without, about

LII

three

1703

The mountain of Pjedrakoes.

An open monument.



1703

three and thirty foot in circumference, but ten only within. The wall thereof is in thickness two foot and ten inches; and there are stones here that are four feet and four inches in length, and two feet and two only in breadth. The entrance into it is five feet and four inches in height, with a step to it. This small chapel, in height, is ten feet and a half exclusive of the spire, and is encompassed by divers other sepulchral vaults. The walls of it are thick set with nails, to which several slips of divers colours are here and there fastened, (and so there are indeed in the former) or remnants of the garments of such pilgrims as resort hither to perform their devotional exercises at these tombs, and who make these voluntary oblations by way of acknowledgment, or as testimonies of their high veneration and esteem for those saints who rest within: with a view, that by such tokens of their respect, they shall procure some relief at least, if not a perfect cure, of those maladies which they respectively labour under. An Armenian servant, who was one of my attendants, assured me that he himself had reaped the good effects of those pious acts; but I gave much the same attention to this idle tale of his, as to the other story above-mentioned of the saint, who after he had been burnt to ashes, rose again from the dead.

Pl. XLIII.

In No. XLIII. of the plate hereto annexed, the reader will find an accurate representation of this small chapel, which is greatly damaged and much decayed on the East side; together with a view of the hill of Kala-kulustaham; and in number XLIV. the representation of the other side as it is decayed, together with the open sepulchre, not long since mentioned; and the town and mountain in perspective. In this small chapel there is a spacious monument, embellished with foliages, according to the representation of it in the plate annexed; and, at the distance of about forty paces from it, there are two subterraneous caverns. The entrance, or aperture into the former, is vaulted, and consists of large stones which want nothing at all within. This is six foot and a half in length, and four feet and two

inches in breadth: 'tis paved likewise, and is five feet five inches high. The latter, which lies at the distance of seventeen paces only from the first, somewhat resembles a grotto or cave, hewn out of the solid rock belonging to the mountain; and the aperture, or entrance into it, is so narrow, that a person inclined to view it, must creep in upon his belly to accomplish that end. Before this grot stands a tree, on the bark whereof are the names of divers pilgrims cut out in very legible characters; and several monuments or tombs all round about it, between which and the sepulchral vaults, on the summit of the mountain, there is a wall still subsisting of some edifice or structure, that has been long since demolished. This hill, or mountain, moreover, is encompassed with a variety of tombs, except indeed towards the South-West, where it is exceedingly steep. Some authors peremptorily insist that there is here a subterraneous cavern or vault, into which there is a descent of several steps, and that in that gloomy place lies deposited the remains of an illustrious prince, the daughter of some potent king; however, though I own my curiosity induced me to search after it, yet I found myself disappointed, and my labour fruitless, and I am fully convinced that it is nothing more than the little grot I have just mentioned; and into which they were so incurious as never to enter, in order to know whether the report was fact or not: but here give me leave to add, that the passage was so very narrow, that I was obliged to undress myself before I could squeeze myself in, and answer the end proposed. As to the rest, I have just grounds to believe that the principal monuments in all these parts is that of the small chapel on the top of the hill. The inhabitants of the parts adjacent, moreover, very seriously assured me, that the greatest part of the personages who have been interred in these monuments, were remarkable for their virtues and the sanctity of their manners; from whence it occurs, that great numbers of pilgrims resort to their sepulchres as a meritorious act of devotion. At the foot of this mountain there is a small village, and a spacious

1703



1703

cious plain beyond it to the North-East, which is surrounded with hills and mountains; and to the North-West there are several other little villages, and the mountain called Kala-kulustahan. The town, which is visible at a distance, and the country all round about it, has a very good effect, and strikes the eye in a very agreeable manner. As we approached the town, we discovered a fine stone cistern or reservoir, the water whereof is as fine as chrysal, and very delicious. A little beyond that there is a spring, the waters whereof flow gradually away, and discharge themselves into a subterraneous canal towards the mountains; and, by another, flow into the city itself.

On the nineteenth, I made the proper preparations for sending my effects by the caravan, which I followed some few days after.

Pymaraes.

On the twentieth I went to the village called Pymaraes, where there are two particular monuments that are very curious, and worthy of inspection. In my passage thither, I met with an exceeding fine spring, and traversed several rivelets or brooks upon little stone bridges. At the distance of about two leagues from the city I saw one that appeared to me to be very antient, which consisted of three decayed arches, erected with large blocks of stone, under which ran a very clear stream. There were others likewise that I met with as I passed along, under which no water ran at all.

The city of Samachi makes a good figure enough, when surveyed upon the hills, whereon there are several burial-grounds, and large sepulchral vaults.

About noon I reached the place called Pymaraes, which is a pretty large village, built for the most part with stone and earth. It is near four leagues to the eastward of the town, in a spacious plain as one goes to the mountains on the left hand. There I saw the monument of Seid Ibrahim, a particular saint, whose name in this place and all the parts adjacent is held in profound veneration. The place where his remains are deposited has more the appearance of a fortress than a

The tomb of Seid Ibrahim.

sepulchral vault only; and is surrounded with a wall, but a very piteous one indeed. Within we met with a stable, and there we put up our horses. I had not been there long before a menial servant approached me, and gave me a courteous invitation, by special order, to the apartment of his master, to whose care and conduct this place was particularly entrusted. This stranger received me in the most obliging manner, and asked me from whence I came, and what motives induced me to visit these solitary grounds? I told him ingenuously the truth, and that nothing but the gratification of my curiosity had tempted me to pay my visit to them. Whereupon he, with great humanity and good manners, offered his service voluntarily to wait on me, and shew me every thing he thought worthy of my attention.

Before this building there is a very spacious square, on the right hand of which as I went in, this officer has a large commodious apartment, the floor whereof was covered with a large, costly carpet. From thence I went on the left-hand, into the court-yard, which is spacious enough, and executed in a good taste; and, after that, into another, where were several monuments, on which there were Turkish inscriptions, and divers other embellishments. Then I came to the sepulchre of the saint himself, which is closely locked up with a wooden door, through which I went first into a small vault, where stood a coffin; and from thence I passed forwards into a pretty apartment enough, which receives light from three sides above, and is covered with carpets, striped stuffs, and mats: here I was obliged, in order not to daub the furniture, to pull off my shoes. From thence I passed through a little door on the right hand of the first vault, into three several apartments; in the first whereof were three coffins; five in the second, which lies on the right; and, in the center of the third, which lies on the left, the coffin of the saint himself, which was covered with a large, green cloth, in the nature of a pall. The portals of this edifice

1703



1703

edifice are three-score foot high, or thereabouts, and several fathom deep. I went up by twelve steps, each of one stone. The top is not vaulted, and the wall, in regard to its upper part, bears the resemblance of a fortress, having a kind of Guerite at each angle. This structure to the right is forty paces in length, and one and thirty in breadth. Over this monument, there is a small aperture, covered with a stone, and over the gate, there are divers inscriptions in the characters made use of by the (c) Arabs, hewn out of the stone, and others traced out in black upon the white walls.

At about the distance of twenty paces from this monument I went down fifteen steps that were vaulted, and after that, down ten others, contiguous thereto, tho' these last were not vaulted; from whence I went into a subterraneous cavern, which is thirty three paces long, and nine broad, and not only vaulted from one end to the other, but is thirty foot high and upwards. The stones belonging to this vault are fine, large, and artfully enough cemented; but the plaster with which they were once covered, by dint of time, was almost all fallen down to the ground. I imagine this subterraneous cavern was formerly intended for a Reservoir, or cistern, to hold water in; and whenever it rains hard, the water comes in still, by a subterraneous canal, which proceeds from the adjacent mountains, and runs thro' a proper hole made for that purpose in the second step. This subterraneous vault has at top, two vents or apertures, through which it receives some degree of light. At the entrance of this structure, there is a stone-wall, and at the distance of about twenty paces from it, there are twenty stone-troughs, which are appropriated to the watering of cattle. They are all put together, and each of them consists of one stone only, which is three foot and an half in length, and in breadth, two and an half, or somewhat better. Here are also several open wells, not only in the village, but in all the parts adjacent; many of them, however, are stopped up at their apertures.

'Tis highly probable, that, in former times, they were made use of as aqueducts; and we may very reasonably form that conjecture, because several of them do actually convey water under-ground, in order to be kept in these subterraneous caverns. This was a common practice amongst the ancients; and I have seen the same things at (d) Alexandria myself, and in the parts adjacent to the city of (e) Naples. The natives of (f) Media, likewise preserved their water after the same manner. The Persians (g) were highly delighted to see with what accuracy and attention I surveyed every place; I then returned my thanks to the courteous stranger, to whose care this monument was entrusted, and begged the favour of him to send some proper person along with me, in order to take a survey of the other: This request, he very readily granted, with all the good-manners and courtesy imaginable. In our passage thither, we rode over a mountain; but when we came to the eastward, we were under a necessity of dismounting by reason of its prodigious declivity; for we were frequently obliged to hold fast by the rocks, for fear of falling.

It is on this declivity, that the monument, or sepulchral vault of Tiribbaba, now stands. There we went down three steps into a square, of the same breadth with the edifice, which is no less than twenty eight foot in front, and looks upon the very steepest part of the mountain. The frontispiece of this building, is perfectly beautiful, and consists of large polished stones. There are three several windows, which penetrate into the wall, about three palms: that on the left is glazed in the middle, and has a stone-lattice, which is all of one piece, at least to outward appearance. To this, there are fastened several parti-coloured slips, or pieces of garments, like those above-mentioned. That window which is on the right-hand, consists of large stones, which are four palms and a half in breadth, and eight in height. After this, we went up three steps, in order to get to the portal, which is close shut with a wooden

1703

The tomb  
of Tiribbaba.



1703

gate. From thence we went into a small square apartment, with commodious niches on each side, and a small dome.

Below, it is not much above the extent of five feet from one side to the other. The wall, as we went in on the right-hand, actually joins to the rock. On the left hand we went up three steps, one of which only is higher than the other two; by these we went up into an apartment, fourteen feet in length, and ten in breadth, with a vaulted roof about six and thirty feet high. Just over against the door, there is a flight of fifteen steps; the first of which is high, the second broad; and the rest, for the most part, consisting of one stone only, and about thirteen inches thick. This flight of steps is two feet and an half in breadth, and leads up to an apartment, embellished with eight several niches, a large window in front, and a wooden lattice, with a dome over head: this room has three doors to it, and the floor is covered with mats. On the right-hand there are likewise two apertures, or openings; one whereof is a large niche, shut in by a kind of window, composed of wrought stone; and that other on the left of this, shuts with a well-wrought folding door, which is but four feet high, however, and two feet broad; inasmuch, that a man must stoop to enter in. There is here likewise a small grot which is hewn out of the rock, against which this sepulchral vault is erected; and in one corner, against the same rock, there is a small stone ballustrade, in a semicircular form, of which the other half naturally comes out. This is the place where the saint is reposed upon his knees, according to their custom: this is what they tell us themselves; with this addition, that he is covered with a white veil, dressed in grey, and in that posture to which he was most naturally accustomed in his life time, without the least alteration. This was an act of indulgence procured for him from heaven by saint Ibrahim, who was his disciple. This apartment from side to side is fourteen feet square, and is richly embellished, having two small pillars on one side of each niche to the right and left, with a step that is raised about two feet,

This, which is before the window in the front, is three feet deep, or thereabouts; and That where the saint is at rest, is somewhat more: the vault is much about one and twenty feet high. From thence we went up a flight of twelve steps, into another small apartment on the left-hand; and, on the right-hand, there are four or five decayed steps, and so small a door, that a man must crawl upon his belly, if he would get to the top of the building, which is covered with a lofty dome, around which one may go through three several passages amongst the rocks. The first is two feet and an half, the second two feet, and one before, where there is an aperture to the front. We then descended the mountain by a more commodious path than the first; and we went up another rising ground, directly opposite to the first, in order to see the other monument, but we were disappointed; for we met with nothing there but a bare wall, without the least footsteps or traces of any tomb or tombs, from whence that place derives its appellation. It is encompassed with a wretched square wall, from whence we had a sight of that fine monument, which we have been describing; and of which the reader will find a representation in the subsequent plate. On that side which I came by, I perceived there were several grottos, hewn out of the rock.

About four o'clock in the afternoon I went from Pyramares, and it was much about eight, when I arrived at Samachi. The Armenians the very next day entertained me in one of their gardens, which lay out of the city; where they dress their provision amongst the trees, of which there were divers sorts; and, amongst the rest, some willows of a very extraordinary size, quince-trees, mulberry-trees, and others, to which we were strangers, and of which I shall take the opportunity to give a particular account in a more proper place.

As we were upon our return, the Armenians began to sing and divert themselves by the way, according to the custom of their native country, and even to drink bumpers to the beat of a drum; after  
M m m which,

1703



1703

which, they went to visit some of their friends and acquaintance in the caravan-ferai, or inn, inasmuch, that they made it very late before they went home.

The number of the Persians murdered by the Persians.

Now it happened, that four Armenians, who had all this time been left to take care of the houses, were all murdered in their sleep, by some Persians. Upon this, two Armenians, belonging to our caravan-ferai, made their complaints of this barbarous and inhuman action to a Persian lord, who made them a solemn promise, that the blood-thirsty villains should be punished according to their demerits, if happily they should ever be detected.

A review of the Persian cavalry

On the twenty-sixth, there was a review of some Persian horse, in the spacious court of the Khan's palace. This review had been made in part the evening before; and the rest was deferred to the next day.

This exercise was performed by three hundred troopers at a time, all completely accoutred, as in the field of battle. Some had not only lances, but bows and arrows; others had fire-arms; and others again had bows and arrows only. These last, indeed, had canes with a large button at the point, which they manage with surprising dexterity and address. Under their vestments they had coats of mail and brasses; and little caps, or morions, as they call them, on their heads; with masks, or vizors. All of them were perfectly well-drest, according to the Persian mode; but more particularly the officers, whose vests were of gold or silver brocade. Some of these gentlemen had six or seven sumpter-horses; and there were private persons that had one; besides one, that the servant rode upon, who led him, and another servant that attended on foot. The Khan was seated at one end of the court,

upon an eminence, or seat higher than the rest, and the horse were in small divisions, at the other, in expectation to be called by name; upon which they advanced, upon the gallop, by two and two; sometimes three and three; and sometimes four, up to the kind of throne whereon the Khan was seated; and after they had been enrolled, they immediately filed off another way: as soon as the review was over, the trumpets sounded a retreat; and this was all done within the compass of two hours, and, doubtless, it was a shew, that was well worth seeing. Most of them went thro' several motions, or parts of their exercise, with a very peculiar grace; tho' there were some few, indeed, who were not altogether so exact, and so adroit as the others, either through want of experience in themselves, or through some deficiency in their horses. As to those who acquitted themselves with most honour and credit; they were all rewarded with some certain military prize, in the presence of the chief lords of the country, who waited upon the Khan; and in the presence likewise of whole crowds of spectators.

1703

The pay of these troops is very considerable, and particularly that of the officers. Each private trooper has annually five or six hundred florins; and their pay is augmented in proportion to their merit, in times of public action: they have, moreover, frequently very handsome presents made them. The sons likewise of these cavaliers, have a certain pension, as such; but then indeed, they are indispensably obliged to furnish a man at their own expence, in times of war, in case they happen to be under age.

The pay of the troops

At this grand review there were several children on horseback that were under eight years of age; with an attendant on the side of them.

Occasional



1701

*Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.*

(a) Armenia, see p. 198. n. g.

(e) Naples, see p. 216. n. p.

(b) Turkey, see p. 203. n. e.

(f) Media, see p. 214. n. r.

(c) Arabs, see p. 203. n. a.

(g) Persia, see p. 64. n. v.

(d) Alexandria, see p. 35. n. d.

## C H A P. XXXIV.

*The Author departs from Samachi. A succinct Account of the Course of the River (a) Kur, otherwise called Cur or Cyrus, and the (b) Araxes, or Arras. The Methods made use of for the Winding off Silk. And lastly, the Author arrives at (c) Ardevil, or Ardebil.*

The author  
departs  
from Samachi.

ON that day, I took my leave, in order to join the caravan, lest it should be set forwards before I got to it. My fellow-traveller, one Jacob John de David, took another road, indeed, in order to call at some trading towns, where he had some affairs to settle, and my two other companions, who were natives of (d) Armenia, promised to follow me very shortly.

In the mountains which lay southward to the town, I met with some grounds, that were very fertile; as also with some springs, and a few cottages, or houses; and by sun-set I came up with the caravan which was set out before me, at some small distance from the village called Nogdi. On the next day, in order to take an airing, I went upon the very top of a high mountain, from whence I descended into a fine, spacious plain, which we were to cross over; and I observed, that at the foot of the mountain, there were several little springs of water, as clear as crystal. In the evening, one of the guides belonging to the caravan, came to us, to let us know, that they should be moving by break of day the next morning. In our passage over the mountains, I saw, at a village

called Langelus, what I had never seen before, not only some pomegranate-trees, but other fruit-trees, and a vine, which was perfectly loaded with grapes; the stem whereof was both short and thick, and not much above an ell, in height from the ground; a circumstance that I had never observed before in all my travels. There likewise I saw a plant that was in blossom, from the roots whereof there proceeded filaments, or shoots, of at least a fathom in length; and which stretched along the surface; the fruit of it at that time was perfectly green, and resembled our little cucumbers. The colour of it, when it is ripe, and in its full perfection, is a deep purple without, and within a vermilion red. A great number of them grew upon one plant. I made a drawing of one of them, that was loaded with its fruit; which by some of the natives of (e) Turkey is called Tje-beer, and by others again, Kou-rack. In the plate hereto annexed, the reader will find it distinguished by the letter (A.)

I found, in the same place, another sort of plant, the fruit whereof was red, and had small cuds, or bladders. It grew much after the same manner as the former, with great



1703

great numbers on one plant, which was, however, a foot and an half higher, if not more. This fruit is distinguished there by the name of *Doofsjandernage*, and is of the same size as those which are distinguished in the plate beforementioned by the letter B.

When we had travelled over the mountains of (f) Derbent, we descended into the fine plain, as above mentioned, which extends farther than the eye can reach; we found it all, however, perfectly parched up, by the intense heat of the sun, and the long preceding droughts. This desert plain is, by the inhabitants of the country distinguished by the name of *Kraegh*.

No sooner had we advanced to the end of the mountains, but we had a distant, though imperfect view of the river Kur or Cur. About ten in the morning, after we had made a progress of about two leagues and a half, we halted upon the plain, where we stayed, not only all that day, but the next likewise; and on both the weather proved very favourable and fair. There we met with Turks and (g) Arabians in huts, or cabins, built with straw, who, in a friendly manner enough, supplied us with milk, melons, and such like provisions; but as there was no such thing as wood to be met with, we were reduced to the necessity of dressing our victuals by such fires as the dung of our camels would afford us. It is customary to halt in all such places where the best pasture can be procured for the cattle we have in our train. The most mortifying circumstance, however, is, that there is no water to be found, but what is most miserably foul; insomuch, that it must be left for some considerable time to settle; perhaps an hour or two at least, if not more, which is a very melancholy case, when, in the midst of such sultry sunbeams, one is ready to perish with thirst; nor is it practicable to take a sufficient quantity along with one, on account of the prodigious number of bales, with which a caravan is for the generality encumbered; so that in such a case as ours, we were obliged to make a virtue of ne-

cessity, and accept of an immediate supply of curdled milk, which those Turks and Arabians call *Tauvert*, and put into a cloth-bag, through which the Whey immediately runs off. After that, in order to quench their thirst, they put water to their curds, which amongst the Turks is a common and almost daily practice; so that a man in distress is furnished at once both with meat and drink. It is kept with all the ease imaginable, and when mingled with a proper quantity of sugar, is palatable enough, and serves instead of cream. We did not get out of this large plain till the 30th instant in the evening; at which time we travelled to the southward, and traversed the plain. There we met with another caravan, and some Turks in their huts or cabins. By break of day we reached the village called *Sgawad*, which lies to the westward of the Kur, on a rising ground, on the banks whereof we thought proper to halt. This place, though a village only, is very extensive, and contains in it an almost countless number of delightful gardens, which abound with white mulberry-trees and melons. On the next day, I went about half a league to the conflux of the Kur and the Araxes, two noted rivers, which are at this day distinguished by the names of the Cyrus and the Arras.

I observed, that here the Arras proceeded from the South, from whence it derives its source or fountain-head, in the mountains of *Algeron*, and the Cyrus from the North of *Tilvies*, where it runs by the side of the town that bears that name. When these two famous rivers have once united their waters together, they roll away towards the north-east, beyond *Sgawad*; and from thence they continue their course East, and run in a meandering passage till they empty their waters, or lose themselves in the (h) *Caspian* sea. As for the rest, 'tis no easy task to find out their various windings. I made a draught, in the best manner I could, of the place where these two rivers join, as the reader will see in the plate, No. 45. hereto annexed; in which place they part the

1703

The Cyrus  
and the  
Arras.

the country of Magas  
Moa, whence it  
from the South, &  
the Cyrus, or K  
the place where  
by the letter C  
We lost our bales  
several bales, in the  
we had baled; and  
came from our, which  
day time to accomplish  
at that time, happened to  
several places, we could  
the horses, and about the  
backboard, on one side  
the water was very deep  
and the camels were  
over them. To call  
a ledge of boats, when  
their heads, which together  
hundred, or more, were  
over the hills and mountains,  
was not then easy.  
There are two or three  
canals principally of re  
the, where the inhabitants  
employed in making of  
I met a woman  
in a party of country,  
that is the tradition of  
valley the people's ad  
time remote. On the  
were in, there was a  
located here without  
was a very capacious  
her water, just ready to be  
side of the stream were  
more, or people who were  
long of the hills for some  
more side of the mountain  
toward the cold with a  
for that purpose. A  
the hills were covered  
about eight or nine  
more, this was found  
and this he turned with  
in the time, much after  
was European, two  
There were two flocks of  
down, the water in each  
which they sometimes  
conduct. The 5th June



1703

the country of Mogan from that of (i) Media, otherwise called Shirwan. The Arras, or Araxes, is distinguished by the letter A; the Cyrus, or Kur, by the letter B; and the place where their streams are united by the letter C.

We sent our bales over to the other side in several boats, to the village at which we had halted; and our horses and camels swam over, which took us up two days time to accomplish. As the waters, at that time, happened to be very low in several places, we could clearly discern the bottom, and about the middle, a large sand-bank, on one side whereof, however, the water was very deep; and there, indeed, the camels were forced to swim over them. 'Tis customary here to make a bridge of boats, when the waters are at their lowest, linked together by a strong, substantial, iron chain, which, when the river swells and widens, is cast off; but it was not then ready.

There are two or three small houses, composed principally of reeds, on the other side, where the inhabitants are constantly employed in winding off silk.

I went accordingly into them, in order to gratify my curiosity, and perceived, that in the execution of this work, there was but one person's aid or assistance at a time required. On the right-hand, as I went in, there was a stove, which was heated from without, and wherein there was a very capacious kettle or cauldron of hot water, just ready to boil; in which the cods of the worms were laid. The operator, or person who was employed in winding off the silk, sat, as I found, upon this stove, on one side of the cauldron, and frequently stirred the cods with a small stick prepared for that purpose. I observed likewise in this little reed-cottage, a large wheel, of about eight or nine palms in circumference, that was fixed between two posts; and this he turned with his foot, as he sat on the stove, much after the same manner as our Europeans turn a spinning-wheel. There were two sticks directly before the stove, with a reed on each of them, round which there turned two little pulleys, which conducted the silk from the cods to this

large wheel. The workman assured me, this method, or manner of winding off silk is practised daily throughout the whole kingdom of (k) Persia: and it must be allowed, that those who are expert operators do their work with surprising dispatch as well as ease. I observed, however, that the cods were of no great bulk.

I observed, moreover, that most of the trees hereabouts were young, and their stems but short, in order that they may have leaves, at all times, upon young branches; for the silk-worms, it seems, don't approve of the leaves that are on old trees. The gardens here are surrounded with alders and willows, and like the houses, are for the most part separated from each other, by reed-partitions. Some few of them, however, are divided by partitions composed of earth; and of these, there was a whole range along the side of the river. In plate 46 hereto annexed, the reader will find a representation of the river above-mentioned, and the method, or manner in which goods are carried over it. I found provisions were exceedingly cheap at this place; for a fowl might be purchased for two-pence only, a melon for a penny, and other viands of the like nature in proportion.

On the first of September, in the evening, a caravan arrived from Tebries, which had been fourteen days upon the road; and another the next day from Ardevil or Ardebil, which had been ten in their passage hither. Here I was joined by the two merchants I mentioned some time ago, one of whom (as the reader may remember) was a native of (l) Armenia, and the other by birth a (m) German. This last, who was greatly indisposed, had the misfortune to fall off his horse in the night, and had been left in the plain for several hours in a very weak and fainting condition. I sent several messengers out to find him, if possible; but they returned without being able to hear the least tale or tidings concerning him. However, I sent others again on the same errand as soon as it was day; and these were so fortunate as to find him,

N n n

and

1703

The manner  
of  
winding off  
silk.



1703

and brought him forwards along with them; and as the horse, which had thus casually thrown him, stood as still as a statue by his side, during the whole time that he lay upon the ground, he had the additional good fortune of having lost nothing; his fall, however, had enfeebled him to that degree, that it was with the utmost difficulty he kept the caravan in sight.

This part of the country, which is low, abounds with grass, that is a foot or two high, and this is the best and choicest pasture that can be procured for camels; for when they have that, they stand in need of no other. This particular pasture is called Poes by the Armenians, but by the Turks Vossien. Notwithstanding this is such excellent provender for camels, and is tolerably agreeable to cows; yet no horse will touch one morsel of it.

The remainder of our effects, as also our beasts of burthen, crossed the river on the third instant; but in this passage we had the misfortune to lose two of our camels. The horses swam over, as they were held fast with ropes by proper persons who were crossing in boats. In the afternoon we crossed it ourselves; and as I was now in the country of Mogan, I made a second draught there of the course of the river, and the country of Shirwan, as the reader will find it in the plate No. 47. hereto annexed.

The village, of which we have been speaking, is covered with trees to that degree, that it is a difficult matter to distinguish the houses. The day following we were joined by the two other guides of the caravan. In the interim, I went out to take a view of the two rivers on this side; but the banks were encumbered to that degree with brambles, reeds, and other lofty vegetables, that it was above an hour before I could reach the Arras; besides, as I had no-body but my servant to attend me in that expedition, we had not the good fortune to find out a beaten path; neither did we meet with any person that could direct us to one: however, at last, we did get a sight of the river, and

of some few old, weather-beaten cottages, or huts, which the inhabitants had perfectly abandoned. As an additional mortification, we were obstructed by a deep ditch; which obliged us to seek out for another way to bring us nearer to the river; but notwithstanding all our efforts, we could not, on account of the height and steepness of the banks, by any means accomplish our Ends. From the spot, however, on which we were, though not so near as we could have wished, we had a very distinct view of the two rivers; and I observed that the Arras, or Araxes, came a little higher from the south-west, and that it was much narrower there than the Kur; for at most, as well as I could form a judgment of the thing, it was not above forty or five and forty paces in breadth; whereas, when their streams are united, they are above one hundred: but more particularly, near the village called Sgawad, which lies in 39 degrees, 54 minutes of northern latitude. Though I imagined I should have met with a variety of game here; yet there was none at all as I could find. There is abundance of liquorice, however, to be met with in this place. By sunset, I got sight again of the caravan; and by break of day, we began to move after the camels, which had been gone some time before. We pursued our journey to the south-westward, and left the Arras to the right; and having advanced three leagues farther, we halted in a plain, where we saw a small lake, one part whereof goes round a little hill, and extends higher up into the country. This place is distinguished by the name of Celsan, and is not above half a league from that, where the Arras turns off to the right. When the water which proceeds from Arras is very high, great quantities of fish, but of tortoises in particular, are to be met with in this lake. We took several of these last, both in the water, and on the shore; some whereof were at least a foot in circumference. As soon as the sun was set, we moved forwards again; there were no less than six hundred camels, and three hundred horses in our caravan. In

1703

Large  
Tortoises



1703

A water-melon plant, called Jaff-  
fara.

the night we traversed a very flat country, which abounded, with a very lofty plant or herb, that was excessively bitter, by the inhabitants called Jaffian, and of so poisonous a nature, that if cattle do but so much as touch it with their mouths, it proves inevitably fatal; but peculiar care is always taken to prevent them from so sudden a destruction. Though this must be thought a mortifying circumstance enough; yet still there is a worse; and that is, there is not one drop of water to be met with for the long stretch of a twelve hours progress. We spent the whole night in traversing this plain; and at break of day, we halted at the side of a rivulet, or brook, which proceeds from the Arras to the west, and loses itself, as it runs a little higher up into the country. It was but about three years before, that the Khan, or governor of that country, who generally, during the summer season, resides in these plains, and in the winter at Ardebil, had given orders to have it dug. 'Tis but about two leagues distant from the Arras, and but about five or six feet in breadth. The water of it is tolerably good to drink, though on account of the sand, it is somewhat foul; but it is palatable and fine enough, when it has had a proper time to settle.

On one side of this brook, there are a small number of poor houses and huts, made of rushes, which had been standing for about three years. This place is called by the Inhabitants Anhaer; and there is not another village near it. Here I met with a kind of Water-melon, that was of some length; as within very white, and exceedingly sweet, and quite different from any fruit of that kind which I had ever seen in any other country whatsoever. The seed of it is not black, like that of all others, but is of a chestnut colour, and very small.

In this place, likewise, I perceived that they had a fruit called Chamama, that is, the breast of a woman; because it bears a near resemblance to it, which is not only very wholesome but of a fine flavour. Though this Chamama is not altogether unlike the white Water-melons abovementioned;

yet 'tis more firm and substantial; and as to its colour and size, it nearly resembles a China orange. My fellow-traveller, the Armenian, assures me, that they grow likewise at Ispahan, and are deemed there a very valuable fruit, inasmuch, that gentlemen and ladies frequently carry them in their hands as an odoriferous nosegay. Some of them, indeed, are considerably smaller, and parti-coloured; that is to say, streaked with red, yellow, and green: tho' the seeds of some of these are all small and white; yet those of others are small indeed, but perfectly red. It is a very agreeable refreshment, and there is such plenty of them all over the country, that the purchase of one of them will not amount to above a penny at most. There are other melons, indeed, still cheaper, but then they have not that delicious flavour.

We proceeded on our journey in the evening about an hour before sun-set, steering our course to the south-eastward; and at about the distance of half a league from thence we traversed a small river, which was about five foot in breadth, and eighteen inches only in depth. Here, one of our horses, loaded with silk, fell down; but as to the rest of our cattle, they got safe over, without the least misfortune attending them. In the night, we passed over the heath, or plain, called Mokar; and on the seventh instant, about two in the morning, we entered upon some mountains, the sands whereof were as solid, and as firm as gravel. When we had travelled till about an hour after sun-set, we halted in a plain, which was encompassed with hills and mountains, situate on the banks of a river, whose water was perfectly fine, and clear almost as chrysal, by the inhabitants called Bascharatshai, or Balaru, whose fountain head, or source, lies in the country of Talis, and from thence runs till it empties its waters into the Caspian Sea. At present, however, it cannot boast of its plenty of water, as it is supplied by two springs only from the mountains. The country all round about bears the same name as the river. There had been no caravans, for some considerable

1704

Water-melon, white and sweet.

This Chamama, a pleasant fruit.



1703  
ble time before, that had taken that road, on account of the numerous gangs of Free-booters, which infested those parts: the Khan's son, however, offering the king, upon pain of death, to extirpate those audacious robbers, in case his majesty would be pleased to confer on him his father's government, that prince lent a listening ear to his proposition; upon which, the Khan was established accordingly, and acquitted himself of the obligation he lay under to all intents and purposes; for he cut them all off, both root and branch; shewing no indulgence even to women, or children, insomuch, that the passage at present is attended with no manner of danger.

On the eighth, about an hour before break of day, we began to move forwards; and at three in the morning we arrived on a plain, that lay beyond the mountains, and at but a small distance from the village called Sigomoerat, which consisted only of about ten or a dozen huts, or cabins, made of rushes; there we halted, in order to wait for two of our camels that had accidentally gone astray. In the morning, we met with several Peasants, who were natives of Persia, together with their wives, children, and cattle. These people, during the winter-season, reside in the mountains, but in the plains for the remaining part of the year: these Peasants had brought us down forage the day before from the mountains, which were green, to all outward appearance; though they were rather sandy than rocky. In the night, there fell a heavy shower of rain, and that impetuous torrent was attended with tremendous claps of thunder. Two Armenians and myself proceeded on our journey at least three hours before day-break, tho' the night was so exceedingly dark, that we could scarcely see the ground before us; but finding, contrary to our expectation, that the caravan did not follow us, we thought it expedient to return, and wait with it till day-light should appear. As soon, however, as it was dawn of day, we proceeded on our journey to the village called Barfan; on one side whereof we halted in a plain, sur-

rounded with high-lands, and watered by the river last above-mentioned. As we were excessively wet, we would fain have dried ourselves in the village; but as we found the cabbins, or huts, to be in a very poor, ruinous condition, we chose rather to repair to our own tents again for that purpose; notwithstanding there are a great number of those wretched houses in the village, and all, likewise, under the shelter of several wide-spreading trees. So heavy, in short, was the rain, all that night, that our bales, which before were standing on the ground, were now floating on the water. As the weather continued so bad as to prevent our moving forward on our journey, we returned once more to the village; but then we were forced to change our quarters twice, on account of our not finding a proper shelter from the rain; which poured down from those large apertures, which most of those cabbins have at top for inlets to the light. In a word, we were reduced to the necessity of drying our commodities by a fire, made of the dung of cows and camels.

On the eleventh instant, however, the weather began to favour us; and then we sent out our camels before us in the evening, and about three hours before day-break we followed them with the weather serene enough, and with a glimpse of light, though we could not discern either moon or star. About half an hour afterwards we traversed the small river called Barland; and in the progress of one hour only, we were obliged to cross it at least ten times over. After that we travelled over several very high mountains, which were covered with snow, where we found the weather excessively bleak and cold; notwithstanding there fell, at the same time, a kind of mist or drizzling rain. The next day, we reached the plains that lie near the village called Noeraloe which consists but of a few straggling huts and tents of the (*n*) Tartars. There we purchased several very fine fowls for three-pence apiece, and eggs for a penny the dozen. There likewise we procured some very good milk and butter. When we had advanced about half a league from thence, we halted between the



1703 mountains, in a fine flat, on the banks of the little river called Siloof, the waters whereof are very palatable, and exceedingly clear. The hills and mountains there are likewise very pleasant, and abound with villages. About noon, the weather began to be fair; the sun had dispersed the clouds; and at midnight, we proceeded once more on our journey over hill and dale, with a fine moon-light, almost as bright as day. The next morning we halted on a kind of rising ground, at about five leagues distance from the place where we had spent the night, and at the distance of about two leagues from Ardevil, where we had the prospect of several high mountains, which were covered with snow. About nine o'clock at night, as we were favoured with a fine moon-light,

we pushed forwards. But our good guide, the moon, too soon deserted us, and a thick fog arose in her stead, which continued till the next morning; by which misfortune we straggled out of our way. We reached, however, the village called Adgarneloe betimes in the morning; there we passed over a bridge, consisting of six arches, under one of which runs the river, called Goeroetsjou, that is, the Dry River. The caravan halted in this village about ten, and we proceeded on our way towards the city; where we dismounted at the Armenian Caravanfara, or inn. The fog continued till the 15th in the morning, at which time it dispersed; and as we were obliged to make some considerable stay at Ardevil, I sent to the village for my baggage.

1703

*Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.*

(a) Cur, Kur, or Cyrus, a river of Asia, which rises in mount Caucasus, and running south through Georgia, and the province of Chirvan in Persia, unites its waters with the river Arras, or Araxes, and continues its course east to the Caspian sea.

(b) Arras or Araxes. See p. 199. n. r.

(c) Ardevil, or Ardebil, east long. 64. 20. lat. 36. situate thirty miles east of Tauris, the burying-place of some of the Persian kings.

(d) Armenia, see p. 198. n. g.

(e) Turkey, see p. 203. n. e.

(f) Derbent, see p. 198. n. d.

(g) Arabia, see p. 208. n. a.

(h) Caspian sea, see p. 60. n. g.

(i) Media, see p. 214. n. e.

(k) Persia, see p. 64. n. v.

(l) Germany, see p. 204. n. g.

(m) Tartary, see p. 18. n. i.

CHAP. XXXV.

*A particular Description of the pompous and magnificent Mausoleum, or funeral Monument of Sefi, King of Persia. An Account of the City, called Ardevil, or Ardebil. Another sumptuous Mausoleum, near Kelgeran. The Author sets out from Ardevil, and arrives at Semgacl.*

AS I was exceedingly ambitious of procuring a sight of the sumptuous (a) mausoleum of Sefi in particular, and of several other (b) funeral monuments of

the kings of Persia, who lie interred in the city of Ardevil, I shall amuse my readers with a particular description of that magnificent sepulchre, before I enter upon any account

The pompous funeral monument of Sefi.

O o o



1703

account of the city itself. These sumptuous monuments then, are erected near the Meydoon, that is, a moderately spacious Square, so called by the inhabitants. The entrance into it is very wide, and erected in a very elegant manner, all vaulted over head, and the stones painted in a variety of colours. We went in by a large wooden-gate, and then came directly into a curious, long gallery; on the top of the walls whereof are divers niches, very accurately painted with blue, green, yellow, and white. At the farther end of this long, spacious gallery, we came to a door, that was plated over with silver, which, as soon as opened, admitted us into a grand, magnificent apartment, on the right-hand whereof there is a pompous salon, or hall, with a dome over head, without any columns, or pillars to support it, somewhat resembling that of the (b) Rotunda at (c) Rome, though not, indeed, of equal extent. The floor of this salon, which is directly opposite to the library and the chappel, is covered with fine carpets; and on the left-hand, over against the entrance to the dome, there is another very lofty apartment with large, glass-windows. From thence we moved forwards through another door, plated over with silver, and came into a court which was nearly quadrangular, and the wall thereof no less than eighteen foot in height. On every side there were three niches, each painted with a variety of very lively colours, embellished with foliages in sculpture, or carved work. On the right-hand of us, there were several funeral monuments with raised coffins in them; some whereof, in particular, were very curiously decorated; and others again, on the left of us, which were separated by a slight wall against that of Sefi; where, (as we were informed) lie the remains, or ashes of divers illustrious princes, descendants from the royal families of that country. There is one apartment, on the right, and another on the left of the above-mentioned court, each of which is raised three foot above the ground, and vaulted over head, in the form of a dome. In the front, they are parted by a wooden balustrade towards the court, in one of the

Several  
monuments.

corners whereof, on the left-hand, there is a folding-door, which is not only plated over with silver, but has a chain, likewise, belonging to it all of massy silver. Here we were obliged to put off our shoes, before we presumed to enter in, or touch the ground-sil, which is composed of white-marble. All the other apartments have white-marble ground-sils, likewise; but then, they are covered with mats. Here we met with a considerable number of Persians, who were seated on stone-benches, both to the right-hand, and the left; for to these, it seems, is committed the whole trust and care of this superb-sepalchre; and to these, likewise, we were obliged to give an acknowledgement, in case we were inclined to proceed any farther: These attendants are not only so frank, and ingenuous, in case you are too sparing and parsimonious, in your acts of benevolence, as to let you know their sentiments, in very intelligible terms; but are apt to turn the tables upon you, and make an exorbitant demand of five, or six times the sum. However, when they find they have disgusted their visitants so far, as to provoke them to put their shoes on their feet again, in order to return; then they begin to be more humble, and willing to submit the gratuity to their own option. When we had been admitted through this door, we came into a small place, that was vaulted in the manner of an half-dome: from thence, on the right-hand, we went through another door, which was embellished with a balustrade of gold, or at least, of silver, richly gilt, and came into a very stately and solemn apartment, in which there were, at proper distances, fixed such a number of gold, and silver lamps, all burning, each of an ell at least in circumference, that there was no possibility of counting them. Here the floor was covered with rich carpets; and both on the right-hand and left, there were abundance of small reading-desks, with books, as large as our usual church Common-prayer-books upon them. This apartment is two and fifty-foot in length, but in breadth, indeed, but thirty-four. The mausoleum of Sefi stands conspicuous

1703

at



1703

at the upper-end of this grand room, and is raised on three steps above the floor; and the chandelier, or lamp that hangs over it, is all of the most refined, solid gold, and of an amazing circumference. Beyond this, we saw a balustrade, all of solid gold likewise, raised on one single step only, which, tho' not above an inch in thickness, is at least six feet and nine inches in length (exclusive of the fronton of the door) and near ten feet in height. This was a folding-door, through which we went into a small circular chappel, in the center whereof, stood the superb monument of Sefi, composed of marble, covered over with a grand, pompous pall, all of gold brocade, and crowned with a large gold vase at each corner. In this chappel, likewise, there are almost an infinite number of lamps; some made of silver, and others of gold. This sepulchral monument is three foot high, nine foot long, and four foot broad.

The monument of Sefi.

Other monuments.

Before this, stood two other tombs, one whereof was of an infant: and two behind it; that is to say, five in all; namely, that of Sefi himself; that of his son Fedredin; that of king Tzenid, and a son of Fedredin, named Soltan Arder, who was dead alive by the (e) Turks; another of a son of king Tzenid; and that of king Aider. The lamps that are thus fixed all round these several sepulchral tombs, are lit up every night; besides two large tapers, which are put into two large candlesticks, each of solid gold. Directly over the tomb of Sefi there is a small dome, covered over with gold, and on one side of it, another, which is incrustated with purple and green stones, all accurately glazed. Tho' some travellers have peremptorily asserted, in their accounts of this place, that no layman, not so much as the king himself, is permitted to enter in at the golden door, in order to see this monument of Sefi; yet, I know the contrary by experience. I must confess, I only just stepped in, without presuming to go too far, being fully convinced of the profound veneration they have for that

facted spot. Every step we made forwards, we found, required a fee, tho' we had paid pretty roundly at our first admission. We were forced to put our hands, in short, into our purses at every new door. To do them justice, however, the attendants are very courteous, and communicative enough; they will answer as many questions, as ever you shall think proper to propose: and, so far were they from hurrying us, that they seemed highly delighted to find, that I pryed into every corner, and was so remarkably attentive to each individual curiosity that they shewed me.

At the entrance into this magnificent apartment, we found, that on the left-hand side, there were several small apartments, all fast locked up, wherein, as we were informed, there were divers other royal monuments inclosed; and (amongst those of many other kings and queens) is that of king Ishmael, the son of Aidel; that of king Tamar, the son of Ishmael; that of king Ishmael, the second, the son of Tamar; that of king Mohammed Khodebend, the son of Ishmael; that of Ishmael Mirsa; that of Hemsa Mirsa, and of the brothers of king Abbas, the son of Khodebend. These last mentioned monuments, it seems, have no decorations to strike the eye of any curious spectator.

Tombs of several kings.

As we went out of the grand salon, or hall, we turned on the right-hand into a passage that leads to the Kitchen, the door whereof, is, likewise, plated with silver. The kitchen itself, however, tho' very spacious, is by no means correspondent with the grandeur of its door. In the center of it there are two large wells; and in the wall, which is lofty enough, there are several nooks, or niches, for the reception of pots and kettles, and a great number of stores beneath. This is the place set apart for dressing the victuals of all such as are attendants, and entrusted with the care of the above described sepulchre. Here, likewise, they distribute what they call Peloe every night to some hundreds of poor people.

A nightly contribution to the poor.

My



1703

My curiosity being thus fully gratified, I went back to the Meydoen, in order to take a survey of his majesty's gardens, each of which is separated from the other, by a wall, erected for that purpose, on one side of the sepulchral vaults above-mentioned. King Sefi formerly made that particular spot, it seems, his favourite place of abode, in a once pompous, and superb edifice, built all with stone, tho' at present, indeed, it is reduced to a heap of rubbish. There are here, however, not only two apartments still subsisting, with commodious chimneys in each, wherein some of the attendants peremptorily insist, that they were formerly part of the royal chamber, set apart for his majesty's own private use; but also some few others, and a small bagnio, or bath, but void of all decorations.

King Sefi's garden.

The first garden, which is of some considerable extent, is very irregular, and tho' shamefully neglected, it is plentifully stored with a great variety of fruits. However, there are no flowers, no plants to be met with, that deserve the least attention of the curious spectator: In various places, it is watered by several little springs, which run across it, both here and there.

As to the second garden, there is no structure at all in it; neither is it so spacious as the former. The trees, however, in this, are much more lofty than those in the first. In a word, both are so little worthy of a stranger's notice, that he could never form an idea of so mean a spot of ground being once a royal garden.

A conduit.

From thence, we went directly to amuse ourselves with our fishing-rods, in a small river that runs gently along from the adjacent mountains. There we met with an aqueduct, or conduit, for a commodious conveyance of a sufficient quantity of water to the palace. This aqueduct was composed of earth, and raised only some few feet from the ground. On the top, there was a gutter for the water to flow down; and below, through a kind of reservoir, erected on purpose for the conveyance of it into the town; where it serves for watering the gardens as occasion requires. At some distance from this water-house, or refer-

voir, the stream falls, like a cascade, with an impetuous torrent, into the small river just mentioned, and which rolls along through the whole country. Here we caught in all but three, or four small fish only, which I afterwards preserved in spirits.

The day following I set out on horseback, at about half a league's distance from the town, in order to make a draught of the prospect thereof, as it appeared on that side. I took my stand accordingly on a hill, which was the only commodious place, indeed, from whence I could have a satisfactory view of it; for in every other part, the trees obstructed too much my sight; and to confess the truth, even on the very spot which I made choice of, the prospect I had was somewhat imperfect. Just at this juncture, a shower of rain began to fall down in so heavy a manner, that I lost my labour, and was obliged to make the best of my way home, without making the least progress in my intended survey.

In my return, I saw a house, with a water-mill adjoining to it for grinding of corn: The water that drives this mill, fell from the summit of the loftiest hills thereabouts, to the westward of the town, which hills are eternally covered, it seems, with snow, and the water flows down through a canal, raised of earth, for that particular purpose. This water flows, torrent-like, below the house, and extends itself over the champaign, flat country, to the south-east, where the conduit stands, which I have before-mentioned. These houses, have each a mill beneath, with two great mill-stones, which constantly turn on a piece of hollowed wood, where the corn, when ground, runs through a wooden pipe under the mill-stone, and the flower comes out on each side. The river runs hard by this house, under a large, lofty bridge, consisting of five arches; the lower part whereof is paved with large stones.

We shall now proceed to amuse our readers with an accurate, tho' compendious description of the city, which the inhabitants sometimes distinguish by the name

1703

... of the ...  
... the city is ...  
... and all of the ...  
... the ...  
... (b) ...  
... (c) ...  
... (d) ...  
... (e) ...  
... (f) ...  
... (g) ...  
... (h) ...  
... (i) ...  
... (j) ...  
... (k) ...  
... (l) ...  
... (m) ...  
... (n) ...  
... (o) ...  
... (p) ...  
... (q) ...  
... (r) ...  
... (s) ...  
... (t) ...  
... (u) ...  
... (v) ...  
... (w) ...  
... (x) ...  
... (y) ...  
... (z) ...  
... (aa) ...  
... (ab) ...  
... (ac) ...  
... (ad) ...  
... (ae) ...  
... (af) ...  
... (ag) ...  
... (ah) ...  
... (ai) ...  
... (aj) ...  
... (ak) ...  
... (al) ...  
... (am) ...  
... (an) ...  
... (ao) ...  
... (ap) ...  
... (aq) ...  
... (ar) ...  
... (as) ...  
... (at) ...  
... (au) ...  
... (av) ...  
... (aw) ...  
... (ax) ...  
... (ay) ...  
... (az) ...  
... (ba) ...  
... (bb) ...  
... (bc) ...  
... (bd) ...  
... (be) ...  
... (bf) ...  
... (bg) ...  
... (bh) ...  
... (bi) ...  
... (bj) ...  
... (bk) ...  
... (bl) ...  
... (bm) ...  
... (bn) ...  
... (bo) ...  
... (bp) ...  
... (bq) ...  
... (br) ...  
... (bs) ...  
... (bt) ...  
... (bu) ...  
... (bv) ...  
... (bw) ...  
... (bx) ...  
... (by) ...  
... (bz) ...  
... (ca) ...  
... (cb) ...  
... (cc) ...  
... (cd) ...  
... (ce) ...  
... (cf) ...  
... (cg) ...  
... (ch) ...  
... (ci) ...  
... (cj) ...  
... (ck) ...  
... (cl) ...  
... (cm) ...  
... (cn) ...  
... (co) ...  
... (cp) ...  
... (cq) ...  
... (cr) ...  
... (cs) ...  
... (ct) ...  
... (cu) ...  
... (cv) ...  
... (cw) ...  
... (cx) ...  
... (cy) ...  
... (cz) ...  
... (da) ...  
... (db) ...  
... (dc) ...  
... (dd) ...  
... (de) ...  
... (df) ...  
... (dg) ...  
... (dh) ...  
... (di) ...  
... (dj) ...  
... (dk) ...  
... (dl) ...  
... (dm) ...  
... (dn) ...  
... (do) ...  
... (dp) ...  
... (dq) ...  
... (dr) ...  
... (ds) ...  
... (dt) ...  
... (du) ...  
... (dv) ...  
... (dw) ...  
... (dx) ...  
... (dy) ...  
... (dz) ...  
... (ea) ...  
... (eb) ...  
... (ec) ...  
... (ed) ...  
... (ee) ...  
... (ef) ...  
... (eg) ...  
... (eh) ...  
... (ei) ...  
... (ej) ...  
... (ek) ...  
... (el) ...  
... (em) ...  
... (en) ...  
... (eo) ...  
... (ep) ...  
... (eq) ...  
... (er) ...  
... (es) ...  
... (et) ...  
... (eu) ...  
... (ev) ...  
... (ew) ...  
... (ex) ...  
... (ey) ...  
... (ez) ...  
... (fa) ...  
... (fb) ...  
... (fc) ...  
... (fd) ...  
... (fe) ...  
... (ff) ...  
... (fg) ...  
... (fh) ...  
... (fi) ...  
... (fj) ...  
... (fk) ...  
... (fl) ...  
... (fm) ...  
... (fn) ...  
... (fo) ...  
... (fp) ...  
... (fq) ...  
... (fr) ...  
... (fs) ...  
... (ft) ...  
... (fu) ...  
... (fv) ...  
... (fw) ...  
... (fx) ...  
... (fy) ...  
... (fz) ...  
... (ga) ...  
... (gb) ...  
... (gc) ...  
... (gd) ...  
... (ge) ...  
... (gf) ...  
... (gg) ...  
... (gh) ...  
... (gi) ...  
... (gj) ...  
... (gk) ...  
... (gl) ...  
... (gm) ...  
... (gn) ...  
... (go) ...  
... (gp) ...  
... (gq) ...  
... (gr) ...  
... (gs) ...  
... (gt) ...  
... (gu) ...  
... (gv) ...  
... (gw) ...  
... (gx) ...  
... (gy) ...  
... (gz) ...  
... (ha) ...  
... (hb) ...  
... (hc) ...  
... (hd) ...  
... (he) ...  
... (hf) ...  
... (hg) ...  
... (hh) ...  
... (hi) ...  
... (hj) ...  
... (hk) ...  
... (hl) ...  
... (hm) ...  
... (hn) ...  
... (ho) ...  
... (hp) ...  
... (hq) ...  
... (hr) ...  
... (hs) ...  
... (ht) ...  
... (hu) ...  
... (hv) ...  
... (hw) ...  
... (hx) ...  
... (hy) ...  
... (hz) ...  
... (ia) ...  
... (ib) ...  
... (ic) ...  
... (id) ...  
... (ie) ...  
... (if) ...  
... (ig) ...  
... (ih) ...  
... (ii) ...  
... (ij) ...  
... (ik) ...  
... (il) ...  
... (im) ...  
... (in) ...  
... (io) ...  
... (ip) ...  
... (iq) ...  
... (ir) ...  
... (is) ...  
... (it) ...  
... (iu) ...  
... (iv) ...  
... (iw) ...  
... (ix) ...  
... (iy) ...  
... (iz) ...  
... (ja) ...  
... (jb) ...  
... (jc) ...  
... (jd) ...  
... (je) ...  
... (jf) ...  
... (jg) ...  
... (jh) ...  
... (ji) ...  
... (jj) ...  
... (jk) ...  
... (jl) ...  
... (jm) ...  
... (jn) ...  
... (jo) ...  
... (jp) ...  
... (jq) ...  
... (jr) ...  
... (js) ...  
... (jt) ...  
... (ju) ...  
... (jv) ...  
... (jw) ...  
... (jx) ...  
... (jy) ...  
... (jz) ...  
... (ka) ...  
... (kb) ...  
... (kc) ...  
... (kd) ...  
... (ke) ...  
... (kf) ...  
... (kg) ...  
... (kh) ...  
... (ki) ...  
... (kj) ...  
... (kk) ...  
... (kl) ...  
... (km) ...  
... (kn) ...  
... (ko) ...  
... (kp) ...  
... (kq) ...  
... (kr) ...  
... (ks) ...  
... (kt) ...  
... (ku) ...  
... (kv) ...  
... (kw) ...  
... (kx) ...  
... (ky) ...  
... (kz) ...  
... (la) ...  
... (lb) ...  
... (lc) ...  
... (ld) ...  
... (le) ...  
... (lf) ...  
... (lg) ...  
... (lh) ...  
... (li) ...  
... (lj) ...  
... (lk) ...  
... (ll) ...  
... (lm) ...  
... (ln) ...  
... (lo) ...  
... (lp) ...  
... (lq) ...  
... (lr) ...  
... (ls) ...  
... (lt) ...  
... (lu) ...  
... (lv) ...  
... (lw) ...  
... (lx) ...  
... (ly) ...  
... (lz) ...  
... (ma) ...  
... (mb) ...  
... (mc) ...  
... (md) ...  
... (me) ...  
... (mf) ...  
... (mg) ...  
... (mh) ...  
... (mi) ...  
... (mj) ...  
... (mk) ...  
... (ml) ...  
... (mm) ...  
... (mn) ...  
... (mo) ...  
... (mp) ...  
... (mq) ...  
... (mr) ...  
... (ms) ...  
... (mt) ...  
... (mu) ...  
... (mv) ...  
... (mw) ...  
... (mx) ...  
... (my) ...  
... (mz) ...  
... (na) ...  
... (nb) ...  
... (nc) ...  
... (nd) ...  
... (ne) ...  
... (nf) ...  
... (ng) ...  
... (nh) ...  
... (ni) ...  
... (nj) ...  
... (nk) ...  
... (nl) ...  
... (nm) ...  
... (nn) ...  
... (no) ...  
... (np) ...  
... (nq) ...  
... (nr) ...  
... (ns) ...  
... (nt) ...  
... (nu) ...  
... (nv) ...  
... (nw) ...  
... (nx) ...  
... (ny) ...  
... (nz) ...  
... (oa) ...  
... (ob) ...  
... (oc) ...  
... (od) ...  
... (oe) ...  
... (of) ...  
... (og) ...  
... (oh) ...  
... (oi) ...  
... (oj) ...  
... (ok) ...  
... (ol) ...  
... (om) ...  
... (on) ...  
... (oo) ...  
... (op) ...  
... (oq) ...  
... (or) ...  
... (os) ...  
... (ot) ...  
... (ou) ...  
... (ov) ...  
... (ow) ...  
... (ox) ...  
... (oy) ...  
... (oz) ...  
... (pa) ...  
... (pb) ...  
... (pc) ...  
... (pd) ...  
... (pe) ...  
... (pf) ...  
... (pg) ...  
... (ph) ...  
... (pi) ...  
... (pj) ...  
... (pk) ...  
... (pl) ...  
... (pm) ...  
... (pn) ...  
... (po) ...  
... (pp) ...  
... (pq) ...  
... (pr) ...  
... (ps) ...  
... (pt) ...  
... (pu) ...  
... (pv) ...  
... (pw) ...  
... (px) ...  
... (py) ...  
... (pz) ...  
... (qa) ...  
... (qb) ...  
... (qc) ...  
... (qd) ...  
... (qe) ...  
... (qf) ...  
... (qg) ...  
... (qh) ...  
... (qi) ...  
... (qj) ...  
... (qk) ...  
... (ql) ...  
... (qm) ...  
... (qn) ...  
... (qo) ...  
... (qp) ...  
... (qq) ...  
... (qr) ...  
... (qs) ...  
... (qt) ...  
... (qu) ...  
... (qv) ...  
... (qw) ...  
... (qx) ...  
... (qy) ...  
... (qz) ...  
... (ra) ...  
... (rb) ...  
... (rc) ...  
... (rd) ...  
... (re) ...  
... (rf) ...  
... (rg) ...  
... (rh) ...  
... (ri) ...  
... (rj) ...  
... (rk) ...  
... (rl) ...  
... (rm) ...  
... (rn) ...  
... (ro) ...  
... (rp) ...  
... (rq) ...  
... (rr) ...  
... (rs) ...  
... (rt) ...  
... (ru) ...  
... (rv) ...  
... (rw) ...  
... (rx) ...  
... (ry) ...  
... (rz) ...  
... (sa) ...  
... (sb) ...  
... (sc) ...  
... (sd) ...  
... (se) ...  
... (sf) ...  
... (sg) ...  
... (sh) ...  
... (si) ...  
... (sj) ...  
... (sk) ...  
... (sl) ...  
... (sm) ...  
... (sn) ...  
... (so) ...  
... (sp) ...  
... (sq) ...  
... (sr) ...  
... (ss) ...  
... (st) ...  
... (su) ...  
... (sv) ...  
... (sw) ...  
... (sx) ...  
... (sy) ...  
... (sz) ...  
... (ta) ...  
... (tb) ...  
... (tc) ...  
... (td) ...  
... (te) ...  
... (tf) ...  
... (tg) ...  
... (th) ...  
... (ti) ...  
... (tj) ...  
... (tk) ...  
... (tl) ...  
... (tm) ...  
... (tn) ...  
... (to) ...  
... (tp) ...  
... (tq) ...  
... (tr) ...  
... (ts) ...  
... (tt) ...  
... (tu) ...  
... (tv) ...  
... (tw) ...  
... (tx) ...  
... (ty) ...  
... (tz) ...  
... (ua) ...  
... (ub) ...  
... (uc) ...  
... (ud) ...  
... (ue) ...  
... (uf) ...  
... (ug) ...  
... (uh) ...  
... (ui) ...  
... (uj) ...  
... (uk) ...  
... (ul) ...  
... (um) ...  
... (un) ...  
... (uo) ...  
... (up) ...  
... (uq) ...  
... (ur) ...  
... (us) ...  
... (ut) ...  
... (uu) ...  
... (uv) ...  
... (uw) ...  
... (ux) ...  
... (uy) ...  
... (uz) ...  
... (va) ...  
... (vb) ...  
... (vc) ...  
... (vd) ...  
... (ve) ...  
... (vf) ...  
... (vg) ...  
... (vh) ...  
... (vi) ...  
... (vj) ...  
... (vk) ...  
... (vl) ...  
... (vm) ...  
... (vn) ...  
... (vo) ...  
... (vp) ...  
... (vq) ...  
... (vr) ...  
... (vs) ...  
... (vt) ...  
... (vu) ...  
... (vv) ...  
... (vw) ...  
... (vx) ...  
... (vy) ...  
... (vz) ...  
... (wa) ...  
... (wb) ...  
... (wc) ...  
... (wd) ...  
... (we) ...  
... (wf) ...  
... (wg) ...  
... (wh) ...  
... (wi) ...  
... (wj) ...  
... (wk) ...  
... (wl) ...  
... (wm) ...  
... (wn) ...  
... (wo) ...  
... (wp) ...  
... (wq) ...  
... (wr) ...  
... (ws) ...  
... (wt) ...  
... (wu) ...  
... (wv) ...  
... (ww) ...  
... (wx) ...  
... (wy) ...  
... (wz) ...  
... (xa) ...  
... (xb) ...  
... (xc) ...  
... (xd) ...  
... (xe) ...  
... (xf) ...  
... (xg) ...  
... (xh) ...  
... (xi) ...  
... (xj) ...  
... (xk) ...  
... (xl) ...  
... (xm) ...  
... (xn) ...  
... (xo) ...  
... (xp) ...  
... (xq) ...  
... (xr) ...  
... (xs) ...  
... (xt) ...  
... (xu) ...  
... (xv) ...  
... (xw) ...  
... (xx) ...  
... (xy) ...  
... (xz) ...  
... (ya) ...  
... (yb) ...  
... (yc) ...  
... (yd) ...  
... (ye) ...  
... (yf) ...  
... (yg) ...  
... (yh) ...  
... (yi) ...  
... (yj) ...  
... (yk) ...  
... (yl) ...  
... (ym) ...  
... (yn) ...  
... (yo) ...  
... (yp) ...  
... (yq) ...  
... (yr) ...  
... (ys) ...  
... (yt) ...  
... (yu) ...  
... (yv) ...  
... (yw) ...  
... (yx) ...  
... (yy) ...  
... (yz) ...  
... (za) ...  
... (zb) ...  
... (zc) ...  
... (zd) ...  
... (ze) ...  
... (zf) ...  
... (zg) ...  
... (zh) ...  
... (zi) ...  
... (zj) ...  
... (zk) ...  
... (zl) ...  
... (zm) ...  
... (zn) ...  
... (zo) ...  
... (zp) ...  
... (zq) ...  
... (zr) ...  
... (zs) ...  
... (zt) ...  
... (zu) ...  
... (zv) ...  
... (zw) ...  
... (zx) ...  
... (zy) ...  
... (zz) ...



1703

The situation of Ardevil, or Ardabil.

name of (f) Ardevil, and Ardebil at others.

This city is situate on the north of Persia, and east of the province of Sherwan, in the antient (g) Media, to the south of the (h) Caspian sea, and to the east of the town of (i) Tauris, or Tabris. The buildings here are much more magnificent than those at (k) Samachi, notwithstanding they are composed of the very same materials. The Bazars here likewise, are much finer, and much more artfully covered. Here, however, they have no great dealings in gold stuffs, or in diamonds, as some will assert they used to do in former times, and as they do in other places. Here there are great numbers of moschs, embellished with domes; the chief, or most considerable of which, is, that called Mu-zyd, Mu-zhit, or Maziit Adine, or in plain English, their Sunday-Mosch.

It is situate on the east-side of the city, and within the walls; and as it is erected on a rising-ground, it is very conspicuous, even at a considerable distance. It is divided into several parts, in each of which is performed divine service. The principal division is moderately large and circular, and covered with a dome, which is raised on a circular wall, tho' somewhat low, which rises from the body of the building, in much the same form as an European steeple. In the front of this mosch, there is a basin, or reservoir, which is furnished with plenty of such water as falls from the adjacent hills, from whence it is conveyed by pipes, which are laid under-ground; and this water proves a great refreshment to great numbers of persons who are religiously inclined, and resort hither to perform their devotions. There is not one, however, of all the rest, that can stand in any competition with this. In this city, likewise, there are several hamans, that is, bagnios, or baths. There are several streets in the town, indeed; but then, there are only three or four of them (where their principal shops stand) that are any ways spacious, or worthy of notice. As to the houses here, they are all flat at top; and make a shocking appearance. There are more cara-

The chief mosch, here called,

vaseras at Samachi than at this place. The Indians, however, have three out of the small number that there are here.

As to the (l) Chinese, they have none at all; and trade, indeed, droops here very much. In divers parts of the town there are plenty of lofty alder-trees, and lindens; and the river runs on one side of it. All the roads, likewise, leading to, and from the town, abound with regular rows of young trees, which, as they had been but lately planted, must needs, in the process of a few years, strike the eye very agreeably, and have a good effect. The most beautiful part of the town is the Meydoen, or square, where the sepulchral monument of Sefi stands, as we have observed before. There are several mean, paltry houses, both to the right and left, which are inhabited only by a pack of poor, beggarly mechanics. Most of the houses, however, which are not situate in the Bazars, notwithstanding their mean, external appearance, have very commodious gardens, abounding with all sorts of fruit-trees; and in the suburbs, or out-skirts of the town, where houses stand straggling, and at a considerable distance from each other, there are large spots of ground, that are full of trees. From hence it is, that the town may, with propriety enough, be said to be of large extent; and, indeed, much larger than Samachi; tho' it does not contain near the number of houses. It is situate in the center of a spacious plain, which is at least, three leagues in extent, computing from the two extremities, and encompassed by lofty mountains, the highest of which is distinguished by the name of Sevalau, or Sebelahu, and is everlastingly covered with snow. This mountain stands to the west, north-west of the town. There is another, called Chilan, which stands to the east, or south-east of the town. There is a third at a place called Sahand, and a fourth, distinguished by the name of Alvand, which stands at but a small distance from a place, called Hamadan, which is more lofty than either of the other three. These are commonly called

P p p

the

1703



1703

Four  
months with  
Lord the  
Procurator

the Brothers, on account of the near resemblance, which they bear to each other.

In the mountains, that stand within a very small distance from the town, there are divers hot baths, which are in great repute with the inhabitants of those parts. One of them is not much above two leagues off, and a second about three; the others, indeed, are at a greater distance.

On my first arrival at this town, I could scarce walk along the streets, for the multitude of people that flocked about me; as my Dutch habit proved a perfect novelty to them. The same inconvenience I laboured under, when I took my survey of the sepulchral monument of Sefi; but there, indeed, the attendants were reduced to the necessity of using rough means with the mob, that hovered, on the same account, all round about me. Neither was I perfectly free from a crowd of spectators, even at the caravan-sera where I lodged. And one Persian, in particular, was so curious, as to offer a small sum of money to procure a sight of me.

Notwithstanding I was thus incommoded, I drew a view of the town, from a rising-ground, near the bridge, which I mentioned some time ago, and which stands on one side, to the south-west. The reader will find a prospect of it, as it is to be seen from without, in the plate hereto annexed, and numbered 48. I have distinguished the domes of the sepulchre of Sefi, by the letter A. There are but three of the four to be seen; that which is invisible from that place, as it is smaller and lower, is covered with gold. The great mosque of Adnle is distinguished by the letter B, and the letter C represents the bridge of eight arches, which stands on the river that runs across the plain. As the town is surrounded with such abundance of lofty trees, there is nothing more to be seen. In the plate annexed (No. 49.) I have given the reader an exact representation of the bridge that consists of five arches only.

On the 6th of October I went to the village called Kelgeran, which is some-

what more than half a league to the northward of the city; in order to go thither, I was obliged to pass by the sepulchral monument of Sefi, from whence the road is full of alder-trees, and lindens, on each side of a little river. This village is principally inhabited by the (m) Armenians, who have two churches here; but both are very small, and very dark.

As I went out of the town, I found there was a high-road, which was planted with trees on each side, and led directly to one of the king's gardens. This garden was inclosed with a large earth-wall only, and seemed to lie in as much disorder, and as much neglected as those above described. Notwithstanding this, there is plenty of good fruit in it; especially of apples, pears, and plums; the flowers, indeed, are very ordinary, and have no good qualities to recommend them. Over-against this, there is another garden, wherein stands an edifice, which tho' run to ruin and decay, has various apartments in it. At the entrance of this village, I saw the sepulchral monument of Seid Tzeibrail, the father of Sefi above-named; in which royal dormitory are deposited, likewise, the venerable ashes of Seid Sala, the father of the before-mentioned Seid Tzeibrail, and those of his grandfather, named Seid Kudbeddin. This monument stands in a garden, surrounded, or inclosed with an earth-wall, and two large folding-gates, one in the front, and the other backwards. The latter comes out to the road; but the former is in the village. Again, this royal monument is quadrangular, tolerably lofty, and cased with small stones. There is a round tower on the top of it, tho' but low, which supports a verdant dome, inlaid with gold, and azure decorations, surmounted with golden balls. On each side of the walls, there are six several windows; the highest whereof are exquisitely well wrought, beautifully painted, and embellished like the dome, and those underneath them, have each an iron-grate, - and shutters to them within. There are three small cavities below the cornish, which are embellished with a rich variety of colours,

and

1703

The King's  
Garden.

A royal  
sepulchre.

See plate  
48.



1703

and in the centre of the structure behind, there is a wooden-gate, with a step to it. Above this door, likewise, there is a decoration in the form of a semi-vault, with three small windows in it. This door, I perceived, was fast locked; and, that in the front is a very fine portal. As I could see nobody to apply to for admittance, I took a draught of it thro' the crevices of the gate, as well as I could, a representation whereof the reader will find in plate number 50. In the village, and near the front of this structure, there is a basin, perfectly even with the ground; which, tho' but fourteen feet long, is sixteen broad. There are six steps to the door of this edifice; and, in order to go over the groundfil of it, I was obliged to pull off my shoes; in the same ceremonial manner as I had done before at the monument of King Sefi; and most of the devotees kiss the sepulchre, when they pay it a visit. When I was got into the first apartment, which has a curious glass-window above, I found the floor was covered with carpets. At a door, directly opposite to the first, I had a view of this sepulchre, which was raised six foot high, and stood in the center of a very elegant apartment. It was composed of wood, indeed; but then, as they were pleased to inform me, the enchasings were all of solid gold. The pall that is spread over it is of a rich brocade; and there are several silver, and golden-lamps, not only before, but over the door. Notwithstanding, I was not permitted to stir an inch beyond the door, where the monument stands erected; yet, I could see every thing distinctly, and was as curious as I could in making my observations.

An author-  
py accident

Whilst I was thus busily employed in taking this survey, my guide, who was an Armenian, unfortunately happened to have some angry words with the attendants on the place; and from opprobrious language they came, in short, to blows. At this quarrel I was greatly concerned, and used my utmost endeavours to compromise the matter, and make them friends again, if possible; in order to prevent the fatal consequences, that sometimes attend the

like disorders. I knew very well, the inhabitants of this place were very vindictive; as well as proud and imperious; and that the governor of the province had spent no less than forty years in bringing them under due subjection; and before he could accomplish it at last, he was reduced to the necessity of sending some part of them away to (H) Ispahan. Formerly they were so headstrong, brutish, and outrageous, that whenever they thought proper, they would take even wives away from their husbands by force; neither would they regard whom they sacrificed to their rage and resentment, in case they met but with the least opposition. The merchants themselves, at that time, were not safe, even in their caravanserais, from the injuries and insults of those savage and untractable people. The Khan, however, at present, has found out, it seems, ways and means for giving a check to their usual insolence, notwithstanding he has no foot-guards, and only about three hundred horse.

On the second instant, the effects belonging to the merchants were carried to the village, called Adgaereloe, where the guide of the caravan dwelt, who made us lose, through his contrivance, or misconduct, the very finest part of all the season. On the ninth, however, he determined to set forwards; but as there had fallen before such a prodigious quantity of rain, he was under an absolute necessity of postponing his departure till the twelfth. Whilst I was here, several Armenian priests made their applications to me for my benevolence and free-gift of what I thought proper, towards the erection of a church, intended to be dedicated to St. John, as soon as finished, and which workmen were daily forwarding in an adjacent village. Accordingly, I made them a little present, which was gratefully enough received, and wished them all the good success that so laudable an undertaking very justly deserved.

On the eleventh, I made the necessary preparations for my departure, after a whole month spent at Ardevil before-mentioned, and sent my cargo to the caravan. On the twelfth,

1701



1703 twelfth, as I arose by day-break, I met with a great number of Persians, who, as they passed through the town, were all jovial and merry, on account of their safe return from (o) Mecca, where they had been a voluntary pilgrimage to the sacred mausoleum, or dormitory, of their great prophet Mohammed.

There it was, that the caravan began to set out in the afternoon; and as we faced to the southward, after we had crossed the plain, we got amongst some mountains, from whence we had the finest prospect imaginable, not only of the city, but of all the adjacent villages. Though every thing had a very good effect there; yet we were at too great distance to discern objects quite so distinctly as we could have wished. The caravan halted at a village, called Sardale, which is near three leagues from the city; but such a sudden fog, or mist, arose upon us, at our entrance on the mountains, that we had but a very imperfect view of them. The soil of the lands adjacent to this village, which is of a moderate extent, is very fertile, and abounds with corn, which we found laid up in heaps, on all sides.

We set out from hence, at three in the morning, and accomplished our passage over the mountains; and when we were got at some considerable distance from them, those which were the highest, appeared to the eye, as if their tops had touched the very clouds. Even there likewise, the soil is moderately fertile; and the peasants there, who are very numerous, were very busily employed in tilling the ground with buffaloes, and oxen. At nine, after having passed through several little, inconsiderable villages, we came to that called Koraming, which is pretty extensive, and abounds with large heaps of corn.

There we halted in the plain, by the side of a rivulet, or brook, which runs across it; and there we espied a prodigious flight of small birds; some snipes, and others thrushes; of which I shot a considerable number: I killed likewise two small young wild ducks. The lands that lie all round these villages abound with

fruit-trees, as well as willows and alders. Here we waited for some of our companions, whom we had left behind; and in that interval I made a draught of the prospect, which the reader will find hereto annexed in plate 51.

Towards the evening, the fog fell heavy upon us again, and so continued till midnight; at which time we got amongst the mountains, but then, indeed, the moon favoured us, and shone serenely bright.

On the fifteenth, in the morning, we came to a village called Fattaba. By break of day on the sixteenth, we moved forwards among the mountains. My two friends, the Armenians, who had tarried behind, overtook us, and joined us before it was dark; and on the seventeenth, after we had journeyed over several rocks, we halted among the mountains. That day we overtook our camels, which had set out before us; and at about half a league distance from thence we had a full view of the famous mount (p) Taurus, by the inhabitants called Caselusan.

It extends itself a great way up the country, and is distinguished by a great variety of names, according to the several places which it crosses; in the southern parts of (q) Asia minor, however, it retains its first and most proper appellation. Some historians, indeed, confound it with mount (r) Caucasus. We began to ascend this remarkable mountain by three in the morning. We found it prodigiously steep, and full of rocks, with large fissures, and such precipices, as were enough to strike the boldest heart with terror. And as the path-way, or road, is very narrow, and consequently very dangerous, we were obliged to dismount and walk on foot. Though the passage over it, for the generality, is accomplished in somewhat less than an hour; yet we were two hours at least in the completion of ours; as our caravan happened to be more numerous than usual. As we descended, we saw such precipices, as must doubtless be very shocking to such as travel this road in the night-time. When we got safe over this mountain, we came into a plain,

The author  
diverts  
himself  
with  
shooting.

Mount  
Taurus.



1703

plain, which we found of a very considerable extent, and which we crossed to the left, and then proceeded till we came to another mountain, or at least another branch of mount Taurus, which in this place, divides itself into two parts, between which runs the river called Kisilofan, by some, and Kurp by others.

The river of Kisilofan

Its course, or stream, is very rapid, and its waters, at various distances, fall down among the rocks, like so many cascades, with a prodigious force. It has its rise, or spring, in the west, and empties itself into the Caspian-sea.

Over this river king Tamar erected a stone-bridge, ten paces in breadth, and in length no less than one hundred and fifty. This bridge is moderately lofty, and consists of six arches; three whereof are wider than the rest. There are three apertures, or openings, between four of them, and a sort of a semi-circular tower between the other two. At present, the river runs thro' only one or two at most, except the waters are casually swelled beyond their usual height. When we had crossed over this bridge, we halted, in order to wait till the caravan, which was considerable behind, should overtake us: my friends, the Armenians, embraced this opportunity to regale themselves with a dish or two of coffee; but for my own part, I improved this short interval, by taking a draught of the prospect hereto annexed in plate LII.

PL. LII.  
A fine prospect.

When we were all joined, we ascended the second mountain, or the other branch (as we observed before) of the Taurus, which is much loftier, larger, and more steep than the former: as we had been greatly fatigued, however, in our passage over the first, on foot; we were obliged here several times to stop, in order to recover our breath.

At last, indeed, when we got into a better path, we all re-mounted, and gained the summit by break of day. Two hours

after us, the rest of the caravan mounted their horses again; and by that time we had got about half a league farther, we came into a very fine, and well cultivated country.

By nine in the morning we reached the village called Kasiebeggideraff; where we purchased grapes, for the first time, after the rate of four pence per pound. All the road beyond mount Taurus, as well as the soil is extremely good.

From thence we had a view of another mountain, called Sawalan, which is much loftier than the former, and everlastingly covered with snow; but in order to rest, and refresh ourselves a little, we halted here a whole day.

The mountain of Sawalan.

On the twentieth instant, we set forwards about three in the morning, the weather favouring us exceedingly; and by about seven, we came to a rivulet, or brook, the waters whereof run down almost to the village called Jamkoela. There we met with some uncommon birds, called by the inhabitants Baeker-Kara. After that we passed through several villages, from whence we had a prospect of mount Taurus, at a considerable distance; and in much the same manner, as the reader will find it represented in Plate LIII.

PL. LIII.

On the twenty second we traversed a wide plain, which was bordered, on the left-hand, by several hills and mountains, where the inhabitants obliged us with better grapes than those we bought at first, and of a more exquisite flavour.

On the twenty third, we reached the town called Samgacl; and after we had passed through it, and left it behind us for some considerable time, we halted once more; and there we were furnished with several pomegranates, which proved exceedingly fine, moderately large, and of a most beautiful colour. There likewise we purchased, at a moderate price, some very fine grapes, and other refreshing fruits.

Qq q

Occa-



## Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

(a) Mausoleum, a famous, marble sepulchre, built by Artemisia, in honour of her husband Mausolus, king of Caria: it was thirty five cubits high, 44 feet about, and supported by thirty six marble pillars. As this was accounted one of the seven wonders of the world, all other rich and magnificent sepulchral monuments are distinguished from thence by the name of a Mausoleum.

(b) Rotundo, at Rome, was a famous edifice there, so called, from its being built in a circular form both within and without.

(c) Rome, see p. 108. n. g.

(d) Persia, see p. 64. n. e.

(e) Turkey, see p. 203. n. e.

(f) Ardevil, or Ardebil, see p. 233. n. e.

(g) Media, see p. 214. n. e.

(h) Caspian-sea, see p. 66. n. g.

(i) Tauris, or Tabris, east long. 46. 30 lat. 38. 20. a city of Persia in Asia, in the province of Adirbeizan, the ancient Ecbatana, the capital of Media. It is situated in a fine plain, surrounded with mountains, from whence there falls a rivulet, which runs through the city; lying 300 miles south-east of Erzerum, and 400 miles north of Ispahan. The old city was 15 miles in circumference, and had walls which were 70 cubits high. The present town is about 5 miles in circuit, very populous, and a place of great trade. As it stands near the frontiers of Turkey, it has been often taken and retaken. The Turks surprised it during the

late civil wars in Persia, and exercised their usual barbarities on the inhabitants, killing an incredible number of them: but Koul Kan has reduced it under the obedience of the Persians again, and pursued the Turks into their own territories.

(k) Samachi, see a description of it by the author in p. 209.

(l) China, see p. 66. n. t.

(m) Armenia, see p. 198. n. g.

(n) Ispahan, see p. 109. n. w.

(o) Mecca, east long. 43. 30. lat. 21. 20. the capital of the territory of Mecca, and of all Arabia Felix, in Asia, and the place of Mahomet's nativity, situate thirty miles east of Siffin, the port-town to it on the Red-sea, 200 miles south-east of Medina. It is a large, well-built city, in the middle whereof stands the Kaaba, or house of God, which the Arabs believe was built by Abraham, and to which Mahomet obliged all his disciples to go in pilgrimage, once in their lives. This temple is but 15 feet long, and 12 broad, and 30 feet high; and there is a large court about it, encompassed with a piazza, in which the pilgrims perform their devotions, seldom entering the Kaaba, which is too small to admit many.

(p) Taurus, a mountain, which runs through the lesser Asia, from west to east into Persia.

(q) Asia, see p. 127. n. e.

(r) Caucasus mount, see p. 198. n. e.

## C H A P. XXXVI.

*A Description of the City, or Town called Samgacl, and of the several Places that must be passed through in the Way to that Place. The Author arrives at the City called Com.*

WE were detained here all the next day, in order to wait for the custom-house-officers, who reside in the suburbs.

Though



1703

August, 1703.

Though Samgzel has the appearance only of a country village; there are several very lofty and well-built houses in it, (considering the country wherein it stands) some, indeed, composed all of earth, and others with earth and stone intermixed. The Bazar belonging to this town is a very fine one, and well-worthy of a stranger's notice. That part of it where they keep their principal shops, but more especially those belonging to the drapers, where they vend large quantities of cotton-stuffs and cloths, is well-covered and vaulted. However, there are shops, in divers other parts of the town, which are covered, and a large number of moschs, that are embellished with domes; and that which is looked upon as their principal, or chief, is painted with a lively green, and without glazed with a fine purple. There is one that is somewhat lofty, with a dome to it, which the (a) Turks, indeed, when they first became masters of the place, made use of as their place of public worship; but it is now run to ruin and decay. Tho' it is not, it is true, over spacious; yet it is pleasantly enough situated in a plain, with high mountains near it to the westward. As there is a stream of fine clear water; at about half a league distance from thence, our caravan thought proper to halt there for awhile, at a place that abounded with trees and gardens that were well walled round. I went to the north-east part of the town, and there took the prospect of it, as the reader will see in the plate number LIV annexed.

PL. LIV.

The letter A. points out the mosch above-mentioned to be run to ruins. The letter B. represents the most distinguished mosch, and the letter C. a large building, which is almost totally demolished. I did not observe any thing else in this place worthy my attention, as there were no traces, or footsteps, whereby I could form any adequate idea of its antiquity, tho', doubtless, it is ancient; and tho' it is well known, that it was in a flourishing condition in the days of Tamerlane the Great; but it was afterwards, it is true, entirely demolished by the Turks. There is but one public inn,

or caravanserai, throughout the whole city. It is a moderately large one, however, composed of earth and clay, and the river called Saganliacy runs to the east of it, and from thence rolls its waters amongst the mountains. There it was that I took the prospect which the reader will find in the plate number LV, hereto annexed.

1703

LV.

This town is under the jurisdiction of a Daroega, that is, a Bailiff; and there, tho' you pay, indeed, the sum of thirty-pence for every horse-load of silk, or cloth; yet you are charged but with fifteen, for other commodities of less value. In the evening it began to rain apace; and continued so to do till about an hour before day-break.

On the twenty fifth we proceeded on our journey, and the road, indeed, was very fine; for the officers above-mentioned had agreed to meet us at the place where we proposed to halt that day, in order to receive their customary dues. We had a distant sight of several villages as we journeyed on, but halted at a place called Kurkjandy, which lies about three leagues distance, to the south-east of the town. In this little spot there is a branch of the (b) Tanrus, which extends it self from north to south, towards (c) Curdistan; which is inhabited by a people called the Curds, who though they reside in villages, yet they insist, that they have notwithstanding a fortress in the mountains called Keyder Byamber.

On the 26th we had a violent shower of rain, and traversed the plain in the very midst of it, journeying on towards the mountains; and by dawn of day we could discern a place called Soltania, which stood on our right, at about two leagues distance from the place where we had halted for some part of the night. This town is situated in a plain, near several mountains, which almost surround it, with that of Keyder before-mentioned on the right: as the guides, however, of our caravan had no business to transact there; and as there is no such thing as entering the town without paying some customary fees, we passed by it; but it was with abundance of

The town of Soltania.

112-



1703 reluctance, on my own part. They told me, indeed, in order to sooth me, that they should halt at a place but a small distance from it; but finding, that they had no such real intention, I rode back towards the town, and halted at a commodious rising-ground near the east side of it, where I took the view of it, which the reader will find in the plate number LVI. hereto annexed.

PL. LVI.

There are four spacious moschs in it, the three principal whereof have large domes to them; and in one of them is the sepulchral monument of Sultan Mohammed Khodabend, who laid the foundations of it, as they pretend, about four hundred years ago: this (*d*) Mausoleum, they assured me, is very pompous and magnificent, and very beautifully built; and that the chapel belonging to it is decorated with gold and silver. The prospect of it from without has a very good effect.

A description  
tion of it.

There are neither gates nor walls to this town; and all the houses that are either in, or round about it, are built of earth, lime, and clay. There are eight or ten caravanseras, however, in it, and some few bazars; but it must be confessed, they are not very considerable; neither can the place, with propriety, be termed a town of trade. Formerly, indeed, before it was demolished by Tamerlane, it was looked upon as one of the principal towns throughout the whole empire of (*e*) Persia. As to the palace, which was once the most superb and magnificent building in it, there are no foot-steps of it now to be seen. There are the ruins, indeed, of an antient stone-tower and gate, at about half a league's distance from the town; and these, it is highly probable, belonged to the old city, which is situate in thirty six degrees thirty minutes of northern latitude.

It is marked  
the words.

It was two hours, if not more, before we could overtake the caravan, which had continued its regular progress; but at noon it halted, as well as we, at a village called Thalís, the parts adjacent whereof abound with what the inhabitants call Baeker-kaeraes, that is to say, birds, that

bear some near resemblance to our partridges, with this trivial distinction only, that they are somewhat larger, and their bellies and wings are of a whitish colour. These fly a considerable height, and in large flocks; but are seemingly fond of, and frequently seen hopping about such lands as are but newly manured. I had the good fortune to kill one of them; which proved a weighty one, was well fed, full of flesh, and when dress'd, was a most delicious morsel.

We pursued our journey from hence two hours before day-break, and after a progress of five hours, we reached a town called Gromdore; a town that is very extensive, abounds with fine trees, and fine gardens, and is situate by the side of a gently purling stream. Some of its houses are pretty lofty, and worthy of a stranger's notice.

From hence we set out again much about the same hour as we did the day before, and journeyed over the same plain. The mountains that surround it, we observed, were at the distance of a league, or thereabouts, from one another. The adjacent grounds seemed to be well cultivated, and there were a great number of villages all round about the country. The Peasants there make little dams, or mounds of earth, in order to enclose the water; and there are several conduits or reservoirs of water, for the refreshment of the land as occasion offers. After that we passed through two little villages, the moschs whereof had somewhat over them like our steeples, which in this part of the country is, we can assure the reader, a sight something novel and uncommon. These moschs are very broad at bottom; but at the top terminate in the form of a spire. We were informed, that these were the sepulchral monuments of some particular saints, to whose memory these moschs were annexed.

About noon, we passed down a kind of hollow lane, which was encompassed, in a manner, by a kind of canal, or reservoir, about five or six feet in breadth, the water whereof overflowed its banks, in

two

1703

the place particularly, so  
all the birds from north  
west of course.  
A good place we found  
about Persians, and the  
in the land of it  
surrounded with a mud  
belonging to a garden  
to be entered into, we  
a large gate. The first  
enough, abounds with trees  
and all the adjacent parts  
pleasant. The two villages  
you just saw the moschs  
were, but the latter name  
from distant, or distant  
distant distance, one  
Here the mountains terminate  
toward to us to be  
we were a progress of it  
and it took in the m  
led through a road, the  
hills and villages look  
and the left, from whence  
light appeared, we could  
mountain, which were  
town. After that, we  
looked river so far down  
The weather was very fine  
we reached it in a plain  
where we all continued  
view of a low wall; w  
by no means uncommon  
In this town there are  
died houses, but most  
and built on such a ridge  
towers, it is distant  
be removed, and take  
abounds with trees and  
surrounded almost with  
situated in the plain.  
In the Plate, (Plat  
ed, the reader will find  
place.  
The inhabitants of th  
hilly land with all  
We had a good view, p  
as we could with  
calling her names, of  
house of the land. To  
which they call Ang  
very much on it we



1703

two places particularly, to that degree, that all the lands from north-west to south-east were all covered.

In this place we found two villages, one named Parfheim, and the other Touockfy; this is the smallest of the two, and is surrounded with a mud-wall, like one belonging to a garden.

As we entered into it, we passed through a large gate. The former is spacious enough, abounds with trees and gardens, and all the adjacent parts are extremely pleasant. The two villages, where we told you just now the moschs and steeples, as it were, bear the same name, and are in the same district, or division, tho' at a considerable distance one from the other. Here the mountains terminate, or at least seemed to us to do so. That very day we made a progress of at least five leagues; and at three in the morning, we passed through a road, that abounded with hills and villages both on the right-hand and the left, from whence, as soon as daylight appeared, we could plainly see some mountains, which were all covered with snow. After that, we crossed over one little river no less than three or four times. The weather was very favourable to us till we reached as far as a place called Gihara, where we all sheltered ourselves under the ruins of a low wall: which is a practice by no means uncommon in these parts. In this town there are at least five hundred houses, but most of them very low, and built on such a rising ground, that a traveller, at a distance might very easily be deceived, and take it for a fortress; it abounds with trees and gardens; but it is surrounded almost with houses that are absolutely uninhabited.

Pl. 57.

In the Plate, (No. 57.) hereto annexed, the reader will find a prospect of the place.

The inhabitants of this town are plentifully furnished with all sorts of provisions. We had as good meat, poultry, and fruit, as any one could wish to eat, and particularly some melons, of which I preserved some of the seed. There I shot a bird, which they call an Angoert; it resembled very much one of our ducks; but it is ca-

pable of flying higher, and as it walks, it struts along with its head erected like an european cock, and naturally takes the water. The body of this bird is red; its neck is of a yellow hue, almost up to its head; it is white, however, all about its eyes to the bill, which is all black; as to its wings they are particoloured; that is to say, white, red, and black. No sooner had I shot it but my dog brought it to me alive.

In number 58, I have given the reader a prospect of a small village; and in Plate (No. 59.) he has a representation of the bird above described.

In this part of the country, there is plenty likewise of Cotton-trees, and in Plate, (No. 60.) I have given the reader a draught of one of its branches. The Pods, however, there represented, are in that condition, as they appear, when the fruit of it is not perfectly ripe; and one of the four the reader will perceive to be burst open, and full of cotton. Sometimes these pods are gathered, and sometimes again they fall of themselves, when the Pod is burst and beginning to decay. As to their colour, they are purple without, and when they burst, and shew themselves open, they have a very good effect by the white within.

Here we continued all the 30th day of the month, in order to give our horses proper rest. About noon (f), a Polish ambassador passed by me in his way from (g) Isphahan to his own country. When I saw him, I was alone in pursuit of my game; however, as some of his retinue observed me to be in a German dress, they called out to me; but not regarding them, as taking it for granted they were Persians; two or three of them gave themselves the trouble to ride up to me, and informed me, in the Italian language, that they were (h) Europeans. Whilst I was thus accidentally engaged in discourse with them, the ambassador himself passed by. They asked me, what news from Europe? Whereupon I informed them that it was near six months since I departed from (i) Moscow; and by consequence I could give them no satisfactory answer in that particular. They had spent the night in the very next vil-

R r r

lage

1703

Pl. 58.

Pl. 59.

Cotton tree.



1703

lage to that where we were, and desired me to recommend them to their friends at Ispahan, and promised to oblige me in the same manner as soon as they arrived at Moscow. After this cursory interview they proceeded on their journey. Their company consisted of about thirty persons, who were all on horseback, and had with them three or four flags, or small standards; as to the camels that followed them, they were about two or three and twenty in number, and hard laden'd with their baggage.

About three in the morning, we pursued our journey, and having advanced somewhat better than four leagues, we came to a large village called Sakfawa, which like the former, we found abounding with trees. On the right-hand lay the ruins of a once large and magnificent structure; and on the left the remains of a capacious caravanfera, or inn, of which we have given our readers an exact representation in the Plate. (No. 61.) herunto annexed.

Here we were detained some time, in order to discharge the customary duties; and in the interim I amused myself with my gun in shooting at pigeons, and met with sport sufficient.

As we journeyed on, we passed by a place that abounded with senna-trees, which strike the eye in the most agreeable manner; and as I had never met with any of them before in all my travels, I was charmed with them; and for that reason shall expatiate upon them in a more proper place.

In the village called Frafangh, we met with plenty of pomegranates, which are a very palatable and refreshing kind of fruit, and cheap enough in reason. On our departure from hence we passed over a hill, leaving the plain on our left, in order to get into the high road to (h) Com.

On the right of the last mentioned village there is another road which leads to Sawa, where we ought to have gone for the payment of our duties; but as that would have proved at least a whole day's journey out of our way to Com; and as they are liable by that means to discharge three several imposts, whereas they are open to the pay-

ment of one only by going the direct road to Com, this last, for the most part is made choice of by the caravan.

When we had travelled for full five hours, we halted in a plain, which lay between several hills near the village called Hengeran, where they may very justly boast of their bread, and from thence we proceeded to a place called Saranda.

There, for the first time, we regaled ourselves with the wine of Ardevil, which is white, and tho' of a fine flavour, and extremely palatable, is not allowed to be sold. This village is encompassed (as it were) with wells, which are supplied with water by a subterraneous aqueduct in the village.

On the fourth of November, we pursued our journey, and after a tedious stretch of near seven leagues, we reached a place called Angelawa, about one in the afternoon, where we rested ourselves for near two hours before the rest that belonged to the caravan: and this last mentioned village is no more than seven leagues distance at most from the city of Com afore said. This part likewise abounds with springs, or wells, which lie not above four or five paces one from the other; and the water that flows from them are conveyed under ground to the village. Persia, in short, abounds with such subterraneous conveyances, springs, or wells. Here there are numbers of ravens, of a wondrous bulk to be met with; but as the soil in these parts are impregnated with salt-petre, the water has, by consequence, a brackish taste.

Tho' our camels set out in the night some considerable time before us; yet the officers belonging to the customs at Sawa, having seized upon one of them, which was laden with two bales of cloth, on account of our not having passed by that village; and since this is under the self-same jurisdiction or dominion; we were compelled to turn back, and stay where we were till the sixth instant, from whence we set out before break of day. As in our progress, we came upon a small trench, or ditch, of which we were not in the least aware as it was dark, several of our horses fell in, and mine amongst the rest; but, by good fortune, they were soon recovered.

1703



1703.

out again, without any considerable diff-  
after attending that occurrence.

About nine in the morning we reached  
the banks of the river called Sawasiey,  
which flows from Sawa. This river in  
some places is very wide, and runs away  
to the south, in a plain between high  
grounds. By accident we unguardedly  
got into a sandy plain between some  
downs of loose sand, where the passage is  
very dangerous. There are very lofty hills  
behind these downs, between which is the  
road that leads not only to Sawa but to  
Com likewise. Having had timely infor-  
mation, that the same officers who had  
made a seizure of our camels proposed to  
pay us a second visit; we came to a vigo-  
rous resolution of defending ourselves at all  
events; but they never ventured, what-  
ever their inclination might be to repeat  
the attempt.

Pl. 62.  
Small  
white rocks.

By about eleven, we came to a moun-  
tain that was very stony, the rocks  
whereof represent what is very amazing  
to behold, a great variety of objects of  
every kind. Tho' at a considerable distance  
I drew a prospect of them, together with  
the mountain itself, which lay on the right-  
hand of the town; and of this the reader  
will find it hereto annexed in Plate 62.  
The first bears a near resemblance to the

head and neck of an animal, and the rest  
are equally marvellous to behold. In our  
passage thither we went through a small  
town, which abounded with houses in-  
deed; but then they were all empty and  
abandoned. It is highly probable, how-  
ever, that the inhabitants were at that  
time in tents in the fields, and feeding  
their cattle.

At the entrance into the town there is  
a large stone-bridge; on one side whereof  
we saw a great number of tents pitched,  
and persons of all ranks and conditions in  
them, with horses near them, which were  
tied one to the other. These people, as we  
were informed, were upon a pilgrimage,  
with intent to visit the sepulchral monu-  
ments of some particular saints, and amongst  
whom, (as was observable enough) there  
were more women devotees than men.  
Our passage through the town to the end  
of the old walls, took us up at least half  
an hour. There we pitched our tents a-  
midst a parcel of ancient ruins. As the  
rest of the caravan lay under an indispen-  
sible necessity of crossing several narrow  
bridges, which had retarded them, they  
were at least two hours before they over-  
took us. We halted here all the next  
day, and the weather proved exceedingly  
delightful.

1703.

### *Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.*

(a) Turkey, see p. 203. n. e.

(f) Poland, see p. 63. n. s.

(b) Taurus, mount, see p. 242. n. p.

(g) Ispahan, see p. 103. n. m.

(c) Curdistan, the ancient Assyria, lies part  
of it in Asiatic Turkey, and part of it in Per-  
sia, having Turcomania, or Armenia, on the  
north, and Eyraca Arabic, or Chaldæa, on the  
south, in which province Nineveh anciently  
stood, on the eastern bank of the river Tygris,  
opposite to Mousul, see p. 242. n. e.

(h) Europe, see p. 127. n. dd.

(i) Moscow, see p. 23. n. e.

(k) Com. east long. 49. lat. 34. a city of Per-  
sia in Asia, in the province of Eyraca Agem,  
situate 100 miles north of Ispahan, is a large,  
populous city, but has suffered pretty much in  
the late civil wars, and those with Turkey.

(d) Mausoleum, see p. 242. n. a.

(l) Ardevil, or Ardebil, see p. 233. n. e.

(e) Persia, see p. 64. n. o.



## C H A P. XXXVII.

*A succinct Account of the City of (a) Com, and of (b) Cachan, otherwise called Cashan. The Author arrives at (c) Isfahan.*

The situation of Com.

WHILST I tarried here, and after I had sufficiently gratified my curiosity with taking a view of its ancient structures and ruins, of which I shall treat more at large in another place, I visited the inside of the city.

Sepulchral monuments in the grand mosque.

In the grand mosque of Muzyd, otherwise called Ma-zyt-matsama, stands the sepulchral monument of Fatma-sora, the sister of the great prophet Mahomet, and the wife of Ali. Near that stands another, wherein the remains of Abbas, king of Persia is preserved, and the ashes of several other kings, and (amongst the rest) those of Shah-suliman, the father of Shah-hosein, the king now sitting on the throne. The architecture of these two mosques is of an exceeding fine sort; and each of them has a dome glazed with green. As we went into the town, we saw four columns of about thirty-six feet in height; the two first of which are united together, and were part of some ancient edifice or mosque. They are erected on a quadrangular wall, which is raised above the ground, much about the same height as the columns are, and the gate or portal to this wall is a large vaulted arcade. The two others stand at some considerable distance from each other, and are more damaged than those that are so united as before-mentioned. On the top of the two first, there is a sort of capital of no order at all, and three several fascias round about them. Tho' to the eye they appear pretty equal, yet in reality they are more taper at the top than at the bottom; and over the capital they have a moulding of green and gold, but that is in a great measure defaced by time. They stand at some small distance from the Bazar, which makes but a very mean appearance; nay, the city itself has but very little to boast of; neither was I in the least sur-

prized to find it so ordinary as it really was, since 'tis a place of no manner of trade or commerce. Near the bridge, indeed, there is a sumptuous structure at the entrance of the town, which has a fine spacious court belonging to it, with a curious basin in the centre of it. This building is a sort of mosque or chappel, in which, as the inhabitants insist, are deposited, the remains of Imam Rifa's sister, and those of Imam Anu-hammed, who flourished seven hundred and fifty years ago. This funeral monument is held in great veneration by the natives; because that illustrious lady, as they pretend, was a descendant of Mohammed; and for that reason there are frequently persons of distinction interred in that ancient vault.

The bridge, which we have just been speaking of, tho' about one hundred paces in length, is but eight only in breadth. There is a small brick parapet to it of two foot high only. This bridge, which is composed of small stones, has ten arches; and the river Comshay runs through some of them, tho' its waters be ever so low. There was an inundation, if we may credit the report of the inhabitants in this city, in the year 1591, by means whereof no less than 1200 houses were washed away; which fatal calamity being communicated to king Abbas, he gave orders directly for a dyke to be made, of two leagues at least in length, for the prevention of the like melancholy disaster for the time to come.

This city is divided into four and twenty districts or quarters, and contains in it at present, two thousand and one hundred houses; in each of which there is a well, or spring. But besides these, there are in the town and parts adjacent no less than three hundred Abanbaars, (as they call them)

Com-bridge.

The river Comshay.



1703

them) that is to say, cisterns or reservoirs.

It has, moreover, four gates, and the like number of bazars, or market places; as also a meydoen, that is to say, a large public square, and several bagnios, or baths. There are likewise in and about the city a great number of moschs and chappels. Tho' on this side, indeed, there are no antiquities to be seen; yet there are on the other, where our caravan halted, which was within the enceint or inclosure of the old town, formerly distinguished by the name of Chonana, standing in (d) Media, which extended, as 'tis generally supposed, as far as Cachan, and to a mountain, which served as a boundary to it; a large extent of land, called Arak by the natives.

In this place, tho' at some distance from the wall, there is a circular pyramid, which is in circumference about seventy-eight paces, and in height forty-eight, furnished with four sloping walls which have no steps to them. The entrance, or door to this round building is stopped up with a large heap of rubbish. Each wall is about a fathom in thickness; and the descent, taken obliquely, is about one fathom and an half: from thence each of them fetches a prodigious slope, and sinks as deep into the ground, as it is above the surface, where the pyramid is both smooth and round. We could look into it, indeed, through some particular crannies, or fissures; but there is no possibility of getting into it; and what is somewhat extraordinary; this was done on purpose that there should be no admission. In short, it is most probable, that it had been formerly a grand sepulchral monument, and the reader may form an idea of it from the representation thereof hereto annexed in plate 63. On the right-hand of this pyramid, there are several other ruins, and amongst the rest, the remains of a chappel. Tho' the town-wall, which is greatly decayed, extends itself a great way beyond these ruins; yet there is no such thing as distinguishing any particular part of it. At the distance, however, of about three hundred paces from the pyramid, as we returned to the

Plate 63.

city, there is some part of this wall tolerably whole, and flanked with round towers, which are greatly run to ruin and decay: there are ten of them in all; and each of them about forty feet in height, and at the bottom extremely thick and substantial. As the reader may plainly perceive by the representation of them in plate 64. To these he will find the ruins of a gate added, which was five paces in depth, and as much in breadth. The wall likewise was of the same thickness. All the rest of the buildings are composed of earth, clay, and a great number of small stones, dried in the sun. I must freely confess, for my own part, I never saw any ancient structure of the like kind; but I am notwithstanding fully convinced, that these are the ruins of the old city; and what inclines me to think so, is, because the ancients make frequent mention of the like structures of earth dried in the sun, and a sort of lime, composed of clay. The inspired penmen likewise observe, that those who were concerned in the erection of the tower of Babel made use of the same sort of earth instead of stone, and of clay in the room of lime. And the conclusion, in regard to this country, is the more natural; because the sun has here a prodigious power, and by consequence is capable of drying up earth to the nature or solidity of stone. I have a strong notion likewise, that there is chopped straw mingled with this earth in order to make it cement the better.

The very same method of building is practised there to this very day; and let a stranger travel all over (e) Persia, he will find large quantities of this earth thus dried in the sun as above-mentioned; as also abundance of clay, wherewith they make their lime. It must be acknowledged, however, that their houses make but a poor, despicable appearance, and are but of a short duration; neither do they ever concern themselves about the reparation of them, when they once begin to fall into decay.

From thence I took a tour to the north-west part of the city, where there are no rising grounds, and from that spot, I took

S f f

the

1703



1703  
Plan 65.

the prospect of the city, as the reader will find it hereto annexed in Plate 65. The letter A, points out the mosch which they distinguish by the name of Matfame. B, distinguishes that belonging to the king's; C, denotes the bridge with ten arches as above-mentioned; D, the mosch of the grand structure; E, the two principal columns of the building above-mentioned. The reader, by the same Plate, will plainly discern how the other columns are separated one from the other.

On the 18th of November, we proceeded on our journey, and left Com an hour if not more before break of day; and having passed by the old wall, we got into a plain, where there were villages all round about almost beyond number. When we had advanced about a league farther, we had a full view of two towers that were greatly run to decay. We spent all the day following in a small village, where runs a remarkable stream of water almost as clear as chrysal, at about three leagues distance from the southern part of the city; and afterwards, when we had got a league beyond the place where we halted, we saw the remains of an ancient quadrangular structure, the walls whereof were very strong and substantial. This square building had been formerly (as we were informed) a strong fortress. On one side of this we perceived another, in which there were several apartments then subsisting. About a league and an half from thence, we had the prospect of a fine, spacious garden, encompassed by a square wall which was very lofty. By eight o'clock, or thereabouts, we got into a plain that was both rough and stony, with mountains on one side of it, and small villages all round about it. On the ninth instant, we halted at a village called Sinfin, which was at the distance of near seven leagues from the place where we had spent the preceding night. This Sinfin is a village of some considerable extent, and there are several large structures and caravanseras in it that are run to ruin and decay. From thence we moved onwards of our journey about two in the morning, and by break of day we met with several passengers in a place

where there were trees in abundance, and where the grounds about them were very well manured. As soon as we could see, we had before our eyes the city of Cachan, otherwise called Casshan, or Kasshan, at which town we arrived by seven in the morning. One part of our company went along with the caravan into the suburbs, and the rest took up their lodgings in the city. The houses, however, in the out-parts were very good and very regularly built, and much more spacious than those in the city, tho' it is looked upon as one of the Persian capital towns: and, to confess the truth, I had not seen any edifices till then that could stand in any competition with them. And as that city is situate at but a small distance from Ispahan, we found the inhabitants were much more polite, more courteous and complaisant, than any we had passed through before.

This city lies in 35 degrees 51 minutes of northern latitude, and has various appellations; sometimes it is called Kassian, and Kassan; and sometimes again Kassian and Casshan; and as to its situation, it stands at the extremity of a large plain, near the foot of a lofty mountain. I took my prospect of it from the north-east, in this plain, from which spot it makes, in my opinion, the most advantageous figure. On the left-hand of this city, stands a pyramid, very nearly resembling the ruined building I took notice of at Com. The reader will find the representation of it in Plate 66, hereto annexed.

The governor, or principal commissioner in this place, is distinguished by the title of a visier, who is as an inferior officer, in point of dignity to a khan, as the latter is to a beglerbeg, to whose commands they are both subject. Nay, his power is so extensive, that it is customary for him to send them away to distant places, in case he judges it proper and convenient.

The town-walls are about 36 foot high, and there are seven several gates to it, exclusive of that of Daulat. There is a curious meydoen, or square, to the north-west; together with a sort of tilt-yard; above which there are two fine columns. On that which stands without, there is a

1703

The suburbs  
situate at  
Cachan.

A description  
of the city  
of Cachan, or  
Kasshan.

Plate 66.

The governor,  
or visier.

the prospect of the city, as the reader will find it hereto annexed in Plate 65. The letter A, points out the mosch which they distinguish by the name of Matfame. B, distinguishes that belonging to the king's; C, denotes the bridge with ten arches as above-mentioned; D, the mosch of the grand structure; E, the two principal columns of the building above-mentioned. The reader, by the same Plate, will plainly discern how the other columns are separated one from the other.

On the 18th of November, we proceeded on our journey, and left Com an hour if not more before break of day; and having passed by the old wall, we got into a plain, where there were villages all round about almost beyond number. When we had advanced about a league farther, we had a full view of two towers that were greatly run to decay. We spent all the day following in a small village, where runs a remarkable stream of water almost as clear as chrysal, at about three leagues distance from the southern part of the city; and afterwards, when we had got a league beyond the place where we halted, we saw the remains of an ancient quadrangular structure, the walls whereof were very strong and substantial. This square building had been formerly (as we were informed) a strong fortress. On one side of this we perceived another, in which there were several apartments then subsisting. About a league and an half from thence, we had the prospect of a fine, spacious garden, encompassed by a square wall which was very lofty. By eight o'clock, or thereabouts, we got into a plain that was both rough and stony, with mountains on one side of it, and small villages all round about it. On the ninth instant, we halted at a village called Sinfin, which was at the distance of near seven leagues from the place where we had spent the preceding night. This Sinfin is a village of some considerable extent, and there are several large structures and caravanseras in it that are run to ruin and decay. From thence we moved onwards of our journey about two in the morning, and by break of day we met with several passengers in a place

where there were trees in abundance, and where the grounds about them were very well manured. As soon as we could see, we had before our eyes the city of Cachan, otherwise called Casshan, or Kasshan, at which town we arrived by seven in the morning. One part of our company went along with the caravan into the suburbs, and the rest took up their lodgings in the city. The houses, however, in the out-parts were very good and very regularly built, and much more spacious than those in the city, tho' it is looked upon as one of the Persian capital towns: and, to confess the truth, I had not seen any edifices till then that could stand in any competition with them. And as that city is situate at but a small distance from Ispahan, we found the inhabitants were much more polite, more courteous and complaisant, than any we had passed through before.

This city lies in 35 degrees 51 minutes of northern latitude, and has various appellations; sometimes it is called Kassian, and Kassan; and sometimes again Kassian and Casshan; and as to its situation, it stands at the extremity of a large plain, near the foot of a lofty mountain. I took my prospect of it from the north-east, in this plain, from which spot it makes, in my opinion, the most advantageous figure. On the left-hand of this city, stands a pyramid, very nearly resembling the ruined building I took notice of at Com. The reader will find the representation of it in Plate 66, hereto annexed.

The governor, or principal commissioner in this place, is distinguished by the title of a visier, who is as an inferior officer, in point of dignity to a khan, as the latter is to a beglerbeg, to whose commands they are both subject. Nay, his power is so extensive, that it is customary for him to send them away to distant places, in case he judges it proper and convenient.

The town-walls are about 36 foot high, and there are seven several gates to it, exclusive of that of Daulat. There is a curious meydoen, or square, to the north-west; together with a sort of tilt-yard; above which there are two fine columns. On that which stands without, there is a



1703

The royal  
garden.

staff whereon a flag is generally hoisted, whenever there is a tournament appointed. This tilt-yard, or meydoen, is no less than seven hundred and seventy paces in length, and in breadth one hundred. As we went out of the gate on the right-hand, we had a sight of the royal garden, which is encompassed by a wall at least thirty foot high. This beautiful spot of ground is very spacious, and there is a fine canal, which is very regularly kept, that directly runs across it. It abounds with fine trees, and amongst the rest, a great number of pomegranate trees, all regularly ranged: there is a pleasure-house moreover belonging to it, which was erected by king Abbas the Great: there are four large gates to this wall, and two that are much smaller. From the first of them, which is near the town-gate, there is a passage into a spacious caravanera, or inn, which is principally frequented by the natives of (f) India. It is very large, and exceedingly beautiful, being thirty-six paces, if not more, in depth, and seven in breadth. The roof of it is adorned with a dome, whereon, after the Italian mode, there is a lantern; and, on the side there are two arcades, from whence we saw the apartment. When we had walked across it, we came into a court that was full an hundred paces in length, and fourscore in breadth, encompassed by a structure or edifice two stories high, which on each side has fifteen arcades in length, and ten in breadth; and underneath there are several apartments, one over the other; and besides these, there are several small rooms, or more properly speaking, closets, which project, and have such a fine effect, that I must confess, I never saw any caravanera that could stand fairly in competition with it. When we were got beyond this gate, we came to a second, which had a beautiful arcade; and as we found it open, I made bold to step into the garden, which abounded with trees, some smaller than others; of which, I presume, more than common care was taken: there was a third gate, which belonged to a very spacious, and very lofty structure above the garden-wall. From the fourth, we went into a wide court, which is co-

vered all round, in order to serve as a shelter for horses in bad weather. There is no admittance into the garden but through the two small gates. There is another, indeed, on the other side, but then it is neither so fine, nor so large as the first; it is encompassed, however, as well as that, with proper walls. Over against this caravanera, or inn, there is a flight of fifty stone steps, and underneath them, a kind of cistern, or reservoir for water; the walls, and vault whereof are composed of small stones, which are joined together in a very workman-like and elegant manner. The town-gate is vaulted likewise, and is four-score paces in depth, and has a dome to it, in the same manner as the caravanera, or inn. From thence we went into a curious bazar, which was neatly enough vaulted and plaistered, and full of tradesmens shops; such as confectioners, druggists, goldsmiths, farriers, braisers, cooks, where all kinds of victuals are daily roasted and boiled; and pastry-cooks, bakers, fruiterers, and stalls for all sorts of herbs, &c. Each shop takes up a vault; and the whole is exceedingly neat, and very regularly built. This bazar, in the center whereof there is a mint, runs directly across the town from one gate to the other. Near this, there are divers others, but more especially one that has gates to it, which are shut up, in which there is nothing sold but wearing apparel, and all sorts of silks. There is another likewise principally set apart for the silk-dyers, where we saw some of the most delightful colours.

These bazars are all so well covered, that there is no danger of being incommoded, should it rain ever so hard; and there are customers for ever smoking very soberly in the coffee-houses, of which there are great numbers. On one side of these bazars stand the caravaneras, into which you enter through a large gate that is vaulted; some of them are exceedingly fine, very spacious, and two stories high; with a flight of five or six steps before each apartment; there are abundance of these inns in the town, where they make such large quantities of silk, silver, and gold stuffs, that they frequently make use

1703

Bazars.

Coffee-houses.

Caravaneras.

of



1703

100  
 100  
 100

The  
middle

of seven bales of silk in a day; the weight whereof amounts to no less than one thousand five hundred and twelve pounds. The public squares here, which they call Meydoens, are but small; and there are several walls, like that in the royal gardens before-mentioned, in divers parts of the town. The moschs here have, for the most part, such towers as may with propriety be termed lofty ones; but few of them have large domes, and those that have, have no manner of embellishments to recommend them. We have told you before, that there are seven gates to the city, two whereof are always kept shut, and several meydoens.

Here they have a great variety of flowers and fruits all the year round; and the latter are sooner ripe in this city than in any other parts of the kingdom; inasmuch, that here, there are melons, grapes, apricots, mulberries, pomegranates, cucumbers, and more particularly most delicious water-melons, to be purchased at a reasonable price even in the spring.

There are no less than threescore and ten aqueducts, (if we are not misinformed) through which water is conveyed into the town. There are, moreover, (according to the computation of the inhabitants) above one hundred and twenty bagnios, and an almost countless number of cisterns, or reservoirs for containing of water, which lie low, and therefore there are several steps made on purpose to go down to them. There are much the same number of mills here, and the number of houses amount at least to three thousand, which are divided into three several districts, or wards, in each of which there are one thousand, besides which, there are threescore several villages, which are dependent on, and under the jurisdiction of this single town.

There is a royal palace at Fien, where there is a fountain, or bafon, made, as we were informed, in the reign of king Suliman, the water wherof proceeds from a lofty mountain, called Rochi't Sahil, and is conveyed to Cachan by the aid and assistance of seven and twenty mills, which were erected in the reign of king Abbas. There is another fountain, which proceeds

from a high hill called Demawend, the waters whereof flow down towards Ken and Thaurahan; the people here call it the river of Dzadzjeran, which runs, and discharges the rest of its water into (g) the Caspian sea. When we were got between Corn and Cachan, we had a prospect of this mountain.

On the thirteenth, we departed from this city three hours before day-break, and crossed a sandy plain; on our left-hand, we had several small raised downs for several leagues together. We travelled six leagues that day; and having rested ourselves for some considerable time, we moved forwards about two in the morning, continuing still in the same plain, which was bordered on our right-hand with such mountains as were covered with snow. By dawn of day we arrived at the foot of that which was the loftiest of them all, and crossed a river amongst the rest, and afterwards another plain, at the end whereof there was a village, and several others, not far from it which lay between the hills. When we had proceeded on our journey seven leagues, we arrived at a village called Ghor, situate at about a league's distance from the small town of Nathans. This village is a most delightful place; and I have therefore annexed a prospect of it in Plate 67. As it stands on a rising ground, it looks at a distance much like a fortress. On the left-hand thereof stands a mosch, and an open plain, which extends itself farther than the eye can well reach.

From hence we set out two hours at least before day-break, and about seven we came to a large plain, where there were five or six villages, which lay by the side of each other, and two fine gardens; the last of which was encompassed by a substantial wall, in circumference about half a league. To this garden there was a dove-house appertaining, of which we shall have somewhat particular to say in another place. On one side of this garden, there is a large house which appertains to the king, and a small village called Padshabath.

When we had traversed this plain, we got amongst a parcel of mountains; some where-

1701

Plate 67b

The royal  
garden.



1703

whereof were very lofty; and their tops, as we could plainly perceive, were all covered with snow. After we had proceeded about seven leagues farther, we came to a caravanera at a place called Sardaham, where we were obliged to pay some customary dues. There we crossed a sort of torrent, or land-flood, which falls with a violent stream amongst the rocks; and the waters thereof, as they consist of nothing but pure melted snow, are most delightful. In Plate 66. we have annexed a prospect of this caravanera, and another, which stands but at a small distance from it. The former is a spacious edifice, built with stone, about twenty feet in depth. The entrance into it is vaulted, and there is a step at the door, about three foot long. There is near the latter a fine spring, tho' 'tis but small.

Plate 66.

The author  
arrives at  
Ispahan.

About one the next morning, we pursued our journey as the moon shone exceedingly bright: and when we had passed the mountains, we got into a spacious, sandy plain, that was all bordered with hills. We passed by two other caravaneras in the night; the former of which was a large, beautiful building. After we had journeyed seven leagues farther, we came to a village called Rick, where we halted till three the next morning. No sooner were we departed from thence, but we rode over several plowed lands, and by break of day we reached Ispahan. After I had rested and refreshed myself at a caravanera there, I made it my business to wait on one Mr. Kastelein, who had the whole conduct and direction of the affairs belonging to our East-India company. At

my first admission, I was received with all the testimonies of the sincerest friendship; and he assured me, that I might command whatever service he could do me. After I had tarried with him some considerable time, he sent one of his servants to conduct me to one Mr. Owen, who was agent there for the English East-India company, from whom I met with a like courteous reception. From thence I went to the caravanera called Jedde, in the meydoen, or large square belonging to the palace. This caravanera, which is the property of his majesty's mother, is the place where all the merchants of Armenia have their ware-houses, and keep their respective shops. And as it is the principal inn in all the whole city, and the most commodiously situated, I took up my lodging there, through our director's recommendation, for whom they testified a particular regard; and there I continued my quarters till my departure from the city. His majesty happened at that time to be abroad, and taking his diversion in the country with his concubines, or ladies of pleasure. After I had rode almost all over the city, and over Julfa, which is the district, or peculiar quarters of the Armenians, I paid my respects to some of my particular friends and acquaintance, who were all natives of (i) Europe, but most of them of (k) France, and of the ecclesiastical order; who received me with all the complaisance imaginable, and soon after returned my visit. The very next day, Mr. Kastelein, our director, invited me to dinner, and in the afternoon carried me with him out of town.

1703

*Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.*

(a) Com. p. 247. n. k.

(b) Cachan, Casan, or Kasan, a province of Russia, bounded by the province of Permia on the north; by Siberia on the east; by the river Wolga, which separates it from Novogorod, on the south; and by the province of Moscow proper on the west.

(c) Ispahan, see p. 109. n. w.

(d) Media, see p. 214. n. e.

(e) Persia, see p. 64. n. o.

(f) India proper, see p. 213. n. d.

(g) Caspian sea, see p. 66. n. g.

(h) Armenia, see p. 198. n. g.

(i) Europe, see p. 127. n. dd.

(k) France, see p. 214. n. w.

T t t

C H A P.



## C H A P. XXXVIII.

*A Sea-Lizard, and divers other Curiosities. A very extraordinary Monument, with two Columns, which when one is shook, the other trembles likewise by the same Impulse. The King returns to (a) Ispahan, with a numerous Retinue. The customary Compliments on New-Year's-Day paid by the Author and his Friends to Mr. Kastelein, the Director of the Dutch East-India Company. A succinct Account of a remarkable Fast observed throughout the Kingdom of (b) Persia.*

As the weather proved exceedingly fine, we took a tour through the whole city of Ispahan, in order to have a transient view of all its most remarkable curiosities; the principal whereof is (as the natives call it) their Chiaerbaeg, that is to say, their fine alley, or grand walk, and the next to it is that spot of ground, which is set apart for the Interment of the (c) Armenians and (d) Europeans, of which we propose to give our readers a particular description in a more proper place. We set out of town in great form, as it is the custom of the country. Mr. Kastelein appeared first in person, with at least a dozen couriers, who were preceded by two interpreters. After him came his deputy, or second, who was the person that I followed, and all the rest of our company two and two, according to their respective stations. Tho' there were twenty-six of us in all, twelve whereof went on horseback; yet our director, for the generality, had more attendants in the life-time of his consort, who died about six months before our arrival at Ispahan, and had been interred in a very pompous and magnificent manner, under a rich sepulchral monument, which was open on every side. Her name was Sarah Jacoba Six de Chandelier; a descendant of an illustrious family in (e) France; and as to her character, she was universally admired for her good sense and polite conversation.

The stone-  
top of the  
Dutch di-  
rection-  
half.

In the evening, as we came back, we met with two couriers in the fine walk above-mentioned, with lights in their hands some-

what like our flambeaus, composed of large balls of cloth, well soaked in oil, and fixed in a sort of an iron socket, fastened to the end of a long staff, with a circular copper-plate all tinned within, much like a saucer, for the reception of such oil as occasionally dropt from the balls. Tho' it was light enough in all conscience without them; yet this is a customary ceremony amongst such of the Persians as are of high birth and distinction. In this formal manner we rode through the city; and being perfectly satisfied with my little, agreeable tour, I tarried for some time at Mr. Kastelein's, in order to sup with him, and was entertained accordingly in the most elegant manner.

The next day he made me a present of a sea-lizard, which was both dry and whole, and much of the same form and bulk of a common lizard. This fish is frequently caught, or rather taken in the Persian gulph, and the natives, who look upon it as a dainty dish, call it the Sock-anikaer. They assured me, that it was an animal, the flesh whereof was hot in the third degree, and when 'tis duly dried, they pound it to a powder, and intermix with it pearl, amber, saffron, and opium. When the ingredients are thus made up, 'tis a fine cordial, and a most specific restorative for a broken constitution. They are made up for the most part in pills; and few swallow more than one of them at a time. These pills are very seldom, if ever, exposed to public sale; since none but merchants, and such as have affairs at court to transact,

The sea-  
lizard.



1703

transact, purchase them; and that too with a view only to make interest with those to whom they make their applications.

They have here likewise another fish, which the natives call Sjir-ma-jie, or Shirmashi, that is to say, the Milk-fish, which nature has beautifully adorned with a vast variety of lively colours. The greatest part of its belly is yellow, its fins are of a vermillion red, and the rest of its body of a sky-coloured green. The flesh of it is very luscious, and almost as white as snow. The reader will find a representation of it in Plate 69, hereto annexed.

Mr. Kastelein, moreover, obliged me with four feet of some little birds, or other animals, which had been found at Ispahan, in a lump of amber-grease, of above thirty pounds weight, which the king himself had purchased, in order to melt into a ball, which, afterwards being set in gold, and embellished with several precious stones, he made a present of to the sepulchral monument of his great prophet Mohammed. From whence we may naturally conclude, that amber-grease is a sea-gum, that hardens, when thrown on the shore, and exposed to the air by any violent agitation of its waves. This very valuable gum is seldom found but in the eastern parts, and in the (f) Indies.

I had a bird likewise called a Paes-jelch, brought me, which was much like an European duck, only its head, bill, and feathers, very nearly resembled those of a crow: the feet of it were broad at bottom, and divided into three parts; the body of it was long, and tho' never so well dressed, the flesh of it is by no means palatable. The reader will find a representation of it in Numb. 70.

On the 23d instant, we went once more in form to the village of Kaladoen, which stands at about a league's distance from the city, in order to take a view of the magnificent sepulchral monument of Abdulla. To this Saint's particular care and inspection, (as we are assured by the natives) were entrusted the waters of Emoën Of-jeyn, who was one of the twelve disciples,

at least, if not of the apostles, as some pretend, of their great prophet. This monument, which is erected between four walls, and fronted with small stones, is composed of a grey marble, embellished with several (g) Arabian characters, and surrounded with lamps made of copper, lined with tin. We went up to it by a flight of fifteen steps, each a foot high, and a little above them another flight of the same number, which led to a square plat-form of two and thirty feet every way; and on the front thereof there are two columns of small stones; some of which are of an azure colour. The base is five feet in circumference. The door to it is but small, and the winding stair-case to it consists but of fifteen steps. It was higher in all probability formerly; for they have suffered greatly, it is evident enough by the inclemency of the weather. The stair-case within is so narrow, that I was obliged to undress myself, tho' but of a middling stature, in order to get up to the top, as I did, and looked round about me. What, however, is something very remarkable and extraordinary, is this, that when one of the columns is shaken by any violent motion of the body, the other, tho' at a considerable distance, trembles at the same time through the same impulse. This I found to be true in fact, indeed; but I was perfectly at a loss either to comprehend how it should be, or account for the cause of such a sympathetic tremor. Whilst I was taking a draught of this (h) Mausoleum, a lad of twelve years of age, or thereabouts only, and somewhat crooked withal, climbed up on the outside of one of the columns, and went up to the top of it; when there, he went round it, and descended without holding by any thing whatsoever, but such of the small stones of the building where the mortar was dropt out; nor did he hazard his neck with any other view than merely to amuse us.

Some small matter before sun-set we returned to the city, when it began to freeze all on a sudden to that violent degree, that the water which I had in my room was instantly congealed, notwithstanding it was perfectly warm at noon, and in the night there

1703

The interior of a Mausoleum.



1703

there fell likewise a small quantity of snow.

On the 28th instant, there arrived a native of Arabia from (i) Aleppo, with a letter, as he pretended from the bashaw of that city to Mr. Kastelein, our director, but as the manner in which he expressed himself, seemed perfectly confused, and as there appeared a certain wildness in his eyes, I concluded, that his brains were turned. He had the appearance, however, of one of the ecclesiastical order; and it is highly probable, that he had fled from (k) Turkey, on account of the trouble and confusion that the natives were in at that time; for news had been brought to Isfahan, some few days before we arrived there, that the grand signior had been actually deposed, and that sultan Achmed, his brother, had been advanced to the throne in his stead. Tho' this Arab was very well dressed, yet the present which he had brought with him was very mean and inelegant; for it consisted only of a pair of yellow boots, two or three handkerchiefs of little or no value; a small handful only of dates, and two or three sticks of wax.

Mr. Kastelein did not much care to open his letter, since, tho' it was sealed, indeed, yet it had no direction upon it; neither was he much inclined to receive the present, being perfectly at a loss to determine the occasion of it.

On the thirtieth, we went out of town once more; and I cast my eyes about for some proper place from whence to draw a prospect of the city, as it appeared in the winter-season; for 'tis absolutely impossible to be done in the summer, on account of the multitude of lofty trees that totally hide it. We went up a rising-ground to take a view of a building that stood against a rock, of which we shall give a short description in another, and more proper place. There I met with several springs and canals, which, tho' running waters, were perfectly frozen.

In the interim, the king's servants and baggage arrived, and filled the chiaer-baeg to that degree with dust, that the alley was obliged to be watered. As Mr. Kastelein had been informed of this occurrence, he

sent me and his whole family to the very spot which I had pitched upon for taking a prospect of the city, in order to have an uninterrupted sight of his majesty, who was to pass by that very place. We dressed ourselves accordingly to the best advantage we could, and our horses were very neatly caparisoned, in which article the Persians are remarkably curious. We waited at least a whole hour at the Armenian burial-ground above-mentioned; but soon afterwards a great number of horsemen made their appearance; and the king's baggage, or equipages, were carried upon mules. Six elephants had been sent out some time before, in order to meet his majesty; four of which stopt in the chiaer-baeg, but the rest went on. About half an hour before sun-set the king himself appeared, accompanied by the principal lords belonging to the court, and followed by a prodigious crowd of people. He rode at the head of them upon a fine chestnut horse, and passed by us near a small river, where we had posted ourselves on horseback in order to wait for his coming. We saluted his majesty in the most respectful manner, and he fixed his eyes very wishfully upon us. As the river which he was obliged to go over was but narrow, most of his attendants forded it; for great numbers, who were ambitious of getting upon the bridge, fell off. We, in order to avoid that danger, turned off towards Julfa, but brought night home with us.

It is almost incredible to think what a multitude of people attend this prince on any public occasion; a stranger would think he saw an army before him. And the number of his camels is equally amazing; and for my own part, I must own I never saw so many at one view in my whole life before. Besides these numerous attendants, there was a prodigious crowd of spectators, not only on foot, but on horseback likewise, in the alley or chiaer-baeg before-mentioned. The king, in order to get to his palace, went thro' one of his gardens, preceded by two leopards, which always go with him when he takes the royal diversion of hunting, and divers falcons. His concubines came to town

the

1703



1703

the very same night.

On the 14th of December, we spent the Christmas-day with Mr. Kastelein, and on the 15th, we paid our visit to the monks of the three convents which stand in the suburbs.

Two days after that, as we were at the company's house, we saw a white crow, which had made its appearance there several times, but nobody could shoot it. It was taken at last, however, in his majesty's toils.

At the same time they dragged a small pond, wherein they caught four different sorts of fish, which are unknown in our European countries; namely, the Ghaer-maji, as they call them, that is to say, the afs-fish, which is marked in such a manner, as if a net was thrown over him; the sjir-ma-ji, or milk-fish, which is all spotted with scales; the faraep, a fish, the back whereof is a lively green, and its belly white. 'Tis remarkable, that it swims for the most part on the surface of the water. The fourth sort consisted of one small fish only, that had not, as had been taken notice of by several, in the least made any encrease in its bulk for two years successively. This, together with several others, I preserved in spirits of wine. All of them, however, more particularly when fried, are extremely well tasted.

On the first day of January, 1704, about thirty of us went to pay the usual compliments of the season, according to the custom of the country, to Mr. Kastelein, who not only made us dine, but stay supper with him, who entertained us in a most elegant manner, exclusive of the sweet-meats, and other little refreshments that were served up between the meals. As the (1) English agent was by some casualty or other somewhat indisposed, he could not make one amongst us. His second, however, and the principal officers of his house, together with Father Antonio Desiro, the resident from (m) Portugal, came, and spent the evening with us. That ecclesiastic was a gentleman of great merit, had seen a great part of the world; and not only knew it, but how to live in

it too with credit and reputation. There were likewise several Armenian merchants amongst us. However, this entertainment, elegant as it was, was nothing in comparison of those which he used to make before the decease of his late dearly beloved consort; and there were but four chambers, once fired off in the morning, to give notice of this grand festival; whereas it was customary, in all the preceding years, to discharge several, and at divers times in the day, on that joyful occasion. This single signal, however, brought abundance of people from Julfa, and the parts adjacent. As my eyes were attentive to every curious incident, I observed one particular lighted taper, which was near six feet in length, and in circumference proportionable, widely different from any thing that I had ever seen of the like nature before; with agreeable decorations from the top to the bottom, all in a singular high taste. It stood upon a spacious dish, in order that the wax, which might casually drop from it, might not anyways incommode it, and it gave a surprising light. All that night and the preceding day, the rain poured down to that degree, that the roads were almost impassable, which, at that season of the year, is looked upon there as somewhat very uncommon. On the sixth instant, however, which was Twelfth-day, the weather proved very fine once more. Some few days after that, we were entertained by the British agent, much after the same manner as we had been on New-year's day by our own director; with this addition, however, that his chambers were discharged at every health; there was likewise a kind of concert of music in the Persian taste. About sun-set, there came a native of (n) Georgia, who by profession was a dancer, and attempted, indeed, to amuse the company with some feats of activity; he turned out, however, but a bungling performer; one of his company, as a farther amusement, was swaddled up to that degree, in a white sheet, that no part of him was visible but his arms, in imitation of two children, one personating a boy, and the other a girl. Tho' he was extended on the floor, like one that was dead; yet he

U u u

made

1704

An extraordinary taper.

An entertainment given the author and his friends by the British agent.



1704 made several comical motions, and kept pretty good time to the music that played during the operation. His hands were muffled up in the heads of the two fictitious children, who first kist and embraced each other; but concluded the droll performance with a severe battle.

Excellent  
wine.

Mr. Kastelein, our director, from whom I received several very distinguishing favours, after this entertainment was over, sent me above a dozen bottles of exceedingly fine flavoured white wine, of which he furnished me with plenty during my long stay at Isfahan, and entertained me besides almost every day at his own house with an elegant dinner and supper: but whenever I rose from table, and left my company, I constantly withdrew to my own apartment, and there applied my mind to those things in particular which I had in view, and which were my principal motives for undertaking so long, and so hazardous a journey. The wine which I just mentioned to be thus presented me, was some of the finest in all Persia; for those at Isfahan are shamefully neglected in regard to their fining. What liquor soever a stranger drinks there is extremely foul, and very unpleasing to the taste. No wines are fined there but those of Zie-raes, or Shirâs, which are the very best the country produces, and of which we shall say somewhat farther in another place. Most of our Europeans, after they have resided in this country for some considerable time, seem as regardless as the Persians themselves, whether their wine be fine or foul, so that the body of it be but strong. The wine I was always furnished with was as clear as chrysal, had the flavour of Rhenish; and was noways inferior to the best claret I ever tasted at (o) Paris, or any part of France whatever. They have one sort of red wine in this city, that has the taste and flavour of that at (p) Florence. These wines are fined down in large earthen vases, or jars, instead of casks, as is customary with your wine-merchants in the island of (q) Cyprus; and after they have been duly fermented, they are racked off into large glass-bottles, such as will contain about

four or five gallons. For the making of these wines, they select the very best grapes they can possibly procure, and are peculiarly careful in their manner of picking them; for all rotten ones, and such as are only bruised, are thrown aside, and totally excluded; from which practice their wines have a flavour peculiar to themselves, and such as no others can equally boast of. Besides, in order to preserve them, and still add to their delicious flavour, they make use of (r) cardemums and (s) sulphur. As to the rest, they never attempt to drink them till they are a year old, and some think them as good and as palatable, if not more so, when they are twice that age.

During the time I resided in this city, we received some important news from (t) Germany by letter, dated the 8th of November last, sent us from Aleppo, by couriers, employed for that purpose, by the two companies of (u) Holland and England. These messengers, or runners, as they are sometimes called, go in like manner to (w) Gomron, or Gombroon, and the parts adjacent.

On that day commenced the Beyram, that is to say, the grand, solemn fast, which is strictly observed throughout the whole kingdom of Persia, and continued for near a month, without any intermission, viz. till the return of the new moon, in the same manner as it is observed likewise throughout Turkey.

During these thirty days, they are strictly enjoined neither to eat, or drink, or so much as to take one single whiff of tobacco, in which they indulge themselves more, perhaps at other times, than any other body of people whatsoever, (or wheresoever) from the dawn of day to the setting of the sun. However, to compensate for that severe mortification, they turn the night into day; and after some short acts of public devotion after sun-set, which may continue perhaps for half an hour, or somewhat better, they may smoke, eat and drink, as much as they think proper, till day-break again. In all this, however, there is a certain form observed with respect to some particular circumstances;



1704

cumstances; for after they have tired themselves with smoking, they indulge themselves with nothing but eating of fruits, sweet-meats, and such other trivial refreshments, till after twelve at night, or one in the morning: neither are they permitted to blow their trumpets, or play on any other of their instruments of music at midnight, as they frequently used to do in former times. For these amusements, they must now wait with patience till four or five o'clock in the morning; but at that time, indeed, they make as much noise with them as possibly they can, in order to awake their mechanical operators, and remind them of the business of the ensuing day. This noisy music, likewise, is a signal of no small service to those who reside at some considerable distance, by which it is intimated, that they may then bring into the city, without reserve, their various commodities, such as fowls, fruits, herbs, and other goods of the like nature; which may be done at all other times by midnight, if they think proper to frequent the market so early. Their trumpets likewise are blown for about half an hour before setting of the sun, in order to give notice to his majesty's guards to repair to their respective posts. It is required, moreover, that every shop shall be close shut up by nine at night, at the farthest; and that every person that may be amusing themselves abroad may resort to their respective habitations; and about two hours before day-break, the Mollas, as the natives call them, that is to say, their ecclesiastics, whose province it is to give notice of the stated times for public worship from the tops of their molchs, begin to summon the people together; this ceremony is repeated at noon, and as soon as the sun is

well set. The Persians, likewise, compute their hours from the sun's rising to its setting; without the least regard how far the day or night is spent. In short, they reckon all by guess, and never mind whether the day be either longer or shorter than the night.

Tho' the river, on the subsequent days was covered over with ice; yet one of Mr. Kastelein's domestics caught somewhere at some distance from the city, a fish of such a bulk as is seldom seen in those parts. It bore a near resemblance to one of our carp; but was near a yard long, and when dress'd, was a most delicious repast. This fish is distinguished, in their language, by the name of the Shirmasbi, as we have before observed.

After I had written several letters to my intimate friends and acquaintance in Holland, by the way of Aleppo, I went on the sixteenth instant with our director and his family to (x) Julfa, or Julpha, in order to be present at the festival of the consecration of the water, which was to be solemnized by the Armenians before the dawn of day. This festival in their language, is called the Goeroorting, that is to say, the baptism of the cross, and is observed on the sixth of January by the (y) Russians, as well as themselves. We arrived at Julfa, much about six in the evening, and went directly to one Mr. Sahid, who was our interpreter, with whom we lodged that night, and who entertained us with a very elegant supper. As soon as this grand ceremony is opened, which is about three in the morning, we repaired to the church of Anna-baet, which may with propriety be termed the cathedral church of the Armenians.

1704

*Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.*

(a) Ispahan, see p. 109. n. m.

(b) Persia, see p. 64. n. o.

(c) Armenia, see p. 198. n. g.

(d) Europe, see p. 127. n. dd.

(e) France, see p. 214. n. ss.

(f) India, see p. 219. n. d.

(g) Arabia, see p. 103. n. a.

(h) Mausoleum, see p. 242. n. a.

(i) Aleppo, east long. 37. 40. lat. 36. 30. is the capital of the government, or beglerbelic of Aleppo, in Asiatic Turkey, situate 70 miles east



1704 east of the Levant sea, and port of Scanderoun, and about 100 miles west of the river Euphrates. It stands on four hills, in the middle of a pleasant, fruitful plain, being of an oval figure, and about three miles in circumference, the castle being on the highest hill in the middle of the city; the buildings of the town are better than in most cities throughout all Turkey, and they have a great many stately mosques and caravanseras; it is well furnished with fountains and reservoirs of water; and their gardens and vineyards are well planted with grapes, oranges, apples, cherries, and other excellent fruit. The christians have their houses and churches in the suburbs. There is a very considerable trade here for silks, camblets, and Turkey-leather. Every European nation almost has its factors here. The English factors are about forty in number, and live in a quadrangle, resembling a college, having their chaplain and chappels, where they perform their devotions regularly as in Christendom, and at their leisure-hours they hunt, and use other sports with all imaginable freedom. About twelve miles south-east of Aleppo, is a salt-lake seven or eight miles over, having a dry crust of salt on the surface, which sounds like frozen snow, when horses trample on it; and magazines of this salt are laid up in the neighbourhood of Aleppo. The Beglerbeg of Aleppo commands all the country between the Levant sea and the Euphrates; but the castle has a governor independent of him.

(k) Turkey, see p. 203. n. e.

(l) England, see p. 91. n. f.

(m) Portugal, the most westerly kingdom of Europe, situate between seven and ten degrees of west long. and between 37 and 42 degrees of north lat. bounded by the kingdom of Spain on the north and east; and by the Atlantic ocean on the west and south; being about 300 miles long and 100 broad. This country is not so hot as Spain, especially that part which lies on the coast, being cooled by the sea-breezes; but it is not so fruitful as Spain, being incumbered with some of the most barren mountains on that continent; however, towards the bottom of them, they are planted with vines, which produce a great deal of good wine. The soil also produces plenty of olives, as well as oranges and lemons; but neither their oils or their four oranges are so good as those of Spain. Their sweet oranges, however, which they introduced from China, and for that reason are called China-oranges, are the best in Europe. They

1704 have not corn enough for their subsistence, but are supplied with it frequently from England and Holland. As to their peasants and country-people, they eat scarce any other but Indian corn; a very coarse food. The flesh of their cattle is generally lean and dry; but they have plenty of chestnuts, almonds, figs, and raisins. They make also a great deal of salt, of the sea water, let into shallow pans; especially in the bay of St. Ubes, from whence they export a great deal, especially to America. The foreign trade of the Portuguese, consists either in the exportation of the produce of their own soil, viz. red and white port-wines, oranges, lemons, and other fruits; or in the exportation of the merchandise they receive from their plantations and settlements in Asia, Africa, and America; of which those from Brasil, in America, are much the most considerable; for besides vast quantities of sugar, tobacco, rum, cotton, indigo, hides, train oil, dying-woods, and drugs; they import vast treasures of gold, silver, and diamonds from Brasil, having lately discovered some very valuable mines of these precious minerals there; insomuch, that the value of diamonds are sunk considerably. But, notwithstanding Portugal is, or was at least formerly one of the richest kingdoms in the world, it is, however, the weakest. They have neither fleets, or armies sufficient to defend their sea-coasts or frontiers, and were it not, that the rest of the powers of Europe know it to be their interest to defend them against Spain, they would soon be swallowed up by that potent neighbour. This is a much better security than the double marriages contracted between the two crowns, in the year 1729. Portugal is an absolute monarchy, and the crown hereditary. There are assemblies of the states and cortes here, indeed, as well as in Spain; but they only serve to confirm the decrees of the prince. The public annual revenues of the kingdom amount to near a million sterling, clear of all pensions and salaries; but the king receives a much greater revenue from the produce of the Mines of Brasil, which it is scarce possible to make a just estimate of. There is no country to which the English trade to greater advantage; for tho' we import the greatest part of their wine, and fruit, they take our woollen manufacture in return, with which they do not only cloathe the Portuguese of Europe, but the numerous colonies they have in Asia, Africa, and America; and many nations that formerly went naked, which the Portuguese have taught to cloathe themselves, and conform to European custom. And 'tis certain, we have imported a great deal of gold from Portugal, tho' the exportation of it from thence



1704 thence is prohibited, under very severe penalties by their government.

(v) Georgia, in Asia, see p. 107. n. d.

(s) Paris, east long. 2. 25. lat. 48. 50. the metropolis of the king of France, and of the principality, or government of the Isle of France, 200 miles south-east of London, 680 miles north-east of Madrid, 550 miles west of Vienna, 1300 north-west of Constantinople, and 700 miles north-west of Rome. Paris is usually divided into three parts; first, the town, which is the largest, situate on the north-side of the river Seyne; 2dly, the city, much the least, but most ancient, consisting of three little islands in the middle of the Seyne; 3dly, the university, which lies on the south side of the river. That part of the town, which stands on the north-side of the river, and called the town, lies on a perfect level, and was formerly a bog, and that part called the city, lies low; but that part called the university, on the south side of the river, has several little hills in it. The whole town, according to the French writers, is of a circular form, six leagues in circumference, and the diameter three; and consequently, must stand upon more ground than London; but those who have viewed both are of another opinion; certain it is, London is more populous. The largest calculators will not make the inhabitants of Paris amount to much more than 700,000 men; and there are, at least, 200,000 more in London. The houses of Paris are built of white hewn stone, five or six stories high; and as every nobleman almost has a large hotel, or palace in it, with courts and gardens, it must be admitted, that these excel every thing of that kind in London. As for the Louvre, and the rest of the royal palaces in Paris, where their kings used to reside, these are old decayed buildings, that do not answer a traveller's expectations at present. It is an archbishop's see, and an university, in which 'tis said, there were 100 colleges, tho' there are but 54 at present that bear that name; and of these there are but ten where exercises are performed. The Sorbonne is one of the finest colleges in Europe, from which the whole university is frequently called the Sorbonne. It is now very much upon the decline; other colleges and academics, being erected of late years by royal authority. The civil jurisdiction, and all the other privileges almost, which the Sorbonne had formerly, are taken from it. The academy of sciences is of much the same nature as that of the royal society of London. Besides which, there is an academy for refining and improving the French

language; others for the improvement of painting, sculpture, and architecture; others for the exercise and improvement of all mechanic arts and manufactures; such as tapestry, Mosaic work, wrought plate, works of iron, steel, copper, brass, embroidery, &c. The chief manufactures of this city are those of gold and silver stuffs, wrought silks, velvet, gold and silver lace, ribbons, tapestry, linen, and glass. There are, according to a late French writer, 22,000 houses in Paris, many of which are seven stories high, and almost a family in every story; 52 parishes, 134 monasteries, of which 56 are inhabited by friars, and 78 by nuns; 979 streets; 14,000 coaches; and upwards of 700,000 souls.

(p) Florence, east long. 12. 15. lat. 43. 30. the capital of Tuscany, in Italy, situate on the river Arno, 58 miles south of Bologna, 140 north of Rome, and 45 east of Leghorn and the Tuscan sea. It is one of the most elegant towns in Italy, and called Florence the fair, defended by a wall, and other modern works, besides three citadels of a round figure, and six miles in circumference; encompassed on three sides with little, fruitful hills, full of villas and country seats; and on the west lies that rich and extensive valley, thro' which the river Arno runs as far as Pisa, and the Tuscan sea. Statues and fountains are seen in almost all their streets; their private buildings are lofty, their squares spacious, their churches little inferior to those of Rome, and their noblemen's palaces equal to any in Italy. The statues, paintings, and curiosities in the grand duke's palace, are the admiration of travellers. The duke of Lorraine and Tuscany is now sovereign of this capital; which, with the dukedom of Tuscany, was allotted him, when he ceded the dukedom of Lorraine to France. It is an archbishop see, and university.

(g) Cyprus, the island of, see p. 109. n. i.

(r) Cardamum, or Cardamomum, a sort of seed brought from the East-Indies, being of a sweet odour, and of a hot, biting taste, like water-creffes, from whence it derives its name.

(s) Sulphur, or brimstone, a flat, unctuous mineral substance, fusible, and inflammable by fire; but not capable of being mixed with water.

(t) Germany, see p. 204. n. g.

(u) Holland, see p. 76. n. c.

X x x

(w) Gom-



1704

(20) Gombroon, or Gombroon, east long. 55. 30. lat. 27. 30. the greatest sea-port town in Persia, situate in the province of Fars, or Farsistan, on the strait, at the entrance of the gulph of Persia, opposite to the isle of Ormus, on the ruin whereof this town rose; and the English assisting the Persians in taking the isle of Ormus from the Portuguese, then one of the greatest marts in the east, the government allowed the English some extraordinary privileges, and half the customs of the port; and till very lately a great sum in lieu of them. It stands about 30 miles north east of the Arabian coast, and about 300 miles south-east of Shiraz. Beside the native Persians, it is inhabited by English, Dutch, Portuguese, Arabs, Jews, Armenians, Indians, Banians, and several other nations, of which the Armenians and Banians are much the greatest traders. It is an unhealthy place, which occasions most of the inhabitants to remove into the country during the hot season, the winter being the time for traffic. The gains that are made by the English East-India company, in carrying the merchandise of the Armenians,

Moors, Banians, &c. from Gombroon to Surat, is one great branch of the company's profit; they seldom send a ship from Gombroon to Surat, but she is as deep loaded as she can swim, with their effects, besides passengers, and a vast quantity of treasure on board; sometimes of the value of two or three hundred thousand pounds.

(21) Julfa, or Julpha (old) east long. 46. lat. 49. once the capital of Armenia, now in ruins, the inhabitants being transplanted to Isfahan, within a mile of which city, they have a town called New Julpha, by some looked upon as a suburb to Isfahan. Here they are encouraged and assisted by the Persians to carry on a foreign trade with all the country of Asia, and are the most considerable merchants in the world. They suffer them also to profess the christian religion; they have several churches in New Julpha, and come the nearest to the Greek church of any denomination of christians.

(22) Russia, or Muscovy, see p. 7. n. 2.

1704

# C H A P. XXXIX.

*The Solemnity observed by the (a) Armenians, when they baptize their cross. The innate Antipathy which is very remarkable in Mules to Bears. The grand Festival, called the Gaddernabia, and that of the solar Year; both observed by the (b) Persians. Other royal and magnificent Feasts. The manner of preserving the Stalks or Suckers of Rhubarb, and their medicinal Qualities. The Solemnization of the grand Festival, called the Bairam-kerbat, or Abraham's Sacrifice.*

The Armenian ceremony of baptizing their cross.

THIS solemnity was opened with a proper lesson, accompanied with hymns and masses, even till break of day; at which time, their priests, tho' before dressed in black, (the bishop only excepted, who performed the office) put on their rich vestments of gold brocade; and the bishop likewise then covered his head with a mitre, which was richly embellished with pearls and precious stones. He held, moreover, a crozier, or pastoral staff, of a moderate size, in his right-hand, which, tho' adorned as richly as his mitre, was covered over with a very fine white, embroidered handkerchief; he held another likewise in his

left-hand; but that, indeed, was not near so pompous, or so richly decorated as the former. The assembly of the priesthood, on this solemn occasion, were in number about four and twenty, who went out from the church, in a regular procession, and in their rich habiliments, to another place, directly fronting the church, which was very lofty, and finely decorated, where over head hung two bells. Here they had a large copper basin, or cistern, which was full of water, on one side whereof they read, and sung for the compass of a whole hour, or better; after which, the bishop, in a very solemn manner, dipped his crozier

fier



1704 *~~~~~* fier three times successively into the basin; after that, the proper attendant brought him a large vase, or cup of oil, which he very formally threw into the water; and with that last religious operation the solemnity closed. The ecclesiastics, however, who had assisted, instantaneously ran to the cistern, thus blessed, and washed their hands and faces with the water; as did likewise all such of the Armenian laity as could get sufficiently near it: such too as were furnished with hollow canes filled them with this sanctified water. The same solemnity was observed, not only in divers other churches, but even at a rivulet, which runs near (c) Julpha. However, it is proper here to inform the reader, that this religious ceremony must never be attempted till his majesty's permission is first obtained in form; and for that reason, the Kalantaer, or Armenian burgo-master, takes care to petition for some few days before-hand. Whereupon the king sends a special messenger to make a demand of two hundred ducats, which sum is annually paid by them for this act of indulgence; but on the receipt thereof his majesty sends them a proper guard to protect them from any insults, or riotous proceedings from the populace; and this precaution, 'tis true, is indispensably necessary, since there are vast multitudes both of (d) Turks and Persians, who, through curiosity, throng about them, in order to see the procession. On this day, in particular, the crowd was so great, that the bishop himself would not have been able to have gone through the ceremony, had not the guards cleared the way before him, by violence and compulsion. There were seven bishops present on this solemn occasion, who, together with some other inferior ecclesiastics, reside in the episcopal convent belonging to the church of Annabæet. This convent, which surrounds the church, consists of great numbers of small cells, or apartments, where there is nothing to be seen except a few niches, of no manner of use but to hold a book or two, and a small desk, before which they seldom stand, but sit upon the floor. The walls are white, and well taken care of; and what light

they have comes in on one side by two or three small windows, which are well glazed. The refectuary, or common-hall, may properly enough be called a long one, and is furnished with a pulpit, wherein some chapters are read by a proper assistant for that purpose, whilst the others are refreshing themselves at dinner. The chappel, from top to bottom is painted, and abounds with the representations of divers scripture-histories; but all of them are executed in a very artless and inelegant manner. Tho' their bishops are obliged to lead single lives, yet their priests may marry whenever they think convenient. The Armenians have two patriarchs, or arch-bishops; one resides here, and the other at Ectinassin, that is to say, the three churches near mount (e) Ararat, which lies at the distance of about three leagues from the city (f) Erivan.

On this occasion we happened to be eye-witnesses of a very remarkable combat between two mules, and a large, black hog, which the former, through their innate aversion to all bears in general, had inevitably torn to pieces, had not a timely aid and assistance luckily intervened. Mr. Kastelein, our governor, accounted, in a very rational manner, for this sudden and unexpected occurrence. This battle, said he, proceeded from the innate aversion which those creatures had to the black hog, from the too near resemblance that he bore to a bear. He assured us, that on his letting one of his mules loose one day upon a bear, by way of experiment, the latter was torn into pieces with the utmost fury and resentment in a few minutes. From this known antipathy it is, that the guides to every caravan, when they are apprehensive of any bears approaching them in their passage, which frequently attack their horses, set their unloaded mules directly upon them, who fly, like lions on their prey. At that very juncture, there happened to be a bear-ward making a shew of one he had tamed, and trained up to play tricks, not far from the Chiaerbaeg, and a young Persian came riding near him by meer accident on a mule which, in an instant, on his scenting the bear, flew open mouth at him, and

1704 *~~~~~*  
The innate antipathy of mules to all creatures resembling bears.



1704

and obliged his master to call out loudly for assistance; but no one would venture to run to his relief. The mule, through the eager pursuit of his detested antagonist, threw his rider, who tho' not actually killed, was sorely bruised, and felt for some considerable time the ill effects of his fall; the bear, however, at last forced his way through a cavity, or hole, for shelter, where the mule could follow him no farther. This occurrence seemed to us, indeed, somewhat more surprising than ordinary; since we had no idea of this innate antipathy in mules; neither can I recollect, that I have ever read any thing in history of the Romans producing those animals, when tamed, into their public shews; from whence I concluded, I presume naturally enough, that the mules of this country differ from those that are bred any where else, in regard to this innate aversion.

The anniversary fast on account of the decease of their great prophet Ali.

On the twenty-ninth instant, every shop, throughout the whole city of Isfahan, was as close shut up as ours on a Sunday, in commemoration of the decease of their great prophet Ali.

In the beginning of February, the heat began to be so intense, that several plants on a sudden, as it were, began to make their appearance.

Much about the same time, the agent from (g) England, accompanied by father Antonio Destiro, and several others of his intimate friends, and acquaintance, came to pay their respects to Mr. Kastelein, who entertained them all in a very elegant manner both at dinner and supper; inasmuch, that the company did not break up till day-light began to appear. Such visits, however, were customary enough, as our director and that agent were very intimate friends; and as both had always a numerous retinue, those testimonies of respect were always paid in a grand and pompous manner.

The conclusion of the Persian fast.

On the 6th of February, the Persians, with pleasure, beheld the face of the new moon; at that instant, their long and solemn fast was over, and they proclaimed their joy the whole night long by a kind of concert of music.

The next day they solemnized the festival of it, according to custom, after the same joyful manner, and his majesty that day made a grand entertainment at court, to which most of the foreign ministers were formally invited.

On the 8th was another grand festival, called the Gaddernabic, which is solemnized by his majesty alone; on which, according to custom, he gives audience to all his counsellors of state.

At the same time, both their wives and daughters repaired with them to the palace; where his majesty detained such of them as he best approved of for several days and nights successively; which is looked upon as a peculiar honour, and such an act of indulgence as the ladies are not a little proud of. During the time, there were great rejoicings, and fine fire-works played off before the palace-gate.

On the 10th, it is customary, for the courtiers to make their voluntary presents to his majesty, consisting principally of wax-works, artfully wrought up in the form of houses, gardens, fine flowers, or fruits. On that day the wind arose, and blew at north-west, in a most impetuous manner; and prevails there, it seems, annually for some considerable time. This violent northerly wind is distinguished by the name of Baad-biedmusk, or Bed-mus-wint, from a remarkable flower which always blows, at this particular season, on a sort of willow, from a bud that is not much larger than one of our small nuts. As small as it is, however, it is very odiferous. The natives frequently distil from this fine-flavoured flower, a very delicious liquor, not unlike sherbet, or lemonade, when well sweetened, with double refined sugar; but much stronger, and much more wholesome. This liquor is kept in bottles all the year round. This flower likewise is frequently dried by the ladies, and the powder of it scattered about their fine linnen, in order to give them an agreeable scent. Great quantities of it, in short, are brought to market by people that reside in the parts adjacent. As I never observed any such buds on our European willows, I have given the reader a representation,

1704

The festival of Gaddernabic.

A flower.

A remarkable flower.

A pleasant liquor distilled from it.



1704 tation of two different branches; one as it appears at this season; and the other with its leaves, which never shoot out till the month of April. The winds, which cause these particular trees to blow thus, for the most part, continue till towards the end of the month; during which, the weather is not only very fine, but the heat of the sun is very intense.

On the first day of March we had several smart showers of rain; and a strong wind immediately arising, it was remarkably cold; the weather, in short, proved variable, and continued so to be till the beginning of April.

The grand festival of the solar year.

On Friday, being the 20th of March, the Persians solemnized the grand festival of the solar year. Their bazars, or market-places, strike the eye in a very agreeable manner by candle-light; since all the shops in general are prettily decorated, but those more especially of the fruiterers and confectioners, which have a charming effect. There is plenty of all sorts of provisions likewise in the cooks-shops, which are sent about all the town over, which is an uncommon custom, and what I never saw practised in any other country whatsoever. However, notwithstanding such a profusion, the shops are soon stripped of all their stocks, through the vast concourse of strangers, who resort from all parts to Isfahan on this solemn occasion.

As our master of the horse was a Persian, and well known at court, I accompanied him betimes in the morning to the palace, where his majesty intended to make a grand entertainment. The principal lords that were invited sat down to table much about ten o'clock; and rose again in less than an hour. All the provisions were served up in gold and silver dishes; in which the Persian king's magnificence principally consists. Each dish, of which there was at least two hundred in number, was covered; and when there happens to be more company, the quantity of dishes is frequently doubled.

Most of the guests, who were invited to this banquet, wore on that occasion a kind of turban, embellished with rich

pearls and precious stones; this turban, they call *Tha-cits-timaer*: some, indeed, were adorned with the feathers of a heron, which are very beautiful in their kind, and very graceful. As soon as they are out of the grand salon, or hall, where the entertainment is made, they pull off these rich turbans, and put on those which they wear daily on their heads, and which are carried before them by their respective domestics.

During the time that this festival lasts, these courtiers make a very splendid appearance, but more particularly on this day, when all in general are dressed in new attire. At a small distance from the hall where his majesty gave the entertainment, there were a dozen of his sumpter-horses very richly caparisoned; their saddles and housings, were set with costly pearls and precious stones, and their bridles, all of massy gold. They were fastened to halters made of silk, which trailed upon the ground; but particular care was taken that no one should tread upon them. 'Tho' seven of the twelve horses were white ones; yet one part of their bodies, their tails, and their feet were all painted over with either a bright red, or a yellow like an orange. I could not procure a sight of these beautiful creatures, till I put my hand in my purse, and bribed their respective grooms. A rich, large carpet was spread near the place where they stood, whereon was seated a gentleman, to whose care they were more immediately entrusted; and on one side of him lay a golden hammer with which they were shod; and a trough of the same metal. I could not, however, by a bribe, or any other interest whatever, procure admittance into the salon, where the entertainment was made; and was obliged to sit down contented with a commodious seat for seeing every thing that passed by.

During this festival, there are grand presents customarily made to his majesty, not only by the grandees of the court, but by the bassas and governors likewise of particular places: these presents generally consist either of some rich commodities, purses of gold, fine horses, camels, or mules,

1704

The grandees and courtiers of the Persians.

Grand presents made by the grandees to his majesty on this festival.



1704

mules, which are carried to him separately by such citizens, as are employed by his majesty's express orders for that particular purpose. At the same time, these officers carry all round the grand square belonging to the palace ten or a dozen vessels full of straw, which are hung at the end of some certain long poles, in commemoration of a conquest which they had formerly obtained over the Aesbec (*b*) Tartars: after they have made this declaration, they lead a certain number of horses, all covered over with silk, but without any saddles, into the court belonging to the palace. As for my own part, I thought the finest sight of all was, the vast number of grandees who walked across the court in their return from the entertainment, amidst a large throng of spectators.

Present of  
eggs painted  
in fish  
colours.

During the whole course of this festival likewise, which is continued for several days successively, little presents of eggs are made by one grandee to another; and even the Maer-sejeldaer is obliged to wait on his majesty, with some of them embellished with gold and silver, and painted in a very elegant manner. And these particular presents are held in great estimation amongst them.

The grand  
festival of  
Easter.

On the 23d instant, we solemnized the grand festival of Easter at Mr. Kastelein's, our director's, and the very next day the English agent, with a numerous retinue, came to congratulate him on that joyful occasion. He met accordingly with a very courteous and friendly reception, and it was full late before he departed. On the 25th, several other visits were paid us; by which means, in short, we spent the remainder of the month, imperceptibly as it were, in innocent mirth and social congratulations.

Asparagus  
a valued  
present.

Excessively  
dear in  
spring.

About the beginning of April, our director received a present of some young asparagus from a particular friend, which was at that time such a novelty, that they had not then been brought to market, or, at least, threescore of them could not be purchased under a score of florins. This asparagus is always excessively dear in this early part of the season; and few care to be at the charge, unless they purchase them

with a view of presenting them to some persons of distinction, whose favour and interest they would willingly procure. We had, moreover, some shoots, or suckers of rhubarb presented to us preserved in the gravy of lamb, as another novelty worthy of our acceptance. They are very refreshing, and of a laxative nature, and at this time of the year, highly esteemed, and of a most delicious flavour. Their leaves are curled; and as to their colour, they are green, yellow, and somewhat inclining to the red; but their stalks are of a yellowish white. Some of them, indeed, are of a fine red, and two or three inches thick. As to their length, they are generally about a foot, or a foot and a half, and the tender part of the best of them is only fit to eat. As soon as they begin to shoot up, they are covered, like asparagus, close up with earth, and by that means they are soon brought to perfection. They are cultivated, as favourite plants, for his majesty's table, in the parts adjacent to the city called (*i*) Laer, or Lahor, the governor whereof is indispensably obliged to make his majesty a present of a considerable quantity of these shoots. The leaf of this plant is two or three fathom in circumference; and the root likewise as well as the leaf, is like that of the common rhubarb; but it has not equal strength with that which grows in the country of Usbek, between (*k*) China and (*l*) Moscow. The Persians eat the tender part of these suckers raw, with salt and pepper, in the same manner as the natives of (*m*) Italy do the suckers of artichokes; the taste whereof, tho' hot and biting, is very palatable and pleasant. The syrup, which is sometimes made of them is very refreshing. My curiosity induced me to make a draught of this plant and its root; and I have casually met with some leaves of it, which have been a foot and a half in length, and others still longer. The root of this which I have here delineated had four slips, or shoots, which were grey and mottled. It was sent me, by way of present, and as a curiosity from the city of Julpha; where it had stood, in a proper bed, for nineteen years successively till the time I had it.

1704

Sketches of  
figures of  
rhubarb.

Their qua-  
lities.



1704 On one side of the plant, the reader will observe, that I have drawn a particular fruit, when the season is somewhat farther advanced, called by the Persians, Badsjoen, but by the (n) Europeans, Fockje-fockiese. Sometimes it is of a purple, and at other times of a white colour. It is, for the generality, about the size of a cucumber, tho' there are some full as large again. It eats extremely pleasant, when cut into broth, or when fried in butter, or, in short, dressed in any other way whatsoever. The shrub, or plant, that bears it, is transplanted whilst it is very young, and by that means the fruit of it is manifestly improved. Its blossoms are parti-coloured, viz. white, purple, and yellow; and tho' for the most part, it shoots but about a foot and an half above the ground, it has several small branches, which frequently bow down to the very earth through the weight of the fruit which hangs upon them: the reader will find in plate 73. a representation of one of these shrubs; as also of the other plant before described. The leaves of the rhubarb are distinguished by the letter A. The root thereof by the letter B. And the last mentioned plant, called the Fockje-fockiese by the letter C.

Plate 73.

On the 7th of this instant April, there fell such an impetuous shower of rain, accompanied with hail, near Julpha, as covered the face of the whole country, notwithstanding it was scarcely discerned at the same time within the city itself, which was such an occurrence as had not been heard of for many years before. During all the remainder of the month, the weather proved very tempestuous, rainy, and uncertain.

On the 15th instant, the Persians solemnized their grand festival, by them called Bairam-korbat, that is to say, the sacrifice of Abraham. Our director, who was well apprized of my inquisitive temper, gave particular orders to his master of the horse, and two others of his inferior domestics, to wait on me on horseback, to the place intended for the solemnization of that religious custom. On the Eve before, and immediately after sun-set, the

king's music had been heard to play, which continued till the very same hour the next morning, without the least intermission, as his majesty's band is very numerous, and one part relieved the other at certain stated hours.

At seven in the morning, I made the best of my way to the Chiaer-baeg, where his majesty was to pass, as he went across his royal gardens; and, in about half an hour's time at farthest, he appeared at the head of a long train of grantees, to the number of two hundred, if not more, all dressed in the most elegant manner, with the richest turbans on their heads, of which we have given the reader a sufficient description some time before. I planted myself, about the mid-way, as near as I could, where his majesty was to pass; and after I had gratified my curiosity with a full view of him, and his numerous train, I set spurs to my horse, and galloped away to the place called the Babarock, that is, to the Persian burial-ground, and the very spot whereon the ceremony was to be performed; which was half a league distance at least, if not more, from the city. The whole ceremony consisted of nothing more than the bare sacrifice of one male camel, without spot or blemish; for otherwise it would be impure, and unfit for that religious service. The Daroega, that is the bailiff of the city, or else his majesty himself, gives the first fatal blow with a long sharp-pointed lance; and when thus deeply wounded, he is instantly dispatched by several sabres and knives, in the hands of such persons as are appointed for that solemn purpose: when thus perfectly sacrificed, they cut him up in sundry pieces, which are distributed amongst the several officers belonging to each division or district of the city; and as all parties concerned are ambitious of receiving their full dividend, or share, disorders on that account frequently arise, and prove fatal, as it happened on this very day; for I saw several laid breathless on the ground in the height of their quarrel and contention. For all of them repair to this public sacrifice armed either with sabres or clubs, and there is always such a concourse of persons

1704



1704

persons on horseback, that there is no possibility of stirring one way or the other. For my own part, I had the good fortune to move off the premises one of the first, and returned directly to the Chizer-baeg, in order to see the multitude of spectators on their return into the city. At length when the fray was all over, and each party had secured as good a share of the sacrifice as possibly he could get; the whole multitude returned in triumph; each officer at the head of those belonging to his own peculiar district jumping and dancing; some waving their sabres, and others their bludgeons over their heads, with loud acclamations, and abundance of what we commonly call rough music. The first slice that is cut off from this spotless sacrifice is devoted to his majesty's service, which is conveyed to the palace on the point of a long spear. As for the rest, the return was made regular enough, not only without any noise of confusion, but with all the testimonials of the most perfect satisfaction. In the first place, the king's guards made their appearance, and after them came his majesty himself on horseback, under a large parasol (as they call it) that is, a kind of umbrella, to screen him from the too intense heat of the sun. After him, came a long train of the grandees, or lords belonging to the court; followed by twelve of the king's sumpter-horses, all richly caparisoned, and four majestic elephants. In all, there were no less, according to the nearest computation that could be made, than one hundred thousand persons of all ranks and degrees present at this solemnity; some on foot, some on horse-back, and prodigious numbers on the tops of their houses. I was the only European, that appeared dressed in my own country mode. As soon as the king drew near, the way was presently cleared for him by dint of cudgel; insomuch, that there were several horse-men that were drove into the water; some on foot, who got most heartily drubbed; and as for my own part, I found myself prodigiously fatigued, notwithstanding the whole ceremony was over by eleven in the morning, if not before; and notwithstanding the whole mul-

1704  
titude had crossed the town in form, and made their return in proper order. Previous to the carrying this religious ceremony into actual execution, the poor innocent, spotless camel, was led for ten days successively, covered with thorns, and other emblems of mortification, and preceded by attendants, with lances, axes, and a variety of other warlike weapons to denote his intended death and approaching execution.

On that day, there are no less than fifty thousand sheep all slaughtered, dressed, and eaten up in the city of Isfahan; and most of those who had the good fortune to procure a slice of the camel, took care to dress it with their mutton: however, there were some few, indeed, more religiously inclined than the rest, who hoarded up what they had got as a sacred relic, and kept it all the year round. It must be owned, it is true, that there are ten or twelve thousand sheep slaughtered every day throughout the year for the supply of their several markets; and that all persons, of what rank or degree soever, rich or poor, lie under an indispensable obligation to eat mutton on this solemn day. Some few days before the day of sacrifice, I met with such droves of sheep, that I could scarce get clear of them. The inhabitants of this city, moreover, consume an almost incredible number of lambs, not above five and twenty days old at most. This consumption commences in November, and lasts till the latter end of May, but more especially amongst the people of taste and distinction. The price of each of these lambs is for the generality, seven, eight, or nine morcedjies (as they call their coin) seven whereof are of about a crown value of our money; but the largest weight of any of them does not exceed twelve pounds. They are looked upon as the choicest viands throughout all Persia, especially amongst the richer sort, who seldom, if ever, eat any beef, or buffaloes; for notwithstanding large quantities of both, 'tis true, are brought to market, yet those provisions are for the most part purchased by none but their mechanics, and the other lower class of their people.

Some



1704

The king goes into the country with his concubines, and amuses himself and them, with an uncommon fight.

Some few days after this religious ceremony had been solemnized in the manner above described, his majesty went with his concubines into the country, and amused both himself and them with the sight of a large number of elephants swimming a-cross the river, the waters whereof had swollen excessively high, by reason of the rains that had fallen very heavy some few days before.

On the 23d instant, the Persians held another festival, which they call Aidikadier, on which (as they assert) their grand prophet Mohammed, declared to the people, that Ali, or Hall, the prophet, should be his immediate successor, and laid his positive injunctions on them to acknowledge him as such.

This was transacted (as they say) in Arabia the happy, near the village of Shomhadier, from whence the name of this festival is derived, which is observed by the Persians only; since the bare mention of it to any of the other Mahomedans is looked upon as a gross affront.

About this time the trees began to shoot; and there were such heavy rains fell down towards the conclusion of this month, that they not only damaged some houses, but totally washed away others. This misfortune, however, is not much to be wondered at; since the mason's work in this country is just like a sponge; and as the houses are all flat at top, it is morally impossible to keep them dry upon the fall of any impetuous showers.

As soon as the month of May, however, came on, the weather began to change for the better; and I went into the country with our director, with an intention to follow the course of the river; but the banks of it had been so overflowed, by means of the preceding heavy rains,

that we were indispensably obliged to strike a-cross the country, by a road, which in two hours time, led us to the pleasure-house, or rural-seat, called Goel-jeron, which is situate, eastward of the city, on the river of Zenderoe. To this pleasure-house there is a good garden, in which there is great plenty of fens and fruit-trees; and several that have been sent by the East-India company have halted here, not only on their arrival, but at their departure from Ispahan. There are several good apartments, it is true, in this house; but many of them begin to run to ruin and decay. The parts adjacent, however, are exceedingly pleasant. In this garden there are four several fens-trees, at a small distance from each other, which cover a pavilion, where there is a small flight of steps in order to get into it. These trees are very short; yet their trunks are very thick, and two of the four are no less than 16 feet in circumference. The Persians look upon them with more than common regard on account of their antiquity, and peremptorily insist, that Tamerlane the Great once reposed himself under the shadow of their wide-spreading branches.

We were in hopes of meeting with some game here; but as the rain began to fall heavy all on a sudden, we thought it most advisable to return to Julpha directly, without the least farther delay; which accordingly we did, and staid there till night came upon us. The weather proved very precarious the next day; and I was unfortunately seized with an intermitting fever. Tho' I had only some few fits of it; yet they were very severe, and weakened me to that degree, that I felt the ill effects of them till the beginning of the month of June.

1703

An ancient pleasure-house.

#### *Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.*

(a) Armenia, see p. 198. n. g.

(b) Persia, see p. 64. n. o.

(c) Julfa, or Julpha, see p. 262. n. x.

(d) Turkey, see p. 203. n. c.

(e) Anarat, the ancient name for the mountain Caucasus, between the Euxine and Caspian seas, where Noah's ark rested.

(f) Erivan, east long. 45. lat. 40. 6. a city of Persia, on the frontiers of Turkey, in Asia, in the province of Chirvan, situate 170 miles east of

of



1704 of Erzerum, and 160 miles north-west of Taurus.

(g) England, see p. 91. n. f.

(h) Tartary, see p. 18. n. i.

(i) Laer, or Lahor, capital of the province of Lahor, east long. 75. lat. 33. is situate on the river Ravi, on the streams which form the river Indus 300 miles north-west of Delli, and 800 miles north of Surat. It is a large beautiful city; once the seat of the empire; but the palaces are running to ruin since the removal of the court. It is now the frontier of the Mogul's country against Persia, Kouli Kan, or the Sha Nadir, having added the province of Affock, and all the provinces of India on the west-side of the Indus to the Persian empire. At this city ends that magnificent walk of shady trees which runs from the city of Agra to this place, being upwards of 600 miles, a plantation of great use as well as grandeur in so hot a climate, since these trees are a shelter to travellers from the scorching sun.

(k) China, see p. 66. n. i.

(l) Moscovy, or Russia, see p. 7. n. i.

(m) Italy, is situate between 7 and 19 degrees of east-long. and between 38 and 47 degrees of north-lat. bounded by Switzerland and the Alps, which separate it from Germany on the north; by the gulph of Venice on the east; by the Mediterranean sea on the south; and by the same sea and the Alps, which separate it

from France on the west; and if we include Savoy, which lies, indeed, on the West-side of the Alps, between Italy and France, we must extend it a degree farther west. This is usually described, however, with Italy, as it is contiguous to Piedmont, and has the same sovereign, being a province of the king of Sardinia's dominions. Italy is said to resemble a boot, and is in length from the north-west to the south-east 600 miles and upwards; the breadth is very unequal in the north, which may be called the boot-top, it is 400 miles broad from east to west. In the calf of the leg, or middle, it is about 120 broad, and towards the south, about the instep, 80 miles broad, and comprehends the following countries, or sub-divisions. 1. In the north of Italy are the duchies of Savoy, Piedmont, and part of Montserrat, subject to the king of Sardinia; the territory of Genoa, subject to the Genoese; the duchies of Milan, Mantua, and the rest of the duchy of Montserrat, subject to the house of Austria; the Duchy of Modena, subject to its own duke, and the large territories of Venice, subject to that republic. 2. In the middle of Italy are the duchy of Tuscany, now subject to the emperor of Germany; the pope's dominions, which almost surround Tuscany, and the state of Lucca. 3. In the south division is the kingdom of Naples, subject to the king of the two Sicilies.

(n) Europe, see p. 127. n. dd.

(o) Isfahan, see p. 109. n. w.

(p) Arabia, see p. 203. n. e.

## CHAPTER XL.

*An accurate, tho' compendious Description of (a) Isfahan, and of all such Beauties, both in Art and Nature, as are to be met with in that extensive City, and the Parts adjacent, and which we flatter ourselves are well-worthy the Attention of the Curious.*

1704.  
A prospect  
of the city  
from within  
it.

TH O' Isfahan is a very extensive city, provided the suburbs are included; yet it makes but a poor appearance from without, in regard either to the mosques, towers, or stately edifices that are therein erected; and the reason, in fact, is, be-

cause in the Summer-season 'tis perfectly concealed, as it were, and over-shaded with great numbers of lofty trees. And as this is the real case, I was determined to wait till the Winter came on, before I drew a prospect of it; and even then, I could make but



1703 but an imperfect sketch of it, on account of the vast profusion of palm-trees, cypresses, and other ever-greens, which are so very lofty, and so thick of leaves, that they are at all times and seasons most delightful to the eye.

All the buildings throughout this city in general are of a grey colour, and have terraces, or plat-forms over them. Tho' there is a wall, indeed, that divides the city from the suburbs; yet there is no possibility of distinguishing it, or perceiving the division, as the houses stand so thick and close together. All these are, doubtless, great impediments to a person that is inclined to take a draught or prospect of the city, and the more so, as 'tis built on a level, or plain; inasmuch that, in short, I was obliged to ramble a whole league from the place, in search after a proper rising-ground for that purpose; from whence I had not only a full view of (b) Julpha, which is situate on the other side of the town, the city, with all its appendages, and the numerous little villages that stand round about it, but of all the fine gardens, which take up a vast extent of ground, and the lofty mountains likewise that surround them.

That mountain which lies the nearest of them all, and by the natives called Koe-soffa, is at least a league and an half's distance to the southward from the city. On one side of it, there stands a royal mansion, or pleasure-house, which was first erected by king Suliman, his present majesty's father, in which there are a great number of very fine and magnificent apartments; from whence we had a full prospect, not only of the city and the country all round about it, but likewise of a fine nursery of all sorts of trees, and a kind of cascade proceeding from a torrent of water that is constantly falling from the adjacent mountains. This rural palace is called Tagte Sulle-moen, that is to say, the throne of king Sulliman, and when I happened to be there a great number of workmen were very busy in making the necessary preparations. The reader will find I have annexed a representation of it, as it appeared to me from the foot of the hill. There are

several other mountains in sight; but then they stand at a much greater distance from the city, which is situate on a level or plain, as I observed before, that is near five and twenty leagues from east to west. It is likewise six leagues in breadth and upwards. One may say, without any great impropriety, that it is boundless, particularly to the eastward; as is also the road to Shiras, whereon I met with divers fine villages, and delightful gardens. And tho' I travelled at least six leagues eastward, I could perceive no boundaries or limits.

This city has no less than ten several gates, which stand all open, and without any proper officers to guard them. In order to take a tour all round the place, I went to the gate called Hassan-abaet, from a person of that name, and of high birth and distinction, who began first to erect a range of houses on that side. From thence I went to another gate called Derwas-eykaroen, that is to say, the gate of the deaf; that part of the city having been formerly inhabited by such principally as laboured under that infirmity and misfortune. I left this gate on the left-hand, in order to take a view of the bazars, which are at a quarter of a league's distance, at least, from the former. The gate called Seydaek-moedjoen is at much about the same distance, and on the east-side of the city, where there is a double wall; the outermost whereof is very low, and beyond it, there are no houses, and nothing to be seen but a few monuments, or tombstones. From this I went to another gate called Shobarn, which stands to the westward; from whence, at about the same distance, I saw that called Togt-shie. The canal, which runs round one part of the city to the westward, and as far as the gate called Karoen, rises, that is, has its spring from this place. From thence I went about a quarter of a league, and saw the gate called Daridest, and at an equal distance from that called Darwasynow, that is to say, the New-gate. From thence I went to the gate called Darwasfy Lamboen, and then to that called Doulet, or the gate of Prosperity, which is that of the Chiav-baeg. The tenth is called Hadshie,

1704

The mountain called Koe-soffa.

A royal pleasure-house called Tagte Sulle-moen.



1704

Hadthie, which stands near the kitchen-gate of the royal palace. As soon as I had gotten round again to the gate before-mentioned called Hassan-aboet, from whence I set out, I pulled out my watch, and found I had been full two hours and an half in taking this tour. They are all of them composed of earth only, and have no out-works to defend them; nay, the very folding-doors to them are perfectly clumsy, and secured only by a few iron-plates.

The walls  
of the city.

This city (within the walls) is divided into two and twenty principal partitions, or wards; seventeen whereof are distinguished by the name of Mamerh-olla-hie, or Namet-holladers, and the five others are called Heiderrie: they bear a near resemblance to those called the Nicoloti, and the Castellani in the city of (c) Venice.

Each of the above-mentioned seventeen partitions, or wards of the first division, have distinct appellations; the first is known by the name of Bagaet, that is, the ward of gardens; so called, because in the reign of king Abbas the first, it contained gardens, and nothing else. The second is called Kerron, that is, the ward of the deaf; the third Daeh-battin, that is, the division of the house of Melons; the fourth is called Sey-id Agmed-joen, from one of their celebrated doctors; the fifth Letvez; but from whence it derives that name I could never learn; the sixth is called Bafaer-Agues, that is to say, the Duck-market; the seventh Shaer-soi Kotba; that is, the cross way of Kotba; the eighth Seltoen-senshierie, so called from an illustrious prince of that name; the ninth Namu-asig, the signification whereof is the three incompatibles; the tenth Shoebare, but why so called I am at a loss to determine; the eleventh is distinguished by the name of Derre-Rabba-Kasim, that is to say, the ward, or division of the father Kasim; the twelfth is called Goude-Matfoek-beek, but why I know not; the thirteenth Golbaer, that is, abounding with fine flowers; the fourteenth is called Meydoen-mier, that is, the division or ward of Mier-square; or the square of one of their doctors known by that name; the fifteenth Niema-wort; the signification whereof I know not; the sixteenth is

called Derre-kock, that is, the spot, or place of pleasure; what the name of the seventeenth is I do not remember; the four that follow belong to the ward or district of the Heyderries; the first of these is distinguished by the name of Maleynow, that is to say, the new part; the second is called Derredest, that is, the abandoned part; the third Hoejcynja, that is, the ward or partition of the ecclesiastics; and the last is known by the name of Tegt-shie, that is to say, the keeper of the poultry.

The principal parts of the same general divisions without the walls are four only in number; the first is distinguished by the name of Abbas Abaet, from Abbas the Great, who was its founder. This division, of all the out-parts is the most considerable; for none but persons of distinction inhabit this district; neither is there any difference made between this ward and those within the walls: this ward is situate to the westward; the second bears the name of Siems-Abaet, so called from the founder of it; the third Bied-abact, and the fourth Thie-roen. Besides these, there are two others belonging to the ward or district called Namet-olla-hie; the former is called Sheigh-joessus-gibenna, that is to say, old Joseph's mansion. It is sometimes, however, distinguished by the district or ward of Sheig-sebbennaes; and sometimes again by that of Telwaeskon.

Under these districts, or wards, several small sub-divisions are comprehended, which have their several and peculiar denominations. These two great divisions are forever at variance; forever incompatible, and disagreeing with each other. This opposition, however, is most conspicuous on their days set apart for processions; their most solemn festivals, and in such places as are of public resort. And as both are inveterate and perverse; there are great tumults and disorders for the generality on these public occasions; and their enmity, in short, to each other frequently runs so high, that numbers are sometimes left breathless on the spot; but of this we shall take farther notice in another place. The rise of this implacable emulation, envy, or malice, proceeded first, as I am informed,

1704

Sub-divisions  
etc.



1704 from two ancient villages, that stood contiguous to each other, one of which belonged to the Heiderries, and the other to the Namet-olla-lue, names that have since been assumed, and by which the two contending parties are distinguished.

This city was formerly called Hispahan, Ispahan, or Aspahan; and was nothing more than an ordinary town, or village, till the reign of king Abbas the Great, who, when he had overcome Laer and Ormus, abandoned Casbin and Sultania, and made Ispahan his favourite place of abode. The principal cause of this alteration, or change in his residence, was the advantageous situation of the latter, which now became the metropolitan city, and the favourite seat of the monarchs of (d) Persia. It is situate in the province of Irak, which is part of the ancient (e) Parthia, and in the northern latitude of 32 degrees and 45 minutes.

This country in general is distinguished by the name of Persia, which is a great and renowned kingdom of (f) Asia, encompassed by the (g) Caspian sea, Zagathay, (h) Tartary, the empire of the (i) Mongulians, or Moguls, the India sea, the gulph of Persia, (k) Arabia the desert, and (l) Turkey.

His majesty's palace here is about three quarters of a league in circumference; and there are six several gates to it, the first and principal of which is called Ali-Kapic, that is, the gate of Ali, or Hali; the second is distinguished by the name of Haram-Kapic, that is, the gate of the Seraglio; both of them open into the Meydoen, or large square, which stands to the northward. The third is called Moerbag-Kapic, that is to say, the gate belonging to the kitchen; because all the provisions, of what nature or kind soever, which are served up to his majesty's table, is carried through that gate; and the fourth is called Ghandag-Kapic, that is, the gate or entrance to the gardens belonging to the palace. Thro' this no one must presume to pass, his majesty himself, and his Kapaters, as they are called, that is his eunuchs, or guardians of his concubines, only excepted. This gate leads into the Chiaer-

baeg. The fifth gate is called Ghajat-ganna Kapic, that is, the taylor's-gate; because all those of that profession, who are in his majesty's service have their residence there; the sixth and last gate is called Ghanna Kapic; that is, the secretary's gate; these two last lead into the northern part of the city. The greatest part of the Persian grandees go through those gates into the palace, when they have an audience of his majesty; but more especially through the two first.

The citadel, called the Tabarock, is near half a league in circumference, and extends, in regard to the length of it, quite into the city, eastward; and meets with the wall thereof southward. The wall is lofty enough, but composed of mud only; and is flanked with a set of towers, that make a very mean appearance, tho' there are cannons indeed, mounted upon them; but then they are of little or no use; since they durst not discharge them for fear of throwing down the wall, which is run to ruin and decay; so far, that there are large crevices to be met with in divers parts of it, that any person may see quite through it. Tho' strangers are not permitted to enter into it; yet I am fully persuaded, that the reason of such prohibition is, in fact; because it is in a more wretched condition within, than it appears without; it is a spacious place, however, and has some few conveniencies within belonging to it.

As to what I have farther to say with respect to the rest of the city, I shall give the reader my free thoughts thereon, when I shall have closed my description of it; in order that what I have still to add in this place, may be more readily and clearly understood.

Now here, then, follows the description of it just as the reader will find it represented in the plate annexed (No. 74.) and as it appears from the prospect taken from the southward. The figure (1.) directs the reader's eye to a mountain: the figure (2.) denotes the new royal garden, which I saw when it was but just begun; it is of a very considerable extent. Figure (3.) distinguishes the river called Zenderoc.

+ A

(4.)

Persia.

The king's palace.

The citadel.

Plate 74.



1704 (4.) Points to the house of one of the principal (w) Armenian merchants of Julpha. (5.) Directs the eye to the Dominican church in the same town. (6.) Points to the church of St. John the evangelist, which belongs to the Armenians. (7.) To the Episcopal church, or cathedral of the same people, which has a small tower belonging to it. (8.) Denotes the church in the market. (9.) The church of St. Mary; all this in Julpha. (10.) Is a representation of the bridge, called Allawerd-Khan. (11.) The Muzyt, that is, the royal mosch. (12.) The mosch, called the Torfolla, from one of their doctors. (13.) The Menare-Kambrinsie, which is a lofty stone tower. (14.) The Kella-Menaer, that is, the pillar of beasts heads. (15.) The Tabarock, or the citadel. (16.) The Hazaar-Sherip, or the grand royal garden. (17 and 18.) Point out the principal monuments, or sepulchres of the Persians, and their burial-ground called the Batarock. (19.) The place, or ground set apart for the interment of the christians. (20.) Directs the eye to the royal river. (21.) To the mountains of Choroe, which are in part covered over with snow. And (22.) Points out the village, called Talissia.

The Mey-  
doen, or  
grand  
square.

The Meydoen, or grand square, which is one of the principal beauties of the whole city, is a market-place, no less than seven hundred and ten paces in length, from east to west; and in breadth, from north to south, two hundred and ten. It stands to the southward of the royal palace, and to the northward of the Nachroe-chone, that is to say, the particular structure erected for his majesty's band of music. This building consists of two lofty galleries, distinct from each other, and between them stands the imperial gate, which is a curious piece of architecture, very lofty, and built strong with fine stones. Thro' this gate I went into the Bazars. There is a representation upon it of the remarkable engagement between king Abbas, and the Ussac Tartars. It is a painting, not a sculpture, and executed by a Persian artist. There is a clock over it that strikes the hours, which is the only one to be

met with throughout the whole kingdom of Persia; and on the same side there is a pavilion of the machines belonging to the clock, which gives motion to some wooden puppets in a wheel; a wretched piece of machinery, which any European operator would look on with an eye of disdain. A little farther to the eastward I came to the mosch called Shig-loof-olla, from one of their doctors of that name; who is registered amongst the number of their saints. This is one of the best in the whole city, and is decorated with a fine dome, covered on the out-side with parti-coloured stones, incrustated with gold. It has a pyramid likewise, on which there are three golden balls. The front door opens into the grand square, and there is a flight to it of several steps. It is built in a circular form, and about forty paces in circumference, as the person assured me whom I employed to give me the exact dimensions of it; for a christian must not presume, on any pretence whatever, to enter into that sacred place.

The royal mosch, called Shah-mazyt, stands on the western-side of this grand square, and is deemed the principal of all the moschs throughout the whole city of Ispahan. This has a dome to it, like the former, and two doors in the front, with a pillar on each side. These columns run considerably higher than the mosch itself; the whole of parti-coloured stone, together with an incrustation of gold, which has a fine effect, and strikes the eye in the most delightful manner. There are several Persian characters in white all round about, and the dome has two pillars. This mosch is of a circular form as well as the others, and is eighty-five paces in circumference. In the court directly over against the entrance, there is a fine cistern, or fountain; and it must be allowed, that these two moschs are the greatest decorations that the Meydoen, or grand square can boast of. At about two hundred and sixty-six paces from this last mosch stands the gate, called Ali-kapie; and the whole square, indeed, is surrounded with lofty edifices, and with porticoes or piazzas full of shops and artisans. Those which

1704

The royal  
mosch.



1704 are in his majesty's service, are on the court-side: and the much greater part of the square is (besides all this) taken up with tents, where all kinds of merchandize are exposed to sale; at night, however, they pack up all their goods as carefully as they can, and leave a watch behind them, who goes his stated rounds in the night with his dog by his side. The elms that are planted here cast a shade over most of the buildings; and the place is continually thronged by people of all ranks and degrees; but more particularly by such people of distinction as are obliged to attend the court. Here likewise are frequently seen great numbers of quack-doctors, and their merry-andrews, or buffoons, tho' they sell no medicines at all, and do nothing more than amuse the crowd with idle, nonsensical stories, for which they are tolerably well paid for their labour by their numerous spectators. Some of these mountebanks have their apes and monkeys, which play a thousand antic tricks, to attract the mob about them; for there is no nation under the copes of heaven, so fond of trifles, and buffoonery, as the Persians are; for which reason, their coffee-houses, bazars, and other places of public resort, swarm with these idle jack-puddings, and quack-doctors.

Their tournament.

In the center of this large square, or market-place, there is a large and lofty column, set apart for their public diversions; and on the summit, or top of it, the prize for the most part is affixed, which for the generality consists of a golden cup, or something of the like nature. The parties, that contend for it, are obliged to ride by it full speed, and, on a sudden turn of the body, to throw away their arrows or darts, and then stop their steeds in a moment. No one, however, but persons of distinction, and such as are dextrous sword-men are admitted to these martial amusements. He that gains the prize, grasps it fast in his hand, and then puts it upon his head, as a testimony of his conquest and superior skill. His majesty, moreover, makes him a compliment of some present or other, of more or less value, according to the regard he has for the victor. The customary

present, however, is a golden quiver full of arrows. These martial amusements, indeed, have been practised but seldom, since his present majesty's accession to the throne, his taste, or inclination, leading him quite another way; which is widely distant from that of his predecessors, under whom this column was erected, and these tilts or tournaments encouraged.

In former times, the quality never failed of having a tournament, on the festival, called Nowroes, that is to say, the new solar year; a solemnity observed with the utmost strictness by the ancient kings of Persia; and, according to the annals, or registers of this country, even so far back as the days of king Darius.

On these solemn occasions, they always pulled down, and removed the numerous tents that generally stand here; and plowed the ground with oxen for twenty days, without intermission, before the festival commenced. The king was then seated on a kind of theatre or throne, which they call Talacl, over the gate of Ali-kapie, which is very lofty, and the architecture thereof is executed in a masterly manner.

When the races were over, there came on the stage, a set of wrestlers and rope-dancers; and after that, they had battles both of bulls and rams. On these days of public rejoicings, they had jugglers likewise; but his present majesty detests such operators, as his spiritual guides have intimated to him, that the toleration of such magic-tricks are not only immoral, but shamefully wicked and prophane; neither will he admit of any female dancers or courtesans, tho' they met with great encouragement from his predecessors.

In the plate hereto annexed, and number (75) the reader will find an exact representation of the Meydoen, or the grand market-place. This first prospect was taken from one side of the edifice before-mentioned to be set apart for his majesty's band of music. The letter (A) points out the Talacl, or theatre, which stands over the gate called Ali-kapie. (B) Distinguished

A description of the Meydoen. Plate 75.







1704 vered, and embellished with niches on the sides, and several stone-benches, about three foot high; and divers other apartments, exclusive of the new Seraglio, for which his majesty pays annually the sum of three hundred tomans, each toman being about the value of forty florins, Dutch money: all the shops about the Maydoen, or grand market-place, and the Chiær-bæg likewise, contribute towards it; but the clergy have all the income or revenue of the gardens that belong to it, by a special grant from king Abbas the first.

His majesty  
takes great  
delight in  
music.

Their prin-  
cipal instru-  
ments.

His majesty is peculiarly fond of music, and keeps a great number of hands for that purpose at the place, called the Nach-rochone.

Their principal instruments are first the Karama, which bears a near resemblance to the trumpet; some of these Karamas are five inches in circumference at the mouth-end; and about four foot at the other; and in length, about seven foot six inches: insomuch that, there is no possibility of making use of them without a proper rest. These give a very extraordinary, pleasing sound. The next instrument they call the Koes, which is a large drum, in depth five foot and upwards, and nine foot nine inches in circumference. This instrument, however, is very seldom, if ever used, in times of war only excepted, and such as beat it ride upon camels; the third instrument is called the Hool, which is a drum very nearly resembling ours. They have likewise what they call the Nagora, which is a small kettle-drum, and the naffer, or the trumpet. They have moreover, an instrument, much like our harp-sichords; but their favourite instrument, and that which is most in use, is their kamon-she, which is a kind of violin. They have also an instrument, called the Scorna, which nearly resembles our hautboys. They have, moreover, a great variety of flutes, and the morgnie, or harp, which is a flat copper basin, on which they strike, and make a great noise. They have, in short, besides all these, divers other instruments, the use of which are wholly unknown in any parts of (q) Europe.

The exercises, that are principally practised by the natives of Persia, are riding, and darting what they call the Ainer, that is to say, the cane; shooting with bows and arrows, and fowling. They smook pretty much, and are free in conversation, by way of relaxation. They are great admirers likewise of the tedious game of chess, and play at it too extremely well.

Having now said all that we think needful in regard to the Meydoen, or market-place, we shall proceed to give our readers a perfect idea of the Chiær-bæg, that is to say, the fine walk, or alley of Ispahan, which is one of the chief ornaments that capital can boast of. The term may with propriety, however, be construed likewise the four gardens. In order to go to it, I went through the gate, called Daer-wafey-doulet, that is the gate of prosperity, erected by king Abbas the great, situate to the south. That prince gave express orders to some of his counsellors of state, that they should erect such and such houses, at their own private expences, at the entrance into those gardens, all along this fine alley. One of these grandees or lords, whose name was Gemthe-Ali-Kan, erected, in pursuance of these orders, a magnificent structure, or building, in the form of a tower, over against one of the walks that runs along the river. The rest followed his example, and each strove to out-do his neighbour, by embellishing it with fine stone buildings, and amongst the rest, with a pavilion at the entrance; from whence his majesty, on his coming out of the garden, might see all their magnificent buildings.

As I passed by these gardens, I saw (at about the distance of two hundred and fifty paces from the city-gate) two edifices directly over against each other, with great gates, which lead into the gardens; and in the middle, or centre of this fine walk, there is a large octagon basin; there are two other edifices likewise, resembling these, at the distance of three hundred and thirty-eight paces from thence, with a quadrangular basin; and when I had gotten about an hundred and seventy paces farther, I came to a cross-way, which extended as far as to

4 B

the

1704

The prin-  
cipal exer-  
cises, or di-  
versions of  
the Persi-  
ans.

The Chi-  
ær-bæg.



1704 the walls of the gardens. This cross-way abounds with benches, wooden chairs, and tables, and here in an evening I have seen great numbers of Persians smoking their pipes, and drinking their coffee: here the ground has a declivity, where there are trees with wide-spreading branches, which afford the finest shade that can possibly be conceived; and accordingly, it is almost always prodigiously thronged, both with gentlemen on foot, and others on horseback; who amuse themselves there with running of races, and other exercises of various kinds. When I had gone some considerable way farther, I came to a large stone-gate, which belonged to one of these gardens; and proceeding a little farther, I came to two other buildings, where people retire to smoke; and after I had walked a little farther, I came to another cross-way, where I saw two buildings, much like the former, and between them a square basin; here likewise I saw several persons smoking their pipes, and drinking of coffee; and here likewise were deposited a great number of bucklers, bows and arrows, which belonged to the Mamet-holladers, and the Hey-deries, of whom we have made mention before. At some considerable distance from hence, I saw another octagon basin, abutting on a way, which is traversed by a fine river, on each side whereof are planted a prodigious number of senna-trees. The high road extends above two hundred paces beyond this, all along the palace, and the royal garden, where there is a sort of menagerie, or place for learning how to ride the great horse. About four-score paces from hence, stands the famous bridge of Alla-werdi-Khan, so called from the name of its founder. The road near it is no less than one thousand seven hundred and fifty one paces in length, and three-score and eight in breadth; embellished on each side with fine senna-trees, which were planted in the reign of king Abbas the great, that is to say, above one hundred years ago. That part where these trees are planted is five paces in breadth; and is raised a foot and an half, at least, above the way, or road itself, which is very sandy. This way, thus raised, which runs

A famous  
bridge.

1704 between the wall of the garden and these trees, is paved with large brick; and the canal, that crosses the Chazer-baag, is lined with the same materials. On the sides of these trees, which are all regularly planted, at the distance of about ten foot only from one another, there is an aqueduct contrived to water them.

The bridge, called Alla-werdi-Khan, which is situate on the river of Zenderoet, is five hundred and forty paces in length, and seventeen in breadth, and erected with large stones. It has three and thirty arches; some whereof stand on sand; which, in this place, is extremely hard, and the water, when it is high, runs under them. On this bridge, there are no less than ninety three several niches, some whereof are open, but others stopped up; and each end is flanked with four towers. There are parapet-walls, composed of bricks, with holes throughout the whole length from one end to the other; inasmuch that I had here one of the finest prospects I have ever beheld; with several very neat summer-houses upon it, at each end. At the distance of about four hundred and sixteen paces from this bridge, there is a kind of cascade, or water-fall, received by a basin, which is three-score paces long, and forty broad. Near this water-fall, there are eleven large stone steps, which are in a wretched and ruinous condition; and at no great distance from them, is a large road, some trees, and a slope-way, which afterwards becomes perfectly plain and level. At some small distance from hence, I came to two other pleasure-houses, and after that, to twelve more, two and two, at an almost equal distance, one from the other, quite to the end of this fine walk or alley, which is of the same breadth in all places, and is bounded by his majesty's great garden, which extends as far as here, from the above-mentioned cascade. On each side, there are one hundred and forty-five senna-trees, with some mulberry-trees between them; and from the extremity of the bridge to the end of the alley, it is two thousand and forty-five paces; to which, when the length of the bridge itself is added, which is five hundred and

forty

CO  
any more, and the  
which is one thousand  
for us, the total  
should three hundred  
The fine and good  
we have listed before  
great garden, where there  
one building, painted like  
not, and decorated with  
go and down. The  
garden is extremely ple  
de with a treacherous  
which has a looking glass.  
This garden is very spec  
comely with fine walk  
numbers of fruit-trees,  
shows the eye, and has  
might be greatly improved  
corruption. It is two the  
back and other parts be  
forth, and from end to  
six hundred and forty-  
distinguished by the con  
rings, that is to say, the g  
fall from. Here I saw  
towers, but completed, wh  
are made use of to display  
whereof is a very proper  
manner.

The reader will find the  
nation of the Chazer-baag  
here from the wall, in p  
I took the draught of it  
river called Zenderoet,  
which has its source  
large spring, or well, call  
E, that is to say, the f  
This place has been m  
we live close to the well.  
There are some people  
spring from two hundred  
whereof is very fine  
city, in a village, called  
house, where I have a  
in the soil, it looks  
the outward of Lijal  
ground which is called  
the temple, or now, are  
contains a magnificent  
instance, under (1) of  
the garden, which runs  
is a dry belonging to the



1704

forty paces, and the way on this side, which is one thousand seven hundred and sixty one, the total will amount to four thousand three hundred and thirty-six paces. This fine and pompous alley abuts (as we have hinted before) on his majesty's great garden, where there is a magnificent building, painted like the rest without, and decorated with festoons of foliage and flowers. The entrance into the garden is exceedingly pleasant; the middle walk is embellished with a fine canal, which has a sloping fall, and jets of water. This garden is very spacious, and abounds, not only with fine walks, but with great numbers of fruit-trees, which, tho' they charm the eye, and have a fine effect, might be greatly improved by some other decorations. It is two thousand two hundred and eighty paces long from north to south; and from east to west one thousand six hundred and forty-five broad. It is distinguished by the name of Hafaen-she-riop, that is to say, the garden of a thousand paces. Here I saw several very lofty towers, but composed of earth, which are made use of as dove-coats, the dung whereof is a very proper manure for their melon-beds.

A representation of the Chiaer-baeg. Plate 77.

The reader will find the first representation of the Chiaer-baeg, which was taken from the west, in plate (Numb. 77.) I took the draught of it by the side of the river called Zenderot, or Zajandoroet, which has its fountain-head from four large springs, or wells, called Chert-zefme, *Æ*, that is to say, the source of springs. This place stands in mountains, which are five days to the westward of Ispahan. There are some people who allow it to spring from two several places; the first whereof is only three from this capital city, in a village, called Dambina; and the second, where I have already said it rises; as for the rest, it loses its waters three days to the eastward of Ispahan, in a marsh-ground which is called Gou-honie. In this prospect, or view, every article therein contained is distinguished by figures; for instance, number (1.) directs the eye to the gardens, which run along the fine walk or alley belonging to the Chiaer-baeg; to-

gether with the way, or road, that leads to the bridge. Figure (2.) points out the bridge, called Alla-werdie-Khan. (3.) Shews that particular building, which was erected in the reign of king Sefi, in order to be the residence, or place of abode of a holy Dervis, who had been sent for from (r) India, but refused to come. Figure (4.) directs the reader to the house, where they wash the bodies of such as are dead. (5.) Points out the building that belong to the Chiaerbaeg. (6.) The edifice, called Gem-shilali-Khan. (7.) A dove-house. And (8.) the river called Zenderot.

The second representation, which I have here annexed, is the prospect of the Chiaer-baeg itself, near the bridge, which the reader will find in plate, (Numb. 78.) the letter (A.) points out the king's garden, (B.) the bridge. (C.) The house, where they wash the bodies of their dead. (D.) The river. And (E.) distinguishes the mountains, called Koe-soffa. The other buildings are represented to the right and left, in the very same manner as they stand in the Chiaer-baeg.

The second representation.

Plate No. 78.

The third prospect, which I took was from the bridge, on that side where the garden-gate is; and there stands the tower for collecting the wind for the refreshment of the lodgings in the Summer-season, by virtue of some particular pipes which come out from the roof, and convey the air into the several apartments. There likewise are to be seen the fountains and the walks which lead towards the building, which stands on the left-side of the city gate, and to the right of the wall belonging to the palace-gardens. This view the reader will find in plate (79.)

The third representation.

Plate 79.

The fourth prospect, which was taken from the other end of the bridge, and shews the way, or road, beyond it; together with the building on both sides; as also, the cascade, or water-fall, and the basin, and the way which leads to the end of the building belonging to his majesty's great garden, the reader will find in plate (Numb. 80.)

The fourth representation.

The fifth prospect, which was taken from the other end, and included in plate 81, shews the front of the building belonging

Plate 81. The fifth representation.



1704

longing to this garden, and the canal, the waters whereof roll along by the front-gate.

The bridge called Shiras, likewise, is a fine piece of architecture. It stands about a quarter of a league from the gate of Hafs-en-abset, whose name it bears, and is on the east-side of the city. It is one hundred fourscore and eight paces in length, and in breadth sixteen. It is built with free-stone, and has forty-two niches on each side; some whereof are open and others not. It has twenty arches, under which the river runs, when the waters are high; and on the sides eight other arches, that is, five to the right, and three to the left. The building upon the middle of this bridge is open on each side, and I went through it, in order to get to the bridge above. To the eastward, which is the most commodious situation for making a drawing of this bridge, there is a fine smooth way, which is eighteen feet in breadth, and fronts its arches. From hence one goes down to the river by twelve steps, when the water happens to be low, as for the most part it is during the Summer-season, inasmuch that, horses frequently ford it with all the ease imaginable. This, however, is so much the more surprising, as the waters of this river sometime swell to that degree, and are so rapid, that they throw down, and sweep away whole houses in an instant; as was the unhappy case in the month of April, which was in the year 1699. These steps, which we have just mentioned, are divided into nineteen parts, and separated from each other by a canal, or passage, through which the river runs; some of these divisions, however, have but seven or eight steps; and on this bridge there is a fine building under which people walk, and cross it. That which appears at the foot of the bridge is made use of as a front-gate to the king's garden on the city side: on the other side, there is another, much like the former, concerning which we shall speak farther in a more proper place. The reader will find this bridge represented in plate (82.). The figure (1.) points out the bridge in general. (2.) The garden of Bagenasfer. (3.)

Plate 82.

That of Sadet-abad. And (4.) the river called Zenderoet. There is nothing can possibly strike the eye in a more delightful manner, than the prospect to the eastward taken from a commodious situation on this bridge, and, in a fine evening, the eye is farther entertained with the view of an almost infinite number of persons of both sexes, and of all ranks and degrees in life, taking their refreshing walks on the banks of the river, more especially near the Cascade, and in the charming way, which runs along the arches of the bridge, some on horseback, others on foot; and others again smoking their pipes, and drinking their coffee, which are ready prepared by proper hands for the accommodation of all passengers, who are inclined to indulge themselves in those innocent amusements. The garden of Sadet-abad is situate to the south-east of the city, and extends itself as far as to the westward of this bridge; so that it contains a large extent of ground: in this garden, there is a magnificent haram, that is, a seraglio, built with stone, near the banks of the river; where there is, likewise, another bridge, with a rail, or balustrade, in the room or stead of a parapet. This stands directly over against a garden, and in order to go into it, people are obliged to cross the bridge, which has seventeen arches. There was some time ago a still more magnificent edifice erected a little above the fore-mentioned haram; but it was casually burnt down to the ground in the preceding Summer, whilst his majesty was personally present. On one side of this structure, there is a curious talaek, that is to say, a kind of gallery, or amphitheatre, which lies perfectly open on three sides, where the king gives sometimes audience to his foreign ministers; and behind it there is another grand and pompous building, which is no less than forty paces in length, and three and thirty in breadth; and the talaek, itself, is thirty-six paces by forty-two. There are two steps in front, each of which is two foot and a half in height; in the center there is a marble basin, about eight paces by six. In going somewhat farther, I came to a place, which was raised three foot,

1704

A fine view  
from the  
bridge.A fine  
view.

but within any days of  
much the same, and  
some, on the side of the  
river building from the  
depression; and the  
hill, from space by the  
there are five linear paces  
then, as large as the  
government and others  
are well, and the four  
each with a glass of water  
had greatly increased  
was, I saw two persons  
at the two walls, a  
distance from each other  
Spent much, and the  
could, perhaps a century  
to, however, was, in my  
view, as well as the  
the river, which I got from  
and surrounded with  
and almost of three  
over, however with two  
less, passed much after  
in a variety of colors, to  
usually enough, and to  
that. There things  
representation of them  
the house (A) directly  
lower (B) points out the  
glass (C) the bridge  
river.  
When his majesty's  
current of the river by  
thence, in the canal,  
bridge, called Hafs-en-  
carry the water to one  
Orang  
(1) Tiplan, for p. 129  
(2) Jella, or Jiplan  
(3) Venice (the city)  
is, on the capital of the  
Tunis, and of all the  
house was built north of  
Islam, and was built of  
Laputa, for which from  
Laputa is supplied to  
ground, even the sea is  
having a great number of



1704

but without any steps to it; and another much like it, as I passed along a little farther, on the side of the walls belonging to the building from whence I went into the apartments; and here likewise was a basin, four paces by six. On the walls, there are six several portraits, in proper niches, as large as the life: these are of gentlemen and ladies; four of whom are dressed, after the Spanish mode, and each holds a glass of wine in the right-hand gracefully extended. Here, likewise, I saw two portraits of ladies, painted on the two walls, at but a small distance from each other: one in a modern Spanish dress, and the other in a habit in taste, perhaps a century ago. The painter, however, was, in my opinion, no adept, or artist in his profession. As to the rest, it is all gilt from top to bottom, and embellished with flowers, foliages, and animals of divers kinds. It is, moreover, decorated with twenty columns, or pillars, painted much after the same manner, in a variety of colours, that strike the eye agreeably enough, and have a pretty good effect. I have obliged my readers with a representation of them in plate (83.) where the letter (A.) distinguishes the talael; the letter (B.) points out the haram, or seraglio; (C.) the bridge; and (D.) the river.

Plate 83.

When his majesty is present, he stops the current of the river by dykes, composed of timber, in the canals, or openings of the bridge, called Hassan-Abaet, in order to convey the water to one side of the talael;

at a small distance from which there are a few trivial pleasure-boats, in which, he amuses himself with his concubines in rowing them round about it.

As I happened to be in a lofty Summer-house in the garden, from that commodious situation, I was tempted to draw a prospect of the bridge belonging to the Chiaer-baeg. The reader will find it here annexed in plate (84.) The seraglio is distinguished by the letter (A.) The bridge which stands opposite to the garden on the other side by (B.) That of the Chiaer-baeg itself by (C.) And the river, and another bridge at a greater distance from the city, by the letter (D.) This bridge last mentioned is known by the name of Shareston, and has not only ten arches, but a large edifice on one side of it, which passengers must go through, in order to cross it. The prospect here on all sides is perfectly charming; and the river, which winds here all round about it, is full of rocks.

I have but one observation more to add, and that is; that at the distance of about five days journey to the south-west of the city of Isfahan, there is the source, or fountain-head of the river called Achchieran, to be met with on a lofty flat mountain; the water whereof is the best I ever tasted. This river produces abundance of fish of various kinds; but is most remarkable for its fine trout. Its waters empty themselves into the river (r) Euphrates.

1704

A prospect of the

Plate 84.

### *Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.*

(a) Isfahan, see p. 109. n. m.

(b) Julfa, or Julpha, see p. 26. n. v.

(c) Venice (the city of) east long. 13. lat. 45. 40. the capital of the Dogado, or duchy of Venice, and of all the Venetian dominions, is situate 220 miles north of Rome, 150 east of Milan, and 250 east of Turin, standing in the Lagoon, five miles from the continent; these Lagoons are supposed to have been marshy grounds, which the sea has encroached upon, leaving a great number of little islands, or spots

of earth above the water, on which the fishermen of Padua built their huts; but when the Goths invaded Italy, in the fifth century, several considerable families of Padua and Aquileia retired hither, to secure themselves from an enemy they could not resist, and laid the foundation of this great city upon seventy-two of these little islands, 'tis said, at first; but Venice stands upon a much greater number at this day, and is so happily situated, that no army can approach it by land, nor any hostile fleet by sea; the avenues to these islands being so exceedingly difficult, that they have not thought it

4 C

necessary



1704

necessary to enclose the city with a wall; nor has any power attempted to besiege it since it was founded, which is now twelve hundred years, and upwards. Nothing can appear more beautiful than this town does: as we approach it either from the continent or the sea, we behold this fine city, with its numerous palaces and lofty towers, rising out of the waters, as it were, washed by the flood on every side, nothing intervening to obstruct the sight. The circumference of the city is about six miles, and the inhabitants are computed to be near two hundred thousand. The canals are so numerous, that you may go to any part of the town by water; and there are four hundred and fifty bridges over them; the principal bridge, called the Rialto, lying over the grand canal, composed of one arch, (which makes one third of a circle) ninety foot wide. None of the bridges but this have rails.

There are not quays on the sides of all the canals where people can walk; for sometimes the canal fills the whole street from one side to the other.

The piazza of St. Mark, 'tis said, is not to be paralleled for the magnificence of its buildings; and the houses upon the grand canal are most of them elegant palaces, with marble fronts, adorned with pillars of the several orders of architecture. Their rooms are usually hung with gilt leather, or tapestry, and their bedsteads are of iron, which secures them against vermin, so troublesome in London. But these advantages are attended with some great inconveniences. They have no good cellars for their wines; all their water is bad, but what is brought from the continent; and their canals, in the heat of Summer, create very offensive smells.

The sovereign power is lodged in the nobility. There are about fifteen hundred noblemen at present, who constitute their grand council, or assembly of the states, and are stiled noble Venetians, whose honours descend to their posterity.

The doge, or duke of Venice, is clothed in royal robes, and has the honours of a sovereign prince paid him; but has very little share in the government. As the legislative power is lodged in the great council, there are several other councils to whom the administration of the government is committed; and there is one council, or state-inquisition; which has a power of imprisoning, and putting to death the greatest nobleman, even the doge himself, if they apprehend him to be dangerous to the state, and that without bringing him to an open trial, or giving him an opportunity of making his defence. And tho' the noblemen of the city of Ve-

nice, are vested with very great powers and privileges, yet the ancient nobility on the continent have scarce any; nor are they respected at all at Venice for the titles they bear of marquises, counts, &c. These the Venetians endeavour to depress, and even to extirpate, as the Dutch do those of Holland.

The annual revenues of the Republic are computed to be one million two hundred thousand pounds sterling, and their forces may amount to twenty-four thousand by land. They can equip a fleet of thirty men of war, one hundred galleys, and ten gallies, as 'tis said; but they seldom engage the Turks at sea, without foreign assistance. A noble Venetian is always generalissimo at sea; but they make choice of some foreign general for the land-service, who is attended by several senators, without whose concurrence he can transact nothing; and they chuse to employ Swiss, German, and other foreign troops in their wars, rather than their own subjects; but they desire to be at peace with all their neighbours, if possible; not only because they apprehend themselves weaker, but war hurts their traffic; which is their chief support, tho' it was much greater formerly, when they brought the merchandize of Asia from Alexandria, and distributed it to all the countries in Europe. Still the manufactures and produce of their country furnishes them with merchandize to traffic with. They make wrought silks of various kinds, brocades, gold, and silver stuffs, and damask, as well as velvets. They export wine, oil, fruit, Venetian steel, copper, glass, essences, turpentine, &c. And the goods, which they purchase in Turkey are taken off by the Germans.

As to their religion, it is that of the Roman catholic; but it can scarce be called popery, as the pope has so little authority at Venice. Their church has two patriarchs; the one of Aquileia, and the other of Venice; and these are subject entirely to the temporal power.

The republic of Venice is as arbitrary in ecclesiastical causes, as the states of Holland. The pope is looked upon but as a temporal prince at Venice, and their patriarchs are little more than cyphers. And tho' they have a kind of inquisition, that court can put none of their decrees into execution, without the leave of the state. The Venetians are neither governed by priests, or monks; men of such professions, indeed, may enjoy the diversion of masquerading, during the carnival; they may keep concubines, sing upon the stage, and take what liberties they please, in case they interfere not with the government; and the nuns of Venice have not a much better reputation than their clergy. Their patriarch

1704



1704

was about to restrain their liberties taken in those houses, and began with the nuns of St. Laurence; but they told him, they were noble Venetians, who had made choice of that way of life as most convenient, and would not be subject to his regulations; and the senate interposed, and required the patriarch to desist.

(d) Persia, see p. 64. n. e.

(e) Parthia, a country of Asia, formerly so called, situate almost in the middle of the modern Persia.

(f) Asia, see p. 127. n. x.

(g) Caspian sea, see p. 66. n. g.

(h) Tartary, see p. 18. n. i.

(i) Mongulians, or Moguls, see p. 158. n. i.

(k) Arabia, see p. 203. n. a.

(l) Turkey, see p. 203. n. e.

(m) Armenia, see p. 198. n. g.

(n) Ormus, east long. 56. lat. 27. 30. an island at the entrance of the gulph of Persia, in Asia, situate opposite to Gombroon, on the continent, 240 miles south-east of Schiras, and 370 south-east of Ispahan. This island is thirty miles in circumference; while the Portuguese possessed it, it was the richest magazine in the whole world: they made it the center of trade between Europe and Asia. Here the fine spices, and other merchandizes of the east were laid up, and afterwards distributed to the rest of the world; and here the Portuguese built one of the most elegant cities in all Asia, but some time above one hundred years ago, the Dutch dispossessed the Portuguese of most of their settlements in India; and the Persians, by the assistance of the English, expelled the Portuguese from Ormus; for which the English East India company were allowed great advantages in the Persian trade, and even suffered to share the revenues of the customs, on that side, with the Persians; and till the late civil war, received between three and four thousand pounds per annum, in lieu of them.

As to the island of Ormus itself, it never produced any thing but salt, which grows in a solid crust, two inches deep upon the surface of the earth; and the hills appear, at a distance, as if they were covered with snow; nor is there a drop of fresh water on the island, but what is preserved in cisterns, in the time of the rains. The Portuguese used to fetch their water from

the continent. Upon the demolition of Ormus, the great Sha-Abbas, Sophi of Persia, removed the trade to Gombroon, on the opposite shore, and gave it the name of Bander-Abassi, or the port town of Abbas.

(o) England, see p. 91. n. f.

(p) Spain, (in which Portugal may be comprehended) is bounded by the Bay of Biscay on the north by the Pyrenean mountains, which separate it from France, on the north-east; by the Mediterranean sea on the south-east; and by the Atlantic ocean on the west, lying between ten degrees west, and three degrees east long. and between 36 and 44 degrees of north lat. being about seven hundred miles in length from east to west; and five hundred in breadth from north to south. It is very much incumbered with mountains, of which the Pyrenees that divide France from Spain are the chief. The rest may be looked upon as branches of the Pyrenees under different names, which run through the country from east to west; but they are generally well planted with trees, and between them are a great many fruitful valleys; and there is this conveniency in a variety of mountains and valleys, that the mountains are always cool, when the valleys are excessively hot. The air is esteemed healthful in both, the weather being usually settled, and the heavens serene, unless in the spring and autumn; nor is the sun often obscured by clouds: the winter is so moderate in the valleys, that they have very little occasion for fires nine months in the year; but then, in the months of June, July, and August, the heats are very troublesome in the valleys and sandy plains; and there is a great scarcity of water, most of their springs and rivulets being dried up.

The soil of Spain produces excellent wheat and barley, and they have rich pasture grounds, their wool is the best in Europe, and used by other nations in their finest cloaths. They abound in wine, oil, and silk; and no country produces better oranges, lemons, raisins, citrons, prunes, figs, capers, chestnuts, almonds, and pomegranates. The soil also produces flax, cotton, sugar, and saffron; and they have rich mines of quick-silver, copper, lead, allom, and sulphur; and the iron and steel of Biscay is esteemed the best in Europe: formerly the Spanish mines yielded the Romans more gold and silver, than any other country under their dominion, tho' now these mines are lost or exhausted, or the Spaniards have such plenty of these minerals in their American plantations, that the Spanish mines are not worth

1704



1704

worth the working. They import more silver from them than all the world besides. But with all these advantages, Spain is poor, and but thinly peopled; for which several reasons are assigned; as first, the celibacy of the clergy, and the locking up so many of both sexes in monasteries. 2. The expulsion of so many hundred thousand Moors and Jews, as they did about three hundred years ago. 3. The wars they carried on with most of the powers of Europe, as well as Africa and America, for two hundred years. 4. The draining of their country every year of so many men to supply their American plantations; where none but native Spaniards are admitted to the chief offices and commands. And 5. their poverty may, in a great measure, be ascribed to their pride and indolence; none of them scarce submitting to laborious employments, since the wealth of America flowed in upon them; but their neighbours, the French, attend them in the quality of servants, and even manage their husbandry, and manufactures in several provinces.

The Spaniards also export great part of the produce of their country unwrought, purchasing the silk, woollen, and linnen manufactures of other nations, to supply their plantations; or rather, they act as factors for the French, Italians, English, and Dutch, in the disposal of their manufactures; and at the return of the galleons, pay the proprietors with the treasure they import from the West-Indies.

The king of Spain's dominions are the largest that are possessed by any one monarch; so extensive, that, as one of his predecessors boasted, the sun never sets upon them all. Besides his territories in Europe, he possesses the best part of America; a fine, rich country, the provinces whereof lie contiguous, and extends six thousand miles and upwards in length from north to south. He is sovereign also of those rich, and numerous islands south-east of the coast of China, in Asia, called the Philippines, from whence he imports all the rich merchandize of the east; and in Africa he is master of Ceuta, Oran, and several other places of consequence on that coast.

The king of Spain is an absolute prince; for tho' every province almost was governed by its peculiar laws about three hundred years ago, which could not be repeated or suspended, but by the consent of the states; nor could the king raise taxes without their concurrence; yet they have now lost their privileges; or rather, their great men bartered them away, and sold themselves and their posterity to the crown; and now the cortes, or states, which consist of the nobility, clergy, and representatives of the com-

mons, only meet to confirm, and record the decrees of the court, which will compel their concurrence, if they should refuse it. The crown descends to the eldest son of the king; and if there be no sons, to the females, according to their seniority; and the reigning prince, seems to have a power of devising it, to what branch of the royal family he pleases, if he has no issue; at least the title of the late king Philip, duke of Anjou, depended on the will of his predecessor, and he enjoyed it accordingly, notwithstanding the royal family of France had relinquished their claim to that crown by solemn treaties. The king of Spain is never crowned, like other sovereigns, but the cortes, or states assemble, and recognize his title, at his accession; which is all the ceremony used on his advancement to the throne.

Spain is naturally well defended, being surrounded by the sea, and the Pyrenean mountains; however, the king has of late kept up a standing army of 40,000 men, when he was in full peace, and probably he has three times that number in arms, when he is at war. This prince also has very much improved his navy, being able to fit out a considerable fleet of men of war, tho' he has so much occasion for them in distant parts of the world, that we have scarce ever seen more than thirty men of war in one fleet; but thus much we have seen to our cost, that they fight much better than we expected, and are not that contemptible enemy they were some few years ago. The royal revenue also has been improved since they have had a French prince upon the throne; for so much was disposed of formerly to unnecessary officers, that it is said, not more than five millions per annum sterling came into the king's treasury; but how much the public revenues are advanced, is not easy to calculate.

As to the religion of the country, the Spaniards are the most bigotted papists in Europe; and the inquisition no where exercises its authority with greater tyranny.

(q) Europe, see p. 107. n. *dit*.

(r) India, (proper) see p. 213. n. *d*.

(s) Euphrates, the finest river of Turkey, in Asia, has two sources to the northward of the city of Erzerum, in Turcomania, in 40 degrees odd minutes north lat. which streams unite three days journey below that city, where it will carry small vessels, but the rocky channel renders the navigation difficult. It runs at first from east to west, through the province of Turcomania, or Armenia, but then meeting with

1704

60  
The same Town, and the  
ing Anna from Nader  
consequently, the  
of Africa. It shews  
of Egypt, and  
long point in water

Concerning the King

THE 15th of the  
and the known  
very and before the  
of the (11) Africa. The  
was in law, he rules  
control, in the cities  
and of his; he has  
been, any of these  
As to the lives and edu  
of his subjects, however  
gained, he is disposed  
justice.

It is required, that  
one, who was born in  
is personally guarded  
by his own  
brought up, without the  
advantage of a liberal  
education. He  
is introduced in any of  
importance. He is kept  
in to every occurrence  
of his is abroad. He  
very fully he is compared  
to a dog in a cage, but  
gaining confidence, with  
of his own people, in his  
When he arrives,  
age, a courtier is  
the black eunuchs, to  
by, waiting, and the  
of the Mahometan  
to the ceremony  
his position; the dail  
business, and the prebend  
both in respect and full  
occasional on the way



1704 mount Taurus, turns to the southward, dividing Armenia from Natolia, and continuing its course south-east, divides Syria from Diarbeck, or Assyria. It afterwards passes through the province of Eyraca Arabic, or Chaldaea, and having united its waters with the Tigris, runs

on south-east to the city of Bassora, fifty miles below which it falls into the gulph of Persia. The country, now called Diarbeck, is almost encompassed by the rivers Euphrates and Tigris, and was the ancient Mesopotamia, or Padan-Aram.

1704

CHAP. XLI.

*Concerning the Kings of Persia, their State-Affairs, and the respective Officers of the Crown.*

The Persian government is despotic.

The education of the Persian kings.

THERE is no monarchy, throughout the known world, more arbitrary and despotic than that of the kingdom of (a) Persia. The king's will alone is his law; he rules perfectly without controul, in all articles, except in matters of faith; for he durst not alter, it seems, any of their established doctrines. As to the lives and estates, indeed, of any of his subjects, however dignified or distinguished, he can dispose of them at his pleasure.

It is requisite, that the king shall be one, who was born in the Seraglio, which is perpetually guarded by black eunuchs, tho' by white ones without: he is brought up, without the least benefit or advantage of a liberal education, within the four walls of it, in an absolute state of confinement. He neither knows, nor is instructed in any affairs of moment, or importance. He is kept a perfect stranger to every occurrence of weight, either at home or abroad. He may, in short, very justly be compared to a plant, that hangs its drooping head, and is in a languishing condition, without one single ray of the sun to give it life or vigour.

When he arrives, indeed, at a certain age, a court-tutor is assigned him out of the black eunuchs, to instruct him in reading, writing, and the grounds and principles of the Mahomedan religion: he is taught all the ceremonies that relate to his purification; the daily practice of ablations; and the method he is to observe both in prayer and fasting. 'Tis a duty incumbent on this tutor of his, to instil

into him a reverential awe of their great prophet, and his twelve Imans, or apostles, to fill his head with all their miraculous operations, and to inspire him with an inveterate aversion to the Mahomedan Turks, and to the great Mogul, whom the Persians not only detest, but load with the most bitter curses, imagining that such imprecations are meritorious, and looked upon, in the eye of heaven, as an acceptable service. This prince, however, is industriously kept ignorant of what is transacting either in his own, or foreign courts; and so far is he from being encouraged in the study or practice of any one single virtue; that, in order to prevent him from making any useful reflections, or any improvement in his mind, he is left from his infancy, in the hands of the fair sex, and indulged, in short, in every sensual enjoyment his heart can wish. His tutor, not contented with thus shamefully gratifying him in all his vicious inclinations, and corrupting his morals, countenances and encourages him moreover, in the odious practice of chewing opium, and drinking what they call Koekenar, that is, the pernicious juice of poppeys, into which is infused amber, and such other ingredients, as have a natural tendency to the provocation of lust; and tho' enchanting and delusive for a time, sink him at length into an absolute and perfect state of insensibility. This, in short, is his whole course of life, be it longer or shorter, to the day of his father's decease. When that revolution happens, indeed, he is instantly removed from the Haram or seraglio,



1704

glio, and seated on the throne, to which he is duly entituled, either by succession or by will. Upon his first accession, the whole Persian court attend him, and fall prostrate before his feet, and shew him every testimony of the most abject submission. Surprised thus, all on a sudden, at this their unexpected homage and veneration, he views this new scene of pomp and grandeur, like one in a dream; and is perfectly incapable at first of comprehending the whole drift and design of it: however, by degrees, it becomes familiar and habitual to him; at last, he begins to reflect, and form some adequate idea of his high station. He now sees, indeed, that all around him are studious who shall please him most; who shall procure the largest share in his favour and affection; but still no one attempts to give him the least good counsel or advice. And so far is every artful courtier from endeavouring to open his eyes, that he wilfully keeps him in ignorance, and studies only the promotion of his own private interest; and when his Attamaed-doulet, that is to say, his Prime-minister, has any peculiar favour to solicit at his hands, he always takes care to insinuate, that his request is perfectly disinterested, and that he has nothing in his view but the good of the public. This, however, he never attempts, till he finds his majesty in a perfect good humour, and indulging himself with a pipe of tobacco. And, in order to succeed in his petition, either for himself or his friends, he never fails of practising the art of flattery, and styling himself his majesty's most loyal slave and victim. If the king, however, happens to converse with him about his state-affairs, or any business of real moment or concern, the artful courtier turns a deaf ear to all he says, and endeavours to divert the discourse, by proposing something widely distant from it, and what he conceives will strike his majesty's humour and inclination best: and when this minister finds his majesty at any time more inquisitive than ordinary, he takes particular care to furnish him with some delicious viands or another; or to send a band of the best singers and dancers forthwith

to amuse him, and divert his thoughts; great numbers of both kinds being retained at court for that particular purpose. If neither of these answer the ends proposed, he exhibits a bull, or ram-baiting, or, in short, some diversion or another, that shall strike his fancy. When these sports, or pastimes are thus exhibited, his majesty views them from the Taliel, which is over the gate, called the Ali-kapie, which fronts the great square that belongs to the palace. Now any amusements of this nature are, for the most part, more engaging and acceptable to a young prince, who is illiterate, and unexperienced, than concerns of state, which are often very intricate and abstruse. At last, when he finds these pastimes flat and insipid, he withdraws into the seraglio, in quest of new pleasures; and in case any affairs of importance have been proposed to be taken into consideration, they are of course postponed to another time: insomuch that, this prime-minister of his, is under an indispensable obligation, to attend twice a-day at least, at the door of his majesty's apartments, in order to embrace every favourable opportunity of opening matters to him, or rather of artfully, or casually, as it were, drawing his prince into the consideration of such affairs as are most requisite to be dispatched; and this must be done too, at such times only as he is no ways disconcerted, but in a perfect good humour; for was the minister to act otherwise, and abruptly to make his applications about business, it is very possible, nay, highly probable, that he would incur his majesty's heavy displeasure, notwithstanding the happiness and welfare of the whole empire then lay at stake, and depended on an immediate consultation. For which reason, he very seldom, if ever, fails of attending his majesty, when he seems inclinable to go abroad: for at such excursions, he sometimes finds his master inclinable to listen to any reasonable proposition. In all other respects, there is no interruption known to his pleasures; the greatest beauties that are to be met with throughout (b) all Georgia and (c) Armenia are selected for his service, and conducted into the seraglio. And when his majesty

makes

1704



1704

makes any of those excursions, perhaps for some leagues round about, he turns out all the male-inhabitants out of their houses, wherever he comes, that he may have a free and uninterrupted liberty, either of hunting, fishing, or amusing himself, as his inclination leads him, with their wives or daughters. The present regent wholly addict himself to drinking, and indulges himself so far therein, that he will sometimes sit whole days and nights successively over his bottle. And in this manner these Persian princes dream away, as it were, the first years of their reign, without the least regard either to the prosperity of the state, or their own honour; and the grantees belonging to the court embrace every opportunity that offers, with the utmost eagerness, by that means, to enrich themselves, and advance their friends and relations, through their interest, to the most important employments.

Their insatiable thirst after riches.

The governors of the respective provinces follow the example of the grantees, and enrich themselves by all kinds of rapine and oppression; nay, they are such extortioners, that they will sometimes make bold with the revenues of the crown itself; and as they suffer the grantees to partake privately of their plunder, they are connived at by those who are the favourites at court, and his majesty's more immediate attendants. And those illegal and clandestine practices are constantly carried on with impunity, till the prince on the throne makes choice of some able and experienced minister, in order to stop the torrent of such violent proceedings, and make a reformation. Upon such a prudent choice, he begins to open his eyes, and take a survey of his state-affairs (as far as nature has been indulgent, and blest him with discretion) but through the force of ill habits, he frequently relapses into his original course of indolence, ease, and insensibility, and indulges his former vicious inclinations without controul. At length, indeed, by that time he is advanced to the age of between thirty and forty, he seems to rouse out of his long lethargy, to shew some tokens of reflections, to employ his thoughts on the most weighty concerns

of the empire, and to entertain an idea of their importance, in proportion to that degree of judgment with which providence has thought fit to invest him. In consequence of such serious considerations, he applies his mind to the immediate reformation of such practices as he overlooked in his younger years, but at present is convinced were shamefully oppressive, and provides for the health and prosperity of his subjects. It too often happens, however, that such prudent measures are taken too late; death intervenes, and puts a stop to all his paternal and indulgent intentions; and the state sinks once more into its pristine state of misery, and groans under the weight of tyranny and oppression.

The prime-minister of this powerful and expensive empire is distinguished, (as we have already observed) by the name, or title of *Atmehed-doulet*, that is to say, the protector, or the head, and principal supporter of the whole empire. He is called, moreover, the *Visier-azem*, that is to say, the kingdom's high-steward; since he supports and upholds almost the whole weight of the kingdom.

This minister, who has always more business on his hands than is in his power to execute, is exposed to a thousand very shocking and unhappy accidents, and is obliged to be perpetually on his watch, lest he should be supplanted by those who are his competitors, and look with an eye of envy on his happy situation; or lest he should fall into disgrace, and lose that good opinion which his master had conceived of his conduct. Accordingly, he makes it his principal, or chief study to please him, and get the ascendancy over his mind, and to avoid all such words or actions as may give him the least umbrage of jealousy or suspicion. 'Tis, with this view, that he is forever guilty of the most fulsome flattery, extolling his master, not only above all other earthly princes, but rendering him the just object of his subjects adoration: he artfully, in short, throws a thick veil over his eyes, in order to keep him in perfect ignorance and blindness, and render him thereby altogether insensible of the ill state and ruinous condition of his national affairs. He

takes

1704

The prime-minister is distinguished by the name, or title of *Atmehed-doulet*.



1704 takes particular care to conceal from him all such occurrences as are disagreeable, and disadvantageous to him and his subjects, or at least, to mention them in the most tender manner; and, on the other hand, to aggrandize, and expatiate on every piece of news that has the least tendency towards the decrease of his glory, and the suppression of his enemies. By these parasitical proceedings it is, that this prime-minister is enabled to aggrandize his family, and advance his favourite friends to the highest offices, or employments in the kingdom. Nor does this artful politician ever fail of finding out ways and means for the ruin and disgrace of some, as well as the promotion of others; and this is no difficult task at all, since there is not a grandee, possessed of an high and lucrative post, but is guilty himself, in some degree, of clandestine practices. He has, moreover, a thousand favourable opportunities of serving those who are attached to his interest, and who make him privately a partaker in the profits of the outrages which they commit. He likewise can send them, when he sees proper, royal robes, by the officers of his household, who never fail of receiving some rich present on those public occasions, which serve them instead of wages, or at least, greatly to advance such salaries as are but low. The governors, not only of provinces, but of cities likewise, are very solicitous of procuring such tokens of public honour, tho' they purchase them sometimes at a high rate, by private fees; since, by that means, those who are under their jurisdiction, are over-awed, and durst not complain of their oppressive measures, when they find they are such favourites at court, as to obtain such public badges of honour and respect. It is after this manner, that their Attamaed-doulet, or prime-minister, is in perpetual agitation for the maintenance and support of himself and his family; to pull down some, and raise up others, according as he is influenced by love and affection; or by aversion, or contempt. However, notwithstanding all his artifices and precautions, he is seldom, if ever, easy in his mind, (as we have hinted before) since he

cannot be perfectly well assured of the fidelity of any one person whomsoever, even of those who have the strongest ties of gratitude to be true to their trust: nay, these last too often prove the foremost to hasten his ruin and destruction; especially, when they find his situation is precarious, and he has met with some preceding shock.

Infidelity and ingratitude are two vices that have gained such an ascendancy over all the Persians in general, that even children will presume to cut off the ears, or deface their very parents; nay, they will stretch their inhumanity and impiety to so high a pitch, that they will murder them, without the least remorse, in case they have but his majesty's orders for that purpose: and that with no other view, than being substituted in the posts of which they were possessed; an act of barbarity, that is too often, and too shamefully practised by those impious wretches. In short, as the fortune of his prime-minister is entirely dependant on the humour, or caprice of his fickle master, who obeys the dictates of his passions, without the least controul, however inconsistent with right or reason, he is frequently a perfect stranger to his own downfall, tho' it's actually carried into execution the very next day. Tho' this prime-minister, durante bene placito, is the greatest subject in the whole empire; yet, at the same time (as we have hinted before) he is absolutely one of the most abject slaves in life; he has not one moment's peace of mind, and is ever under the most fearful apprehensions of losing his royal master's grace and favour: 'tis he that must answer for all the calamities and troubles that attend the state; and it is not in his power to stop the mouths of all mal-contented.

The officer, next in dignity to this Attamaed-doulet, or prime-minister, is distinguished by the title of Koertse-bashe; that is, general of the curds, who are a body of troops, selected from among the natives of (d) Turcomania, or original Tartars, an ancient race of intrepid soldiers, who live under tents in the country by themselves, and are all shepherds by profession: that tho' these troops are dispersed

all

1704

The Infidelity and ingratitude of the Persians.

The head, or chief of the curds.

all the Persians; yet they are not so much as to be the weapons of war, as the Persians are.

The next grand officer is the Aga, that is to say, the Governor, and who is appointed with some authority, and is as a viceroy, who is called the Aga. The next is the

The Tashgah-bashe, or the head of the body of the Aga, who is appointed out of the Aga's household, and is as a viceroy, who is called the Tashgah-bashe. The next is the

The Tashgah-bashe, who is appointed out of the Aga's household, and is as a viceroy, who is called the Tashgah-bashe. The next is the

The Tashgah-bashe, who is appointed out of the Aga's household, and is as a viceroy, who is called the Tashgah-bashe. The next is the

The Tashgah-bashe, who is appointed out of the Aga's household, and is as a viceroy, who is called the Tashgah-bashe. The next is the

The Tashgah-bashe, who is appointed out of the Aga's household, and is as a viceroy, who is called the Tashgah-bashe. The next is the

The Tashgah-bashe, who is appointed out of the Aga's household, and is as a viceroy, who is called the Tashgah-bashe. The next is the

The Tashgah-bashe, who is appointed out of the Aga's household, and is as a viceroy, who is called the Tashgah-bashe. The next is the

The Tashgah-bashe, who is appointed out of the Aga's household, and is as a viceroy, who is called the Tashgah-bashe. The next is the

The Tashgah-bashe, who is appointed out of the Aga's household, and is as a viceroy, who is called the Tashgah-bashe. The next is the



1704

The head, or chief of the slaves.

The head, or chief of the musketeers.

Their great master of the household.

Their great hunt-man.

Their chief master of the horse.

Their head, or chief of the council of justice.

Master of the mints and treasure.

all over Persia; yet they are mingled with no others: they are all horsemen, and their weapons of war are no more than bows and arrows.

The next grand officer is their Coular-Agasi, that is to say, the general of the Georgians, and other white slaves, who are armed with bows and arrows, like the former; and are an order of soldiers, which was first erected by Abbas the Great. The rest in order are as follow.

The Tufingchi-agasi, that is to say, the general of the body of musqueteers, who are collected out of the country from amongst the strongest, and the most laborious of the common people. Tho' these serve in the field on horseback; yet they fight on foot. This order of soldiery was likewise established by Abbas the Great.

These three generals, in former times, were under the command of one whom they call their Sepha-falaer, that is to say, their stated, or fixed chief; now, however, they are under a Serser only, that is, a chief, or commander, appointed for any one particular expedition; after which he is discharged, and then rewarded for his extra-service.

Their next officer in rank is their Nazir, as they call him, that is to say, the head steward, or chief, not only of his majesty's household, but of those likewise, to whose care the king's guests are particularly entrusted.

The next in order after the Nazir, is the Miershichaer-bashe, as they call him, that is to say, their grand, or chief hunt-man.

The next to him is their Mirachor-bashe, that is to say, the chief master of the horse.

Among the principal officers of state must be reckoned, likewise, those who are called the Divan-beggi, that is to say, the head, or chief of the council of justice, who passes final sentence, in all causes, both criminal and civil, except in such petty causes as are but of small consequence, which are referred to the officer, called the Deroga, of the place where-ever they happen.

Their next officer in rank is called the

the Muslashe-elmenalik, that is to say, master of the accounts and finances, where there is an office erected for the registering, not only of the Persian troops, but of some certain officers likewise, and such governments as the Begler-begs, the Khans, and Sultans, are in possession of for the maintenance and support of their dignity and household; but as a recompence, or compensation for such grants, they are under an indispensable obligation, to keep up a certain number of troops on foot; and to pay such a certain sum as should be annually imposed upon them: the prince, moreover, reserves one part of these royalties to his own use.

The next officer in rank is their Muslofie, as they call him, that is to say, their chief of the chambers of accounts of such lordships as particularly belong to the king, and those revenues which are peculiarly appropriated for the maintenance and support of the court.

Their next officer is called the Vackanuviez, that is to say, the register of all public events, who keeps a diary of whatever occurs throughout the kingdom, and in all the provinces round about.

Their heads, or principals of his majesty's physicians, by them called the Numeshumbashe, are still in great repute with their master; these, indeed, in former times, had, in a great measure, the regulation of the prince's conduct, but at present their authority is trivial, and they have very little, if any influence over him.

All these officers have a right and title to sit in the royal palace. The head, or principal of those who lay no claim to that particular privilege, is called their Shik-agasi-bashe, that is to say, the principal, or chief of the porters, or grand master of the court. 'Tis this officer's peculiar province to inspect the palace, and regulate the rank and order of his majesty's household. This grand inspector carries in his hand for the generality a golden staff, embellished with diamonds, and watches every motion, as it were, of his majesty, in order to know in a moment his will and pleasure. Wherever he is personally present, there he executes the king's orders

1704

Their chief, or head of the chambers of accounts.

Their register of events.

Their heads or principals of the king's physicians.

Their head, or principal of the porters.



1704

orders himself; but where matters are to be executed at any considerable distance, in that case, he employs his Yafools, as they call them, that is to say, his messengers, or ushers. This officer likewise acts in the capacity of a master of the ceremonies; for 'tis he who conducts all foreign ministers into his majesty's presence, by supporting them under the arm, and afterwards conducting them to the place appointed for their sitting, provided they are to be honoured with that act of indulgence.

Their  
chamberlain.

Neither this officer, nor the chamberlain, called their Megter, has the right or privilege of sitting in the palace. This chamberlain wears a purse by his side, in which he has several fine handkerchiefs, a watch, divers antidotes, and a great variety of soporiferous herbs for his majesty's use. The cloaths which the king for the generality puts on is entrusted to the care of this officer, who attends him when he dresses; and seldom any one, that is not an eunuch, is admitted to this post; and the reason is, because he frequently attends his majesty when he goes to the Haram, or seraglio, which reflects a singular honour upon him, and commands respect.

Their Beglerbegs, or grandees.

We must not here omit their Beglerbegs, as they are called, that is to say, their grandees, or lords of lords, each of whom is a governor of some great province, or country belonging to the state. These superior lords have, for the generality, their Khans and Soltans under them, and sink the major part of the revenues of their respective provinces, reserving only a handsome present, or compliment to be made his majesty at proper seasons. They are indispensably obliged, however, as we have hinted before, to support and maintain a certain number of troops for his majesty's service on all occasions. Tho' they owe, indeed, an allegiance to his majesty; yet, in all other respects, they act as petty sovereigns in their respective provinces. Of these governors, there are about fifteen or sixteen in different parts of the empire; and so considerable is one of these posts, that the person who stands possessed of it, is invested with an

order in the royal palace before the grand huntsman, and immediately after the chief of the musqueteers on the one hand, and the grand-master of the household on the other.

Tho' the Khans and Soltans, who (as we have already observed) are subaltern officers to these grandees; yet they are governors of provinces as well as they; and there is but a trivial difference between the two former. They take care likewise to sink the revenues of the land that lies in their particular districts or departments. These inferior governors, like the Beglerbegs, are obliged to maintain a certain number of troops for his majesty's service, when required; and some of them, indeed, are dependent on their Beglerbegs, or grandees.

Those officers, who are called Dervafes, are the governors of such particular countries, as are distinguished by the title of his majesty's domain, which are appropriated for the maintenance and support, not only of the court, but of some certain troops likewise; and these have the care and inspection of the annual revenues, or produce arising from those countries. They have, moreover, certain salaries allowed them out of those revenues; and they make presents, and pay their compliments occasionally to his majesty like the rest.

Besides these grandees, and inferior governors of provinces, there are governors likewise of particular forts and cities, who are dignified and distinguished by the name and title of Derogas. Those who are invested with this post in large cities, such, for instance, as Ispahan, or any other of equal note, have much the same authority and trust as those who in France bear the title and character of Lieutenants civil et criminel. When these carry their office into execution, they are absolutely impartial; for they shew no more respect to one than another, but punish all delinquents alike, and keep the fines for their own use.

Their officers, called the Calentsars, are the chiefs, or heads, of the populace, that is to say, the principal magistrates in little towns and country villages; their authority,

1704

Their  
Khans and  
Soltans.

Their Der-  
vafes.

Their Der-  
ogas.

Their Cal-  
entsars, or  
heads of the  
populace.



1704 authority, however, extends over none but the common-people in cities, and more particularly at Ispahan. These magistrates, properly speaking, are protectors of the populace, and plead their causes before their courts of justice. 'Tis the peculiar province of these officers to settle and adjust the taxations, both ordinary and extraordinary, on the common-people; in the execution of which, they take into their serious consideration the abilities, or poverty of the respective inhabitants, and remit the money, so raised, to the proper officers appointed to receive those public collections.

Their Ked-chodas.

These magistrates have certain officers under them, called their Ked-chodas, that is to say, masters of parishes, or the inferior districts, who act according to the instructions they receive; and in much the same manner as their chiefs do, they protect those who live under their care and inspection, and collect the money due from them according to their respective taxations.

The principals, or magistrates of small villages, exercise the very same power and authority as the Calentaars, in such as are larger, and in towns. These officers are called Ragies, that is to say, regents.

Their Shabanders.

These officers, who are called Shabanders, that is to say, collectors of the duties on all kinds of merchandize or commodities in their sea-ports, are magistrates of more consequence and importance than those last above-mentioned. Each of these keeps an exact account of what he collects, and sends a copy of it to the Mustofy-cassa, his inspector, who enters it immediately into his public register; and the sums, so respectively received, are appropriated for the court's subsistence. These collectors, or what we may with propriety call them, Custom-house officers, have stated salaries, but no part of the monies they collect. Formerly their office was annual; but the duties at present are farmed out for seven or eight years together, and sometimes for a longer term; and from hence they levy no less than twenty four thousand Tomans per annum, that is at least a million of French livres, and

sometimes they advance it to twenty-eight.

The next officer of moment is their Meliktuziziac, that is to say, the chief of their merchants, who bears that title, by virtue of his passing a final determination on all such mercantile proceedings as are brought before him; this officer has, likewise, the inspection, not only of the weavers, but of the taylors belonging to the court. Tho' he acts, indeed, under the Nazir; yet the provision of the cloathing, and such other articles of the like nature, as are for his majesty's own use, are all entrusted to his care. He is supervisor also, or inspector-general of all those who are empowered to dispose of the silks, and other manufactures which belong to his majesty in foreign parts.

After this head, or chief of the merchants, we must introduce their Raachdaers, as they are called, that is to say, the surveyors of their roads. These officers farm a certain compass of their highways, and, by virtue of such purchase, receive a certain duty on all such wares or commodities, as pass within their particular districts, of which they keep an exact account; and these duties are entitled their Raangdaric. These farmers are under an indispensable obligation, at all proper times, not only to repair their roads, or high-ways, but to secure all passengers, who pay them toll, from being robbed, and to make good all such effects as they shall be casually plundered of within their respective divisions, according to their valuation, or prime cost, in case the delinquents cannot, within a reasonable time, be brought to justice. However, in such cases, where a discovery of effects lost is duly made, they deliver only two thirds thereof to the proprietor, and reserve the remainder for their own use. These officers are, likewise, for the reasons above-mentioned, bound to maintain and provide, at their own expence, a certain number of watchmen, properly armed, to patrol in the night-time, and in times of danger, in order to prevent all insults and disorders, and, if possible, to detect all free-booters, and bring them to condign punishment.

1704

Their Meliktuziziac.

Their Raachdaers.



1704

Their Koetewael, or  
governor  
of their ca-  
stles.

punishment. This regulation, it must be allowed, is a very important one; but woe-ful experience demonstrates, that, through the neglect thereof, the traveller is too often utterly ruined and undone.

Besides all the officers above-mentioned, the Persians have certain governors in their great castles, and other fortresses throughout the kingdom, as for instance, the governor of (e) Ormus, Candelaer, &c. who are called in their language, Koetewael. The power, however, of these officers is for the most part limited; and they have their dependence on those, who are governors of the particular province, wherein such castles are respectively erected.

The term Koetewael, signifies the head, or chief of the watch, who patrols the streets, accompanied by his subaltern officers, during the night-time, in order to prevent all clandestine proceedings, robberies, or murders, and to secure those, who are actual delinquents, or suspected to be parties concerned. The officer, at Ispahan, and several other cities in Persia, is distinguished by the name of Aghdaas.

Their Muktesib, or in-  
specter of  
the mar-  
kets.

Their next officer of note is by them called their Muktesib, that is to say, the inspector-general of their markets; whose peculiar province it is to regulate the price of their provisions, or, indeed, of any other commodities or wares, brought thither in order to be exposed to public sale. 'Tis his business likewise to examine and pry into their weights and measures, and to punish those who, by clandestine practices defraud their neighbours by making use of false ones, and such as are under the standard.—No sooner has this officer settled and adjusted the price of provisions, and other commodities, for the day, (for this is a daily duty incumbent on him) he carries an exact inventory, or catalogue of them, sealed up, to the palace-gate; and there the ordinary, or common accounts are entirely regulated according to his valuation.

Their Mehemander-  
bashi, or  
chief-keeper  
of the  
king.

Nor must we forget to make mention of another officer, called their Mehemander-bashi, that is to say, the chief, or principal of those to whose care and conduct his majesty's guests are from time to time en-

trusted. This officer, with propriety enough, may be stiled a master of the ceremonies; for it is his duty and province to go out of town, in order to receive such as act in the capacity of ambassadors from foreign princes or as envoys; or, in short, as strangers of quality, and distinction. He is to take particular care that they are treated with due respect, and want for no necessities that they can in reason be supplied with. As to other matters, it is left to the discretion of foreign ministers, whether Christian or Mahomeddan, without favour or affection, (since both are treated at the Persian court on an equal footing) to send for whatever they stand in immediate need of, to his majesty's store-house; or to receive (as they judge most convenient) the value thereof in ready money once a week. 'Tis this officer's business likewise to carry their messages to his majesty, and his ministers, and to usher them into his majesty's presence, whenever they are admitted to have an audience. He is, moreover, obliged to pay them visits from time to time, to converse with them, and sift out of them, as far as he can within the bounds of decency, the principal aim and intention of their arrival; and for what reasons they take up their residence at court; in order to enable him to give as satisfactory account as he can to his majesty's ministers of state: but when there happens to come an ambassador either from the (f) Port, or from the king of Indostan, or any other Mahomeddan powers of illustrious birth and character, they send likewise one of the grantees belonging to the kingdom, to wait on them, as a Maître d'hotel is sent in (g) France, that is to say, a Guest-keeper; and such grandee is to acquit himself of all the functions, or duties of the Mehemander-bashi, with respect to other ministers.

Besides all the preceding officers, there is another of no small consideration, called their Mammar-bashi, that is to say, the chief, or principal surveyor of his majesty's buildings. 'Tis the peculiar province of this officer, to fix a price upon most of such houses as are exposed to public sale, in order to prevent (as much as possible)

1704

not possible, those disputes  
higher or their ex-  
any houses or  
right of making  
the party who was  
less exposed upon  
it a disadvantage by the  
door, that the sale was  
made according to the  
being continued by the  
long, when the price of  
new born lord and subject  
monarchy or hereditary.  
We shall now pro-  
ceed account of their  
payments, or gifts  
their church; and the  
equal general officer  
that is to say, their high  
bishop, who is then  
who is the only  
rank and advantages  
merely valuable effects  
to time considered to  
In former times, indeed  
ecclesiastical part, was  
not consisted of one man  
King Solomon, divided  
two Zeldes, the one  
and management of all  
or belonged to the  
king of Persia. This  
governed by the rule of  
and the other is called  
Zeldi, who has the  
which other branches  
others from the last  
process persons. Each  
have a separate court,  
judges in civil causes,  
blames or discharges of  
These two, moreover, be-  
long to the church  
especially of those who  
led the Eski-el-shah  
well, that is to say,  
ecclesiastical, and such  
as like to have been  
That we possess or employ  
houses, and immunities  
happens, that they are  
in any respect, to



1704 possible) those disputes that frequently happen on those occasions, or to hinder any frivolous or evasive pretences to a right of making void the contract, as if the party who was the purchaser, had been imposed upon, and had been taken at a disadvantage by the vender, and, in short, that the sale was collusive, and not made according to form; such practices being countenanced by the Mahommedan laws, when the price of the premises has not been settled and adjusted by this superintendant or surveyor.

We shall now proceed to give a succinct account of their ecclesiastical employment, or posts of preferment in their church; and their first and principal spiritual officer is their Zedder, that is to say, their high-priest, or archbishop; who is their chief or head likewise of all those who jointly reap the benefits and advantages arising from the immensely valuable effects that are from time to time consecrated to the public worship. In former times, indeed, this high ecclesiastical post, was entrusted to the care and conduct of one man only, but the late king Suliman divided it, and appointed two Zedders; the one, who has the charge and management of all such legacies as are bequeathed to the priests, by the kings of Persia. This officer is distinguished by the title of the Zedder-chus; and the other is called the Zedder-memalik, who has the trust and disposal of all such other bequests as become due to them from the last wills or testaments of private persons. Each of these Pontiffs have a separate court, where they act as judges in civil causes, according to the institutes or directions of their canon law. These two, moreover, have the disposal of most of the church benefices; but more especially of those two other officers, called the Siech-el-ilaan, and Kashe-mute-welli, that is to say, inspector of the mosques, and such burying-grounds and the like as have been consecrated in form. These are posts or employs of such dignity, honour, and importance, that whenever it happens, that they are personally present at any royal assembly, they take the upper-

hand of the Attamaed-doulet himself. The Siech-el-ilaan and his brother-officer differ but little from each other with respect to the monies entrusted to their care; but the former is, notwithstanding the others superior. In all other respects, their functions are nearly the same, and they are mutually a check one upon the other. All contracts between private persons must pass thro' their courts, and all mandates, and other writings of weight and importance must have their respective sanction.

Next to these two pontiffs is their Muzified, as they call him, that is to say, their legislator, who is superior to all other ecclesiastics, not only because he is more learned; but because he is looked upon with the highest veneration and esteem by virtue of his office. He is their spiritual guide; it is he who settles and adjusts every important article of their faith; it is his peculiar province to determine the true and genuine sense of such parts of the Alcoran, as appear intricate and abstruse; and what they call the Hedges of their Prophets and Imams. The Persians carry, in short, their veneration for him to that pitch, that their most learned divines acknowledge, without the least hesitation, that the Mahommedan government of right belongs to him, and that his majesty himself, as absolute as he is, ought to be deemed no other than the executor of his most sacred orders, by virtue of which delegated power alone it is, that he wields the sword of justice, by which he is indispensably bound to chastize, and punish all such as are refractory and disloyal, notwithstanding he is, in reality, invested with no power of his own. The reason on which they found this article of their faith is this; namely, that all true believers are directed by the divine will, which is revealed to their Muzifeid, during the absence of a prophet, or an Imam. It is impossible, according to their creed, for the Almighty to reveal his most sacred will to temporal princes, whose hearts are so far engaged, and lost, as it were, in the enchanting pleasures of this world, that their thoughts are fixed on nothing

4 F but

1704

Their Muzified, or legislator.



1704

The general  
hypocrisy  
of the  
clergy.

but the gratification of their sensual appetites, and consequently, are altogether regardless, and unconcerned about the salvation of their precious and immortal souls; that princes, in a word, who thus indulge themselves, are so far from having any knowledge of the Deity, that they are strangers to themselves, and are perfectly negligent and remiss in regard to such things as appertain to eternal life.

The high opinion which the laity in general have entertained of the sanctity and profound wisdom of the clergy, is the principal reason, why all of them, without exception, are the greatest hypocrites in the world; for they make it their whole study to keep the vulgar in awe and error, and to establish (as much as in them lies) that profound veneration, which through their ignorance, they conceive and profess for them: inasmuch, that notwithstanding they are influenced by the most boundless ambition; yet in the presence of a layman, they are absolute dissemblers, affect to be seemingly mortified, and regardless of all sublunary enjoyments; they humble themselves, and act like holy hermits, with no other view than to be exalted; and would fain be thought to despise those worldly trifles, which, with the utmost eagerness they pursue. In a word, by their outward austerity and deportment, any one might be deceived, and apt to imagine, that they aspired at nothing in this life, and that their hearts were fixed on the ineffable joys of that which is to come. These artful priests, when at home, will gather a considerable number of young people together, in order to instruct them in the things that relate to another world, and to point out to them the sure path that leads to paradise; and in order to gain a stronger ascendancy over them, and to convince them that their warmth and zeal for their spiritual welfare is entirely sincere, unaffected, and without the least self-interested view, they treat these poor deluded children, of both sexes, with a more than ordinary tenderness and paternal affection; they connive at their little irregularities, are never angry with them, or give a check to the violence of their passions; are very grave,

and make use of but few words; and, in short, act with so much precaution, with such an air of profound wisdom and sanctity of manners, as is perfectly rapturous and engaging.

As to their habits, they are white, and made of camels or goats hair; they wear likewise large turbans, which make them look low, and meagre: they affect an extraordinary simplicity, when they appear in public, and have no other attendant than one servant, who walks with a book in his hand behind them; they move, for the most part, slowly along and keep their eyes fixed, as it were, upon the ground, as persons in deep contemplation. They frequent the mosques almost daily, where they make long prayers, with a seeming fervency of devotion, and frequently withdraw into a private corner, where they catechize the younger sort; and sometimes they deliver very pathetic discourses to a crowded audience. By such sanctified stratagems as these, it is, that they engage the hearts of the unthinking populace, and strike even the king himself with such a terror, that he would, on no account, be guilty of practising the least innovations in their religion, for fear of incurring the displeasure and vengeance of these sanctified dissemblers. Many instances of this kind are easily to be produced; nor can there be a more convincing proof of that veneration which the laity have for them than this; namely, when they happen to be present at any royal assembly, they have the privilege of sitting but at a very small distance from the gentlemen of the sword.

The deportment of the nobility, who reside at court, is widely distant, it is true, from theirs; they are extremely courteous and complaisant; and affect a freedom, which is very engaging; but then they are as errand hypocrites as the former; for there is not the least sincerity in all their discourse; their tongues belie their hearts. They devote themselves entirely to their pleasures; their habits, their equipages, are all very grand and magnificent; and so excessively fond are they of enriching themselves, that without a very valuable bribe, or present, no favour whatsoever can

1704

Their habits.

The hypocrisy  
of their conversation.

be proceed from them.  
peils, which they are  
enough. The  
any however in the  
a state from whom the  
any favour; and in ca  
competitors, who rule  
their solicitations they  
and when it happens the  
interested, they treat the  
them with the utmost  
leave every opportunity  
opportunity, and calling  
good qualities of which  
to be possessed; and,  
shows contempt, till the  
least some desires, the  
one and destroy them  
hand, they are guilty of  
history towards such as fit  
the most important  
the formation of future  
will strike a thunder  
they know, in their  
we were possessed of,  
their should be present  
tell into silence, they  
over their indifference  
with so much indignity  
done with the most alig  
a word, Seraphy is a  
that think who that  
for freedom himself  
quently he sees his m  
times, and he the fore  
know his total ruin and  
Their case of letters,  
quently called, their  
themselves, for the year  
the same position to  
impious and self-inter  
crimes of those who  
more. These will c  
Occas  
(1) Persia, see p. 44. A  
(2) Tempi, in Asia, see  
(3) Accra, see p. 198.  
(4) Tarragona, (Mare)



1704

be procured from them. In all other respects, indeed, they are affable, and good-natured enough. They will cringe and creep however in the most servile manner, to those from whom they hope to receive any favours; and in case they have any competitors, who endeavour to obstruct their solicitations they are very malicious; and when it happens they find themselves successful, they treat those who opposed them with the utmost inhumanity; embrace every opportunity of blasting their reputations, and casting a veil over those good qualities of which they know them to be possessed; and, in short, never sit down contented, till they have found out some secret devices, that shall infallibly ruin and destroy them. On the other hand, they are guilty of the most fulsome flattery towards such as stand possessed of the most important employments, and are the favourites of fortune. To these they will ascribe a thousand perfections, that they know, in their consciences they never were possessed of; but in case any of these should in process of time happen to fall into disgrace, they will then insult over their misfortunes, and treat them with as much indignity, as before they had done with the most abject adulations. In a word, so unhappy is a courtier in disgrace, that those who stand deepest in his debt for favours formerly received, shall frequently be seen his most implacable enemies, and be the foremost in bringing about his total ruin and destruction.

Their aim  
is of learning.

Their men of letters, or as they are frequently called, their pen-men, deport themselves, for the generality, much after the same perfidious manner. They are imperious and self-sufficient; and for ever envious of those who are persons of real merit. These will cajole and caress those

to whom they have even an aversion, wherever they meet them; but then again, the very moment their backs are turned, they will vilify and reproach them. Hypocrisy, in short, is their darling vice; and such is their vanity and self-conceit, that they will blow their own trumpets, and be very lavish in their encomiums on their own extraordinary merit; notwithstanding all this, they are to all outward appearance, very sanctified and devout, and seem to look down with an eye of contempt, on the vanity of all sub-lunary enjoyments. Tho' they are for ever expatiating in public on the joys that are more lasting and permanent in another world; yet in private, they will gratify their sensual appetites without controul. These Persian hypocrites, moreover, entertain an utter aversion, not only to all who are professors of christianity in (i) Europe; but to all others who differ from them in any important articles of their faith; nor would there be any safety for them in this country, if the laws of nations did not keep these infidels under some tolerable restraint.

1704

These dis-  
position.

The shameful practice of usury prevails in this country more than in any other part of the world through which I have travelled. Tho' it must be acknowledged, that there are some honest, sincere, and virtuous men amongst them; we dare venture to assert, that, for the generality, the Persians are the most ungrateful wretches under the sun, and can be guilty of the most enormous crimes without a blush. Persia, like the European states, consists of three orders. The first, of the nobility, and gentlemen of the sword; the second, of the men of the robe; and the third and last of merchants and mechanics.

Usury very  
prevails  
amongst  
the Per-  
sians.

#### Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

(a) Persia, see p. 64. n. a.

a province of Asiatic Turkey. Its capital city is Erzerum.

(b) Georgia, in Asia, see p. 107. n. d.

(e) Ormus, see 283. n. b.

(c) Armenia, see p. 198. n. g.

(f) Isfahan, see p. 109. n. m.

(d) Turcomania, the ancient Armenia, is now

(g)



1704

(g) Porto, or the Port, the city of Constantinople, frequently called so, by way of eminence, being one of the finest harbours in Europe, and the metropolis of the Turkish empire.

(h) France, see p. 214, n. m.

(i) Europe, see p. 117, n. dd.

1704

## C H A P. XLII.

*A succinct Account of the Ceremonies observed at the Interment of any King of (a) Persia. A Character of the King then regent. When the Author arrived at (b) Ispahan or Spahawn. His Majesty's Portrait, or Picture; and the agreeable Habits, or Dresses, of the Persians of both Sexes.*

Notwithstanding it is an established custom, to conceal the decease of a Persian king till his immediate successor is firmly seated upon his throne; yet no sooner had Suliman, the father of his present majesty, departed this life, but the melancholy news was spread far and wide almost instantaneously, through the indiscretion of his chief, or first physician.

That prince died on the 29th day of July in the year 1694, in the 48th year of his age, after he had reigned near 30 years.

No sooner was the report confirmed, but the officers belonging to the crown, and the grandees, or principal nobility of the kingdom, immediately possessed themselves of the palace; and took all the care they possibly could to secure peace and tranquillity within the court. No people of any rank or distinction were to be met with in the open streets; and all the shops in general throughout the city of Ispahan were close shut up.

On the first of August his majesty's corpse was laid on a wheel-machine, which was covered all over with a most pompous and magnificent pall of gold cloth, and conveyed from the palace to a chappel, at about a league's distance from Ispahan, and from thence to Com, in order to its being deposited in the sepulchre of his royal predecessors. All the grandees of the kingdom, attended the deceased on foot, one of the officers belonging to the

crown, by name Mierfa-taher, and a dignified ecclesiastic only excepted, who, through the infirmities of old age, were permitted to ride on horseback. These grandees, or lords, were followed by the gentlemen of the robe, and the penmen, who chanted a most doleful ditty as they moved solemnly along. A large body of soldiers succeeded these, who attended his majesty's remains to the chappel, with their flambeaux, which smoked indeed, tho' they gave no light. All those who had attended the corpse so far, having first rent their garments, returned homewards, and left a sufficient number of their friends and relations to attend the body to the sepulchre above-mentioned in the dead of the night.

The guards of the palace were directly doubled, in order to prevent any tumult or disturbance, which might casually arise on so public an occasion, especially in a city so populous as Ispahan, and so crowded with inhabitants of various nations. In the interim, the crown-officers gave express orders to their most judicious Astrologer, as is the constant custom of the country, to inform them of the most propitious, or favourable moment for the inauguration, or instalment of the new king; being fully persuaded, that by such a proper consultation, his majesty would make no attempts to injure, or oppress his subjects; especially on his first accession to the throne. There was not a single drum or trumpet to be heard

The death  
of King Sul-  
iman.

Misinter-  
pret.



1704

heard, or any other noise whatever, that might in the least interrupt the solemnity of their public mourning, till their Magi, or wise men had made their declaration, which was postponed to the 6th day of August on which the critical moment was unanimously settled and adjusted. — This was the happy time appointed for the new king's solemn coronation, that is to say, the eldest son of the deceased Suliman.

The coronation of the new King.

This successor, upon the expiration of his father, was instantaneously removed from the Seraglio, and locked up in another apartment appointed for his reception, where he was closely confined till his accession to the throne, where all the grandees belonging to the court attended round about him, in order to throw themselves prostrate at his feet. Upon this all the houses and shops throughout the city were instantly opened, which, till then, had been closely shut up; and there were bonfires in every street, and grand illuminations in every window; with divers other demonstrations of public joy.

The new king, who, by the Persians is styled their Soltan-hosseini, sent, on the next day after his coronation, royal robes to all the grandees and lords of the court, who, till then, wore no other garments than those they had torn before; and upon the reception of these presents, the mourning for the deceased was at once all over. After this, not only the drums and trumpets, but every other instrument of music was heard in almost every corner; and these public rejoicings continued, according to custom, without any intermission, for forty days successively.

His majesty, at his accession to the throne, was about four and twenty years of age, of but a moderate stature, though well made; and the features of his face were perfectly manly and handsome. I had so many opportunities of viewing him with attention, during my residence at Ispahan, that the idea of him being firmly imprinted in my mind, I was enabled to draw his picture, in which attempt I was generally allowed to have hit the true likeness, and to have succeeded beyond their expectations. Though his majesty was,

The picture drawn by the author.

when I saw him first, in a summer dress; yet I chose, upon mature deliberation, to delineate him in his winter-robes, which are much more magnificent, and give him, in my opinion, a more graceful and majestic air.

He may with ease be distinguished, by virtue of the large, and immensely valuable jewel in his turban, which is embellished, moreover, with three feathers, plucked from the wing of a black heron; as the reader will find by turning his eye on the Plate (85) hereto annexed.

This young prince takes such a peculiar delight in building; that, upon a modest computation, he is reckoned to have expended, within the compass of ten years, no less than four or five millions of money; notwithstanding the costs and charges attending his fine gardens, and all his houses of pleasure are no ways included in the account. When he has an inclination to erect any new edifice, his will is made publicly known by sound of trumpet, that such as are attached to his interest may attend, and contribute towards the completion of the intended building. Upon this general summons, artificers of all sorts flock to court from all parts, in order to offer their service, through loyalty, without any expectation, or hopes of reward; nor do the grandees, or lords of the court, ever fail of sending other workmen at their own expence.

Such inhabitants, as are natives of (d) Armenia, are indispensably obliged to pay in their contributions, likewise; and to my own certain knowledge, they raised no less than three hundred tomans, that is to say, near one hundred and twenty thousand livres, towards one single garden, that was compleated during my residence at Ispahan.

Notwithstanding this taste of his for building; he is so addicted to venery, and indulges himself to that degree, in the gratification of every unruly and inordinate passion, that he is perfectly regardless of his state-affairs, and the welfare of his subjects; and thro' his vicious example, there is but little justice administered throughout all his extensive dominions. Licentiousness reigns in every part; and

4 G

1704

Pl. 85.  
The young prince  
takes such a peculiar  
delight in building.

His other  
follies.



1704

the most vicious meet with no controul. The natural consequence of which is, that the high-ways, or public roads, which were formerly as safe and secure as possible, now swarm with merciless villains, and the worst of freebooters.

Princes and  
nobles have  
principal  
favourites.

Through this foible of the prince, not only the ecclesiastics, but his eunuchs likewise, who are the very scum and refuse of the earth, and altogether unworthy of the least employ or preferment, have too great an ascendancy over him. These last reptiles, are but guards at best of the harem or seraglio, the place wholly devoted to the gratification of all his majesty's most brutal lusts; and their air and mein, have something in them, moreover, peculiarly shocking. These are the men, however, who have his majesty's ear at all times; and are so much in favour, that even the counsellors of state are obliged to court and caress them. What a mortifying circumstance is it, that persons of illustrious birth and the greatest consideration, can by no means secure their royal master's good graces, or stand possessed of their high posts or employment with any certainty of continuance, unless they will submit to such mean, such shameful, and, in a word, such servile adulations!

They are not all, however, of such low, groveling, submissive spirits. Instances may be produced of some of their illustrious personages, who scorn to cringe and fawn thus, or disguise their real sentiments on any consideration whatsoever. Some years ago, there was a nobleman of (e) Georgia, by name Russian-khan, a nobleman of real merit, and possessed of one of the most important posts in the kingdom; namely, that of generalissimo of his majesty's armies, and governor of (f) Tauris, formerly known by the name of Ecbatana, the capital of (g) Media, who had the courage and intrepidity to tell his majesty, at a grand entertainment in the presence of the principal grandees at court, that his majesty was brought up in perfect ignorance, and what was worse, he would for ever continue in that unhappy state; and, in short, as he was wilfully blind, he could not prevail on himself to act the

The intrepidity of a  
Georgian  
nobleman.

hypocrite, or serve him any longer. Upon this act of presumption, as it was termed, he was immediately deposed, and by his majesty's express orders closely confined the very next day to his own apartment during pleasure. In the interim, however, his friends were so sanguine and solicitous for his release, that they had procured the royal promise for his restoration. Accordingly, they all congratulated him upon this their good success; but he was so far from making them, as they expected, his grateful acknowledgments, that he resented their too officious services, and openly declared that he scorned to serve so illiterate a prince; and actually persisted in that unalterable resolution to his dying day.

A certain grandee, by name Mocfla-beek, formerly an (h) Armenian by profession; but whose grandfather had embraced the Mahommed faith, drew a more severe mortification upon himself than the former, in the year 1704, whilst I was resident at Ispahan, for discovering his sentiments too freely, and speaking without reserve. This nobleman, who had been preferred to some of the most important employs in the kingdom, and particularly to that of governor of Tauris before mentioned, after he had been general of his Majesty's (i) Circassian as well as Georgian slaves, came on some private occasion to Ispahan, where his majesty asked him what affairs, at that conjuncture, could bring him to court; and commanded him to return forthwith to his government without presuming to make the least expostulation; and from thence to repair, with the utmost expedition, to Esfabad, a town of (k) Mazanderan, and there put himself at the head of his army, and therewith to march directly against the (l) Tarcomanians, who had invaded that province, and carried away not only the inhabitants, but their effects likewise. Upon this he told his majesty, that he was very sorry that he could not possibly comply with those commands, for he had been fully convinced, that his grandees and other noblemen, then residing at court, did not act as became them, or as persons that had

1704

Another in-  
stance of  
heroic for-  
titude.

CO  
had any more regu-  
larly himself, or de-  
sired, not that he  
the whole and the  
the right to trouble  
was older, than to  
him, and that should  
deliberately necessary the  
service to the nation  
his enemies. He had not  
will of his, and free  
all especially after his  
to look to himself, a  
expected manner, a  
trade of what he after  
and continuing argu-  
against his majesty's  
claim was far to his  
end of September that  
to leave him; and was  
around this circumstance  
regard for they felt  
them carried him pub-  
ly over a mile to  
for his command, and  
that on all his efforts  
withstanding all the  
was in a few days  
on the matter and  
continuing fixed in his  
Many other instances  
found in the history  
crimes in his country  
with, and arbitrary  
himself to be to the  
satisfies that since my  
doing, in the most  
have nothing to bring  
And I say, with great  
reason he said, that no  
child, or in the  
three, one possible  
younger brother  
his an apartment in  
men of letters, and  
to hear of his majesty  
himself, after the  
himself I cannot con-  
the law with the  
after he was had  
was, the very  
with as it was



1704

had any sincere regard either for his majesty himself, or the welfare of his subjects; and that he was well assured, that their whole aim and design in prevailing on his majesty to send him on that errand, was no other, than to ruin and destroy him; and that therefore, in case it was absolutely necessary that he should fall a sacrifice to the malice and resentment of his enemies, he had rather submit to the will of fate, and dye at once, than to fall ingloriously after his departure. This he spoke so openly, and after such and unguarded manner, and confirmed the truth of what he asserted by such strong and convincing arguments, that he exasperated his majesty so far, that proper officers were sent to his apartments on the sixth of September then following in order to secure him; and accordingly they executed their commission with the utmost rigour; for they first bound him, and then carried him publicly through the streets upon a mule to the place appointed for his confinement, and clapped their signet on all his effects: however, notwithstanding all this insult and disgrace, he was in a few days afterwards discharged, on the milder condition of his voluntarily confining himself in his own house.

Many other instances might be produced of the foibles, and want of discretion in this unhappy prince, who, by his rash, and arbitrary proceedings, exposes himself so far to the contempt of all his subjects; that scarce any of them scruple to declare, in the most open manner, they have nothing of a king, but the bare name. And it may, with justice, indeed, and good reason be said, that no country, where a child, or an illiterate prince sets on the throne, can possibly be happy. The younger brother of this weak prince, who has an apartment in the palace, and is a man of sense, and intrinsic merit, when he hears of his majesty's daily acts of indiscretion, cries out (as I am credibly informed) I cannot conceive what my brother does with the crown. And one day after his majesty had sent him a bottle of wine, the young prince returned it back with an air of contempt, saying, he did

not stand in want of a little liquor. Now to these who are ignorant of the customs and maxims of the Persians, those matters, so widely distant from the methods observed in other countries, may appear strange, and will scarcely be believed. I shall mention but one foible more of this unhappy prince, and that is, tho' he is addicted to gaming, if he loses but a trifle, he begs of the party who won it, to take no notice of his loss to the Nazir, who is the officer appointed to pay him.

In order, however, to cast a veil over the other foibles of this illiterate prince, we will enter on another topic, and close this chapter with a succinct account of the various habits which are worn by the Persians of both sexes. But here we must make one general observation, in the first place; namely, that their habits are all much shorter than those worn by the Turks, and each is different, in proportion to their respective stations, or degrees in life. The habit, for instance, of the gentlemen of the sword bears no resemblance to that which is worn by those of the robe; and the dresses are equally various in regard to their comforts. There is, moreover, a very visible difference in the habits of their virgins, from those who are settled in the conjugal state. As to the dress of their men of the robe, the reader will have a clear idea of it by casting his eye on the plate (No. 86) hereto annexed. The turban, likewise, or the mandiel, as they call it, which they wear on their heads is greatly varied. Some wear them of one colour; others of another; according as their taste or fancy directs them: some are striped; others are wrought with gold and silver: others again, are as white as snow; those which are worn by their ecclesiastics are by much the largest, indeed; yet they are exceedingly neat, and plaited in the most accurate manner. Their dress, in short, throughout, is very grand and magnificent, and their vestments are for the generality, flowered; but these rich garments, according to my fancy, become their ladies much better than themselves. And to speak my sentiments freely, and without reserve, I think the dress of a Turk

1704

The various habits, or dresses of the Persians, gentlemen.

PL. 86.



1704  
is much more modest, much better understood, and gives him a more manly and majestic air. The Persians, in all other respects, never vary their fashions, and still preserve that air of grandeur which was prevalent in the days of king Alexander. Their nobility, or other persons of high rank and distinction, very seldom, if ever walk, but ride on horse-back, with their running-footmen on one side of them. And these are so frequently mimicked by gentlemen of lower rank, and lesser fortune, that they are forced to run deep in debt, in order to indulge themselves in such acts of splendor, and extravagance; but then it must be allowed that they seldom think of discharging them, unless they find themselves compelled. These grandees, and such as roll in riches, decorate their horses' bridles with massy gold; and others in much lower circumstance copy after them in proportion. They have their callion (as they call it) that is to say, their pipe carried constantly after them; which, with more propriety of expression, may be termed, their bottle of water, through which they draw the smoke of their tobacco. This callion is embellished with gold, and makes a very neat appearance. Such as are of a lower rank or class adorn them only with silver, indeed; but then they have them carried after them in the same pompous manner as the former. The bridle of our director's horse was a golden one, and his callion was embellished with the same precious metal: His deputy's likewise was the same; and so, in short, were the bridles of all such as frequent the court; where they are only looked upon in proportion to the grand figure they can make.

The various  
outlets for  
or drains  
of their  
court la-  
dies.

The dress of the ladies, however, (as I hinted before) seems, to my thinking, much more agreeable. The consorts of their robe-men, wear a bandage on their foreheads most richly deckt all over with pearls and precious stones: This bandage, for the most part, is four fingers in breadth, and goes but half way round the head. On the other hand, the consorts of such as are counsellors of state wear their bandages all round, in the manner of a crown, which they call their

borlhoroe: This is frequently decorated with a plumage, plucked from the wing of a black heron, and several bunches of flowers with golden leaves. To this bandage, or crown, they add a jewel, which falls on the forehead; and is fastened by a string of pearl which comes under their chin; and as to their hair it hangs down their backs in ringlets. These ladies, likewise, wear a white veil, embroidered with gold, which falls over their shoulders. They have, moreover, their necklaces of pearls and precious stones, together with rich chains of gold, which fall down to their very girdles, with a small box of perfume. Their upper garment is generally either a gold or silver brocade; sometimes, indeed, it is perfectly plain: And under this, they wear a vest, which falls down below the girdle. Their shifts are made of taffaty, or some other fine silk, embroidered with gold. They wear drawers, likewise, and under-petticoats made in the loom; as also buskins, which come up about four or five inches above the ankle; these too are made of velvet embroidered, or some other more costly stuff. Their slippers are made either of green or red shagreen which is painted; and the heel is raised of the same colour, lined, and embellished with little flowers. Their girdles, which are about two or three inches broad, are adorned with pearls and precious stones; and upon their breasts they wear a variety of rich ribbons, which fall down as low as their girdles. The reader will find one of these fine ladies dressed in all her gaiety, in order to pay a visit, in the plate (No. 87.) hereunto annexed. In winter, they wear over all this, a gown, lined with a cotton-cloth, which falls down about a foot below their girdles; and when it is excessively cold, indeed, they wear a gown of silver or gold brocade, lined with sable, or some fur of the like nature. When they appear in the streets, they are covered from head to foot with a white veil; inasmuch, that nothing of their face is seen except their eyes, as the reader may see in the plate before-mentioned. This veil, for the generality, is all of one piece. They wear bracelets, like  
wife.

1704

See Table 8.

wife of previous times  
 and last fingers are per-  
 rying.  
 The ladies of but a min-  
 ute ago to these, deaf  
 is proportion to the  
 culture; and the very  
 and near of the ivory,  
touching of the like  
 claims, which have a  
 and make the eye is the  
 manner.  
 To the ladies of the  
 gentlemen and ladies,  
 men of their they call  
 to see his master's po-  
 wife is the capacity of

(1) *Polio*, *le p. 4*  
(2) *Polio*, *le p. 4*  
(3) *Polio*, *le p. 4*  
(4) *Polio*, *le p. 4*  
(5) *Polio*, *le p. 4*  
(6) *Polio*, *le p. 4*

The great Favours  
 rains of the De  
 and Taira, the  
 de Marquis of  
 Arrival of an  
 (18) October 7

ON the fish der-



1704

wife, of precious stones upon their arms; and their fingers are perfectly loaded with rings.

The ladies of but a middling station and inferior to these, dress themselves richly, in proportion to the substance of their husbands; and the wives of the nobility, and men of the sword, wear a silk net or something of the like nature over their cloaths, which have a charming effect, and strike the eye in the most agreeable manner.

To the dresses of the abovementioned gentlemen and ladies, I shall add the habits of those they call their yafools, that is to say, his majesty's porters, who act likewise in the capacity of gentlemen-ushers.

The habit  
or dress  
of their  
yafools, or  
porters who  
belong to  
the court.

These yafools wear mustaches, like the nobility, and a beard upon their chins which extends even to their ears; and nobody's turbans are so lofty as theirs. Some of this class, or order, wear beards after the Turkish manner. The reader will find one of these delineated in the plate (No. 88.) hereto annexed.

In (No. 89.) he will have likewise the representation of a male black slave, who was an attendant on our director, with a large poignard of a particular form, stuck in his girdle, and a long staff in his hand: As also of a female domestic of his, of the same complexion, with her tea-equipage in her hand, if he will but cast his eye on the plate 90 hitherto likewise annexed.

1704

The  
habit  
of  
the  
female  
domestic

### Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

(a) Persia, see p. 64. n. e.

(b) Isfahan, or Spahawn, see p. 109. n. 39.

(c) Com. see p. 247. n. k.

(d) Armenia, see p. 198. n. g.

(e) Georgia, in Asia, see p. 107. n. d.

(f) Tauris, or Tabris, see p. 242. n. i.

(g) Media, see p. 214. n. e.

(h) Armenia, see p. 198. n. g.

(i) Circassia, see p. 199. n. q.

(k) Mafanderan, a province of Persia, usually comprehended in Gilan, the ancient Hyrcania, situate on the south coast of the Caspian sea.

### C H A P. XLIII.

*The grand Funeral Solemnity ordained by the (a) Persians for the Commemoration of the Decease of their favourite Saint Hussein, the Son of Ali and Fatima, the sole Daughter of Mohammed. The Manner in which the Natives of (b) Armenia receive their Friends at (c) Julpha. The Arrival of an Envoy or Ambassador from the Grand Visier of the (d) Ottoman Port.*

The Per-  
sian days  
of mourn-  
ing.

ON the sixth day of May the Persians commenced their grand funeral pomp, which was instituted in honour of their great St. Hussein; and their lamentation, or mourning begins on the moment they discern the least glimpse of the new moon. All the city in general appear in deep mourning, and all the testi-

monies of public sorrow are expressed for the death of so venerable and so righteous a man, which happened (according to tradition) in the year 1027, at which time Mohammed was indispensably obliged to fly from (e) Mecca to (f) Medina Talmabi, which (according to their calculation) was no less than one thousand one hundred and

4 H

eighteen



1704

The history  
of St. Huss.  
See.The man-  
ner of their  
mourning  
for him.

eighteen years ago, in order to screen himself from the resentment and persecution of his foes.

This most venerable saint lost his life in (g) Atrabia Deserta, as he was taking his flight accompanied by seventy-two of his disciples, or followers, near a certain place called Kierbila, where his monument is erected, and to which the Persians, who look upon him as their true, or head Imam, resort from all parts, both far and near, in order to pay him the tribute of their more than common veneration and esteem. And it must be allowed, that king Abbas the Great acknowledged frankly, and with a kind of secret pride, that he was a descendant of that illustrious family; the natives of (b) Turkey, however, think he is no ways entitled to that honour.

This public mourning, or general lamentation is continued for ten days successively, without the least intermission. The populace make their appearance in the open streets, in small bands or companies, of about ten or a dozen of them, in the most piteous plight, being, at least, half naked; and as an addition to their seeming sorrow, they blacken their faces all over, and look like a pack of our common chimney-sweepers in (r) Holland. They make, in short, a most hideous figure; and affecting a very mortified air, they chant their most doleful ditties to the sound of certain castagnets, such as we have before-mentioned to have been played upon by female dancers in some other countries. The martyrdom of this their darling saint is represented by persons well furnished with arms, and by an image of him, which is not only very large, but hollow, and put into motion by some person within, appointed for that purpose, and who is not over-artfully concealed; for his legs are visible enough to the most incurious eye. The parties concerned in this pious droll, farce, or piece of mummery, as it may properly enough be termed, seldom fail of receiving some petty gratuity, or reward from the spectators, which consists, however, of but some small pieces of silver, of no great

value. There are some of them, indeed, now and then, who are more bountiful and beneficent, in proportion to the high veneration they conceive of his personal merit. As for the rest, during these uninterrupted days of sorrow and lamentation, they preach openly in the streets, both morning and evening; but more especially in such parts of the city, where there are cross-ways and such other places of most resort, which they inclose with tapestry, and cover with their carpets. They decorate likewise the walls of the city with bucklers, and other warlike arms of various denominations, and the pulpits at these times, are raised five or six steps at least, for the accommodation of those who constitute the audience on these solemn occasions. These orators, thus mounted in their rostrum, take care to have some manuscripts in their hands, on which they frequently cast their eye, whilst they are expatiating on the important and marvellous actions of this their saint. An inferior preacher, who stands some few steps only lower than the former, harangues the populace, in his turn, with his eulogies of Hussain, which he chants with as loud and distinct a voice, as one of our European parish-clerks. The respective places, set apart for these public acts of devotion, are for the generality, full of seats, or benches; and as my curiosity inclined me to become one of their auditors, I was soon accompanied thither by some of my friends. No sooner were they sensible of our intention, but they furnished us, very courteously, with commodious seats; and this they did with the more alacrity and readiness, as they professed a more than common value and regard for our director, who was universally beloved at (k) Ispahan. I listened with a seeming attention for near half an hour; and I could plainly discover, that what was at that time delivered by their orator, had such a strong influence over the passions of their auditors, that most of them appeared dissolved in tears. At the corner of the wall where my friends and myself were seated, a large figure had been planted, which was tolerably coun-

1704

ter-



1704

terfeted, and well stuffed with straw, who personated one Omar, the assassin, or murderer of Hussein, whom the populace burnt at night, in divers parts of the city. In several considerable places, these panegyrics, or sermons as they call them, are delivered likewise in the dead of the night, upon certain theatres, erected for those particular purposes, with laths, on which they hang above a thousand lamps, but in so awkward and careless a manner, that the wind, in case there happens to be a brisk gale, blows three parts in four of them out directly. As to the spectators of this night pageantry, they are not to be numbered.

A dance of young lads.

On the Sunday following, we solemnized the grand festival of Whitsuntide, at our directors, to whose apartments came two bands, or small companies of young lads, all much of the same stature, and all very smartly dressed in order to dance before him and his company, according to custom, on that occasion. These lads had small sticks, or wands, in their hands, which they struck one against another, during the dance which was exhibited to vocal music only, that is to say, to the singing of two or three men, who were their overseers. These young dancers threw their arms almost every moment over their heads, with the utmost velocity, and assumed such a variety of airs and attitudes, as proved perfectly entertaining.

Another band more numerous than the former, proposed to have followed them, in order farther to amuse us; but they met unexpectedly with a strange band, belonging to some other district, or division, who obstructed them in their design by a close attack; inasmuch that they could not come; besides they were obliged to attend the court that night.

But to return to our more melancholy subject. The solemnity of this funeral pomp, or public mourning consisted principally in a grand procession, which was exhibited the very next day; of which I had an uninterrupted sight, as I happened to be at a shop-keepers house

in the Bazar, or market-place, when it passed by the door.

This grand procession was opened by some few officers on horse-back who belonged to the Deroga; and these were followed by a set of singers, who had each of them a taper in his hand; and each was dressed either in black, or purple, conformable to the nature of the solemnity, and the doleful lamentations that were made; some of these were half naked; and others carried a black standard which was furled up. After them went three camels; on the first rode two lads more than half naked; on the second rode three one behind the other, and on the third, the image of a woman, covered up close, with a little lad. After them came five camels more, on each of which were seven or eight other little boys, who were almost naked likewise, and seated in cages, composed of lath, and these were followed by two ensigns. Then appeared a chariot with an open coffin, in which was contained a dead corpse; after that went a second, which was covered with white, and accompanied by singers; and a third after the two former, laden with incense, having two men and four little lads in it, each having a book in his hand, and a small table before him. This last chariot was encompassed with a parcel of tinned lamps, or what at least appeared to me to be such, and followed by a large standard which was furled up, and twelve soldiers duely armed; each having a helmet on his head; these were followed by two little lads whimsically dressed up, with feathers and bells. After these boys, went a young prisoner on horse-back, accompanied by no less than one and twenty others, sixteen whereof were chained, and five, indeed, only pinioned. When these prisoners had passed by, there came a fourth chariot, all covered with sand, out of which appeared six heads all in a bloody condition; but no bodies to be seen; inasmuch that one might imagine that they had been cut off. In this chariot there were two persons dressed. In a fifth which immediately followed, was carried the body of Hussein himself, represented by

1704

A Gazette account of the grand procession.



1704

by a man clad all in armour, with a sabre in his right-hand. This person was covered all over with blood, in order to strike the passions of the populace, who seemed at least so deeply affected, that the lamentations and tears, the sighs and groans, and other hideous out-cries on this occasion were shocking beyond description. And it must be acknowledged, that there cannot possibly be any thing more affecting than this sight; and notwithstanding we were conscious to ourselves, that the whole was both idle and ridiculous; yet it was not in our power, so much as to smile at the folly of it.

This chariot was followed by a great number of young persons, some pinioned; and some again with their arms at liberty, attended by a guard well armed with clubs, or staves, with which from time to time, they threatened to bruise them; upon which, they would cringe and bow down their heads as naturally as if they dreaded the approaching blow. These were followed by another large chariot, drawn by men, covered, like the rest, all over with bloody sand, whereon there were two dead bodies, and four others, whereof nothing was seen but their heads. In this last chariot went six turtle-doves backwards and forwards. From another that followed this, came out arms and legs, and in it likewise were two lighted tapers. Then a third, with six heads, and two persons dressed, followed by another, with a dead body in armour in it, and a man, personating one who was very sick, and seemingly at the very point of death. Then went two ensigns; and a horse, with his saddle hanging down, attended by two drums and several singers. After them followed another chariot, whereon were two coffins, and two little lads, each with a book in his hand, who from time to time very affectionately embraced them, and played their part of the farce exceedingly well. Another chariot of an extraordinary size followed this, in which were contained no less than ten or a dozen dead bodies, of which no parts were to be seen except their bloody arms and legs, together with five or six prisoners, followed by a

young man on horse-back pierced through with arrows. This person was all over blood, seemed to be a stranger, and to all outward appearance perfectly faint, and ready to drop on the ground. After him a coffin appeared, covered all over with black cloth, attended by singers and dancers, who seemed to conduct it in triumph, and after them were carried three lances, each of which was embellished with precious stones. Then followed a horse, laden with bows and arrows, a turbant, and a large standard; and five horses more after that, laden with bucklers, bows and arrows, and three javelins, on the points whereof appeared a hand. And to close this grand melancholy procession, came another horse richly caparisoned, whereon there were three pair of pigeons. This horse, however, was not in its proper place.

After I had been an eye-witness of all this melancholy though pompous shew, I prevailed on a good-natured ecclesiastic to give me the interpretation of this mystic procession. In the first place, he told me that the turtle-doves which I had observed on one of the chariots, represented those, which in reality, sat upon the body of Hussein soon after he was murdered; and that those self same turtle-doves, all smeared with his blood flew away to Medina where the sister of St. Hussein lived, who, upon the first sight of them, was fully convinced of his untimely end; for she had foretold it, it seems, before-hand.—He acquainted me farther, that the chariot with the two coffins attended by the two little lads, who had each of them a book in his hand, represented the two sons of Hussein, whose names were Ali-asker, and Ali-Echbar, who, as they tell you, were both slain with arrows.—That the young man, pierced through with arrows, was intended to represent the latter.—That the coffin, covered with black was that of St. Hussein himself; and the chariot with six heads, by which sat two persons dressed, represented his children.—That the iron hand, fixed at the point of the javelins, was the signal of war which the chiefs and parifans of the Persian Mohammedans

work

1704

This article  
may be  
of use  
plainly.



1704 wore, in former days, upon their standards, and that the five fingers on that hand represented Mohammed, Ali Fatima, the daughter of Mohammed, Ali the wife, Hussein and Hussein the Saint: so that it is evident each part of this long, pompous, melancholy procession has reference to some circumstance or other relating to the murder of Hussein, and his seventy two disciples or followers, who were slain with him, and afterwards canonized as well as himself, for martyrs by the Persians.

It is very surprising, that those persons, whose heads, arms and legs, appear openly in the several chariots above-described, should, for the many hours this mournful solemnity lasted, be able to act their parts so naturally, and seem as lifeless as perfect statues. Most of the heads, moreover, had long beards, and their necks appeared to be so squeezed, that one would really imagine the head to be actually severed from the body; and what is still more surprising, their very eyes seemed to be fixed in their heads, and without the least visible motion.

In order, however, to their acting this part of insensibility in so natural a manner, I have been informed, that on this melancholy occasion, the parties concerned are obliged to swallow down a certain quantity of a particular liquor, which intoxicates them to that degree, that they are totally deprived of their senses for the time being. And there is no room for imposition in this particular; for I could visibly distinguish the head of wax (whereof there was but one) from all the rest: And it must be allowed, moreover, that the Persians are peculiarly artful in these pantomimical representations.

The next morning we went to the same place, by break of day, in order to be spectators of the remainder of this grand and solemn procession; but his majesty did not come till two hours after we were seated.

This second days solemnity, was a kind of parade of the two districts, or divisions of the city, who carried divers ornaments suitable to the mournful purpose in pro-

cession. In the first place, there appeared, in the same manner, as the day before, a small number of the deroga's officers on horse-back, followed by several young fellows armed with staves, and crying out, as they skipped and danced along, O, Hussein! Hussein! After these came a band of instrumental music, with some drums, followed by the citizens of divers wards: the first company appeared armed with drawn sabres, and shields; and those who followed, with staves very elegantly painted. All in general were very neatly dressed in velvet vestments, with rich sashes, and fine turbans; and all marched in exact order: all the visible difference between them consisted wholly in the grandeur and magnificence of one dress from another. One particular party of these citizens, who were nearly of the same rank and degree in regard to substance, had prepared for themselves a very pretty machine, or resting place, not much unlike a common coach, which was adorned with looking-glasses, hung with sabres, poniards and other arms; some mounted with gold, and others with silver, which had a very good effect, and struck the eye in a charming manner. There were others, however, which were still loftier than this, and had no coverings or tops to them, were open within, and decorated with a greater number of glasses. The greatest and most considerable of these several companies goes on before the rest; there were no less than five of these resting-places, or machines, like coaches as we hinted before, exclusive of that which was erected between two buildings at the Chiaer-baeg. This was embellished throughout with, or more properly speaking, composed of looking-glasses, in the form of an altar, with folding-doors, which when thrown open displayed all the decorations within; this was a very lofty machine; and as soon as his majesty appeared at the building which belongs to his second garden, in which there is a long gallery, one of their doctors or preachers mounts the rostrum. This altar, or resting-place, was kept standing for three or four days successively. It consisted of divers pieces,

4 I

which

The parade  
of the two  
districts of  
the city.



1704

Another  
procession.

which were made to fit, and were put together on the spot; for it would have been a fruitless attempt, to have aimed at moving the whole at once through the city-gates.

This grand procession was succeeded by another that commenced, or opened with some standards, and a great number of horses; some whereof had their heads adorned with large plumes of white feathers, and others were very richly decorated, and laden with fine vestments, fabres, shields, and a variety of other warlike weapons. Some again were drest even with turbans, plumes larger than the former, and other pompous decorations. These horse were followed by a large band of singers, musicians, and dancers, these last waved certain flags over their heads, as they danced along: others carried pikes, which were embellished with tufts and ribbons. The procession appeared afterwards as it did the day before. The parties concerned therein frequently halted; and as they sang threw straw that had been chopped small, all over their heads, crying out at the same time O, Hussein! Hussein! some of the train carried a drawn sabre in one hand, and a shield, or buckler, in the other; the rest had staves at least ten feet in length, which were very neatly painted and richly gilt. Though these seemed to breathe nothing but vengeance and destructive war; yet the Deroga, who was personally present, accompanied by above a thousand horse-men, takes particular care, that nobody shall fall to blows; for he posts his officers, in order to prevent all tumults and disturbances, at proper distances; some in the van; some in the center; and others again in the rear of their grand procession. He plants others likewise in the way, through which they are to pass; and the several districts are obliged to advance gradually one after the other. In short, he takes all the care imaginable, to prevent riots and disorders; and all quarrels and contentions that might possibly arise, in respect to rank or degree in the march, where the passes are narrow; and soldiers with fire-arms are posted, at proper distances, for that particular purpose.

And it is highly requisite, indeed, that such precautions should be taken; since the Persians entertain a firm notion, that all such as should lose their lives on such solemn occasions, go directly to Paradise, without any intermediate state. And, for that reason, in case any murders happen to be committed at such public seasons, there is no enquiry made after the delinquents; and those, therefore, who owe their neighbours a secret grudge, and want an opportunity to satiate their revenge, very seldom, if ever, fail of taking the advantage of these solemn processions, much after the same manner, as the natives of (f) Italy do their public carnivals.

From hence it is, that such as are wise and wary, and are under no indispensable obligation to attend the procession, keep close at home, for the most part, during the last days of the solemnity; but more especially those, who are known to be Turkish Mohammedans; for they are professed enemies to Hussein, and the friends of Omar, whom the Persians perfectly abhor. They bear not that implacable malice against any other nations, not even against the natives of (m) India, who are Heathens; for to these they say nothing to affront them.

On this public occasion, however, there is a prodigious concourse of people, not only of inhabitants of the city, but strangers whose curiosity leads them to become spectators. At this juncture indeed, it happened, there were no tumults or disorders arose; no casual transactions that created the least trouble or confusion, which was somewhat extraordinary and remarkable, if we consider the implacable hatred that subsists between the two opposite parties, who have no mercy on each other whenever it is their fortune to meet together.

On the nineteenth instant I set out with some friends to take a view of the Christian burial-ground where we tarried till break of day; and from thence went to his majesty's new-garden, which is very spacious, and encompassed with an earthen-wall. We there saw several fish-ponds which were nearly finished, and a curious nursery of young

1704

A new garden  
belonging to the  
king.

young men, who  
are well dressed, but  
the common sort.  
From thence we  
went to Mr. Shah's  
house (as we have  
intended to see some  
and entertained in a  
manner, which was  
very of a kind.  
his grace, which was  
made a very  
The next day we paid  
our visit to the  
put them down in all  
and every one made  
leave of the principal  
of the party, and  
men there who were  
We had seen the  
which was as up the  
go where you wish  
concludes, and all  
pleasing heart-matters  
you in this party  
dejectedly quitted, and  
as kinds of houses, of  
in general have been  
highly fixed. After that  
and the water brought  
they perform the  
take especial care  
with a caution to  
become, as they call  
pleasant, but liquor  
(very few are devoted  
train, and find other  
has attended to for  
they bring you on the

Once  
(a) Prefa, see p. 64  
(b) Armenia, see p.  
(c) Julia, or Julia  
(d) (see p. 14)  
(e) (see p. 14)  
(f) (see p. 14)  
(g) (see p. 14)



1704 young trees, roses, and parterres, abounding with flowers, but such only as were of the common sort.

From thence we went to Julpha, to one Mr. Sahid's country-seat. This gentleman (as we have hinted before) was interpreter to our company. He received and entertained us in the most friendly manner, notwithstanding there were near fifty of us in number. All the walks in his garden, which were illuminated with candles, made a very beautiful appearance. The next day we paid visits to several of our director's friends; for he was to depart from thence in about a month's time, and return no more. There he took leave of the principal Armenian merchants, of the patriarch, and most of the gentlemen there who were natives of (a) Europe. We had near fifty of these visits to make, which took us up three whole days; for go where you will, you are treated with conferves, and all manner of the most pleasing sweet-meats, which are brought you in little pretty wooden boxes, very elegantly painted, and embellished with all kinds of flowers, of which the Persians in general have been at all times exceedingly fond. After that you have incense and rose-water brought you, with which they perfume the whole room. They take especial care moreover, to furnish you with a callion to smoke with, coffee, bedmus, as they call it, and divers other pleasant, hot liquors; and after dinner is over, you are entertained with plenty of fruits, and such other dainties as the season affords. As for the Christians there, they bring you out their brandy, and other

strong liquors in the morning, and wine in plenty of various kinds in the afternoon. Infomuch that, one visit only must of necessity take up at least an hour.

Having paid all our visits in form, we returned to Ispahan, where we were informed, that an envoy, or ambassador from the Grand Visier of the Ottoman Port was arrived the day before, but, as it were incog, not having above half a dozen domestics in his retinue: that it was conjectured, the principal part of his errand was to demand of his majesty, a free passage for the march of some Turkish forces, which the Grand Signior was determined to send into (b) Georgia, where the inhabitants, for several years then last past, had peremptorily refused to pay the customary subsidies, which the natives of that country are indispensably obliged to remit to the Port. The Grand Signior, has frequently sent a number of Turkish forces on that occasion; but they have met with no small obstructions from the Georgians, in some particular defiles and narrow passes, where they knew perfectly well that they should meet them. These the Turks distinguish by the name of Bassa-tjoegs, that is to say, bare-heads; because they wear nothing to cover their heads but a small cap which is open at the crown, through which they thrust some tresses of their hair in order to keep it on as tight as may be. They distinguish by the same appellation likewise, all the country which they inhabit, that is to say, all the lands that are situate between Turkey and Gurgistan.

*Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.*

- (a) Persia, see p. 64. n. c.
- (b) Armenia, see p. 298. n. g.
- (c) Julfa, or Julpha, see p. 262. n. x.
- (d) Port (Ottoman) see p. 196. n. g.
- (e) Mecca, see p. 242. n. e.
- (f) Medina Talmabi, east long. 40. 35. lat.

24. 30. a city of Arabia Deserta, situate 200 miles north-west of Mecca, called the city of the Prophet. For here Mahomet was received, and protected by the inhabitants, when he was driven from Mecca; and here he was first invested with regal power; and here is a magnificent mosch, or temple, in which is Mahomet's tomb, surrounded by a silver grate, or palisade; but the story of his coffin being hung up to the roof

The Persian manner of receiving their friends upon a visit.

The arrival of a Turkish envoy.



1704 roof by a loadstone is a vulgar error. On Mahomet's flight from Mecca to this city, the Mahometan *Æra* commences, viz. the 16th of July A. D. 622.

(g) Arabia Deserta, see p. 203, n. a.

(b) Turkey, see p. 203, n. 8.

(i) Holland, see p. 76. n. 6.

(A) Isfahan, or Spahiawn, see p. 109, n. *wt*.

(d) Italy, see p. 210, n. m.

(m) India (Proper) see p. 213, n. d.

(π) Europe, see p. 127. n. *ibid.*

(e) Georgia, in Asia, see p. 107, n. d.

## C H A P. XLIV.

*A succinct Account of the Paintings in Persia. The Customs observed there, in regard to Births, Marriages, Deaths, and Burials. The current Coins of the Country. A vast Consumption of Sugar in the City of Ispahan only.*

**I** Had some thoughts of amusing my readers in this chapter with a short view of the religion as by law established in (a) Persia; but upon mature consideration, as divers travellers have expatiated before me on that topic, I imagined the attempt would be needless, if not impertinent; since it could only be a repetition of what is already universally known. I shall content my self therefore with this one transient observation thereon; namely, that it bears a very near affinity to the religion professed all over (b) Turkey; with this remarkable exception, that the Turks look on all kinds of paintings as abominations; and the Persians, on the other hand, are passionately fond of them, and deem those, which are judiciously executed, very valuable furniture for their parlours, or halls; especially such as represent fine horses, hunting matches, all kinds of birds and beasts; or a great variety of the choicest flowers; and with these (as we have hinted before) they embellish the walls of almost every apartment they are possess of.

Nay, they have professed painters among them; and there were two great masters of that art, in his majesty's service, whilst I was resident at (x) Ilpahan. My curiosity led me to pay one of them a visit; who received me very courteously; and upon a

critical review of his various performances, I found he was a greater proficient, than I thought he was. His operations, indeed, consisted chiefly of birds in distemper; that is to say, his colours were mixed with some glewy substances, only, and not with oil: however, they were elegantly neat.

It is true, he had very little knowledge of what we call lights and shades; but then the Persians in general have no idea at all of them; from whence it naturally follows, that their most accurate paintings are imperfect.

This gentleman, whilst I was with him, was very busy in copying, for the use of his majesty, a book of the most curious flowers, which had been printed in (d) Holland; and as to the colouring of them, I perceived that he was indebted to the judgment of an ecclesiastic, who had formerly been a practitioner in (e) Italy: and it must be allowed that no country can boast of finer colours than the Persians. I perceived, that he was possessed of a small quantity of lake, that had been brought from Holland. The Persians make ultramarine themselves; and it is doubtless, the finest blue that can possibly be purchased; for they have the stone in their own country, or at least they are

sup-

1704

That's [your] responsibility in terms of lights and audio.

There are  
four pos-  
sibilities.



1704

plied with it, by the painters of (f) Armenia. There are some painters in Persia, who make it their principal employ to stain canes with a particular gum, which strikes the eye well, and has a very pretty effect; and to embellish their standishes, which are made in the form of boxes, whereon they draw a great variety of beasts, birds, and flowers; or else such other ornaments, as their fancy directs, and then paint them with the utmost neatness.

Their books  
neatly  
bound, and  
accurately  
embellished

Persons of distinction there, likewise have all their valuable books very elegantly bound, and embellished with a great variety of figures; some of men and women in various dresses, others of birds, beasts, fish and flowers of all sorts in miniature; and each in the finest colours that can possibly be conceived. They have some books, indeed, that abound with immodest pictures, and are fit only to be viewed by the ladies of the Haram, or seraglio, of which they are extremely fond; for such as are immensely rich amongst them, are apt to indulge themselves in every lawless pleasure, without controul. I met with one of these luscious posture-books, in a visit I paid, not long before my departure from Ispahan, to a grandee, and a great favourite at court; the drawings, however, were very heavy, and artless, and had nothing to recommend them, but their obscenity, and their various embellishments in gold and silver, and the most lively colours.

The Per-  
sians avari-  
tious to ex-  
cess.

Though the Persians are highly delighted with rich trifles of this immodest stamp; yet they are so naturally avaritious, that even their ministers of state, would scruple to purchase such a toy, and are seldom possessed of them, unless they get them into their hands as a bribe for some expected favour.

The advent-  
ure of a  
German  
painter.

A little before my arrival at Ispahan, there came an able and experienced painter to court from (g) Germany. As this European artist had resided for several years at (h) Rome, where he had all the opportunities that could be desired for studying the works of the most celebrated Italian

masters, he was employed to paint some curious history-piece, but what the subject in particular was, indeed, I cannot at present recollect. The picture, however, at last, was universally approved of, both by his majesty, and the connoisseurs at court, and exposed accordingly to public view in the palace, as a finished piece. But neither his majesty, nor any one of the admirers of this most excellent performance, ever thought of the operator, or made him the compliment of the least trifle for the immense pains he took in the completion of it. And, indeed, that artist, be his profession what it will, or the place of his nativity where it will, that travels into Persia, with a view of raising his fortune by his skill in any particular science whatsoever, will find his expectations most shamefully balked, and be soon convinced to his cost, that he had entertained a too favourable opinion of the natives of the country.

The sciences, in short, are there either egregiously neglected, or absolutely unknown; and there are but very few instances to be produced, where the Persian monarchs have had either any taste for them, themselves, or the least generosity or inclination to encourage those that have. Generosity, in a word, is an absolute stranger in Persia.

In the year 1652, we had a glaring instance of this royal weakness, in respect to one Mr. Cuneus, who was a counsellor in ordinary, in the service of the Dutch East-India Company, who sent him to the Persian court in order to negotiate an affair there of the last importance. Amongst other presents, which they sent by him to the then Persian king; there was one very valuable picture, in which were represented a great number of warriors, or Heroes, all properly equipped, on horse-back. As the Persians are extravagantly fond of fine horses, the company naturally imagined, that this picture of theirs would meet with a very favourable reception at court; but his majesty, instead of accepting it as a rich and valuable present, asked, with coldness and indifference, what was the purchase of it. Mr. Cuneus, the agent,

1704

The advent-  
ure of an  
agent from  
the Dutch  
East India  
Company.



1704

imagining it would be improper to set a price upon it equal to its intrinsic value, appraised it (if we may be allowed the expression) far beneath its worth; whereupon his majesty determined to have it, and gave him his own price.

To these two instances several others of the like kind might with ease be produced; but we shall reserve them to another opportunity, and at present shall treat of their customs, with respect to their births, marriages, deaths and burials.

Customs at birth.

As soon as a child (whether male or female) is about four days old, they send for one of their ecclesiastics, to whom the parents declare the name they have determined to give him; and then the priest, with abundance of solemnity, blows it three times successively into the infant's ear; and then, after the performance, of a ceremony or two more, the solemnity is over, and the parents devote the remainder of the day to innocent mirth, and the entertainment of their friends on the joyful occasion.

The circumcision of their children.

It is not customary amongst the Persians to circumcise their children till they are about seven or eight years of age; and sometimes older, according to the humour or caprice of the parents, and never on the eighth day, as is the general custom amongst the Jews. After the operation, thus long deferred, they entertain their friends in the most elegant manner, in proportion to their substance; and testify all the outward joy imaginable on so happy an occasion of having a child of theirs admitted a member of their Moslems, that is to say, of their true believers, according to the law of their great prophet Mohammed, as it stands recorded in their Koran, or as it is otherwise called their Al-Koran.

The custom observed at their weddings.

As to the customs observed at their weddings; when a man is inclined to take a wife, he never makes his applications to his mistress, the object of his wishes, but to her parents, or relations: and when the terms are settled and adjusted, they send for one of their ecclesiastics; who asks the intended bridegroom, whether he will take

the woman to be his wife? To which, when he has answered in the affirmative, he then turns to the intended bride, and proposes the same question to her; and when she has answered yes, as the former had; the parson, or ecclesiastic, immediately sits down, and draws up the marriage-articles himself; for the Persians have no notary-publics; by virtue of which settlement, the bridegroom assigns over a certain sum of money to proper trustees for the use of his wife, who, by this marriage contract, when duly signed by her husband, stands forever legally possessed of this dower; even tho' her husband should, in process of time, think proper to leave her; an indulgence that the custom of the country on occasion admits of: and in case of his decease, his heirs are indispensably obliged to pay the sum agreed on, together with one eighth of his personal estate, moreover, in case the woman should die first, and leave any issue behind her, the husband, provided he thinks proper to marry again, and has issue by that second venter, is obliged to give the first wife's children their mother's dower, and an equal proportion of his own substance, which is to be divided amongst them all, share and share alike.

When a Christian, or any other person, who is not of the Persian persuasion, becomes a proselyte, and embraces the articles of their faith, he inherits not only all the fortune which his father stood possessed of, but that of all his relations too, exclusive of all others, who have not proved apostates like himself. And if it should happen, that two Christians should renounce their own religion, and embrace the Persian faith, at one and the same time, the next heir of the two enjoys alone the fortune of his Christian relations who die unconverted.

The Persians, by their law, may take as many concubines as they please, or at least, as many as they can keep; and whenever they think proper to dismiss any one of them, the female thus discharged, must have no commerce (according to their law) with any other man, till after the expiration of forty days; for fear she should

1704

Their concubines.

prove



1704

The dinner  
of their  
wedding.

prove with child. As for the rest, all the children of such concubines are looked upon as legitimate issue, and by consequence, are legally entitled to a proportionate share of the father's substance with the other children.

When the parents of a maiden give her away in marriage, they bestow on her such a portion as they think most proper and convenient; and the daughter engages herself, by a writing drawn up for that particular purpose, to lay no claim from thenceforward to any effects that they shall happen to leave behind them, whereof she acknowledges she has received her part or share; and thereby disclaims all right or title to any share with her brothers or sisters in what is to be their sole property hereafter.

When this portion is paid to the bridegroom, all her cloaths in general, and as much of her other effects as conveniently may be, are put upon horses, and the remainder is conveyed from her parents house by proper persons employed for that purpose; who carry along with them, likewise, a large quantity of preserves, and other dainties. This ceremony, may, with propriety enough, be termed a procession, which is more or less pompous and magnificent, according to the rank and distinction of the parties concerned; and is always accompanied by a band of music, be the hands more or less. This ceremony however, is not performed till some few days after the nuptials have been consummated; and, on this joyful occasion, a proper apartment in the husband's house is first pitched upon, and elegantly illuminated, as the procession is always made when the night is far spent. The men enter this apartment first, and the women follow them in due form.

Their grandees likewise provide themselves with wives, who are for the most part, waited on by the husband's concubines; and these wives are honoured with the title of *Khanas*, which bears a very near affinity to that of *Khan*, assumed by their consorts. At their meals, they sit at table by themselves, and are waited on as others customarily are, by their husband's

concubines.

The children of both, however, are equally legitimate, and are equal partakers in their father's fortune; and whenever it happens that one of these concubines is safely delivered of a child, whether male or female, it is very observable, that the lawful wife is over-joyed on that happy occasion, in consideration that her consort's honour is greatly advanced by that production, who, when he has an inclination to favour her with his company, in the first place, sends one of his eunuchs to her apartment, for each has a separate one, with express orders for her to bathe and purify herself, which orders she very readily and punctually obeys, and then dresses herself to the best advantage for the reception of her lord. These concubines eat in common together; but no other company is admitted to join them.

The king takes to himself as many wives as he thinks proper; and makes his choice of them, for the most part, out of the maidens who are natives either of (r) Georgia or (k) Armenia, or such other Christian maidens as he approves of most. There is a perfect equality between all these royal consorts; and the first son that is born of either of them is immediate heir to the crown, without the least regard to the happy lady who is his mother: nor does this important circumstance give her the least preeminence over the other consorts.

Whenever this prince takes the least disgust to any one of his royal consorts, and it is his will and pleasure to turn her out of the seraglio; in case she has had no child by him, he marries her to whomsoever he sees convenient, and frequently to some private person of no rank or quality at all.

I shall now proceed to the customs which are observed by the Persians at their respective deaths, and the days of their interment.

In about three or four hours after the decease, either of a man or woman, a *Mola*, as they call their ecclesiastics, is sent for, who runs through a certain number of prayers, and performs some other offices of his

1704

The funeral  
rites of the  
Persians.



1704 his holy function; and immediately afterwards the body of the deceased is put into a coffin, which is carried away directly to the washing-place, which stands always in an out-house, set apart for that particular purpose, in order to be there washed and purified: the bearers are for the most part common porters; and these are preceded by singers, and others with slaves in their hands, as also rods and streamers: the relations follow the dead corpse, and as they move solemnly along, they rend their vestments, tear their hair, beat their breasts, and act the parts of persons in despair. The remains of such as were persons of high rank and distinction, are surrounded by several of their ecclesiastics, and others, who are hired to hawl out their doleful dirges. The friends, likewise, that attend them make most piteous lamentations; but these outward marks, or testimonies of the deepest sorrow, are too frequently insincere, and more the effects of custom, than any real sorrow that affects them to such a violent degree. Neither the friends, nor relations change their usual dresses, on these melancholy occasions, except those who precede the corpse; and some few others, who flap down one end of the pleats, or folds of their turbans. As to the rest they do not move regularly two by two, but promiscuously, without the observance of the least order or decorum.

After they have been at the washing-place, and have purified the body to their satisfaction, they make use of some cotton, with which they stop up all apertures, such as the ears, the nostrils, and the mouth. All the difference that is observed in the interment of a man from a woman is only this; namely, if the person deceased be a man, the body is washed in form by his own sex; and if a woman, by her's; and they are carried directly from the washing place to the grave by the persons only who attended at their ablution; at the grave, indeed, there is a kind of funeral service, and some other petty ceremonies consequent thereupon. After this the remains of the deceased are wrapped up in a winding-sheet, and committed to the earth, taking

particular care, at the same time, that the body rests on its left-side, with the head directly to the east and the feet to the west, and with the face always turned towards the sepulchre, or tomb of their great prophet Mohammed. After these precautions, they erect a vault of earth, or clay over the body, and fill up the grave, on which they place a head-stone, or erect a monument, and very often a dome over it, in case the deceased was a person of high birth and distinction.

Sometimes his majesty himself will honour their remains with a royal sepulchre, which is afterwards looked upon as sacred, and from thenceforth approached with a peculiar veneration. Some of these sepulchral monuments are erected in the form of a temple, with fine azure domes over them, which are all glazed, and have a charming effect.

As to the Persian money, the greatest part of their current silver coin, is that, which they call their *Hassan-denaire*, that is to say, a piece of the value of ten *Mamoedjies*, that is to say, of eight-pence, German money. They have likewise a coin, called by them *Daezajies*, or a piece of the value only of five of their *Mamoedjies*; another called *Paenzajie*, of half the value only of the former; they have still smaller pieces, called their *Abbasries*, the value whereof is no more than of two *Mamoedjies*; and others again of one, whereof there are two sorts, which were coined by his present majesty's predecessors; and these they call *Mamoedjies-haviese*; there is great plenty of this last-mentioned coin all over the country, because there are no merchants, who think it worth their while either to carry, or send it into foreign parts. It is current, in short, over all his majesty's dominions, for foreign commodities as well as their own manufactures, nor is any other indeed made use of. They have, moreover, a coin, which they call their *Zaejus*, that is one moiety or half part only of a *Mamoedjie*. His majesty causes but very few, if any, to be coined of the two first kinds above-mentioned, and then only for the service of the poor, and that only

The Persian  
coin counts



1704

at some certain times of the year. These last are likewise so very scarce, that they are seldom to be seen any where, but in the hands of the curious; because there is some trivial difference in their value and weight from the Mamoodjies, and the Zarjies, which are coined at present. The true reason whereof is this; namely, that these three last coins were reduced to a just standard in the years 1684 and 1685. The officers of the mint, however, have diminished the value of them, out of their insatiable thirst after riches, to which the indolence and neglect of the government contributed not a little. Nor had the grievance been ever remedied at all, if the people, who murmured at it, had not made their complaints to the ministers at court, who, in order to make them easy, and prevent any public tumults, broke several of those officers, and substituted others in their room, who rectified what had been done amiss by their predecessors, nor can this step be wondered at, since they were discharged, without any punishment annexed, for their misdemeanors. These coins are not current at all in the way of trade, in which nothing will pass but their Mamoodjies-havaise, a coin that was stamped under the antient kings. As this is the case, the merchants look out for them as diligently as possible, and will sometimes give one, two, or three; nay sometimes even six per cent. for them beyond their intrinsic value; insomuch that, they carry on a prodigious trade with this coin, which is hoarded up by the tradesmen, as soon as ever it appears in public, who send it away directly to (l) Surat, where they find it turns to a much

better account than if they purchased ducats.

The Persians have likewise two sorts of copper coin, the largest whereof, and that which is one tenth part of a Mamoodjie is round; the smaller, which is long, is worth no more than the twenty fifth part of a Mamoodjie.

There is but very little gold coin, if any, to be met with throughout all Persia. I have seen, however, some ducats there, but then they are very scarce and very light.

All the wares or commodities that are brought from (m) Gomron, or Gombroon, and the money sent thither by bills of exchange, are negotiated by Banians, or Indian brokers, and the money is carried to the (n) East-Indies all in ducats.

The king of Persia is, by contract, obliged to deliver every year to our Dutch East-India company, one hundred bales of silk; each bale to contain four hundred and eight pounds, Dutch weight; amounting in the whole to four thousand eight hundred weight.

And the company, by way of return, send no less than twelve hundred chests of sugar to Isfahan; each chest containing one hundred and fifty pounds weight, in the whole eighteen hundred thousand pounds weight; all which is consumed in that last-mentioned city only.

As soon as the over-seeer and other inferior officers have received the aforesaid silk, they sort it, and make it up in lesser bales, which they send to Gomron before-mentioned upon horses; and from thence ship it off to (o) Batavia.

1704

A great trade was not on foot between the king of Persia and the Dutch East-India company.

#### Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

(a) Persia, see p. 64. n. a.

(b) Turkey, see p. 203. n. c.

(c) Isfahan, see p. 109. n. m.

(d) Holland, see p. 76. n. c.

(e) Italy, see p. 210. n. m.

(f) Armenia, see p. 198. n. g.

(g) Germany, see p. 204. n. g.

(h) Rome, see p. 108. n. g.

(i) Georgia, in Asia, see p. 107. n. d.

(k) Armenia, see p. 198. n. g.

4 L

(l) Su-



1704

(1) Surat, east long. 72. 20. lat. 21. 30. a city, and port town of the hither India, in Asia, in the province of Guzurat, or Cambaya, situate on the river Tapre, ten miles east of the Indian Sea, 160 miles north of Bombay, and as many south of Cambaya City, being defended only by a slight wall, and some antique forts, and is about three miles in circumference, but very populous, and vastly rich. The English, French and Dutch have their factors here, and trade very largely: but the Moors, Armenians, Banians, Arabs, and Jews, are much greater merchants. The English president lives in the state of a prince; has his coaches, palanquins, and led-horses, richly equipped; and when he goes abroad has his guards, and a numerous retinue; the Europeans finding it necessary for their officers and servants to make a grand appearance among the eastern people. The president is usually governor of Bombay, and of all the English settlements upon the western coasts of India, and has almost as much respect paid him as the governor of Surat.

The Mogul gives his trading subjects all imaginable encouragement, as well as those foreign merchants who resort to his ports, tho' he be an absolute prince; but the Dutch are best used, and pay the least customs; for, if his officers demand more than they think fit to pay, they have a fleet of men of war in India, with which

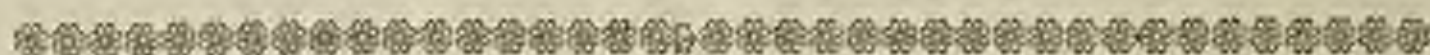
they block up his ports, and compel the government to submit to their terms.

(m) Gomron, or Gombron, see p. 262. n. w.

(n) India (proper) see p. 213. n. d.

(s) Batavia, east longitude 106. south latitude 6. the capital of all the Dutch colonies and settlements in India, and an excellent harbour, situate on the north east part of the island of Java, south-east of the island of Sumatra, and south west of Borneo. It is a most beautiful city, built with white stone; and canals, planted with ever-greens, run through their principal streets. The inhabitants are a mixture of many nations, whom the Dutch have removed from other oriental islands, and a large colony of the Chinese, many thousands of whom were lately massacred, and their wealth seized by the Dutch, who are so powerful both in ships of war and land forces at Batavia, that they command all the Indian Seas, and put what terms they please upon the powers of Asia, whose countries lie in those seas, and on the European merchants that traffic thither, which is evident from their monopolizing all the fine spices in the east.

1704



## C H A P. XLV.

*A short Description of some of the most remarkable Birds in (a) Persia; as also of some of its various Productions, namely, its Trees, Fruits, Plants, and Flowers; with the current Price of its Provisions, of which there is Plenty; concluding with a succinct Account of a particular Drug there, or Kind of Gum, distinguished by the name of Mummy, which is very valuable, and unknown to many even of the Natives themselves.*

HAVING expatiated as far as I thought proper on the various customs peculiar to this country in the preceding chapter; I shall proceed in this to entertain the reader with a succinct account of its various productions; and accordingly, I shall begin with a description of those particular birds of which I have given distinct representations in plate

(No 91) hereto annexed.

That which is distinguished by the capital (A) is by the natives called the angert, of which I have made some mention before in the course of my travels: as I painted this, however, from the life, I found upon examination, a material difference in this from those before treated of; for this had a black collar about the neck

Pl. 91.

The angert.

Persian Birds.

of



1704

Their nests  
save.

of it; and its wings were greener than any of the species I ever saw before.

Those birds which are marked with a capital (B) are turtle-doves, which, like the former, have a black ring, or circle round their necks, and for that reason are called by the natives, Fargter-toog-begerde, that is to say, turtle-doves with black collars about their necks. Those again distinguished by the letter (C) are called simply Fargters; and that marked (D) is distinguished by the name of Chæg-sehs, that is to say, the green crow. Those which we have distinguished by the capital (E) are called by the natives Gonsjeszerde, which seldom make their appearance till the corn begins to shoot up; then they build their nests in it, and when the harvest draws near at hand, they withdraw to some more commodious situation, by natural instinct. Of these last, there are no less than four or five different sorts.

Pl. 32.

In the Plate (No. 92) hereto annexed the bird that I have distinguished by the capital (A) is a spotted turtle-dove; and has streaks both of black and white about its neck: this bird resides, for the most part, in the mountains.

That distinguished by the capital (B) is called an Alla-fargter, that is to say, a green turtle. The mark (C) points out a bird that is spotted with black and white, and called there Mahi-gieeck, that is to say, the fisher; and their reason for that distinction is this; because it never abandons, or flies from the banks of the rivers, or lakes, as that called the gull very frequently does. The capital (D) points out two other Mahi-gieecks, which are but small birds, and are blue and green on the beak; the feathers on their breasts are of an orange colour, and bear their name; because they are seldom, if ever to be met with, but on such trees as grow by the water side. The body of the bird, distinguished by the letter (E) is of a lively green, but its neck is yellow. The capital (F) shews a bird that is black and grey, intermixt with white, and spotted with yellow. It is called the Dregtken, that is to say, the wood-pecker; because it

keeps forever pecking at the tree wherein it perches; and strikes it, at the same time, with such force, that the sound thereof may be distinctly heard at a considerable distance. That bird which is distinguished by the letter (G) is marbled both before and behind; but his breast is streaked with white and grey. This is called the Morje-inshir, or the Becon-fico, and delights in being warm. Its note is exceedingly sweet; and when killed and dressed, it is a very luscious morsel, but then it is very seldom to be met with.

In the Plate (No 93) hereto annexed is delineated the bird called the Backer-Kara. This, however, is universally known all over (d) Turkey; and is frequently met with in the island of (e) Cyprus. This bird is somewhat larger than a partridge; its flesh too, when dressed, is much whiter, and the taste of it is far more delicious. As to the rest, the back of it is parti-coloured; its breast is white and grey; and its neck is streaked; as may plainly be perceived by the Plate (No. 94) hereto annexed. The two birds which are delineated in Plate (No. 95) are called Bolbol; and the notes of both are so sweet, that the nightingale herself scarcely excels them. They were drawn from the life; their heads were black and white; but the rest of their feathers are grey, excepting those on the belly, which are yellow, and the tip of the tail which is white.

We shall proceed, in the next place, to give our readers a short description of such trees, fruits, plants and flowers, as are in these parts, worth the attention of the curious.

And among all their trees, that of the fena, which is unknown in any other country, is of the highest esteem. The natives of (d) Ispahan will assure you, that the very first which was ever brought thither, came from a place called Icefd, which is situate about seven or eight days journey from that city. Some of these truly valuable trees are twenty, and others again five and twenty palms in circumference; more particularly those that are standing in the Chiaer-bæg; there are some few again, however, which I have met

1704

Pl. 31.  
The Backer-Kara

Pl. 92.

Pl. 93.

The trees.

The fena.



1704 met with by accident, that have exceeded even the last dimensions. For the generality they rise to the height of between forty and fifty feet, and stand as erect as the mast of any ship, with no branches, some few at the very top only excepted. The bark of this tree is of a bright grey colour; and its leaves are exactly like those delineated in the plate (96) hereto annexed. The carpenters here make gates, doors, and window-shutters, with the planks of it; the inside is marbled with yellow, and is in high repute all over the country. A single tree of the largest dimensions is worth an hundred rixdollars, at least, if not more.

These results  
also are  
free.

PL 97.

The pistachio nut-tree is likewise of a large bulk. It has a fine head, and abounds with fruit. The leaves of it bear a near resemblance to those of the laurel; with this difference only, that they are larger, and somewhat rounder. In Plate (No. 97.) is delineated a branch of it which is distinguished by the letter (A). Its bark is of a mixed colour; when in its full vigour, 'tis red and yellow; but before it comes to maturity, it is yellow mixed with a lively green. As to the leaves thereof, they are yellow and red. Of the nut-shell are made comfits, which are highly esteemed here; and as to the kernels, they are gathered frequently before they are near ripe, and pickled, much after the same manner as the Dutch do green cucumbers in (e) Holland. In the mountains there are several of these trees to be met with; but then the nuts which they produce are very small. From the bodies, or branches of these trees, when wounded, flows a kind of gum, which the inhabitants take care to catch in a clay-cup, which they keep for that particular purpose. This gum has the exact smell of terebinth, or turpentine, and is of much the same colour. This is carefully collected in the month of August, and afterwards put up in little leathern bags for public sale. This gum is looked upon as a most excellent ointment.

TIME  
SCHEDULE

The third tree, most in vogue here, is what the natives call the Semaeg. This bears a near resemblance to the alder-tree,

with this difference only, that the leaves thereof are somewhat shorter, and are more fibrous. Add to this, that they are pointed in their roundness. I have distinguished the fruit of this tree by the letter (B) which resembles, in some measure, the tail of a cat, and is full of small excrescences. As to the taste of it, 'tis as sour as verjuice. The cooks there make use of it in their sauces; and when it is dry, it is frequently pounded to powder, and eaten with roast-meat. Their Apothecaries likewise make use of it, and mix it with rose-water, in order to rinse the mouth and gums; for it is looked upon as an excellent preservative against the scurvy.

The Persians have, moreover, a shrub, which they call Kakienet, or Aketinsiae, that rises only about two feet above the ground; the branches whereof shoot out so far that they can scarce support themselves. Each branch bears a number of fruit (some more, some less) which resembles a bell that is closed in. As to its colour, it is both within and without of a deep red, like a Seville orange. The letter (C) points out a branch of it, laden with its fruit. This fruit is medicinal also, and when dried is an excellent styptic. The apothecaries make it up into small cakes, called Trocisch-Alkekingi, which sometimes are converted into pills, by being previously boiled in water and turpentine mixt; and then they are usually swallowed down by the patients in a glass of wine.

Their Annaeb (as they call it) is a tree of tolerable growth; the fruit whereof resembles the olive before it is ripe, but becomes afterwards as red as a cherry. It has a very pleasant taste, notwithstanding it is made use of medicinally like the former. The letter (D) points out a branch of it; and all the drawings were taken from nature.

The principal fruits that are to be met with in Persia are almonds, pistachionuts, and peaches, of which last they have five or six different sorts; some large, others small; some whereof will part from their stones, and some again will not.

Those

1704

THE KID  
LION.

Their An-  
 nals.

Their principal train-



1704

Those that part with their stones readily are called Shest-aloe; the others are distinguished by the name of Hoe-loe; some of these are covered with a blue like plumbs; others again are much like apricots; but the small ones are for the most part of a yellowish hue.

Their apricots

They have ten or a dozen sorts of their apricots; each of which has a name peculiar to itself; but in general they are called Zarda-loe.

Their cherries

As to cherries, this country does not abound with them; they have some few, however, which are like those in (f) Spain; and the rest like black morellas; the former are distinguished by the name of Gielar; and the latter are called the Aloe-baloe.

Their pears

The Persians have, however, apples in plenty of divers sorts; to which, in general, they give the name of Sien; they have pears likewise; and those too of various kinds; and the Bergamot, amongst others, winter-pears, and summer-pears; some of which are exceedingly large; as are some of their Bergamots just mentioned which will keep good all the year round.

Their plums

They have plums likewise in abundance, and of these too four several sorts and different colours; namely, white, red, blue and yellow. They eat the white plums, before they are well half ripe with salt; but their blue ones are the very same as the Brignoles in (g) France.

Their quinces

They have quince-trees, moreover, of three different sorts, the fruit whereof is exceedingly agreeable, and eaten as apples or pears. These the natives call their De-bée. They are for the most part very large, and as proper for preserving, as to be eaten directly from the tree. They have likewise walnuts and small nuts in abundance.

Their pomegranates

They have plenty likewise of pomegranate-trees, the fruit whereof is very delicious and refreshing. Some of these trees, however, bear no fruit at all, and produce a large red flower only, not much unlike a poppy. Some of these trees have their leaves streaked with white, and make a beautiful appearance; others again are per-

fectly yellow. My curiosity induced me to paint several of them in their proper colours, as the reader will find them drawn in plate (98) And in plate (99) I have given him a representation of a very pretty tree; the branches whereof bend down to the very ground: This last is called the Biede-Makalagie, and the leaves of it, are long, fine and thin.

1704

Their figs are but small; and besides, they are all of one sort.

Their figs

As to their grapes, they have ten or a dozen sorts of them; which are called, in general, their Angoer; notwithstanding each sort has a name peculiar to itself. As to their colours, some sorts are blue, others white; and as to their form or shape, some are long and others round. All of them, however, are very large. Some again are very luscious, and have stones in them and others no stone at all. Some sorts have bunches the grapes whereof are of various sizes; some large and some small, quite different from any I ever met with in my travels before. Great quantities of these are dried annually, and then converted into comfits; thus prepared they close them up in little earthen pots, and send them to Batavia and the parts adjacent.

Their grapes

The method they observe in the potting them is this; in the first place they are very curious in their choice of the finest fruit; then they put them in a neat stone-jar, and cover them with rose leaves; after that, they cover the mouth of the pot with substantial paper, or thin leather, in so close a manner, that no air can gain admission; when they have proceeded thus far, they let them stand untouched for some days; after which they break the neck of the jar, or vessel, and take away the rose-leaves; and separate the grapes; which when sufficiently dry, they put them into a fresh jar, and then send them to such markets either far or near as they see most convenient. The rose-leaves are spread over them with no other view than to give them an agreeable flavour: but in the removal of them particular care is always taken that none are left behind, for fear they should in time have a bad effect on



1704 the fruit. At the same time that they send these their potted grapes away to foreign parts, they export their almonds and pistachio-nuts to the (i) Indies, from whence they receive sweet-meats and other dainties in exchange.

Their plants  
and roots.

There is as great a profusion of plants and roots in Persia, as there is of their fruits.

Their large  
melons.

They have no less than five and twenty different sorts of melons; they are called, indeed, Garbie-fa, in general, notwithstanding each has a name peculiar to itself. They are all, however, excellent in their kind. Some are so large, as to weigh twenty pounds apiece; which all the year round are kept up, in such cool and close places, but more especially in the summer-time, as that the rays of the sun can have no influence over them. And for that purpose they take care to have a sufficient quantity of snow by them, which they have the art of condensing into ice for the refreshment of their wines. These large melons are called Garbie-fai-belgience. The first melons that make their appearance are for the most part perfectly white; and though more wholesome than the rest yet they are but little regarded as they are unpalatable and insipid.

Their water  
melons.

They have plenty, moreover, of water-melons. There are no less than four or five sorts of these; some white and others red; the name by which they are distinguished is the Hindoen.

Their cit-  
ruls.

They abound, likewise, with what they call their small citruls; some whereof are streaked with green and black, and strike the eye agreeably enough; others again are marbled with a variety of colours; and are much of the size of a china orange. The reader will find that I have given him in the Plate (100) hereto annexed, an exact representation of this last fruit; together with some sorts of their peaches; and another fruit in particular, which they call Chamama; that is to say, of the form of a woman's breast; and as to its colour of a lively red. I have preserved the stone or seed of this fruit, and a bunch of those particular grapes, which I before hinted

were uncommon; and not all on a size, though on one and the same stalk.

1704

Their various  
producers  
trees of  
their kitchen  
garden.

Persia produces likewise, in great plenty, all sorts of carrots, beet-roots, and parsnips, radishes, horse-radish, turnips, topinambers, mushrooms, and colly-flowers of an extraordinary bulk; some whereof will weigh between twelve and fourteen pounds apiece; they have favoys also and asparagus, artichokes, celery, leeks, onions, shallots, water-creffes, dragon-wort, parsley, chervil, mint, coriander, anniseed, sorrel, purslane, marjoram, sage, borage, cabbage-lettice, and succory; as also roman lettice, which has a long leaf, and is eaten by the Persians, as apples, in the hand; this root in particular is exceedingly sweet, and perfectly agreeable to the taste: neither is there the least want either of rue or spinage.

I shall now proceed to a succinct account of their flowers. This country produces tulips and carnations in abundance; but then they are not to be boasted of for their beauty. The Persians have likewise their lillies, their robe-roses, the narcissus, and several sorts of jonquils, their hyacinth, the marvel of (k) Pera, the mallow, the sun-flower, the mulk-flower, violets and marigolds; most of which, as their own are but very indifferent, are brought to Persia, from (l) Europe. They have moreover, the flowers of saffron, of all sorts; tho' the finest come from (m) Masanderan, notwithstanding both white and red roses are very common there; yet they make large quantities of rose water, which are sent away to India, and other foreign parts. Notwithstanding such exportation their home-consumption of it is very considerable; for the Persians are great admirers of perfumes; and never fail to sprinkle their guests, at any public entertainment with this sweet-scented innocent liquids, as it leaves no stain behind it.

They have also two sorts of jessamine. The best bears a near resemblance to the same flower in (n) Italy with respect to form; but then there is a wide difference in point of smell. The other is more com-

mon,

mon, and was up for  
height; but it seems  
not to be more effect-  
ual than their other  
pessible manner.  
Besides all this, the  
Persians, Persians abound  
with all sorts of fruit, and  
various of poultry &c.  
There you may purchase  
a goose, a pullet for  
purridge for a trifling  
sum are not much higher  
a pigeon. A wild  
bought for about 10  
pence, and other  
These capons are raised  
and indeed for poultry  
have an intention to make  
to my much respect  
They have large  
with in plenty; lemons  
and, oranges, wood-pigeons  
thrushes, and partridges  
of all sorts. These  
taken care by the  
Persians.  
Though the Persians  
get every kind of deer  
though. You may be  
better than half-price.  
Persians of the whole  
all this is killed in a  
and sold these  
The price of mutton  
much the same, in the  
as the winter approach  
In this country there  
wolves and bears, but  
small.  
Their bread, and  
per, is killed for the  
ground, and their  
may be purchased at  
it commonly about  
The Persians, as to  
their houses with  
what, however, is  
but before it is ripe  
sprinkled over with  
it shows the house as  
commodity.



1704

Provisions  
in plenty.

mon, and runs up some trees to a great height; but it seems to embrace the sena-tree with more affection than any other. Nothing can strike the eye in a more agreeable manner.

Besides all that has been hitherto mentioned, Persia abounds with all the necessities of life, and particularly with a great variety of poultry both wild and tame. There you may purchase a fine fat hen for six-pence, a pullet for four-pence, and a partridge for a shilling. Of these indeed, some are not much bigger than a quail, or a pigeon. A wild duck there may be bought for about seven-pence or eight-pence, and other fowl in proportion. Their capons are excessively fat, and scarce; and indeed few purchase them, unless they have an intention to make presents of them to any much respected friend.

They have snipes and woodcocks likewise in plenty; several sorts of wild ducks, teal, cranes, wood-pigeons, turtles, larks, thrushes, and partridges, the heads whereof are all red. These last are only to be taken either by the hawk, or to be shot flying.

Though the Persians abound in cattle yet every kind of deer is scarce and costly enough. You may buy good beef for about three half-pence a pound; but as few Persians of any substance will eat it, almost all that is killed is carried to (s) Julpha, and sold there amongst the Christians. The price of mutton and goats flesh is much the same, in the summer season; but as the winter approaches it grows dearer. In this country there are abundance of wolves and foxes; but then they are very small.

The price  
of bread,  
wheat, bar-  
ley, rice, &c.

Their bread, and wheat, for the most part, is sold for about three farthings a pound, and their barley, if not winnowed, may be purchased cheaper. Rice, indeed, is commonly about two pence a pound. The Persians, as they have no oats, feed their horses with barley; they have Spanish wheat, however, in plenty, which they dress before it is ripe; and after they have sprinkled it over with salt water, they cry it about the streets as common as any other commodity.

The butter, which they make use of in their sauces, &c. is generally sold after the rate of a *horin* for two pounds; but their fresh butter, indeed, which is exceedingly good, will bear a better price.

The oil, which is used there generally for the same purposes, is made of the seed of what they call the *Koutjae*, and bears a near resemblance to our European olive oil; but the smell of it, indeed, is much stronger. The price is usually about five farthings a pound. They have another sort, however, extracted from the seed which they call the *Kousje*, which is, doubtless, much better; but then 'tis double the price.

Maize seed, which by the East-Indians is called *Kajang*, is much in vogue, and frequently made use of in their sauces; Persia produces, moreover, great plenty of red and white beans; but then they are small, and bear some resemblance to those in Turkey, as also of white and grey peas, small black beans with which they feed their horses, and green peas of the growth of Europe.

Wood in this country is very scarce and very dear. You cannot purchase twelve pounds of it only, under four-pence or five-pence; and coals in proportion bear the same heavy price.

For which reason, the poorer sort of the inhabitants make use of the dung of their camels, horses, cows, &c. when well dried, for their firing, instead of wood, or coals: nay the Armenian merchants themselves at Julpha make use of the same expedient; for otherwise their firing would be more expensive than their victuals. As to their turf, indeed, or camels dung, it is reasonable enough; for they can have two thousand weight of it for about thirty-pence. This camel's dung is chiefly made use of for heating their ovens, in which they bake most of their meat in this country, which is attended with very little trouble and but a small expence. The general use that is made of this camel's dung, and all other turf of the like nature, contributes not a little to the cleanliness of their high-ways, or common-roads, which are sure to be cleansed from all such kind

1704

That int-  
to.

That all.

That being  
damp and  
dear.

Make use of  
camel's dung  
&c. instead  
of coals or  
wood.



1704 of filth not only for the purpose of firing  
as above-mentioned, but for the cultivation  
likewise of their lands. Nay some of the  
poorer sort will apply human ordure to the  
same use.

Their tool  
called rug-  
rug.

They have a particular root, called rugnas, which I had almost forgot to mention. This is the same which the Indians call Solyman-dostyn, and this they find in the province of Shirwan, and in the parts adjacent to the city of (p) Tauris, or Tabris.

They carry on a great trade to the Indies with this fingle commodity, where one year with another, they fend no lefs than three hundred packs of it, each pack containing one hundred and fifty pounds weight and upwards. Twelve pounds of it, bare weight, which they call the Mansha, is for the most part, worth twelve Mamoejdies, which is equivalent to five florins or two rixdollars.

Their com-  
 piment.

They send likewise, to the Indies from Tauris before-mentioned, and from (g) Casbin, or Caswin, one year with another seven or eight hundred hampers of what they call Zernig, that is to say orpiment, or auripigmentum. Each of these hampers contain about one hundred and fifty pounds weight, or better; and each pound, according to its degree of goodness, is worth from three quarters of a crown to three half crowns. This orpiment is much used by the Persian painters; but it is appropriated, however, to divers other purposes. They send great quantities of it, likewise, if I am not mistaken, into Turkey.

Moreover, this country produces a very precious drug, to which some of the Persians themselves are perfect strangers. It is a sort of gum, which they call mummy, and find it in some certain ruins and grotts near the city of Laer, or Lahor. It is soft, and as black as pitch; but has a much more agreeable smell, and drops from the rocks. That which affords the best is locked and sealed up: and no one except the governor of the city himself, and some few of the grandees are permitted to go in, and collect a part of it for the king's use. And as all of them together do not collect above eight or ten ounces of it throughout

the year, it must of course be a very scarce and valuable commodity.

This gum is a sovereign specific where any bone happens to be broken; and such is its secret virtue, as I have been assured by adepts in medicine, that though a man's bones should be ever so unfortunately bruised or even broken, it will give the patient relief in the compass only of four and twenty hours. For this purpose they melt a little pile of this gum, about the bigness of a pea in a spoon, and mix it up with butter. This the patient is ordered to take inwardly, in the first place, and then to apply the same quantity, or rather more to the part affected, or in proportion, according as the case requires: and for a broken leg, they use splints, and then bind it tight about with a linnen roller.

The discovery of this very valuable medicine is ascribed to a sportsman, who had broken the leg of a stag, which notwithstanding made its escape. This sportsman, as the story is related, returning to the chase the very next day, shot, as he imagined, at another stag, but was much surprised, when he found it was the identical creature whose leg he had broken the day before; and more so, when he perceived that the wound was almost cured.

This report being industriously spread abroad, the suddenness of the cure was at once ascribed to the virtue of this mummy, as the affair was transacted near the spot where this healing elixir drops. Many experiments on other wounds was made afterwards with this gum, and had always the desired effect, which was sufficient doubtless to establish its reputation.

The Persians find another sort of this gum in the province of Lorestan, which answers the same happy end, indeed, but then its virtue is not so conspicuous, nor is the wound so suddenly healed. The difference between these two sort of gums is known immediately by putting a small quantity of each on a red hot coal: the smoke of the former has a very pleasant smell, whereas that of the latter favours greatly of pitch: the most convincing proof, however, is procured by breaking the leg of a fowl, and then by making an

1704



1704 immediate application of the gum as above directed. This experiment has frequently been made. In a word, as this mummy, or gum, is wholly and solely the property of his majesty, and as the produce of it is so very small, it is not easy to be procured, much less to be purchased.

Those, however, into whose hands this precious commodity is entrusted, do some-

times send a small quantity of it privately to a prime-minister, or so; by way of present.

That of Lorestan may with less difficulty be procured; as there are larger quantities of it in that province; and I flatter my self, if I am not greatly deceived, that I have some of the former as well as the latter.

*Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.*

(a) Persia, see p. 64. n. e.

(b) Turkey, see p. 203. n. e.

(c) Cyprus, (the island of) see p. 109. n. l.

(d) Isfahan, or Spahawn, see p. 109. n. m.

(e) Holland, see p. 76. n. e.

(f) Spain, see p. 283. n. p.

(g) France, see p. 214. n. m.

(h) Batavia, see p. 314. n. o.

(i) India, (proper) see p. 213. n. d.

(k) Peru, formerly a powerful empire, now a province of Spain in South America, is situate between sixty and eighty one degrees of west long. and between the equator and twenty five degrees of south lat. being near two thousand miles in length, from north to south, and from two hundred to five hundred broad; bounded by Popayan on the north, by the mountains of Andes, or Cordilleras, which separate it from the country of the Amazons and Paraguay, on the east; by Chili, and La Placenta on the south; and by the Pacific Ocean on the west. The capital city now is Lima, formerly Cusco. The land next the sea is high; the sierras, or mountains, beyond which, run parallel to the former, are still higher, and the Andes, beyond these, are the highest mountains in the world. The land near the sea is, for the most part, a barren desert, except some valleys, into which they turn the streams from the hills; the hills beyond, also, are generally barren; but between the hills are very extensive, fruitful valleys, yielding almost all manner of grain and fruits; and

the weather temperate. The mountains of the Andes are cold, being covered with snow the greatest part of the year.

The sea, which borders on Peru, is called the South Sea, but more properly the Pacific Ocean, from the constant serene weather on this coast from four degrees south lat. to twenty five. Nor is there ever any rain on this coast, or the sea near it, unless within four or five degrees of the line, where they have always rain, when the sun is vertical, as in other parts of the globe near the line: on the sierras, or hills, distant from the sea-side, the rains fall when the sun is vertical also; and on the cordilleros, or high mountains, farthest from the sea, it rains on snows, two thirds of the year. Their vintage is in the fair season, and their vines thrive best in those valleys near the sea, where there is little or no rain, and which are watered by rivulets that fall from the hills, and are collected by the husbandman, and turned into his fields and gardens. Near the equator there grow cedars, cotton-trees, cocones, sugar-canes, palms, and a great deal of good timber; but very few forest-trees in any other part of Peru. The most valuable tree the natives have, is that which furnishes them with Kinguma, or peruvian bark; and this grows chiefly in the province of Quito, on the mountains, near the city of Quito, about five degrees south of the Equator, and is of the size of a cherry-tree, bearing a long, reddish flower, from whence arises a pod with a kernel like an almond; but the fruit does not seem to have the like virtues as the bark; they have trees, also, that afford this kind of bark in Potosi, in one and twenty degrees south lat. Maiz, or Indian corn, was their principal food; and of this also they made drink; but the Spaniards have introduced wheat and barley, which thrive very well here; and their vineyards, which they have planted, yield plenty of grapes, where they can be watered,



1704 but the country is so hot and dry, that the soil will produce no grapes where it is not watered. They have ripe grapes whenever they please, where they have an opportunity of watering them, by turning rivulets into their grounds; they make excellent wines, which cannot be done in any other country between the Tropics. The Spaniards have planted almost all the fruits which grow in old Spain; and these thrive very well here, as well as rice, and the produce of the kitchen-garden. A great many excellent balms, gums and drugs, also are found here, and particularly that, called the balsam of Peru. But what the Spaniards value this country for most, is the prodigious treasures of gold and silver they have drawn from thence for two hundred years past: from the mountain of Potosi alone, which lies in twenty two degrees of south lat. there was drawn two thousand millions of pieces of eight, the first forty years they were wrought; there are also rich mines of quicksilver in Peru, and some pretious stones; particularly emeralds, and turquoises. As to animals, there were not in Peru, or any part of America, any horses, cows, elephants, camels, asses, mules, sheep or hogs; and but one poor species of cur-dogs, before the Spaniards arrived; but they have since carried over all manner of European animals almost, which are exceedingly multiplied: but they had a breed of animals, which the natives call pacos, and guanacas, and the Spaniards peruvian sheep; because they bore some resemblance to our European sheep, but larger, and used to carry burdens, having no other beasts of burden; their flesh also is very good meat. They had another beast called vicunas, which the Spaniards named goats, because they were something like our goats; but they have no horns, and are swifter than deer; they had also red and fallow deer, and some few lions, bears and tygers; but neither so large, or so fierce as those of Europe; and there were great numbers of monkeys; but they had neither cats nor rats,

though the last have multiplied so much since the Spaniards came over, that they sometimes destroy their crops of grain in Peru, as they do in the island of St. Helena; nor were there any tame fowls or poultry here, till they were imported. They had all manner of wild fowl almost, and a great variety of birds, particularly parrots, and a fowl called a cowder, so large, that they measured fifteen or sixteen feet, with their wings extended: these would kill and devour cattle, and sometimes children of ten or eleven years of age; but there are few of these fowls.

The Peruvians were idolaters, and worshipped the sun chiefly; but the Spaniards have compelled them to turn Christians, and profess another kind of idolatry, on pain of the inquisition; many thousands of them were murdered by the Spaniards, after their arrival, on pretence of their infidelity, and refusing to submit to the pope, or the king of Spain; but, in reality, to become masters of their treasure, and usurp the dominion of the country, where to this day the Spaniards oppress and tyrannize, not only over those that are descended from the Indians, but the Criols, who are descended from the Spaniards themselves.

(1) Europe, see p. 127. n. 22.

(m) Masanderan, see p. 301. n. 4.

(l) Italy, see p. 210. n. 20.

(e) Julpha, or Julpha, see p. 262. n. 2.

(p) Tauris, or Tabris, see p. 242. n. 1.

(q) Casbin, or Caswin, east long. 48. lat. 36, a city of the province of Eyrac Agem in Persia, in Asia, situate 180 miles north of Isfahan.

(r) Laer, or Lahor, see p. 210. n. 1.

# CHAP.



1704

1704

CHAP. XLVI.

*A succinct Account of the Town, or Suburb of (a) Julpha. Of the Habits, or Dress, of the Natives of (b) Armenia. Of the Customs observed by them at Births, Marriages and Burials. Of their peculiar Way of Life, and the Manner in which they educate their Children. Of the Natives of (c) Europe, who reside in the City. And lastly, of such Ministers as attend at the Court of (d) Persia, in the Name of their Christian Masters, for the Transaction of their public Affairs.*

A description of the town of Julpha.

THE town, or suburb of Julpha, near (e) Isfahan, is divided into several parts, or districts; but more particularly into the old and new colony: the former, which is distinguished by the name of Soeg-ga, is inhabited by the most substantial merchants; and we are informed, that their ancestors resorted thither from very remote parts, and even from the frontiers of (f) Turkey, in the reign of king Abbas the Great; and that that prince assigned over some certain lands to them for their better maintenance and support.

They tell us likewise, that the Gowres, who were the antient disciples of Zoroaster, settled there also, together with some particular strangers, of whom we shall speak more largely in the prosecution of these our travels.

New Julpha is situate higher up, and subdivided into divers districts. The first division is that called Gaif-rabaet, or Koets, which is full of stone-cutters, whose principal employ is the erection of stone edifices and sepulchral monuments. The second is principally inhabited by weavers, and artificers in stuffs; most of them Persians, tho' there are some few natives of (g) France amongst them. The third is called Toest, or Samsha-baet. This district belongs to the old colony, and is inhabited partly by mechanics, and partly by merchants. The fourth is called Eriwan, which is full of people in low and necessi-

tous circumstances. The fifth, sixth, and seventh are called Nagt-siewaen, Siachfabæen, and Kasket-sie. These three likewise are full of the same low class of people, and are distinguished by no other names than those of the several districts to which they particularly belong.

Old Julpha is of much larger extent than all the other districts put together, and contains about two thousand families; some of which are exceedingly rich, and others very substantial merchants.

These have their own Kalantaer, as they call him, that is, their burgo-master, or chief magistrate, and others, whom they call Betgoedæes, that is to say, heads, or chief superintendants over their respective districts, who act as judges, and pass final sentence in all common causes; but such cases as are of great importance are reserved for the decision either of his majesty himself, or some of his council of state; and after their final sentence, indeed, they are carried into execution by the before mentioned Kalantaer, and heads of the districts.

Old Julpha is the right and property of his majesty's grand-mother, whom they distinguish by the name of Nawash-ali, which is a title that the king frequently confers on persons of high birth and distinction: all the other districts, however, above particularly taken notice of, are under the jurisdiction of their Nagash-bashi,

Old Julpha.



1704 as they call him, that is to say, the head, or principal of the king's painters. These have notwithstanding their respective chiefs, and were formerly governed by a Kalantier.

The principal buildings in Julpha.

The first district of Julpha, which stands to the southward, consists only of one large street, which is principally inhabited by such as are called Guebres, that is to say, such as had within three years then last past embraced the Mahommedan religion. The wives of these profelytes, according to ancient custom, go bare-faced, or without veils. I never had any right, or adequate idea of these people till after my return from (b) India; and for that reason, I shall postpone my account of them to that time.

The principal buildings in Julpha are the churches, and the name of the first, or head of them is called Anna-haet, that is to say, the church of the bishop. Of this we shall give the reader our particular sentiments, when we come to treat of their custom, called the baptism of the cross. The second is that called Surpa-kroof, that is, the church of St. James. This has a fine dome, and abounds (as that of the bishop's does) with paintings, representing some of the most remarkable transactions recorded in sacred history. On the right-hand, there are some vacant places, and the women there are divided from the men. The third, which is larger than either of those before-mentioned, is called Surpon-tomasa, that is to say, the church of St. Thomas. This is of a considerable length, and is supported on each side by three square columns, or pillars. All the walls of this church are perfectly white, and there is not one piece of painting in it. The dome of it is very low, and in order to go up to the altar, there are three steps on each side. Besides these three, there are about eleven others; but then they are much smaller, and have fewer decorations. There are about thirteen or fourteen in new Julpha likewise; but those too are small, and nothing in them worthy the attention of the curious.

There are some very fine houses in old Julpha, which are inhabited by some of

the most substantial amongst the Armenian merchants. That, however, which makes the most conspicuous figure, is called there the Hodshe-minozes; the grand salon, or hall whereof is all elegantly gilt, and painted with a great variety of flowers and other embellishments; and furnished likewise with a great number of costly pier-glasses. The ceiling thereof is vaulted, and divided into four several compartments. In the center of each partition, there is a golden star, intermingled with divers very lively colours, and the walls are incrustated with slips of marble about three feet in height. At each end of this grand salon, there are regular niches, which are filled with festoons, intermixed with foliages, or leaves, which have a very good effect, and strike the eye in the most agreeable manner that can possibly be conceived. Through the front-gate; which leads to this range of fine houses, you come into a spacious court; in the center whereof there is a fine circular parterre, and another exactly of the same form, behind the fine house last-mentioned, with a very handsome structure, in which are several commodious apartments for the reception of the ladies, according to the custom of the country.

When I had fully gratified my curiosity with taking an accurate survey of this first grand house, the gentleman, who was possessed of it, having first entertained me in the most elegant manner, I went to examine all that was curious and remarkable in the house of the Kalantier, or burgo-master Hogass, as they call him, otherwise Lucas, which I found to be in all respects as large and commodious, but not so elegantly neat as the former. From thence I went to the house called Arjet-aga, before which there was a spacious garden. This house likewise was very large, and full of fine apartments. The next that I took a survey of was the house called Hodshe-saffraes. This likewise was a very fine structure, and had a large garden before it like the other. All the walls of this house were painted, with a great variety of figures interspersed as big as the life. There was a Turkish man in particular and a Turkish woman, and

1704

and other parts of the  
Persian ladies, and  
were in (1) Spain  
were not from the  
which was his, there  
from whence there  
proposed that you  
After the Court, who  
quently to some kind  
The next house I went  
Hodshe-saffraes, which  
and in elegantly deco-  
rations: this has a very  
that looks into the  
spacious windows, and  
is. The two next houses  
the names of Hodshe-  
hodshes, were in no  
the house, from which  
elegant marble house  
either in this best ap-  
point.

All these several houses  
ment, and very curiously  
such rooms were covered  
and the doors in the  
colours of gold and  
front-gate of each of  
painted very small, and  
to prevent the Persians  
them on horse-back; and  
their grandeur and  
The principal streets  
covered with houses  
generally painted on each  
The Armenians, in  
offer but very little  
much to be admired  
are not altogether so re-  
tentative to greatly pla-  
are not indulged in we  
Persian mode, and with  
sippers.

As to both of the  
are ladies of distinction  
was, like the Persians  
with their forehead  
graceful and precious  
and they were a golden  
decorated, with a shi-  
bracket, and some



1704

and other figures of note; some dress in Persian habits, and others in such as are worn in (i) Spain; each at a proper distance one from the other. On the roof, which was flat, there was a fine terrace; from whence there is the most delightful prospect that eyes 'ere beheld; and king Abbas the Great, when living, used frequently to amuse himself on that terrace. The next house I went to was that called Hodshe-agamaet, which is almost as lofty, and as elegantly decorated as any of the former: this has a very beautiful apartment that looks into the street; it has likewise, spacious windows, and a fine terrace over it. The two next houses, distinguished by the names of Hodshe-Ovannis, and Hodshe-Murfa, were in no respect inferior to the former. Some of these houses have an elegant marble fountain, with a cascade either in their best apartment or before the door.

All these several houses are exceedingly neat, and very carefully kept; the floors of each room were covered with rich carpets, and the chairs in them adorned with cushions of gold and silver brocade. The front-gate of most of these houses are purposely very small, and so contrived partly to prevent the Persians from riding into them on horse-back; and partly to conceal their grandeur and magnificence within. The principal streets of this town are decorated with fine senna-trees, which are regularly planted on each side.

The Armenians, in regard to their dress differ but very little from the Persians; it must be acknowledged, however, that they are not altogether so neat, neither are their turbans so prettily plaited. Besides, they are not indulged in wearing those after the Persian mode, nor with appearing in green slippers.

As to such of the Armenian women as are ladies of distinction; they generally wear, like the Persian women, a half-band upon their foreheads, embellished with pearls and precious stones. Under this band they wear a golden chambara, richly decorated, which is about two fingers in breadth; and down the sides of their

checks, they have a score at least of golden ducats, and other decorations, or trinkets, enriched with pearls. This chambara comes underneath their chins; and the lower part of their face from the nose, is covered with a veil, which they fasten behind their heads. They wear another veil likewise, besides this, about their necks; the ends whereof are embroidered with gold and silver. This also is fastened behind the head; and neither of these, when they appear in public, are taken off. They have still a third, which is embroidered, likewise, and covers their necks, and is thrown over the two former. This too is fastened to their heads, and falls down to the bottom of their upper vestments; which for the generality are of gold brocades, and lined with fables. Their under-garments are of flowered stuffs; and they have a third short vestment, that but just reaches to their knees. Their shifts are made of embroidered taffata, or some other rich stuffs; and are somewhat shorter than their upper vestments. Under these shifts, they wear drawers, of a fine striped satin, with buskins, or boots, after the Persian fashion, and slippers, either yellow or red; for they are not indulged in wearing of green ones, any more than the men. Their girdles are made of thin plates of gold, or silver embossed, and are for the most part about four or five fingers in breadth; and under this, they wear a silk one with a buckle: for the rest, some of these ladies have their girdles set with precious stones. They wear generally two or three gold chains about their necks; by one whereof hang small boxes of perfumes, and by another, a great number of ducats. To these chains, they add a coral necklace; and to every third bead, they hang either a single, or a double ducat. They wear likewise golden bracelets, and rings in plenty on all their fingers. In summer time, instead of the furred gown, they wear a shorter vestment without sleeves, which scarcely falls down to their knees. The reader may see the representation of one of these gay ladies, thus richly dress, in the Plate

40

(No. 101)

1704

The habits of the Armenian men.

Their female dress.



1702

Dress of  
their maid-  
ens.

(No. 101.) hereto annexed.

The maidens dress much after the same manner as the married women, their veils only excepted; the former wearing two; namely, one which covers the greatest part of their face, and a second that hides their necks and breasts; whereas the latter wear only the last. As to the rest they wear a kind of diadem upon their foreheads; embroidered with gold and silver, and enriched with pearls, or precious stones.

In a word, when the Armenian women make their appearance in public, they differ in nothing material from the Persian ladies, but this; namely, they are indispensably obliged to conceal their faces with some part of their cloaths, which they hold up with their right-hands for that very purpose.

It is high time, however, to drop this topic, and proceed to the particular ceremonies, observed here at births, marriages, and deaths.

Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.

Whenever one of these ladies is brought to bed, her first care is, to find it a proper godfather; and after the expiration of some few days, the midwife or nurse, carries the new-born babe to church, in order to have it baptized. Accordingly, she delivers it into the hands of a priest, who dips it perfectly naked, three times successively, into a large bucket full of water, which serves them instead of a font; the priest, during the whole ceremony, pronouncing a certain form of words, in much the same manner as ours do in Europe. After this, the babe is anointed with holy oil, first upon the head, then on the mouth; then again on the breast, the neck, the hands, and feet; after this thorough unction, the infant is wrapped up again in its swaddling cloaths, and conveyed to the altar, where the eucharist, or sacrament, is crammed into his mouth. When this ceremony is over, he delivers it to the godfather; who covers it with a stuff-mantle, provided by him for that purpose at his own expence. When they have gone thus far, the company return, preceded by several priests, each holding a cross in one hand, and a taper in the other,

and singing some portion of the gospel to the sound of the instrumental music. In this manner, the godfather follows the procession to the house where the child's parents reside; holding likewise a lighted taper in each hand; and after he has delivered up his little godson into his mother's arms, the remainder of the day is devoted to mirth and gaiety amongst the friends and relations. The same godfather for the most part, stands for all the children, be they more or less; and if a child happens to be born within a few days either of Easter, or their grand festival of baptizing the cross, the parents are obliged to have the infant baptized on the same day.

There is one circumstance in this ceremony that is too remarkable to be omitted; and that is, that neither this godfather, nor any of his near relations, can marry with any of those belonging to the infant to the third or fourth degree of consanguinity. And when it happens that a girl and a boy of two different families have been represented by the same godfather, even they are prohibited from intermarrying with each other.

The ceremonies observed at their marriages have something in them very peculiar, and whimsical enough: the parties never run through a formal time of courtship, as is customary in most European countries; but the parents, on each side, are the match-makers, and the marriage articles, as by them settled and adjusted, are held good and valid, and never disputed by the bridegroom or his bride. The former on his wedding-day, hires a band of music, and invites some of his most intimate friends and acquaintance to his house; and each guest has a taper put into his hand by a proper domestic or attendant. In the midst of this, a whole groupe of young girls make their appearance in the street and dance to some cheerful tune, played by haut-boys, accompanied with drums, who are followed by women in years, laden with rich wearing apparel, pearls, and precious stones. As soon as these dancers are got to the bridegroom's place of abode, they fasten a cross made of green fatten upon his breast; and after that the

1704

Dress of  
their maid-  
ens.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.Ceremonies  
observed at  
births.



1704

men and women who are invited to the solemnity withdraw into separate apartments, where they are entertained in a very elegant manner, with conserves, and a profusion of all sorts of liquors. Then the apparel belonging to the married couple are delivered to them in two distinct baskets; together with some trinkets of but small value, in order to be made presents of to the young people who make a part of their guests. After these distributions, the priest pronounces a formal blessing on the wedding-cloaths, which, when over, the intended pair retire to put them on. The bridegroom, thus gayly equipped, takes a set of his friends, with two or three of his nearest relations, along with him to his spouse's apartment, where he is received, or congratulated by her father or brother, or some other near relation, who, after a few wholesome admonitions, in regard to the conjugal state, add their warmest wishes for their mutual health and happiness. The young maidens before-mentioned, then fasten another cross of red fatten on the bridegroom, and the women bring him a handkerchief, one corner whereof he is to take hold of, and the bride of the other. Now the bride is covered with an embroidered veil through which you may notwithstanding see all her fine cloaths, and her face is covered with red taffaty, which hangs down to her very feet. And in this masquerading-dress (if I may be allowed the expression) she is accompanied by a great number of women, disguised after much the same manner, whilst the bridegroom is preceded by all the men; and thus in a kind of procession, they go to church; each with a lighted taper in his hand. When the whole company are got in, the relations take the handkerchief away from the bridegroom; and then each of them repairs to the seat assigned him. As soon as mass is begun, the father confessor appears, before whom the young couple are catechized in form; after which they go up to the altar, where the priest addresses himself first to the bridegroom, in words to this or the like effect; Will you have this woman, thus offered you to be your

wife? Will you honour and cherish her, whatever casualties may attend her hereafter? Will you comfort and take care of her, in case, in time to come, she shall happen to be either blind, lame, or otherwise afflicted in mind, body, or estate? When the man has answered in the affirmative, he turns to the woman, and asks her the very same questions. As soon as she has answered yes likewise, the priest joins their hands, and after that their heads; which one of the bridesmen bind close together with a handkerchief, and then he covers them with a cross. In the mean time they read over the office for the occasion, and say the customary prayers: when those are concluded, the priest takes off the cross again; and administers to them what they call the sacrament of the altar; and then every one retires to his own place. As soon as mass is over, they go in procession home from church; the priests walking before the new married couple, accompanied with their band of music, hired for the purpose, the bridegroom and bride still continuing to have the handkerchief above-mentioned round their necks, and being followed by their friends whom they invited. No sooner are they arrived at the bridegroom's door, but they are presented with a large bowl full of sherbet, with which they entertain, not only all the priests, but all their guests in general, each of whom is perfumed, or sprinkled with rose-water, which is taken out of a silver pot. After this, the men and the women are conducted to their separate apartments in expectation of their dinner; which, when ready, is served up at different tables, the men sitting at one, and the women at the other. This entertainment is placed upon a large carpet, spread upon the floor, on which they sit, according to the mode or custom of the orientals. They are all served with conserves, and a variety of the choicest liquors, in the first place, and afterwards with plenty of different viands.

There is one circumstance, however, that the reader ought to have been before acquainted with, and that is, when the bridegroom and the bride have received the

1704



1704 the sacrament of the altar, they are kept from each others company for three or four days successively; but in case the sacrament has not been administered to them, then the company conduct them the very same night to the bridal bed-chamber, and after they have perfumed them with a little rose-water, withdraw, and leave them to their own private conversation.

The girls  
portions.

Some few days after consummation of the nuptials, the parents produce whatever they had promised for her dower, which consists, for the most part, in apparel, gold, silver, pearls, and precious stones, in proportion to their substance and condition. To these valuable commodities they add likewise a great variety of sweet-meats and the choicest fruits, which are brought in fine wooden pails, accompanied with a proper band of music, as has been before hinted with respect to the Persians.

This ceremony, however, is sometimes postponed till the birth of the first child, and, in that case, a cradle and all other requisites for the accommodation of the infant are added to the sweet-meats, &c. Sometimes, indeed, the bridegroom and bride go to church on horse-back, and return from thence in the same manner. Moreover, on some particular occasions, these nuptials are solemnized in a very private manner, in the dead of night, and in the presence only of two or three of their nearest relations.

Of all the customs, however, that are observed amongst the Armenians, no one appears more uncommon, or fantastical to me, than that of giving away their children in marriage during their very infancy; inasmuch that there are but few of them single after ten or twelve years of age at most. Nay, sometimes the parents betroth them, in form, before they are ten months old; and it is no uncommon thing for marriage-contracts to be made for children even in their mother's womb. And the reason they alledge for it is this; that in case a girl should be unmarried, she is in danger of being taken from her parents, and locked up in the seraglio; a

misfortune, which they endeavour to prevent by such premature contracts. There are many instances, however, to be produced, where parents have proved disappointed, notwithstanding this extraordinary precaution.

As I have, in a former part of this work, taken notice of the ceremonies observed by them at the interment of their friends and relations, I have this one custom only farther to add; namely, that on these melancholy occasions, the women are always present as well as the men; and that their priests and deacons chant out their funeral dirges as they walk in procession. There are generally four bearers, who carry the deceased upon a bier; but they have sometimes eight, and sometimes twelve, when they have far to go, in order to relieve each other, as occasion shall require. These bearers are always persons in low circumstances, and attend for hire. The body is deposited in the grave without any coffin; with the head raised up, in some measure, and then the priest throws earth over it three several times in the form of a cross.

When the company return from the funeral, they go to the habitation of the deceased, and are there entertained both at dinner and supper.

Nay, two priests and two deacons, for forty days successively go every morning to the grave, and there not only read over it some portion of the sacred scripture, but sing some select hymn, extracted from the psalms of David, adapted to that melancholy occasion. These have their daily fees for this funeral service; which are higher or lower in proportion to the circumstances of the deceased; inasmuch that, sometimes a pompous funeral amongst them proves very expensive.

Notwithstanding the Armenians are thus over-superstitious in their observance of external forms, they are still most shamefully remiss in other articles of much greater importance; but more particularly in what relates to the education of their children; who are sometimes arrived to the age of manhood, before they are able to re-  
hearse

1704

Customs  
observed at  
their burials

Are shame-  
fully remiss  
in the edu-  
cation of  
their chil-  
dren.



1704

hearse the Lord's prayer, or the articles of their belief. This, indeed, is not to be so very much wondered at, considering how early they enter into the matrimonial state: for sometimes they are fathers of children, whilst they are but children themselves; so that, their thoughts being employed about their family-concerns, before they have any opportunities of receiving instruction, 'tis morally impossible for the poorer sort especially to make any considerable improvements. In short, what human probability can there be, that a mother, who has had no manner of instruction herself, should be capable of cultivating the minds of her little infants? And it must be acknowledged, that in case a woman amongst them should chance to have any share of wit, genius, or beauty, it is a circumstance extremely uncommon. This observation I have frequently made my self; but more especially at their funeral solemnities; at which times, there are frequently two or three thousand of them assembled together, who look like such a number of thoughtful matrons, past all their beauty and bloom, before they have attained even the age of twenty. And this is still the more surprising; because they have the Persian ladies before their eyes as patterns for their imitation, who are for the most part finely shaped, exceedingly handsome, and free from all affectation in their deportment. Their air, their gait, their dress, are all perfectly agreeable; there is, in short, a peculiar grace in all their words and actions; and even the manner wherein they adjust their veils, which conceal their charms, has something in it extremely pretty and engaging.

It must be allowed likewise, that the Turkish and Grecian ladies are no ways inferior to the Persians, in regard to their various attractions; whilst, on the contrary, but very few of the Armenian ladies have any air, gait, or shape, or any other charm to allure you. And what contributes not a little to this misfortune is, the linnen with which they conceal their mouths. For by that practice, their cheeks appear to be bloated; but besides, they are women

for the generality, but of low stature, and their shapes are clumsy.

If you meet an Armenian woman in the town of Julpha, she will most assuredly turn her back upon you, which is such a monstrous act of ill manners, that even a Mahomedan woman would blush to be guilty of it: in a word, they are not only rude to strangers, but equally unmannerly, when in company with their nearest relations. In case they are offered a glass of wine by a friend, whom they ever so much respect, they no sooner accept of it, but they turn their faces towards the wall, and drink up their liquor, let the glass be ever so large, or ever so full. From this reserved or affected deportment, this uncommon care to conceal themselves from the sight of a man, any one might be apt to imagine, that they are strictly virtuous, and as chaste and cold as so many Dianas; but he that shall make that conclusion, will find himself most grossly mistaken; for too many of them will turn prostitutes for filthy lucre, will dress themselves in men's apparel, and ride on horse-back with their mothers to Ispahan, where they carry on a small clandestine trade, whilst the poor ignorant tool of a husband imagines them proof against all temptation, and himself safe, as he knows they will not unveil their charms to no man living. This was not the case in the days of yore; for Judah, we are told, concluded that Tamar was a harlot, because she covered her face with a veil.

As to the Armenians (of the male sex) their thoughts are wholly taken up in avaricious views, and in making haste to be rich; and when they have hoarded up immense treasures, they are still ambitious of making all the advantages that can possibly arise therefrom. Their thirst after gain is insatiable; without the least regard to any of the social duties of life, or to what is transacting in any other part of the known world.

No country under the sun, in their idle opinions, can stand in competition with Persia; they look upon it as the sole source, or fountain, of all arts and sciences, though they know no more how to

4 P

form

1704

The insol-  
ency and un-  
mannerly  
deportment  
of the Ar-  
menian  
women.

The avar-  
iciousness,  
and igno-  
rance of the  
Armenians.



1704 form an adequate idea, either of the one or the other, than a blind man can distinguish one colour from another. For notwithstanding many of them are very substantial merchants, and travel half the world over in hopes of treasuring up one bag of gold upon another; yet their curiosity never carries them so far as to make any curious enquiries either into nature herself, or the nature and constitution of the very country wherein they reside; neither will they, indeed, take the least pains, or put themselves to the needless expence (as they call it) of prying into the beauties of Persia itself.

They have no knowledge, but what they gain by hear-say; and I observed, that not one of those Armenians, who were my fellow-travellers, ever attempted, or thought it worth his while, to survey those curiosities, which I sought after with so much assiduity and concern. For which reason, whenever I was inclined to gratify my taste that way, I always made my application to strangers, and exerted the strength of my purse with them. Whenever, in short, I consulted them, it was, when I found them in their bazars, or markets, the courses of which, it must be allowed, they understand to the utmost perfection. Trade, in a word, is the only thing within the verge of their understanding; but all other articles are absolutely beyond the sphere of their weak comprehension; their minds (as I have hinted before) were never improved by any liberal education. As soon as ever they have attained the accomplishments of reading and writing, such of their masters as reside at Julpha, send them on errands; and whenever they either go to, or return from Ispahan, for the most part, they ride double, on a horse, a mule, or an ass, which is a custom peculiar to themselves.

When they have dealings with the Persians, on their market-days; in their little shops, in the city, where they retail cloth by the yard, or even a less quantity, they durst not drink wine, or any spirituous liquor whatsoever, for fear they should be

discovered by the smell; inasmuch that they groan under a heavier weight than even the (A) Greeks do under the Grand Signior. And forasmuch as this worse than (I) Egyptian bondage daily increases upon them, it is greatly to be feared, that every privilege, how small soever, will soon be taken from them, unless they shall think proper to turn apostates, and become profelytes to the Mahomedan religion.

And this their unhappy situation must be ascribed in a great measure to the bitter quarrels and debates which rage as it were amongst themselves, not only between some of their bishops, but even their patriarchs, who are at perpetual variance with each other, as well about the economy of the church, as about the articles of its creed. And when these religious dissensions run high, the Persians are ever ready to embrace such favourable opportunities for calling them to account, and loading them with fresh fines and intolerable impositions.

Two flagrant instances of this despotic power of the Persians happened whilst I was resident at Ispahan. If such unhappy discords and dissensions did not so frequently arise amongst them; if they were not such inveterate and implacable enemies one to another, they might accomplish many very valuable and important ends; for they are possessed of immense riches; and high bribes command great favours in this country; but it is impossible to express that enmity and hatred with which they pursue each other; some faint idea however, may be formed of it from an instance to which I myself was a witness.

Two brothers had happened to have some high words about some occurrence in trade, which is (as I have hinted before) the very soul of an Armenian, and the only thing that he understands. A vigorous law-suit you may be sure, was instantly commenced; and the eldest, who was in the actual possession of the matter in debate, and capable of making rich presents to the judges,

1704  
The Persians  
are at perpetual  
variance with each  
other, as well about  
the economy of the  
church, as about the  
articles of its creed.

An instance  
of implacable  
hatred  
between  
two brothers.



1704

judges, did not fail to gain their interest in his favour, and carry the cause.

The party cast (who happened at that time to be blind) upon sentence being past against him, declared openly, that he was over-joyed that he had lost his sight; since it would be the greatest mortification that could befall him in this world ever to cast his eyes upon his brother, and that he should think it no affliction to him to be as deaf as he was blind, that he might never hear him either speak, or be spoken of again.

Could inveterate malice and mortal hatred be ever carried to a higher pitch? The elder brother, who had intermarried with a French lady at (n) Paris, where he had left her, and from whence he had brought two little daughters which he had by her there, used to come daily almost to our director, to beg the favour of his protection against the irreconcilable rage and resentment of his blind brother, who used his utmost interest and endeavours to have him secured under the custody of the Mohammedan judges, as he had done once before, and from whose hands he could never possibly escape without being most unmercifully bastonaded.

Not a few of these Armenians have already renounced their Christian faith, and embraced the errors of the Mahomedan church, with no other view than to gratify their boundless thirst after riches, and become favourites at the Persian court.

One of these apostates in particular, who had accompanied the pilgrims to (n) Mecca, in order to pay his devotions at the tomb of Mohammed, returned from thence, whilst I was resident at Isfahan. Great numbers of the Armenians went out to meet him, and congratulate him on his safe arrival in Persia; whereas not a single Armenian thinks it worth his while to welcome home, or care for a Christian pilgrim on his safe return from (p) Jerusalem.

So great is the power and authority of the Mohammedans in Persia, that two monks (both natives of (p) Portugal) were compelled to embrace the Mohammedan

faith; one in the year 1697, and the other in 1696. The first, whose Christian name was Emmanuel, assumed that of Hussein-Celiebek, that is to say, the slave of Hussein, and the other (Anthony by name) was distinguished by the title of Ali-Celiebek, or in other terms, the vassal of Ali.

The convent of these two Portuguese fathers is a very fine, spacious structure, situate in the city, and full of very commodious apartments; there was only one of them, however, resident there; whilst I was at Isfahan, that is to say, father Antonio Delleto, of whom I have given the reader some account in the preceding part of this work.

There are, moreover, two French capuchins, whose convent is likewise situate in the city.

The Carmelites likewise have a very fine convent there, with a spacious garden thereto belonging; there was but one of them however, there, a native of Poland, in my remembrance.

There are, besides these, two others, whether natives of France or (q) Denmark, I cannot peremptorily determine, who came thither from Rome, and live in a little habitation together in Julpha, and there are four Jesuits also, who have erected a little chappel, after the (r) Italian mode; in that town, at their own expence, together with a very fine house and gardens at but a very small distance from it.

Besides these, there are three Dominicans, who have lately erected a new chapel at their own expence.

There are several other Europeans, moreover, resident at Julpha. Though most of them, indeed, are natives of France, yet there are three in the town, who were born at (s) Geneva; their names were Siorde, De Finot, and Bafar; the first was a goldsmith by profession, but, the other two dealt in watches and clocks. There are two physicians likewise in the town; one Hermet by name, a French-man. The other a native of (t) Smyrna. All the above-named Europeans, De Finot only excepted, are married to Armenians of mean extraction, and can scarcely get a lively-

1704

Many Armenians renounced their faith in order to become favourites at the Persian court.

The great authority of the Mohammedans in Persia, that two monks (both natives of Portugal) were compelled to embrace the Mohammedan

The convent of these two Portuguese fathers is a very fine, spacious structure, situate in the city, and full of very commodious apartments; there was only one of them, however, resident there; whilst I was at Isfahan, that is to say, father Antonio Delleto, of whom I have given the reader some account in the preceding part of this work.

There are, moreover, two French capuchins, whose convent is likewise situate in the city.

The Carmelites likewise have a very fine convent there, with a spacious garden thereto belonging; there was but one of them however, there, a native of Poland, in my remembrance.

There are, besides these, two others, whether natives of France or Denmark, I cannot peremptorily determine, who came thither from Rome, and live in a little habitation together in Julpha, and there are four Jesuits also, who have erected a little chappel, after the Italian mode; in that town, at their own expence, together with a very fine house and gardens at but a very small distance from it.

Besides these, there are three Dominicans, who have lately erected a new chapel at their own expence.



1704 livelyhood by their labour; for there is little or no business in Persia (as I have hinted before) for such as are strangers.

The Persians, indeed, have several very able and experienced physicians; as also adepts in the mathematics amongst themselves; they are perfect strangers, however, to the art of surgery; and give but very little encouragement to such strangers as are of that profession. Nay, even those who are employed at court, are but very little regarded; for their salaries are paid them only in bills upon other cities, which they are obliged sometimes to discount at one third loss, and sometimes more.

'Tis observable, that a stranger has no manner of prospect of advancing his fortune by marriage in this country; since there is scarce a single instance of an European that ever married into any Persian family of substance or distinction. It is observable, likewise, that whenever any Europeans intermarry with the Persians, they immediately conform to the customs of the country, and never introduce their wives into the company of strangers. This sudden alteration in their deportment is most conspicuous, indeed, amongst the French; for such as are natives either of (u) England or (w) Holland, retain the customs of their forefathers.

A remarkable instance of this I saw myself in Mr. Kastelyn, our Dutch director, whose consort, tho' a Persian both of birth and fortune, was a lady of distinguished merit, esteemed by every body; and when she died, the loss of her was universally regretted. She appeared always with her daughter, who was about ten years of age when I was there, at her husband's table, which was open to all the Europeans in general; but whenever he paid them a visit at Julpha, not a wife of theirs was to be seen. And, in short, they retain nothing of their native country, but the language.

This is not the case, however, with such strangers as reside at (x) Constantinople, Smyrna, and other places under the dominion of the Grand Signior, where the Greek women, with whom they inter-

marry, conform with all the readiness imaginable, to the customs and manners of their husbands, or, indeed, to the particular religion, which they respectively profess, and take care likewise to train up the children they have by them in the same tenets; whereas the Armenian women, whom we have been speaking of, after marriage, shew no conformity at all, but profess the same religion as their mothers did before them, and instil the same principles into their children.

I am conscious to my self, indeed, that I might here be confronted with the instance of that celebrated traveller, by name Pietro della Valle, who, though a native of (y) Rome, intermarried with a lady born at (z) Bagdet; but love will sometimes triumph over discretion, and there is no general rule without an exception.

In all other respects, I have nothing farther to add, in regard to this remarkable adventure, and this single marriage, which was consummated in the very same convent where I resided at my return from the (aa) Indies; since I should be very loth to say any thing that might tend to the disreputation of so celebrated a Roman, and one, who has left so many very valuable remains behind him.

The Armenians, however, are not the only persons who have renounced their religion, and embraced Mohammedism for gain. Several instances may be produced amongst the (bb) Georgians, both rich and poor, who have followed their mercenary and ungodly example; and these last, indeed, are as little regarded by the Europeans as the former.

I shall here take the liberty, before I bring this chapter to a conclusion, to introduce a remark or two in regard to such public ministers as attend at the Persian court, with credentials from some of the Christian powers; and amongst whom (it must be ingenuously confessed) there are some, who are altogether unworthy of that honourable title; and are, in reality, no better than envoys, or common couriers. And it must readily likewise be acknowledged, that they reflect but very little

1704

The marriage of Pietro della Valle.

Some Georgians likewise apostatized.

Foreign ministers.



1704 honour on their masters from whom they come; since the principal aim and design of their journey is no more than this; namely, that they may be freed from paying the customary dues or duties on the several merchandizes or commodities which they bring along with them; a privilege, which is granted without the least hesitation, to all in general who are sent with such letters to the Persian court.

They are furnished likewise, wherever they go, with all such carriages as they have occasion for, and have, moreover, a daily stipend, or pay, in proportion to the number of their attendants, during their residence at court; but then that allowance is so inconsiderable, that any one, who bears the character of a minister, might very well blush to accept of. It cannot upon the whole, be any matter of wonder, that the Armenians should be employed by the

1704 Christian powers in the delivery of such credentials to the king of Persia; and that those people should be able to impose upon them so far, as to make themselves pass for men of importance, and favourites at court; for, in fact, they are neither men of honour or conscience, and make no scruple to defraud at least, if not utterly to ruin those who are sent with them to court.

As to their sentiments in regard to religion, it is evident, that they are but little acquainted with the grounds and principles of Christianity which they profess, from their readiness to renounce that faith, and embrace the erroneous tenets of the Mohammedans, upon the most trivial motives; and in our opinion, it is highly requisite that strangers should be acquainted with this their wavering faculty, and be forearmed against their hypocrisy and deceit.

*Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.*

(a) Julia, or Julpha, see p. 262. n. x.

(b) Armenia, see p. 198. n. g.

(c) Europe, see 127. n. dd.

(d) Persia, see p. 64. n. o.

(e) Ispahan, see p. 109. n. m.

(f) Turkey, see p. 203. n. e.

(g) France, see p. 214. n. w.

(h) India, (proper) see p. 213. n. d.

(i) Spain, see p. 283. n. p.

(k) Greece, the present Rumelia, and the ancient Hellas, is situate between 20 and 26 deg. of east long. and 36 and 44. deg. of north lat. bounded by Romania, or Thrace, Bulgaria and Servia, towards the north; by the Archipelago on the east; by the Mediterranean on the south; and by the Adriatic, or gulph of Venice on the west; being about four hundred miles long from north to south, that is to say from the mountains of Argentum, or Scodras, to cape Matapan, or Caglia, in the Morea, and near as much in breadth, viz. from the Adriatic sea to the Archipelago; generally a temperate,

healthful country and fruitful soil; eminent antiently for the wit and learning of the inhabitants, and for their great actions, and the numerous heroes it has produced; now subject to the barbarous Turk, who has destroyed most of the fine cities it contained, and introduced a deluge of ignorance into those admired seats of learning and politeness.

(l) Egypt, see p. 33. n. a.

(m) Paris, see p. 261. n. o.

(n) Mecca, see p. 242. n. o.

(o) Jerusalem, see p. 85. n. d.

(p) Portugal, see p. 260. n. m.

(q) Denmark. This kingdom was formerly elective, until the year 1659; it was then made hereditary in the person of Frederick III. and his posterity. The capital city is Copenhagen, 160 miles from Hamburg; 80 miles from Amsterdam, and 580 from London.

(r) Italy, see p. 210. n. w.

(s) Geneva, an antient city in the duchy of Savoy.

(t) Smyrna, an antient city in the Lesser Asia.

(u) England see p. 91. n. f.



1704

(w) Holland, see p. 76. n. c.

(x) Constantinople, see p. 196. n. g.

(y) Rome, see p. 108. n. g.

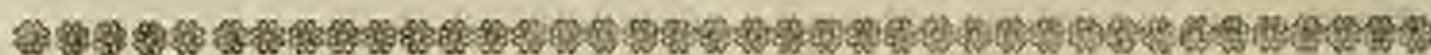
(z) Bagdat, east long. 43. lat. 33. 20. a strong town of Turkey, on the frontiers of Persia, situate on the river Tigris, in the province of Iraca Arabic, the ancient Chaldea, of which it is the capital, and stands 260 miles north west of Bassora, 340 miles west of Ispahan, and 350 miles south east of Aleppo. It was the capital of the Saracen empire, till the middle of the

thirteenth century, when the Turks made a conquest of it; since which it has been taken and retaken several times by the Persians and Turks; but the Turks made themselves masters of it in the year 1689, and have continued in possession of it ever since. Kouli Khan, or Shah Nadir, the present sovereign of Persia, has besieged it more than once, but been obliged to raise the siege by the Turks.

(aa) India (proper) see p. 213. n. d.

(bb) Georgia, in Asia, see p. 107. n. d.

1704



## C H A P. XLVII.

*The Apostacy of some Dutchmen from the Christian Faith. The proclamation of the Korog, and the penalty annexed thereto in Case of Non-Compliance. The Intrepidity and Resolution of an Armenian, his cruel Death, and inhuman Treatment afterwards by the Persians.*

The Apostacy of some Dutchmen from the Christian faith.

ABOUT the latter end of May, I took a walk with one Mr. Bakker, who was our director's deputy, into the fields in pursuit of game, but more especially of a certain bird, called in (a) Persia the Morgh-Sacka, that is to say, the water-carrier, which had been observed to hover frequently over the river that runs by the meadow side. We got a sight of him, according to our wish; but he happened to be too high, and at too great a distance for our shot to reach him. I was not a little chagreened at this disappointment, having never seen the bird before, notwithstanding it is often to be met with on the banks of the (b) Wolga; as also at (c) Astracan, and near the shore of the (d) Caspian sea.

This bird is extremely large, and has a capacious pouch which he fills with water; and, if I am rightly informed, he very generously distributes his liquor amongst his brother birds, where he finds they stand in need of it. As we found, however, our expectations balked in that kind of sport,

we had immediate recourse to our nets, with which we dragged out of the river a large quantity of fine fish, which, at our return home in the evening, we made a present of to our director. On the day following there was such a violent hurricane, that it was dangerous to go out of doors.

On the first day of June, three natives of (e) Holland arrived at (f) Ispahan, who had deserted our East-India company's ship, which then rode at anchor in the harbour of (g) Gombroon, and had embraced the Mohammedan religion in hopes of raising their fortune. They found themselves, however, very grossly mistaken in their avaricious scheme; for they were soon reduced to the utmost distress, having met with no soul on the road that would give them the least assistance or relief; nor did they meet, indeed, with any better treatment on their arrival at Ispahan: Heaven, as one would be apt to imagine, being determined to punish them severely for the renunciation of their faith, for filthy lucre.

In



1704

In this their most deplorable state and condition, they presented themselves before our director's gate, in hopes of meeting with his pity and compassion; but he ordered them to be gone that moment, and make their application to those whose religion they had so impiously embraced. Though they obeyed his orders at that juncture, yet they ventured soon after to come again, with their earnest supplications that they might be once more entered into the company's service; since they most sincerely repented of their past apostasy and desertion; and humbly petitioned to be admitted again, tho' unworthy, into the bosom of the Christian church; but that request, he told them, was not in his power to grant them; however, if they would return to Gombron; and throw themselves upon the company's mercy, notwithstanding they had so justly forfeited their lives by their misdemeanors; yet he would indulge them so far, on that condition, but on no other, as to write to the director there, and desire him to send them back again to the (b) East-Indies. With that hard condition they all very readily complied, and unanimously declared, that they had much rather run the risk of being tried, and sentenced to the severest death, rather than to be starved, and perish in the sin, of which they had been so inadvertently guilty. Upon this open declaration, they were not only refreshed, but comfortably clothed; which act of indulgence, they seemed, at least, very gratefully to acknowledge; and soon after, with all the testimonies of unfeigned joy, they returned to Gombron, and from thence were sent to the Indies accordingly, where, beyond their deserts, they procured their pardon, both for their apostasy and desertion.

The Korog.

On the fifth instant, whilst I was very busy in drawing a survey on the river of the Chiaer-baeg, that is to say, the fine alley of Isphahan; I heard a confused noise, and upon listening to it with some degree of attention, I found it was the proclamation of the Korog.

This out-ery is intended to give notice to all people in general, that his majesty is

near at hand, accompanied by his concubines, and that they must withdraw without the least hesitation, on pain of the severest punishment. Whereupon I removed my quarters amongst the rest, with all the expedition I was capable of; but his majesty past by soon after. He was preceded by an officer on horse-back, who rode full speed, in order to disperse all such, as had no opportunity of getting out of the way in due time; and he instantly came up to me, and directed me to a proper place of retirement. I instantly obeyed his orders, and took a long tour, in order to get into the city again; where all the avenues of the streets, through which the king and his concubines were to pass, were lined with guards, to prevent all persons, without distinction, from passing that way; inasmuch that, it was with no small difficulty that I reached my lodgings.

The very next day I went to the same place, and met with the very same obstruction as before; and, moreover, I perceived, that some of the avenues to the Chiaer-baeg were spread with some certain cloths. When a man happens, on these extraordinary occasions, to be surprised, he must move directly; but it is customary, to give all people previous notice for keeping out of the way, or quitting even his habitation whether by night or by day, as long as the Korog, or proclamation continues. And for my own part, I have been forced frequently to abandon the Caravanferai, or inn, where I lodged on that particular account.

Not long after this, there arrived two gunners from the Indies, whom Mr. Kastelyn had sent for, in order to enter into his majesty's service; but when the king was informed of their arrival, he gave them to understand that one of them was sufficient to answer his purpose; and even that one was employed but a very short time, and the salary or wages allowed him for his attendance was so mean and trivial, that one would almost blush to mention the sum. This gunner, indeed, who was first clothed before he was introduced, had no great matters to do; all his business,

it

1704



1704 it seemed, was only to shoot at a mark, with some few pieces of cannon; a diversion to which his majesty at that time was a perfect stranger; but the reader is here to observe, the Persians were as long in preparing the requisites for this trivial exercise, as we should be in the erection of a fort. This gunner, indeed, was soon discharged; for he was not duely qualified to hit the taste of the Persians; for they are not to be pleased, unless the party employed be very assiduous, and makes his applications with abundance of humility and respect.

On the seventeenth instant, the moon was in a great eclipse; appeared reddish, and its light was almost totally darkened.

On the twenty-first there were some clouds in the sky, after a series of fine weather, during which, there was nothing like one to be seen; but then they were of a lively blue, without the least gloom or shade; which is no uncommon occurrence in this country.

About the beginning of July the wind began to blow hard, and bleak; but then they were soon succeeded by an excessive heat.

On the third instant, the inhabitants began to open their shops, which for five or six days successively had been close shut up, on account of a solemn mourning that is universally observed at this season. At this particular time, which, if I am not mistaken, is by the Persians called *Wagme*, all such as have any animosities subsisting between them, endeavour to bury them all, as much as possible, in oblivion, and to renew their former friendships, if it suits with their private interest; but otherwise, their consciences are not so tender but they can retain their resentments.

Much about this time, an unhappy quarrel arose between some of the English agents domestics, and some certain Persians; and from high words they proceeded to hard blows. The Persians, fired with resentment, and vowing to be revenged, invidiously asserted that one of their country-men had been killed by a native of (i)

Armenia, who was retained in the service of that minister; whereupon all the shops in the district wherein he resided, were close shut up.

The populace, animated with the notion of this pretended murder, made their bitter complaint to the high bailiff, who was a native of (k) Georgia, and had been formerly a Christian. This high bailiff, without any orders procured from his superiors, at once summoned the English agent's interpreter, who by birth was an Armenian, and obliged him to sign a paper, whereby he bound himself either to find out the person who had committed this flagrant crime, or in default thereof to pay a certain fine in money. To this paper the treacherous interpreter very readily set his hand, notwithstanding he was conscious to himself that there was no such outrage committed, and even fixed the murder on one of his own countrymen; which he did with the greater ease, because his master, who by his authority might possibly have appeased the storm, at that time lay sick in his bed. In the interim the Persians cried aloud for vengeance for the death of one of their poor, worthless natives, who had only been bastonaded for his insolent deportment: and they treated the franks (which is the name by which they distinguish all the natives of (l) Europe in general) as murderers, and made their complaints of them accordingly at court. Not satisfied with these rigorous proceedings, they carried, with still greater rage and resentment than before, the effigies of a dead body to the *Chiaer-baeg*, in order to exasperate and inflame the minds of the common people; and even obliged their own prime ministers to make a formal demand of the pretended murderer, from the English agent, who had sheltered and concealed him.

At the same time, that agent received an order for the discharge of all his Mohammedan domestics in general; whereupon the English required eight days time to take this affair into their consideration; which demand was complied with accordingly.

In the mean time the poor innocent Arme-

1704

COR  
 Armenian had concealed  
 some of his people, who  
 by the agent's petition  
 were ordered, who were  
 officers of justice, and the  
 in prison: the English  
 or was appealed by the  
 minister, without the  
 present should be allowed  
 time their money, and  
 compelled to return.  
 As soon as they had  
 over the door, they  
 what day to take out  
 them to change position  
 who were sent out  
 than the rest, were  
 charged, and made a  
 king: the agent sent a  
 being to his assistance  
 pushed this matter to  
 showing their love,  
 is upon desire him  
 that what would be  
 more than all the rest,  
 and their countenance  
 ever to the Mohammedans  
 added themselves to  
 liberty, and maintaining  
 temper, in case of any  
 their actions proved the  
 for notwithstanding  
 death before his eyes,  
 irregular and without  
 their intention often  
 his brother's departure  
 and their high before  
 king, a vengeance on  
 committed their violence  
 red, he the consequence  
 would never (consider  
 Emperor and his God  
 intended Persians to  
 many years, and so  
 giving him, in the  
 or, of his life, they  
 role to the great  
 king's palace; where  
 of him thinking  
 his crime though  
 murder of separation



1704

Armenian had concealed himself in the town of Julpha, where he was betrayed by the agent's perfidious interpreter before-mentioned, who brought him before the officers of justice, and they committed him to prison: the implacable mob, however, no ways appeased by this his unjust confinement, insolently demanded that the prisoner should be instantaneously delivered into their hands, and the officers were compelled to submit.

As soon as they had got him into their own clutches, they consulted together what step to take next, in order to bring him to condign punishment. Some few, who were cooler and more compassionate than the rest, were for having him discharged, and made a present of to the king: the major part of them, however, being too hot, obstinate, and perverse, opposed this motion to the last degree, and drawing their sabres, hauled him away, in open defiance both of law and justice. But what incensed the unruly multitude more than all the rest, was, that they had used their utmost endeavours to bring him over to the Mohammedan persuasion, and added thereto their fair promises of life and liberty, and an advantageous match into the bargain, in case of compliance; but all their artifices proved altogether ineffectual; for notwithstanding he had immediate death before his eyes, yet with the utmost intrepidity and resolution, he rejected all their insidious offers. And when some of his brother Armenians, who had renounced their faith before, exhorted him to feign a compliance only, he heroically contemned their advice, and openly declared, be the consequence ever so fatal, he would never (coward-like) deny his Saviour and his God: upon which the incensed Persians flew upon him, like so many tygers, and not contented with depriving him, in the most unmerciful manner, of his life, they dragged his dead carcase to the great square belonging to the king's palace; where the most inveterate of them thinking it impossible to insult his remains enough, or vent a sufficient number of imprecations on his devoted

head, they tore out his bowels, and threw them away with all the marks of infamy and contempt; nay the very women added fuel to the fire, and could not forbear joining with pleasure in their savage treatment.

In this ignominious manner, died this Christian hero, this faithful servant, who had never abandoned his master during the whole course of his illness, but gave him constant attendance day and night. The name of this unhappy domestic, or martyr, was Gregory Affaer; and notwithstanding his surprising intrepidity, as above related, and his steadfastness in the Christian religion, he was but a youth under twenty years of age.

The proper officers, however, at last, gave orders for carrying the poor mangled carcase to Julpha, where it was interred in the church of St. Saviour, which is the finest in all that district; and an Armenian merchant erected soon after a sepulchral monument over him, at his own expence, in order to transmit his memory down to latest posterity; and at the same time, to testify that unfeigned affection and friendship, which he bore him before he fell a sacrifice to the fury and resentment of a pack of barbarians.

It is no difficult matter to conceive what a terror this tragical, this barbarous and inhuman murder must infuse into all the strangers in general that resided at Ispahan; and it had such an effect, that but very few of them durst venture out of their habitations for some considerable time, for fear of exposing themselves to the rage and resentment of a merciless multitude, who were drunk, as it were, thro' the connivance which they met with in the commission of so flagitious a crime. It must be acknowledged, indeed, that before this unparalleled outrage, the Persians always paid a peculiar regard both to the English and the Dutch.

As a great part of the company's goods were expected to be brought to Ispahan from Gombroon, proper persons were sent to meet them, according to custom, and to convey them into our warehouses.

4 R

And



1704 And this method is taken in order to prevent the Persians from insulting those who bring them, and turning them out of their way; which, as it was nothing more than common, they took care to do it at this juncture.

Our people, perceiving they were not only insulted but attacked by a parcel of barbarians, and their bales thrown down upon the ground, were determined to do themselves justice, and oppose them to the utmost of their power.

In this fray, it unluckily happened, that the son of the king's first physician, was present, and received some few blows with a cudgel. As the Persians at this time were the weakest party, they had immediate recourse to complaints, and demanded satisfaction for the injuries that they pretended to have sustained; and our director, to whom they made their applications for redress, promised that justice should be done them, after a proper examination had been made in so important a matter: whereupon they very readily withdrew; but the next day resumed their complaints: and one of his domestics being proved guilty of an assault, he caused him to be secured in their presence, and ordered that he should be bastonaded on the soles of his feet: however, no sooner was the punishment begun to be inflicted on the delinquent, but his accusers interceded for him, and kindly declared that they were perfectly satisfied. This gentle proceeding was widely distant from that which they had exerted but some few days before against the domestic of the English agent, who had been guilty of nothing more than applying the cudgel a little too warmly on the back of a worthless, insignificant rascal, which, however, very unhappily cost the poor, innocent domestic his life.

To conclude, as this nation is so very hard to be pleased, and are so implacably vindictive, it behoves every European minister, who attends at the Persian court, in order to transact the public affairs for

which they are sent thither by their respective powers, to maintain the dignity of their character with a high hand, and not to put up with the least affront, or suffer themselves to be any ways insulted without some condign punishment inflicted on the aggressors. Of all the ministers, with whom I have had the honour at times to be personally acquainted, there is no man that ever kept up his public character better, than one Mr. Hooghkame, with whom I travelled to (n) Constantinople many years ago. He was some time after that, sent by the East-India company into Persia, and was there universally esteemed. He was once, however, embroiled in a very troublesome affair, with one of the principal grandees, and a favourite at court, whose domestics, it seems, had some quarrel with those of my friend. Upon their coming to blows, the Persian grandee laid his hand upon his sabre; upon that our minister, with a pistol in his hand, protested, that if he offered to draw his sword, he would shoot him that moment through the head: whereupon the grandee gave orders to his servants to be quiet, and immediately withdrew. And it must be owned, that he acted the prudent part in so doing; for his party was much the weakest; and the minister was attended by some European soldiers, against whom the Persians would scarcely have been able to maintain his charge. Besides those soldiers took care to support their master's dignity by making a pompous figure, and by a resolution that removed all obstacles in their way; and in so scornful and imperious a nation, such a conduct is highly requisite.

And accordingly, the Persians shewed such a deference and esteem for him; that wherever he appeared, his passage was never after obstructed; nay the court and the king himself paid as great a regard for him as the Europeans themselves, and to this very day they mention his name with honour.

Occasional

1704

CO  
O  
(4) Persia, in 7. 14  
(1) Wulga, a Volga  
(2) Adram, in 7  
(3) Caspian Sea, in 7  
(4) Haham, in 7  
(5) Haham, in 7

The English Agent  
A Journal of  
his Affairs  
in Persia  
Persia's title  
Majesty's Agent  
Name of (H)  
Scripture of  
Sagha-Rahman

About this time  
was in the  
great festival, called  
that is to say, the  
festival of the Union  
this consisted by  
dancing, who was put  
some short time  
another King, in  
the royal palace, with  
all who related with  
court to go directly  
hundred, as we  
in any public ceremony  
some orders were  
two days after that  
dined to dinner  
at his palace, in company  
them.

The rain, on this  
red in the evening, and  
ed playing at the table

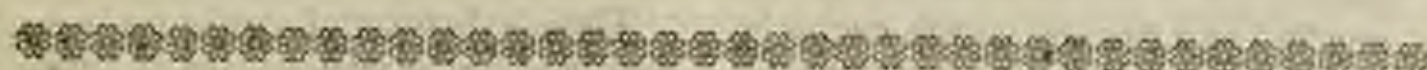


1470

*Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.*

1704

- |                                            |                                            |
|--------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| (a) Persia, see p. 64. n. o.               | (g) Gomron, or Gombroun, see p. 262. n. w. |
| (b) Wolga, or Volga, see p. 28. n. f.      | (h) India, (proper) see p. 213. n. d.      |
| (c) Astracan, see p. 62. n. i.             | (i) Armenia, see p. 198. n. g.             |
| (d) Caspian sea, see p. 66. n. q.          | (k) Georgia, in Asia, see p. 107. n. d.    |
| (e) Holland, see p. 76. n. r.              | (l) Europe, see 127. n. dd.                |
| (f) Isfahan, or Spahawn, see p. 109. n. m. | (m) Julia, or Julpha, see p. 262. n. n.    |
|                                            | (n) Constantinople, see p. 196. n. g.      |



## C H A P. XLVIII.

*The English Agent dies. The Ceremonies observed at his Interment. A succinct Account of the Preparations made for a public Rejoicing on Account of the remarkable Intermarriage of the King of (a) Persia's little Daughter of three Years of Age to the Grandson of his Majesty's Aunt, who was but five. The Manner observed by the Natives of (b) Armenia at a Time of Mourning. A short Description of an antient Fortrefs: As also, of the Mountain called Sagte-Rustan.*

ABOUT this time, the Persians were busy in the solemnization of their grand festival, called Babafeds-ja-adier, that is to say, the feast of the invincible father of the divine worship, a particular title conferred by them on one of their saints, who was put to death by Omar.

Some short time after this, there was another Korog, in the parts adjacent to the royal palace, with express orders for all who resided within the verge of the court to go directly out of their private habitations, as well as those, who lodged in any public caravanferas, or inns. The same orders were issued out again about two days after that, his majesty being inclined to divert himself without the walls of his palace, in company with his concubines.

The music, on this occasion, commenced in the evening, and the band continued playing all that night and the next day,

without intermission, 'till the setting of the sun; because the grand festival, called Mohammed was to be solemnized on the twentieth.

On the twenty first of August Mr. Owen, the English company's agent, died in the fortieth year of his age. He was a gentleman of strict virtue and honour, and universally beloved. The very next day, we paid him the last testimonies of our sorrow and respect, and attended his remains to the place allotted for the interment of all Christians in the following manner.

Our director's deputy (as the director himself happened to be confined to his chamber through a severe fit of the gout) went by break of day to the habitation of the deceased, accompanied by all our director's family: there went fourteen horses likewise, two whereof were led, covered with black cloth, and preceded by

The Persian  
grand festival,  
called  
Babafeds-  
ja-adier.

Another  
Korog.

The death  
of the En-  
lish agent.

The funeral.



1704

a trumpet with thirteen runners. The master of the horse to the deceased appeared, in the first place, accompanied by his interpreter, and several others; followed by three sumpter-horses, covered with black cloth, and with plumes of white feathers on their heads; then went fourteen persons on horse-back, attended by ten or a dozen servants, all on foot, with a trumpet before the sumpter-horses; after these, appeared those belonging to our director; after them, the body of the deceased, covered with white silk; and a black velvet pall thrown over it. It was deposited on a bier, which was carried by four bearers, who were at proper times relieved; as the place of his interment was at some considerable distance from his habitation. Next after the corpse went the deputy of the deceased, attended by ours, and by all the Dutch, amongst whom I was one; as also, by father Antonio Destiero, the resident there for the king of (c) Portugal, and all the English Armenian merchants who were then resident at (d) Julpha. We proceeded in this order through the Chiaer-baeg. Each of us had a white silk scarf thrown over our shoulders, which was knotted at the bottom, and hung down to the ground. These were given us at the deceased's house. Each of us had likewise another scarf of white gauze given us, which were fastened on our hats. There were some of the company, indeed, who had no hats, and those wore their gauze scarves around their waist. The whole procession consisted of forty persons on horse-back, and about thirty servants on foot. The French were in waiting for us at the burial-ground, accompanied by a small number of Monks, and the body was interred about seven o'clock, at which time the English company's deputy read over the funeral service, according to the custom observed in (e) England. When that service was over, each of the company threw in a handful of earth into the grave which was filled up afterwards by the proper diggers. We returned in the same order as we came; and were entertained at the house of the deceased, where those who came back

with us were served with scarves, like those which had been given us before. One was sent likewise to our deputy, who (as we have observed) was indisposed. After a very genteel entertainment the company withdrew.

Some few days after the solemnization of this funeral, I saw all the Bazars, or shops, embellished with little bands of parti-coloured paper, tinsel, several little figures, and other bagatelles. All the shops in the evening were illuminated with little lamps; and in divers places, the burghers, or citizens, were under arms.

These declarations of public joy were occasioned by the intermarriage of a little princess, the king's daughter, who was but three years of age, with the grandson of his majesty's aunt, who was but five. And these illuminations, &c. were made on account of the young princess being at that time conducted to the palace of that lady, where she was to receive her future education.

This, perhaps, is the only instance that can be produced of a marriage of this nature, between children who are Persians by extraction. Such matches, indeed, may be frequently met with amongst the Armenians. That lady, his majesty's aunt, and sister to the king his father, is called Zynab-Beggum. She intermarried with the son of Soltan-Galief, who was a great favourite of Abbas the Second.

On the twenty second of August, I went to Julpha, where I tarried till the twenty sixth; a particular day, whereon the Armenians solemnize their grand festival called Soerp-gaets, that is to say, the feast of the cross, in commemoration of Christ's cross, which was discovered on Mount (f) Calvary, by St. Helen, who was the mother of Constantine the Great.

In order therefore to the solemnization thereof, their wives, about two or three hours before break of day, assemble themselves together at the burial-ground, appointed for the interment of Christians only, and take care to bring with them, a sufficient quantity of wood, coals, tapers, and incense. When they are thus got together, they kindle fires at but a small distance

1704

distance from the fire of their deceased friends upon which they set and kept continually into their fires; making the most hideous lamenting themselves to the M. lie down in peace with more or less fervour proportion to that which they owed them of the living. Some of the living, some of the departed husbands, which ardency to fold within out on the cold stone tears. Such amongst the flourishing circumstances high birth and distinction tomb-stone with five and fetch such heavy as, if sincere, would obdurate heart, and in their affliction. As my natural curiosity to be a spectator of this choly solemnity, I set ground, accompanied interpreter, with whom hours before break of day, perfectly astonished at the there, and at the presence of mourners that were at that solemn occasion. I continued at some distance from them, the whole appearance, as the ruins of a reduced to ashes by fire and the burial-ground spot of ground to which who were so happy as had fled for refuge night, with links and in order to find out, distressed friends or relatives their substance unconsoled, in short distress. Notwithstanding keep at home, whilst employed in this fr pouring out their



1704

distance from the sepulchral monuments of their deceased friends and relations; upon which they set up lighted tapers, and kept continually throwing incense into their fires; making at the same time the most hideous lamentations, and addressing themselves to the Manes of those who lie down in peace within their graves, with more or less fervency and zeal, in proportion to that love and affection which they owed them when in the land of the living. Some of them even prostrate themselves on the tombs of their departed husbands, which they seem with ardency to fold within their arms, and pour out on the cold stone a whole flood of tears. Such amongst them as are in flourishing circumstances, or persons of high birth and distinction, will decorate a tomb-stone with five or six several tapers, and fetch such heavy sighs and groans, as, if sincere, would melt the most obdurate heart, and tempt one to partake in their affliction.

As my natural curiosity inclined me to be a spectator of this grand, tho' melancholy solemnity, I set out for the burial-ground, accompanied by the son of our interpreter, with whom I lodged, about two hours before break of day. I was perfectly astonished at the sight of the tombs there, and at the prodigious number of mourners that were assembled together on that solemn occasion: and whilst I continued at some considerable distance from them, the whole appeared to my imagination, as the ruins of a town that had been reduced to ashes by some destructive fire; and the burial-ground in particular, as a spot of ground to which those inhabitants who were so happy as to escape the flames, had fled for refuge, in the dead of the night, with links and other proper lights, in order to find out, if possible, their distressed friends or relations, or the remains of their substance unconsumed; like persons inconsolable, in short, and in the deepest distress. Notwithstanding the husbands keep at home, whilst their wives are thus employed in this frightful service, and pouring out their most pitious lamenta-

1704

tions; yet I observed, that there were some men amongst them, though their number was comparatively small, and some priests likewise, who offered to assist such with their supplications, and other acts of devotion, as were willing to pay a pecuniary consideration, which was more or less, as their circumstances would admit. The poorer sort will bestow sometimes six-pence upon them: a substantial citizen's lady will deposit perhaps twelve-pence, and a person of distinction will advance in proportion to her dignity and station.

And as these priests in particular are dressed all in black, they make an odd fantastical group amongst a parcel of women in their white veils. The number of women, who resort to this Christian burial-place, on this solemn occasion, amounts, for the most part, to three thousand and upwards; and the number of little fires that are thus kindled, and thus incessantly fed with incense, raises such a smoke as spreads itself as far as Isfahan. Notwithstanding this solemnity was a night-scene; yet I took a draught of it, in the best manner I was able; and the spot I pitched upon for my stand was that part by the tomb-stone of our director's late deceased consort, which fronted the city; a representation whereof the reader will find in Plate

Pl. 102.

(No. 102.) hereunto annexed. The ceremony continued till about two in the morning. Upon my return, I found the way crowded with people of all ranks and degrees; and met with several ladies who were going to pay the tombs a second visit.

No sooner was the sun up, but the populace thronged to the same place of rendezvous, but with no other view than to smoke a sober pipe or two, and spend the remainder of the day in such different amusements as they thought proper.

In the evening of the last day of August, I went to our director's, in order to go with his deputy, to the mountain called Koesoffa, where lie the ruins of an antient fortress. We set out on the first of September about four in the morning, and by seven reached one part of that mountain,

4 S

where



1704

where we were obliged to dismount, because our horses could carry us no farther. My companion, who took but little delight in walking, left me there, and went to the Christian burial-ground, in order to wait for my return. At about eight o'clock, I went up the mountain, accompanied by a huntsman and a servant of our director's, who were provided with fire-arms; and by ten we arrived at an old gate-way, by one side whereof lay the ruins of a wall, which in times past extended to the northward quite to the foot of the mountain, in that place where it is steepest. This gate was more worn out by abundance on the left-hand than on the right. The reader will find a representation of it in Plate (No. 103) hereto annexed.

At the distance of about a quarter of a league from hence, we met with the ruins of another structure, which was totally demolished, though they assured me it had once been a stable. From thence I perceived several fragments of an antient wall which extended a considerable way southward upon the top, or summit of the hill from east to west, and to the northward towards the city, which stands but at a small distance from it. It might, indeed, have passed for a kind of fortress by nature, without the aid or assistance of any art whatever, being extremely steep from top to bottom; and to confess the truth, it never had any wall on that side.

About eleven o'clock we reached the very summit, but not without some toil and fatigue. There I discovered the ruins of a building, which had been no less than eight and twenty paces in length, though very little of it was at that time remaining. The wall was four feet thick at least, and continues still pretty lofty in some places, where are the remains of some arcades still to be seen within. The summit, or top of this mountain, likewise, is no more than twenty eight paces in breadth from north to south, and sixty four in length from east to west, and falls sloping away to the eastward.

As to the rest, it extends in length to the southward, from whence the antient walls of the fortress, which were there formerly as they appear to the northward, are still to be seen; of which the reader will find a representation in Plate (No. 104.) hereto annexed.

I took the draught of all this with greater care and exactness than usual; because there are some travellers who insist, that Darius was resident in this fortress when Alexander attacked his army in the plain a second time. I went down thither about noon, and there to the southward I made a draught of the outward ruins that are still subsisting of this structure, where are still to be seen two semi-circles, in the form of towers.

In the Plate (No. 105.) hereto annexed, the reader, on turning his eye to the rock, may visibly discern the very spot of ground whereon this fortress was first erected.

The huntsman, whom I took with me for my guide, would fain have gone down the mountain on the north side, as it was by much the shortest way; and used all the motives he could think of, to induce me to follow him; but the rock appeared to me so steep, and so much like a precipice, that my courage failed me; and I durst not indulge my curiosity so far, as to venture the breaking my bones in the adventure. I could not, however, with all my persuasions, prevent my other attendant from following his example, which he severely repented in but a few minutes after; for I had scarce lost sight of my two fool-hardy companions, but I found the last was obliged to stop; and I could hear him bawl out to me at a distance, for Gods-sake, Sir, do not presume to follow us. Where he stopt, he was forced to continue for some considerable time, being incapable of stirring one foot either backwards or forwards. I advised him to be as cautious and careful as possible; but of two dangers, to attempt the climbing

1704

Pl. 104.

Pl. 105.

ing up again, rather than  
fellow-servant who de-  
intrepidity of a fool, and  
cat. For my own part  
according to the old  
farthest way about  
home; and accordingly,  
take a tour round about  
least to the eastward, bet-  
tains; inasmuch that it  
o'clock before I reached  
above-mentioned, as the  
between my friend and  
in whose care we had le-  
When I had rested  
self for some time after  
fatigue, we returned to  
resolution, to visit the ne-  
other curiosities, as I im-  
a traveller's attention;  
determined to take my  
lord and the city towards  
September.

Accordingly, we set  
for the mountain of Tag-  
lies a league and an half  
city; and on the sum-  
we met with the ruins  
building, first founded by  
perienced warrior, of  
very large encomiums  
At the foot of this m-  
grotto, wherein there  
remarkable springs, th-  
keep continually trickl-  
of the rock. A great  
(g) Indians, who are  
guished by the title of  
nually, on April-day, o-  
to this mountain, in or-  
grand festival, in com-

Occa

- (a) Persia, see p. 6.
- (b) Armenia, see p.
- (c) Portugal, see p.
- (d) Julia, or Julpha



1704 ing up again, rather than to follow his fellow-servant who descended with the intrepidity of a fool, and the agility of a cat. For my own part, I thought, according to the old proverb, that the farthest way about was the nearest way home; and accordingly, I chose rather to take a tour round about for two leagues at least to the eastward, between the mountains; insomuch that it was past three o'clock before I reached the burial-ground above-mentioned, as the spot agreed on between my friend and I for our meeting, in whose care we had left our horses.

When I had rested and refreshed myself for some time after my danger and fatigue, we returned to the city, with a resolution, to visit the next day some such other curiosities, as I imagined worthy of a traveller's attention; especially as I was determined to take my leave of my landlord and the city towards the latter end of September.

Tagte-Rustan.

Accordingly, we set out by day-break for the mountain of Tagte-Rustan, which lies a league and an half at least from the city; and on the summit or top thereof we met with the ruins of a particular building, first founded by an able and experienced warrior, of whom there are very large encomiums upon record.

At the foot of this mountain there is a grotto, wherein there are three or four remarkable springs, the waters whereof keep continually trickling down the sides of the rock. A great number of the (g) Indians, who are known and distinguished by the title of Banians, resort annually, on April-day, or soon after at least, to this mountain, in order to solemnize a grand festival, in commemoration of a

certain holy hermit, who for many years successively resided in a cell not far distant from the rock, if not a cavern of it; and, indeed there is for the most part, some one dervise, that is to say, some one St. or another, that makes it his place of abode. This grotto is filled with slips of stuffs of all sorts of colours, which are brought hither by persons labouring under some severe affliction or other, for the relief whereof they resort to these waters, as is a custom generally observed (as I have hinted already) by all the inhabitants of the eastern nations. The reader, in Plate (No. 106) will find an exact representation of this grotto.

About half a league from this place, on that side which fronts the city, is a certain mountain, from whence the Persians extract those hard, blue stones, with which they erect their sepulchral monuments.

I saw several of them myself thrown down from the top of the mountain directly on the plain, without the least visible damage; but such as are of the larger size are rolled down those sides of it which are steep, indeed, but then they have a gradual descent.

From hence there is a very fine prospect to the westward between the mountains and the plain, not only of a number of handsome villages, but of several spacious gardens intermixed, which have a fine effect.

The reader will find I have hereto annexed a representation of it, together with the mountain, on the top whereof stands Rustan-house. Having thus gratified my curiosity, I returned, well-pleased to the city.

*Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.*

(a) Persia, see p. 64. n. o.

(b) Armenia, see p. 198. n. g.

(c) Portugal, see p. 260. n. m.

(d) Julfa, or Julpha, see p. 262. n. x.

(e) England, see p. 91. n. f.

(f) Calvary Mount, near Jerusalem, see p. 85. n. d.

(g) India, (proper) see p. 213. n. d.

F I N I S.